



TECHNICAL MANUAL

AIR TO WATER HEAT PUMP

INDOOR UNIT

(ALL IN ONE TYPE)

HMA60-S

HMA100-S

(SPLIT BOX)

HSB60-W

HSB100-W

HSB140

(TANK UNIT)

PT300

PT500

(CONTROLLER)

RC-HY20-W

RC-HY40-W

OUTDOOR UNIT

FDCW60VNX-A

FDCW71VNX-A

FDCW100VNX-A

FDCW140VNX-A

Service code

Outdoor unit	History of service code				Changes
FDCW60VNX-A	1	—			1 : to add new unit
FDCW71VNX-A	1	L	M	N	1 → L : to comply with amended safety standard for LVD
FDCW100VNX-A	1	L	M	N	L → M : to change of control unit (PCB)
FDCW140VNX-A	1	L	M	N	M → N : to change of connected indoor unit

● **Compatibility**

Compatibility with previous models

The new remote controller has added a new software version compatible with new indoor units, making it also compatible with the old models.

Due to specifications upgrade the old controller is not compatible with the new indoor units as shown in the table below:

		Indoor unit						
		HSB60	HSB60-W	HSB100	HSB100-W	HSB140	HMK60	HMK100
Remote controller	RC-HY20	○	×	○	×	○	○	○
	RC-HY40	○	×	○	×	○	○	○
	RC-HY20-W	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	RC-HY40-W	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

The new indoor unit HSB60-W, HSB100-W replaces the HSB60, HSB100.

This unit was upgraded in order to be compatible with R410A and R32 outdoor units.

Outdoor unit FDCW60VNX-A, FDCW71VNX-A has the following compatibility:

		Indoor unit							
		HSB60	HSB60-W	HMK60	HMA60-S	HSB100	HSB100-W	HMK100	HMA100-S
Outdoor unit	FDCW60VNX-A	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×
	FDCW71VNX-A	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○

■ This TECHNICAL MANUAL is for indoor units, HMA series or HSB series.

If indoor unit is not HMA series or HSB series, please refer to Manual No. '13•HM-T-193 or '18•HM-T-274.

■ If accessories are installed, please refer to each manual or Manual No. '18•HM-T-274.

■ Regarding instruction manual, please refer to the below site.

<http://www.mhi-mth.co.jp/en/>

Table of Contents



















Safety precautions	2	Troubleshooting guide	213
		220 - High pressure alarm	213
		228 - Failed defrosting	214
Technical data	5	294 - Incompatible heat pump	215
Technical specifications	6	404 - S. fault HP	216
Specifications	6	403,412,415-Sensor fault from PCA154	217
Installation requirement	19	E5 - Communication error during operation	218
Operating temperature range	20	E35 - High HX temp	219
Capacity diagram	22	E36 - Hot gas alarm	220
		E37 - S. fault Tho-R	221
Dimensions	29	E38 - S. fault Tho-A	222
Indoor units	29	E39 - S. fault Tho-D	223
Outdoor units	33	E40 - High pressure alarm	224
Controller	37	E41 - Power transistor overheat	225
		E42 - Current cut<FDCW60>	226
Electrical circuit diagram	38	E42 - Current cut <FDCW71, 100, 140>	227
Indoor units	38	E45 - Inverter communication error	228
Outdoor units	50	E47 - Inverter A/F module over current<FDCW60>	229
Controller	53	E47 - Inverter A/F module over current<FDCW71>	230
		E48 - Fan alarm<FDCW60>	231
Installation	63	E48 - Fan alarm<FDCW71,100,140>	232
Outdoor unit installation	64	E49 - LP alarm	233
FDCW60VNX-A	64	E51 - Power transistor error<FDCW60>	235
FDCW71,100,140VNX-A	68	E51 (E41) - Inverter and fan motor error(for FDCW71,100,140)	236
		E53 - S. fault Tho-S	237
Indoor unit installation	72	E54 - S. fault LPT(for FDCW71,100,140)	238
General information for installer	72	E57 - Low refrigerant	239
Pipe installation	80	E58 - Current safe stop	240
Electrical installation	91	E59 - Inverter error<FDCW60>	241
Commissioning and adjusting	114	E59 - Inverter error<FDCW71, 100, 140>	242
		E60 - Rotor lock	243
		DIP switch setting	254
Control	131	FDCW71VNX-A	254
Control	132	FDCW100, 140VNX-A	255
Display unit	132		
Menu system	133	Component replacement	262
Menu list	136	Indoor unit	262
Menu 1- Indoor climate	136	Outdoor unit	299
Menu 2- Hot water	136	FDCW60VNX-A	301
Menu 3- Info	136	FDCW71VNX-A	306
Menu 4- My system	136	FDCW100VNX-A	312
Menu 5- Service	137	FDCW140VNX-A	319
Service	170	Components	326
Operation control function by the indoor unit control	171	Outdoor unit	327
Operation control function by the outdoor unit control	179	Compressor	327
Alarm list	197	4-way valve	327
Information messages	205	Expansion valve	327
Outdoor unit alarm	211	Low pressure sensor	327
		HMA60-S/HMA100-S	328
		HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140	329
		Temperature sensor	331
		Data for sensor in outdoor unit	331
		Data for sensor in indoor unit	331
		Component positions	332
		Indoor unit	332
		Outdoor unit	343
		Piping system	345
		Accessories	351
		Accessory parts	351
		Option parts (for PT tank)	353











When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power source specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power source voltage and etc.) and installation spaces.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS














- We recommend you to read this “SAFETY PRECAUTIONS” carefully before the installation work in order to gain full advantage of the functions of the unit and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling.
- The precautions described below are divided into [WARNING] and [CAUTION]. The matters with possibilities leading to serious consequences such as death or serious personal injury due to erroneous handling are listed in the [WARNING] and the matters with possibilities leading to personal injury or damage of the unit due to erroneous handling including probability leading to serious consequences in some cases are listed in [CAUTION]. These are very important precautions for safety. Be sure to observe all of them without fail.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user

⚠ WARNING













<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer. If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury , as a result of a system malfunction. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Install the system in full accordance with the instruction manual. Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation. If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, It may cause water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage. Consult the expert about prevention measures. If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of leakage, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation. If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system. If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hang up the unit at the specified points with ropes which can support the weight in lifting for portage. And to avoid jolting out of alignment, be sure to hang up the unit at 4-point support. An improper manner of portage such as 3-point support can cause death or serious personal injury due to falling of the unit. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Install the unit in a location with good support. Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds. Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed. If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with “the norm for electrical work” and “national wiring regulation”, and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit. Power source with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work. Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work. Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks. Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly. Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Do not perform brazing work in the airtight room. It can cause lack of oxygen. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A. Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tighten the flare nut by using double spanners and torque wrench according to prescribed method. Be sure not to tighten the flare nut too much. Loose flare connection or damage on the flare part by tightening with excess torque can cause burst or refrigerant leaks which may result in lack of oxygen. 	

<p>● Do not open the service valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation. If the compressor is operated in state of opening service valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant.</p>	
<p>● Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulphide gas can occur. Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety</p>	
<p>● Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer. If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.</p>	
<p>● Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections. Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.</p>	
<p>● Be sure to fix up the service panels. Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.</p>	
<p>● Do not perform any repairs or modifications by yourself. Consult the dealer if the unit requires repair. If you repair or modify the unit, it can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.</p>	
<p>● Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition. The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.</p>	
<p>● Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, inspection or servicing. If the power source is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.</p>	
<p>● Consult the dealer or an expert regarding removal of the unit. Incorrect installation can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.</p>	
<p>● Stop the compressor before disconnecting refrigerant pipes in case of pump down operation. If disconnecting refrigerant pipes in state of opening service valves before compressor stopping, air can be sucked, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant circuit.</p>	

 **CAUTION**

<p>● Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care. Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting.</p>	
<p>● Use the circuit breaker with sufficient breaking capacity. If the breaker does not have sufficient breaking capacity, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.</p>	
<p>● Earth leakage breaker must be installed. If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.</p>	
<p>● Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used. Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.</p>	
<p>● Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur. If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.</p>	
<p>● Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfuric acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled. Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.</p>	
<p>● Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual. Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.</p>	
<p>● When the outdoor unit is installed on a roof or a high place, provide permanent ladders and handrails along the access route and fences and handrails around the outdoor unit. If safety facilities are not provided, it can cause personal injury due to falling from the installation place.</p>	
<p>● Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes may occur such as in laundries. Since the indoor unit is not waterproof, it can cause electric shocks and fire.</p>	
<p>● Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics. Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.</p>	
<p>● Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit. Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings.</p>	
<p>● Do not use the base flame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation. Using an old and damage base flame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.</p>	
<p>● Do not install the unit in the locations listed below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating. • Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur. • Vehicles and ships. • Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used. • Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant. • Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used. • Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines. 	

- Locations with heavy snow. (If installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual)
 - Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke.
 - Locations at high altitude. (more than 1000m high)
 - Locations with ammoniac atmospheres.
 - Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit.
 - Locations without good air circulation.
 - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit.
 - Locations where short circuit of air can occur. (in case of multiple units installation)
 - Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit.
- It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.

<p>● Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood. • Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to plants. • Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure. • Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously. (on the wall or at the place near bed room) • Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m) • Locations where drainage cannot run off safely. <p>It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.</p>	
<p>● Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.</p> <p>It can cause malfunction or deformation of the remote control.</p>	
<p>● Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.</p> <p>It can cause the damage of the items.</p>	
<p>● Take care when carrying the unit by hand.</p> <p>If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.</p>	
<p>● Dispose of any packing materials correctly.</p> <p>Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.</p>	
<p>● Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld spatter when welding work is done near the indoor unit.</p> <p>If weld spatter entered into the indoor unit during welding work, it can cause pin-hole in drain pan and result in water leakage. To prevent such damage, keep the indoor unit in its packing or cover it.</p>	
<p>● Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.</p> <p>Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.</p>	
<p>● Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.</p> <p>If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.</p>	
<p>● Do not touch any buttons with wet hands.</p> <p>It can cause electric shocks.</p>	
<p>● Do not shut off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.</p> <p>Wait at least 5 minutes, otherwise there is a risk of water leakage or breakdown.</p>	
<p>● Do not control the system with main power switch.</p> <p>It can cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan can start unexpectedly, which can cause personal injury.</p>	
<p>● Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.</p> <p>During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.</p>	

Notabilia for units designed for R410A

- Only use R410A refrigerant. R410A is the refrigerant whose pressure is 1.6 times as high as that of conventional refrigerant.
- The size of charging port of service valve and check joint for R410A are altered from that for conventional refrigerant in order to prevent the system being charged with the incorrect refrigerant by mistake. And the protruding dimension of pipe for flare processing and flare nut size for R410A are also altered from that for conventional refrigerant in order to reinforce strength against the pressure for R410A. Accordingly the dedicated tools for R410A listed in the below mentioned table should be prepared for installation and servicing.
- Do not use charging cylinder. Using charging cylinder may alter the composition of refrigerant, which results in making the performance of the system worse.
- Refrigerant must be charged always in liquid state from the bottle.

Dedicated tools for R410A	
a)	Gauge manifold
b)	Charge hose
c)	Electronic scale for refrigerant charge
d)	Torque wrench
e)	Flare tool
f)	Protrusion control gauge for copper pipe
g)	Vacuum pump adapter
h)	Gas leak detector

Technical data

Technical specifications

Specifications

Indoor units

All in one type

Model	HMA60-S	HMA100-S
General conditions		
Power source	230V AC / 400V 3NAC 50 Hz	
Max current (A)	45 for 230V single-phase / 20 for 400V three-phase	
Recommended fuse (A)	50 for 230V single-phase / 25 for 400V three-phase	
Wire size	6 × 10 mm ²	
Power source deviation (%)	-15 – +10	
Power factor	0.99	
Pipe size refrigerant (ref)	Gas piping: OD12.7, liquid: OD6.35 (1/2"; 1/4")	Gas piping: OD15.88, liquid: OD9.52 (5/8"; 3/8")
Indoor unit (split type, hydrounit)		
Immersion heater	Max 9 kW (4.5kW for single phase 230V)	
Capacity steps heater	3 (1.5, 3.0, 4.5kW) for single-phase 230V , 3 (3,6,9 kW) for three-phase 400V	
Circulating pump	Wilo Yonos Para	
Pump control sanitary hot water	Variable	
Pump capacity, max head	76 kPa (external)	
Pump capacity, max flow	4 m ³ /h	
Pump power	5 – 75W	
Pump efficiency, max	EEI≤0.21	
Heat exchanger	2 HP Plate type Alfa Laval, ACH-18-52H	3.5 HP Plate type Alfa Laval, ACH-30EQ-80H
Heat exchanger size	0.9 m ²	1.8 m ²
Pressure transmitter	0 – 4.6 MPa, deviation ±3%	
Water strainer system	0.6 mm ²	
Filter drier refrigeration system	Bi-flow 083	
Emergency thermostat	5 – 77 °C	
Thermal cut-off	98 (-8) °C	
Motor valves	2 × 3-way, ball type	
Actuator	230V 50 Hz, 8s/60°	
Safety relief valve system	0.3 MPa	
Manometer gauge	0 – 0.4 MPa	
Expansion vessel	10 ℓ	
IP grade	IP21	
Volume total	180 ℓ ±5%	
Volume coil	4.8 ℓ	
Area coil	1.6 m ²	
Material coil	Steel untreated S235JR	
Material tank	Enamelled steel S235JR 3.0 mm	
Cabinet	Top/side/front bottom	EN10130 DC01
	Back	DX51D+Z275

Technical specifications

Model		HMA60-S	HMA100-S
Material	Top/side/front bottom	Steel 0.7 mm	
	Back	Galvanized steel 275 g/m ²	
Color (powder coated 1 layer)	Top/side/front bottom	RAL9016, shine 50, white	
	Back	Untreated	
Isolation heat exchanger		Armaflex	
Isolation tank		PUR	
Stand by heat loss		61.25 W EN12897	
Design pressure tank		1.0 MPa (10 bar)	
Design pressure coil		1.6 MPa (16 bar)	
Design pressure refrigerant system		4.5 MPa	
Water quality sanitary hot water		<EU directive nr 98/83/EF	
Max operating temperature tank		80 °C	
Operating ambient temperature indoor unit		+5 – +35°C, max RH 95%	
Connection water system		compression fitting 22 mm	
Connection sanitary hot water		compression fitting 22 mm	
Height, (adjustment)		1715 + (20 – 40 mm)	
Width		600 mm	
Depth		610 mm	
Weight netto		160 kg	164 kg
Weight incl pallet incl packing		166 kg	170 kg
Weight packaging: Wood		1.1 kg	
Weight packaging: EPS		0.2 kg	
Weight packaging: Card board		3.7 kg	
Weight packaging: Plastics		0.4 kg	
Weight packaging: Metal		0.7 kg	
Packaging volume /dim		0.89 m ³ (1900 × 670 × 700 mm)	
Electrical connection		230V AC/400V 3NAC 50 Hz	
Wire size		6 × 10 mm ²	
Part number MHIAE		MCD001A014	MCD001A015
Enclosed			
		1 x Safety kit with safety valve, manometer and automatic air vent already insulated for cooling	
		1 x Strap for single phase connection	
		Outdoor sensor	
		Indoor sensor	
		3x Current sensor	
		Shut off valve, Strainer	

Indoor unit RC-HY controller	
Electrical data	
Supply Voltage	230V 50Hz
Rated value for impulse voltage	4 kV
Option connections	
Max number of air/water heat pumps	8
Max number of sensors	8
Max number of charge pumps with internal accessory cards	2
Max number of charge pumps with external accessory cards	8
Max number of outputs for additional heat step	3
Miscellaneous	
Area of operation	- 25 – 70 °C
Internet Connection function*	Included
Language	English, Swedish, German, French, Spanish, Finnish, Lithuanian, Czech, Polish, Dutch, Norwegian, Danish, Estonian, Latvian, Russian, Italian, Hungarian, Slovenian, Turkish, Croatian, Romanian, Icelandic

*Function is provided by myUpTech AB., which monitors operation data and control unit through internet.

Split box

Model	HSB60-W	HSB100-W	HSB140
General conditions			
Power source	230V AC50Hz		
Recommended fuse	6 A		
Pipe size refrigerant (ref)	Gas: OD12.7, liquid: OD6.35 (1/2"; 1/4")	Gas: OD15.9, liquid: OD9.5 (5/8"; 3/8")	
Capacity	For 6 kW outdoor unit	For up to 12 kW outdoor unit	For 16 kW outdoor unit
Indoor unit (split type, splitbox)			
IP grade	IP21		
Connection water system	Compression fitting 22 mm	Compression fitting 28 mm	
Connection refrigerant system	Flare		
Maximum allowed water pressure	1.0 MPa		
Maximum allowed water temperature	90 °C		
Maximum allowed refrigerant pressure	4.15 MPa		
Maximum allowed refrigerant temperature	110°C		
Supply heating temperature range	25 – 58°C		
Supply cooling temperature range	7 – 25°C		
Heat exchanger	Plate heat exchanger Alfa Laval ACH18-52H-F	Plate heat exchanger Alfa Laval ACH-30EQ-80H	Plate heat exchanger Alfa Laval ACH-30EQ-120H
Total volume heat exchanger (water side)	1 ℓ	3 ℓ	4 ℓ
Water quality	≤ EU-direktiv nr. 98/83/EF		
Ambient conditions	5 – 35°C Max relative humidity 95%		
Height	400 mm		
Width	460 mm		
Depth	250 mm		
Weight net	16 kg	18 kg	23 kg
Weight including packaging	21 kg		26 kg
Part number	MCD001A016	MCD001A018	MCD001A013
Enclosed	Wall bracket for mounting, Ball valve with particle filter	Wall bracket for mounting, Ball valve with particle filter Flare reduction	Wall bracket for mounting, Ball valve with particle filter

Tank unit

Model	PT300	PT500
Volume total	279 ℓ	476 ℓ
Volume coil	9.4 ℓ	13 ℓ
Area coil	1.6 m ²	2.13 m ²
Material coil	Steel - S235 ϕ 33.7 × 2.6 mm	
Material tank	Steel - S275g=3.0 mm	
Cabinet	Side / Top / - plate (PS)	Side / Top - plate (PS)
Material	Side - plate polystyrene g=1 mm Top - plate polystyrene g=2 mm	
Color (powder coated 1 layer)	Side - White Top - RAL7001	
Isolation tank	EPS200 (30kg/ m ³) + Nonwoven PET (1 kg/m ²)	
Stand by heat loss	90W (PN-EN 12897:2016;(EU) No 812/2013)	98W (PN-EN 12897:2016;(EU) No 812/2013)
Design pressure tank	1.0 MPa (10 bar)	
Design pressure coil	1.6 MPa (16 bar)	
Power coil 70/10/45°C (2,5m ³ /h)	26 kW	34 kW
Efficiency coil 70/10/45°C	640 ℓ/h	855 ℓ/h
Water quality sanitary hot water	≤EU directive nr.98/83/EF	
Water quality, system	≤EU directive nr.98/83/EF	
Max operating temperature tank	85°C	
Min operating temperature tank	5°C	
Max operating temperature coil	110°C	
Connection water system	G1" external thread	
Connection sanitary hot water	G1" external thread	
Inner surface corrosion protection	Enamel - DIN 4753-3:2013 - Part 3	
Corrosion protection	Mg-anode	
Height (adjustment)	1634 mm (20 _{+15/-0})	1835 mm (20 _{+15/-0})
Min required ceiling height	2000 mm	
Width	ϕ 673 mm	ϕ 832 mm
Depth	743 mm	897 mm
Weight net product	115 kg	156 kg
Weight incl. pallet incl. packing	140 kg	196 kg
Weight packaging: Wood	29 kg	39 kg
Weight packaging: EPS	0.5 kg	
Weight packaging: Plastics	0.1 kg	
Packaging volume /dim	1.1 m ³ / 1840 × 790 × 750 (mm)	1.75 m ³ / 2040 × 950 × 910 (mm)
Part number	MCD001A009	MCD001A010

Outdoor units

Outdoor model		FDCW60VNX-A	
Power source		1 phase 230V 50Hz	
Heating nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	2.28 (0.50 – 8.00)
	condition 2	kW	2.67 (0.50 – 7.40)
Heating power consumption	condition 1	kW	0.63
	condition 2	kW	0.50
COP	condition 1		3.62
	condition 2		5.32
Cooling nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	4.86 (0.80 – 6.00)
	condition 2	kW	7.03 (1.20 – 7.80)
Cooling power consumption	condition 1	kW	1.84
	condition 2	kW	2.00
EER	condition 1		2.64
	condition 2		3.52
Operation range (Outdoor temperature)	Heating		-20 – 43
	Cooling		15 – 43
Operation range (Water temperature)	Heating		25 – 58 (65 with immersion heater)
	Cooling		7 – 25
System water flow		ℓ/s	0.09 – 0.29
Min system water flow at 100% circulation pump speed		ℓ/s	0.09
Max current		A	15
Recommended fuse rating			20
Starting current		A	5
Deviation, incoming supply			-15 – +10%
Max refrigerant pipe length		m	30
Max height difference between IU and OU		m	7
Height		mm	640
Width		mm	800
Depth		mm	290
Weight		kg	46
Color			Stucco White
Sound Power level *1		dB(A)	53
Sound Power level (silent mode)		dB(A)	57
Sound Power level (Max)		dB(A)	64
Sound Pressure level *2		dB(A)	45
Sound Pressure level (silent mode)		dB(A)	-
Air flow		m ³ /min	41.5
Type of compressor			RMT5113MCE2
Refrigerant oil		liter	0.45 M-MA68
Heat exchanger			M fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control			EEV
Defrost control			Reversing cycle
Fan			Propeller fan x 1
Fan motor		W	34x1
Shock & vibration absorber			Rubber sleeve (for compressor)
Electric heater (crankcase / base)		W	-/110
Safety equipment			Internal thermostat for fan motor
Power and signal line from indoor unit			3 cores 2.0mm ² + 2 cores 1.5mm ²
Refrigerant			R410A
Refrigerant volume (pipe length without additional charge)		kg (m)	1.5(15)
Dimensions, refrigerant pipe		mm (inch)	Gas pipe:OD 12.7(1/2") Liquid pipe:OD 6.35(1/4")
Refrigerant pipe connections			Flare

Technical specifications

Outdoor model			FDCW71VNX-A
Power source			1 phase 230V 50Hz
Heating nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	8.0 (3.0 – 8.0)
	condition 2	kW	8.3 (2.0 – 8.3)
Heating power consumption	condition 1	kW	2.40
	condition 2	kW	2.03
COP	condition 1		3.33
	condition 2		4.09
Cooling nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	7.1 (2.0 – 7.1)
	condition 2	kW	10.7 (2.7 – 10.7)
Cooling power consumption	condition 1	kW	2.65
	condition 2	kW	3.19
EER	condition 1		2.68
	condition 2		3.35
Operation range (Outdoor temperature)	Heating		-20 – 43
	Cooling		15 – 43
Operation range (Water temperature)	Heating		25 – 58 (65 with immersion heater)
	Cooling		7 – 25
System water flow		ℓ/s	0.08 – 0.38
Min system water flow at 100% circulation pump speed		ℓ/s	0.19
Max current		A	16
Recommended fuse rating		A	20
Starting current		A	5
Deviation, incoming supply			-15 – +10%
Max refrigerant pipe length		m	30
Max height difference between IU and OU		m	7
Height		mm	750
Width		mm	880 (+88 with valve cover)
Depth		mm	340 (+78 with foot rail)
Weight		kg	60
Color			Stucco White
Sound Power level *1		dB(A)	64
Sound Power level (silent mode)		dB(A)	61
Sound Pressure level *2		dB(A)	48
Sound Pressure level (silent mode)		dB(A)	45
Air flow		m ³ /min	50
Type of compressor			RMT5118MDE2
Refrigerant oil		liter	0.68 M-MA68
Heat exchanger			M fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control			EEV
Defrost control			Reversing cycle
Fan			Propeller fan x 1
Fan motor		W	86 x 1
Shock & vibration absorber			Rubber sleeve (for compressor)
Electric heater (crankcase / base)		W	20 / 100
Safety equipment			Internal thermostat for fan motor
Power and signal line from indoor unit			3 cores 3.5mm ² + 2 cores 1.5mm ²
Refrigerant			R410A
Refrigerant volume (pipe length without additional charge)		kg (m)	2.55 (15)
Dimensions, refrigerant pipe		mm (inch)	Gas pipe: OD 15.88 (5/8") Liquid pipe: OD 9.52 (3/8")
Refrigerant pipe connections			Flare

Technical specifications

Outdoor model			FDCW100VNX-A
Power source			1 phase 230V 50Hz
Heating nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	9.0 (3.5 – 11.0)
	condition 2	kW	9.2 (3.5 – 10.0)
Heating power consumption	condition 1	kW	2.62
	condition 2	kW	2.15
COP	condition 1		3.44
	condition 2		4.28
Cooling nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	8.0 (3.0 – 9.0)
	condition 2	kW	11.0 (3.3 – 12.0)
Cooling power consumption	condition 1	kW	2.85
	condition 2	kW	3.04
EER	condition 1		2.81
	condition 2		3.62
Operation range (Outdoor temperature)	Heating		-20 – 43
	Cooling		15 – 43
Operation range (Water temperature)	Heating		25 – 58 (65 with immersion heater)
	Cooling		7 – 25
System water flow		ℓ/s	0.12 – 0.57
Min system water flow at 100% circulation pump speed		ℓ/s	0.24
Max current			23
Recommended fuse rating		A	30
Starting current		A	5
Deviation, incoming supply		A	-15 – +10%
Max refrigerant pipe length		m	30
Max height difference between IU and OU		m	7
Height		mm	845
Width		mm	970
Depth		mm	370 (+80 with foot rail)
Weight		kg	81
Color			Stucco White
Sound Power level *1		dB(A)	64.5
Sound Power level (silent mode)		dB(A)	62
Sound Pressure level *2		dB(A)	50
Sound Pressure level (silent mode)		dB(A)	47
Air flow		m ³ /min	73
Type of compressor			RMT5126MDE2
Refrigerant oil		liter	0.9 M-MA68
Heat exchanger			straight fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control			EEV
Defrost control			Reversing cycle
Fan			Propeller fan x 1
Fan motor		W	86 x 1
Shock & vibration absorber			Rubber sleeve (for compressor)
Electric heater (crankcase / base)		W	20 / 120
Safety equipment			Internal thermostat for fan motor
Power and signal line from indoor unit			3 cores 5.5mm ² + 2 cores 1.5mm ²
Refrigerant			R410A
Refrigerant volume (pipe length without additional charge)		kg (m)	2.9 (15)
Dimensions, refrigerant pipe		mm (inch)	Gas pipe: OD 15.88 (5/8") Liquid pipe: OD 9.52 (3/8")
Refrigerant pipe connections			Flare

Technical specifications

Outdoor model			FDCW140VNX-A
Power source			1 phase 230V 50Hz
Heating nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	16.0 (5.8 – 16.0)
	condition 2	kW	16.0 (4.2 – 16.0)
Heating power consumption	condition 1	kW	4.83
	condition 2	kW	3.81
COP	condition 1		3.31
	condition 2		4.2
Cooling nominal capacity	condition 1	kW	11.8 (3.1 – 11.8)
	condition 2	kW	16.5 (5.2 – 16.5)
Cooling power consumption	condition 1	kW	4.45
	condition 2	kW	4.36
EER	condition 1		2.65
	condition 2		3.78
Operation range (Outdoor temperature)	Heating		-20 – 43
	Cooling		15 – 43
Operation range (Water temperature)	Heating		25 – 58 (65 with immersion heater)
	Cooling		7 – 25
System water flow		ℓ/s	0.19 – 0.79
Min system water flow at 100% circulation pump speed		ℓ/s	0.40
Max current		A	25
Recommended fuse rating		A	30
Starting current		A	5
Deviation, incoming supply			-15 – +10%
Max refrigerant pipe length		m	30
Max height difference between IU and OU		m	7
Height		mm	1300
Width		mm	970
Depth		mm	370 (+80 with foot rail)
Weight		kg	105
Color			Stucco White
Sound Power level *1		dB(A)	71
Sound Power level (silent mode)		dB(A)	68
Sound Pressure level *2		dB(A)	54
Sound Pressure level (silent mode)		dB(A)	51
Air flow		m ³ /min	100
Type of compressor			RMT5134MDE2
Refrigerant oil		liter	0.9 M-MA68
Heat exchanger			M fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control			EEV
Defrost control			Reversing cycle
Fan			Proeller fan x 2
Fan motor		W	86 x 2
Shock & vibration absorber			Rubber sleeve (for compressor)
Electric heater (crankcase / base)		W	20 / 120
Safety equipment			Internal thermostat for fan motor
Power and signal line from indoor unit			3 cores 5.5mm ² + 2 cores 1.5mm ²
Refrigerant			R410A
Refrigerant volume (pipe length without additional charge)		kg (m)	4.0 (15)
Dimensions, refrigerant pipe		mm (inch)	Gas pipe: OD 15.88 (5/8") Liquid pipe: OD 9.52 (3/8")
Refrigerant pipe connections			Flare

Test conditions

		Water temperature	Ambient temperature
Heating	condition 1	45°C out / 40°Cin	7°CDB / 6°CWB
	condition 2	35°Cout / 30°Cin	
Cooling	condition 1	7°Cout / 12°Cin	35°CDB
	condition 2	18°Cout / 23°Cin	

*1: Test condition for sound power level

Temperature condition: Heating condition 2

*2: Test condition for sound pressure level

FDCW60VNX-A

Calculated from sound power level

FDCW71,100,140,VNX-A

Temperature condition: Heating condition 2

Mike position 1m away in front of outdoor unit at the height of 1m

Seasonal space heating energy efficiency (η_s) & Rated heat output (Prated)**All in one****Medium-temperature application**

Outdoor unit		FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A	
Indoor unit		HMA60-S		HMA100-S		HMA100-S	
		Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s
η_s	55 Average climate	5.3	138	7.0	119	10.0	126
Seasonal Space Heating Energy Efficiency Class		A++		A+		A++	
η_s	55 Warmer climate	4.8	116	8.0	154	12.0	164
η_s	55 Cold climate	5.6	179	8.2	102	12.5	108

Low-temperature application

Outdoor unit		FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A	
Indoor unit		HMA60-S		HMA100-S		HMA100-S	
		Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s
η_s	35 Average climate	4.8	188	7.1	149	8.5	165
Seasonal Space Heating Energy Efficiency Class		A++		A+		A++	
η_s	35 Warmer climate	4.2	252	8.0	n/a	12.0	n/a
η_s	35 Cold climate	4.0	143	8.2	n/a	13.5	n/a

Outdoor unit		FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A	
Indoor unit		HMA60-S		HMA100-S		HMA100-S	
		COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$	COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$	COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$
η_{wh}	Average climate	2.23	89	2.48	99	2.45	98
Energy Efficiency class		A		A		A	
η_{wh}	Warmer climate	1.75	70	1.95	78	1.95	78
η_{wh}	Cold climate	2.73	109	3.05	122	3.03	121
Load profile		XL		XL		XL	

*1 COP_{DHW} / 2.5 *100**Split box****Medium-temperature application**

Outdoor unit		FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A		FDCW140VNX-A	
Indoor unit		HSB60-W		HSB100-W		HSB100-W		HSB140	
Tank		PT300		PT300		PT300		PT500	
		Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s
η_s	55 Average climate	5.3	138	7.0	119	10.0	126	13.0	133
Seasonal Space Heating Energy Efficiency Class		A++		A+		A++		A++	
η_s	55 Warmer climate	4.8	116	8.0	154	12.0	164	15.0	168
η_s	55 Cold climate	5.6	179	8.2	102	12.5	108	16.0	115

Low-temperature application

Outdoor unit		FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A		FDCW140VNX-A	
Indoor unit		HSB60-W		HSB100-W		HSB100-W		HSB140	
Tank		PT300		PT300		PT300		PT500	
		Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s	Prated (kW)	η_s
η_s	35 Average climate	4.8	188	7.1	149	8.5	165	12.5	166
Seasonal Space Heating Energy Efficiency Class		A++		A+		A++		A++	
η_s	35 Warmer climate	4.2	252	8.0	n/a	12.0	n/a	15.0	224
η_s	35 Cold climate	4.0	143	8.2	n/a	13.5	n/a	15.0	150

Outdoor unit		FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A		FDCW140VNX-A	
Indoor unit		HSB60-W		HSB100-W		HSB100-W		HSB140	
Tank		PT300		PT300		PT300		PT500	
		COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$	COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$	COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$	COP _{DHW}	$\eta_{wh}(*1)$
η_{wh}	Average climate	2.27	91	2.25	90	2.22	89	2.21	88
Energy Efficiency class		A		A		A		A	
η_{wh}	Warmer climate	1.79	72	1.93	77	1.91	76	1.89	76
η_{wh}	Cold climate	2.8	112	2.58	103	2.55	102	2.53	101
Load profile		XXL		XXL		XXL		XXL	

*1 COP_{DHW} / 2.5 *100

This technical information is based on the European regulations listed below.

1. COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) No. 813/2013 of 2 August 2013 implementing Directive 2009/125/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council with regard to ecodesign requirements for space heaters and combination heaters.
2. COMMISSION DELEGATED REGULATION (EU) No. 811/2013 of 18 February 2013 supplementing Directive 2010/30/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council with regard to the energy labelling of space heaters, combination heaters, packages of space heater, temperature control and solar device and packages of combination heater, temperature control and solar device.

Controller

RC-HY20-W	
Electrical data	
Power source voltage	230V 50Hz
Enclosure class	IP 21
Rated value for impulse voltage	4 kV
Electrical contamination	2
Option connections	
Max number of air/water heat pumps	1
Max number of sensors	8
Max number of charge pumps	1
Max number of outputs for additional heat step	3
Miscellaneous	
Area of operation	-25 – 70 °C
Ambient temperature	5 – 35 °C
Dimensions and weight	
Width	354 mm
Depth	123 mm
Height	400 mm
Net weight	4.3 kg
Gross weight	4.5 kg
Part number MHIAE	MCD501A003
Internet connection function*	Included
Language	English, Swedish, German, French, Spanish, Finnish, Lithuanian, Czech, Polish, Dutch, Norwegian, Danish, Estonian, Latvian, Russian, Italian, Hungarian, Slovenian, Turkish, Croatian, Romanian, Icelandic

*Function is provided by myUpTech AB., which monitors operation data and control unit through internet

RC-HY40-W	
Electrical data	
Power source voltage	230V 50Hz
Enclosure class	IP 21
Rated value for impulse voltage	4 kV
Option connections	
Max number of air/water heat pumps	8
Max number of sensors	8
Max number of charge pumps with internal accessory cards	4
Max number of charge pumps with external accessory cards	8
Max number of outputs for additional heat step	3
Miscellaneous	
Area of operation	-25 – 70 °C
Ambient temperature	5 – 35 °C
Dimensions and weight	
Width	354 mm
Depth	123 mm
Height	400 mm
Net weight	4.4 kg
Gross weight	4.6 kg
Part number MHIAE	MCD501A004
Internet connection function*	Included
Language	English, Swedish, German, French, Spanish, Finnish, Lithuanian, Czech, Polish, Dutch, Norwegian, Danish, Estonian, Latvian, Russian, Italian, Hungarian, Slovenian, Turkish, Croatian, Romanian, Icelandic

*Function is provided by myUpTech AB., which monitors operation data and control unit through internet

Installation requirements

Indoor unit	HMA60-S HSB60-W	HMA100-S HSB100-W	HMA100-S HSB100-W	HSB140
Outdoor unit	FDCW60VNX-A	FDCW71VNX-A	FDCW100VNX-A	FDCW140VNX-A
Max pressure, climate system	0.25MPa (2.5Bar)			
Max temperature, climate system	65°C			
Max temperature in indoor unit	65°C			
Max temperature from external heat source	65°C			
Max supply temperature with compressor	58°C			
Min supply temperature cooling	7°C			
Max supply temperature cooling	25°C			
Min volume, climate system without underfloor cooling application	50 ℓ	50 ℓ	80 ℓ	150 ℓ
Min volume, climate system with underfloor cooling application	80 ℓ	80 ℓ	100 ℓ	150 ℓ
Max flow, climate system	0.29ℓ/s	0.38ℓ/s	0.57ℓ/s	0.79ℓ/s
Min flow, climate system	0.12 ℓ/s	0.19ℓ/s	0.29ℓ/s	0.39 ℓ/s
Nominal system flow heating ($\Delta T=5K$)	0.29ℓ/s (6kW,7/45°C)	0.38ℓ/s (8kW,7/45°C)	0.43ℓ/s (9kW,7/45°C)	0.79ℓ/s (16.5kW,7/45°C)
Nominal system flow cooling ($\Delta T=5K$)	0.28ℓ/s (5.8kW,35/7°C)	0.34ℓ/s (7.1kW,35/7°C)	0.38ℓ/s (8kW,35/7°C)	0.56ℓ/s (11.8kW,35/7°C)

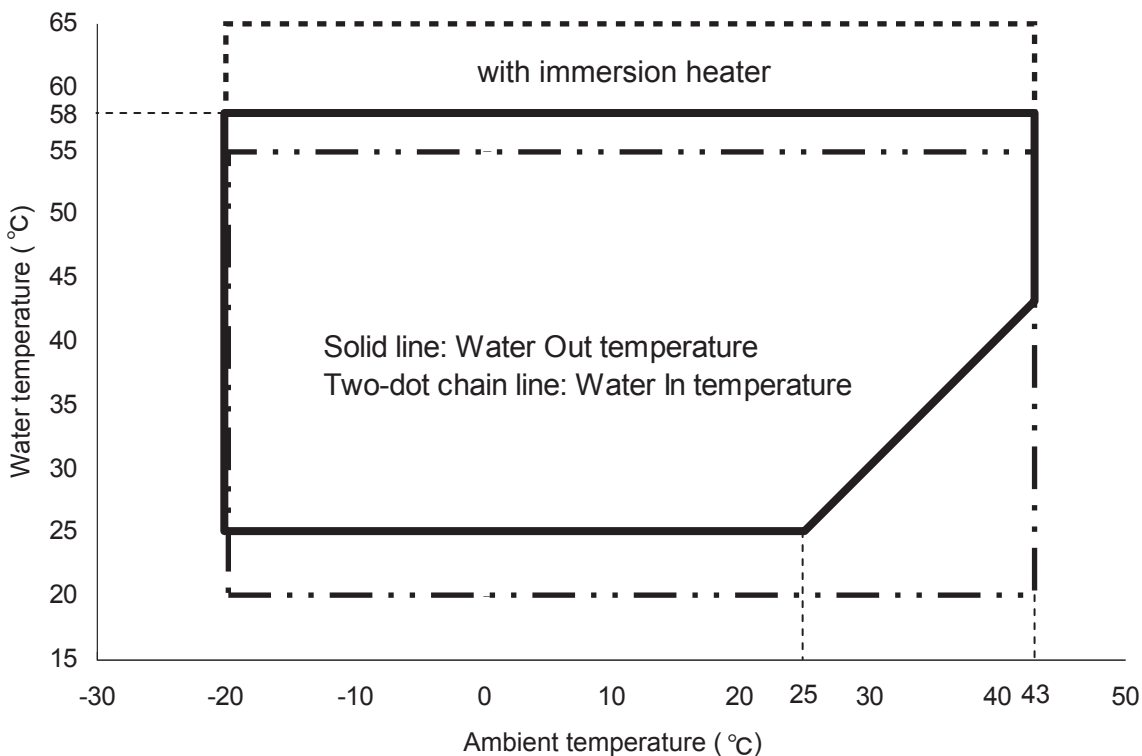
External circulation pump must be used when the pressure drop in the system is greater than the available external pressure. In such case, a bypass line with non-return valve must be installed.

Use an overflow valve if system flow cannot be guaranteed.

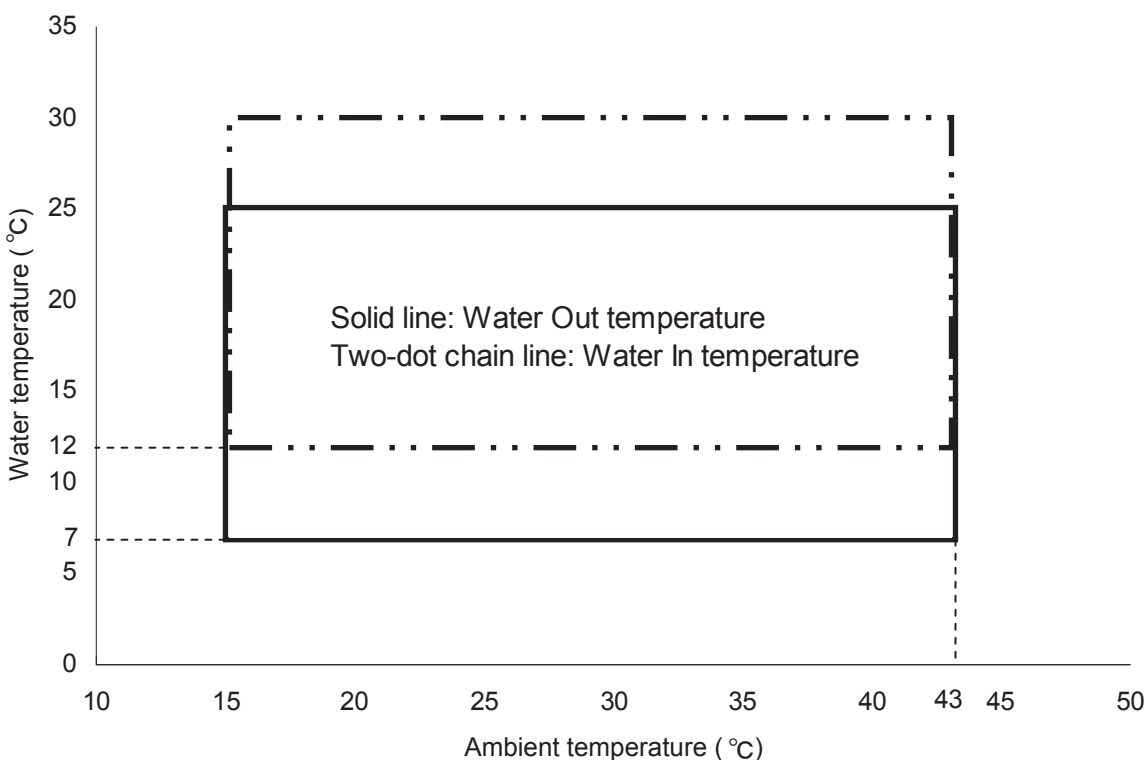
Operating temperature range

FDCW60VNX-A, 71VNX-A, 100VNX-A, 140VNX-A

<Heating/Hot Water>



<Cooling>



NOTE

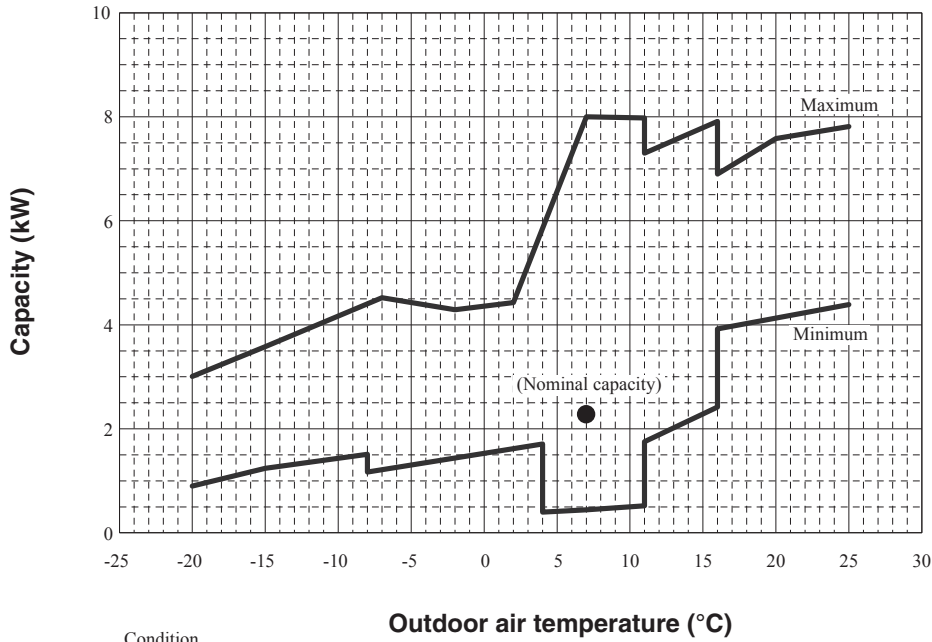
1. *Avoid installing outdoor unit where wind blows stronger than 5m/s. In strong wind environment, operable temperature range is drastically narrowed if wind protection is not used.*
2. *In case outdoor unit is installed where outdoor air temperature drops below 10°C and wind blows directly into the outdoor unit, install wind protection on outdoor unit.*
If it is not observed, it will lead to abnormal stop.

Capacity diagram

HMA60-S – FDCW60VNX-A

HSB60-W – FDCW60VNX-A

Heating

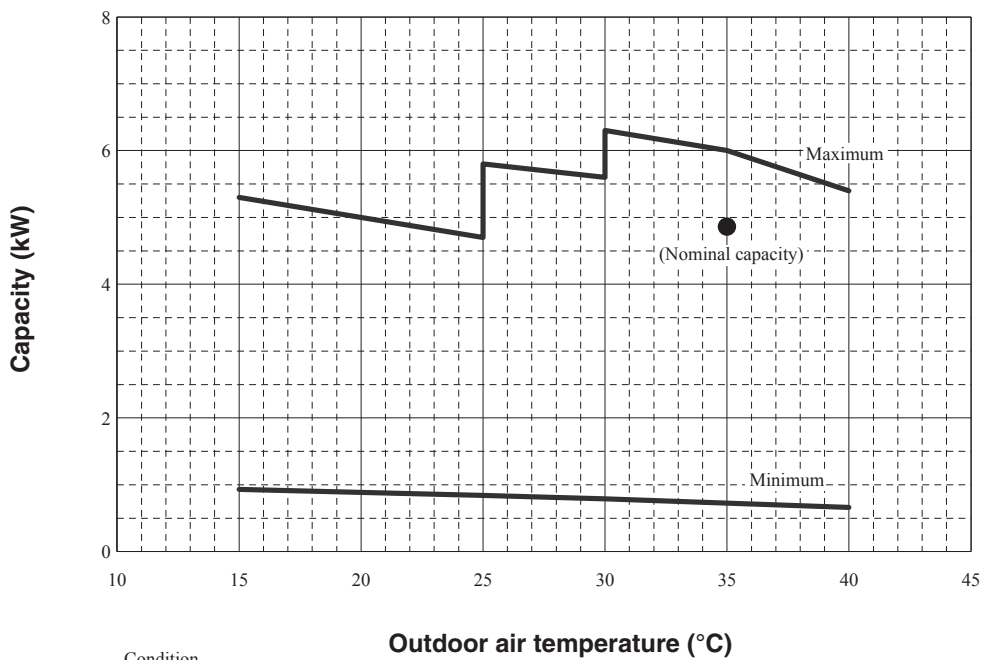


Condition

Supply water temperature : 45°C

Water flow rate : 1447 l/h

Cooling



Condition

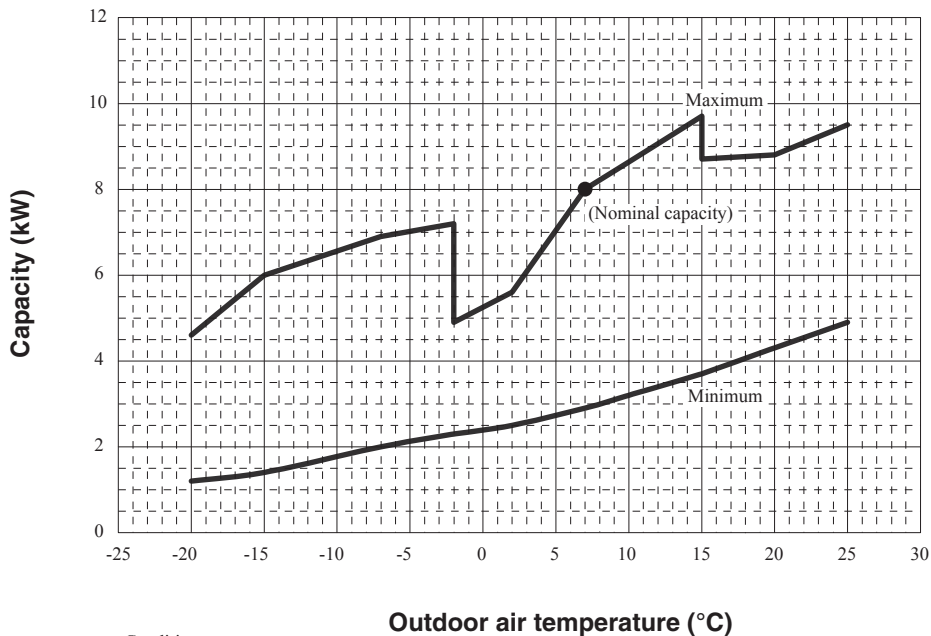
Supply water temperature : 7°C

Water flow rate : 1008 l/h

HMA100-S – FDCW71VNX-A

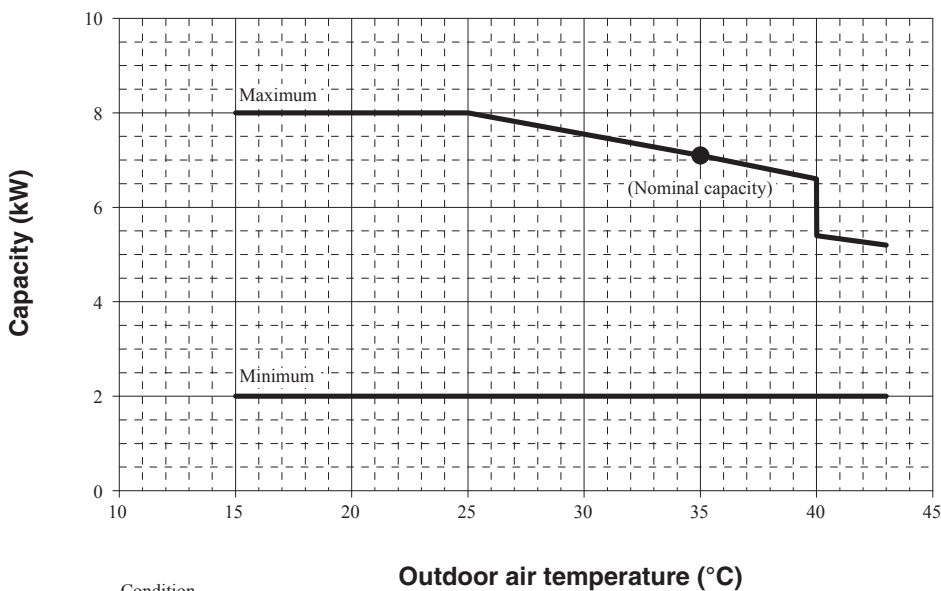
HSB100-W – FDCW71VNX-A

Heating



Condition
 Supply water temperature : 45°C
 Water flow rate : 1376 ℓ/h

Cooling

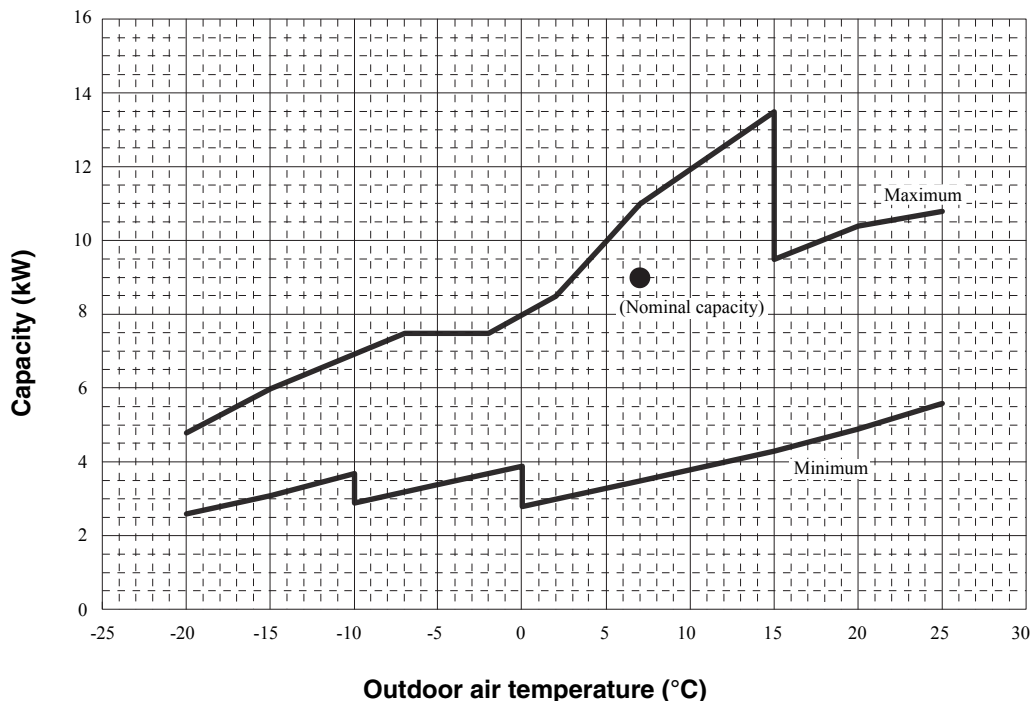


Condition
 Supply water temperature : 7°C
 Water flow rate : 1221 ℓ/h

HMA100-S – FDCW100VNX-A

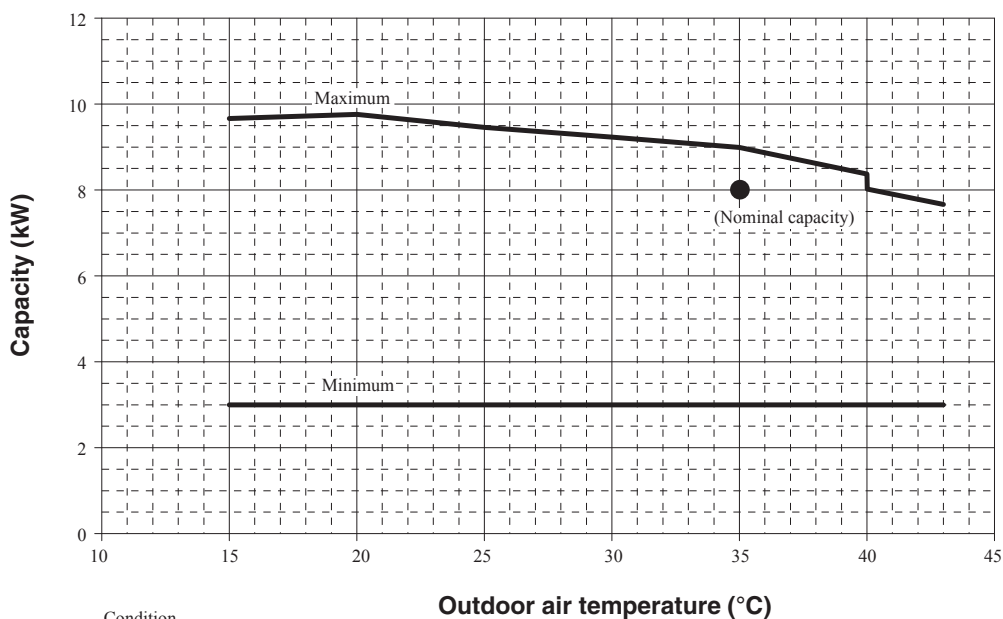
HSB100-W – FDCW100VNX-A

Heating



Condition
 Supply water temperature : 45°C
 Water flow rate : 1548 l/h

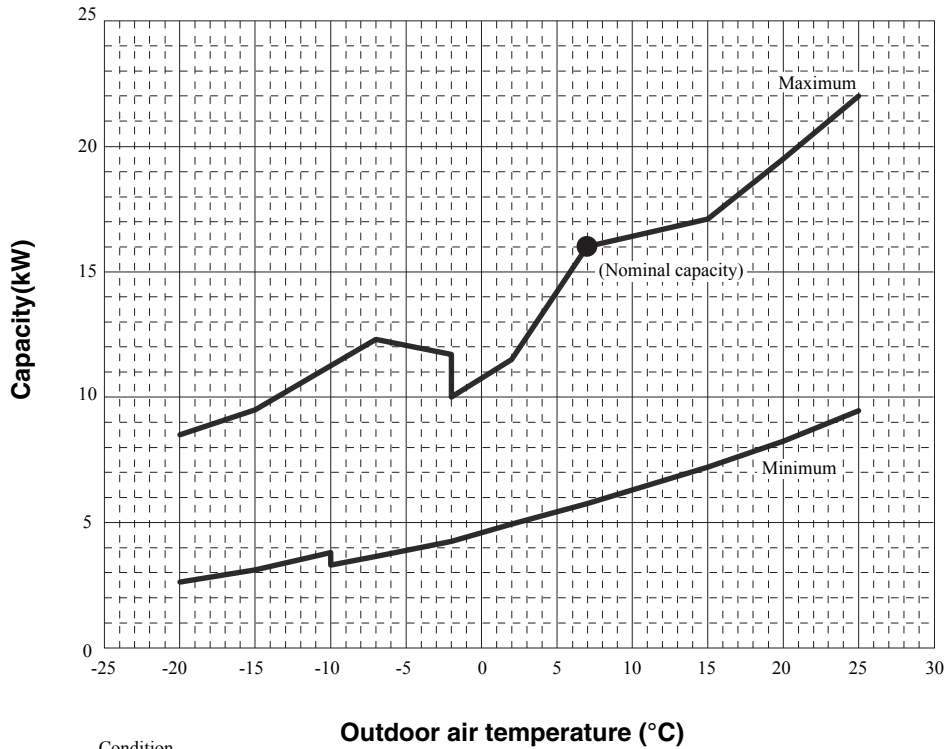
Cooling



Condition
 Supply water temperature : 7°C
 Water flow rate : 1376 l/h

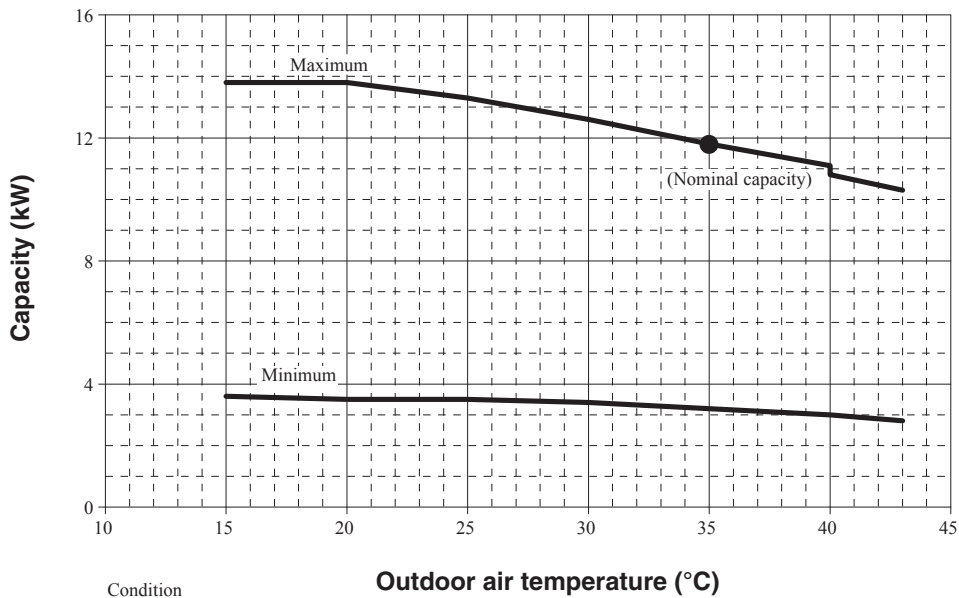
HSB140 – FDCW140VNX-A

Heating



Condition
 Supply water temperature : 45°C
 Water flow rate : 2838 ℓ/h

Cooling

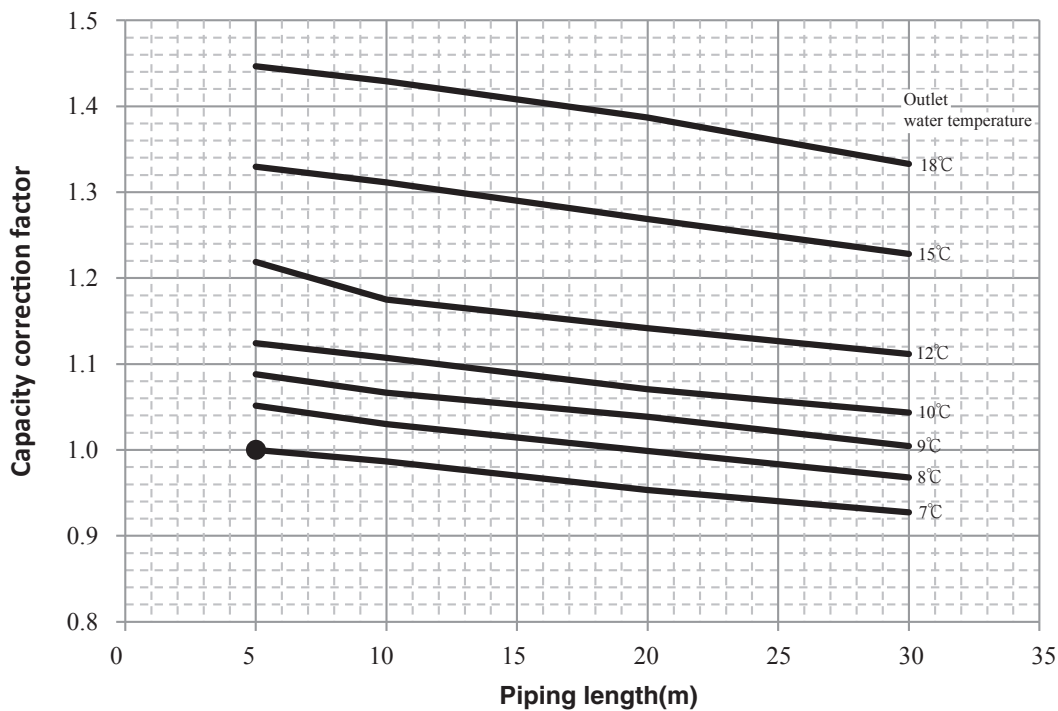


Condition
 Supply water temperature : 7°C
 Water flow rate : 2030 ℓ/h

Capacity correction factor according to piping length and outlet water temperature in cooling

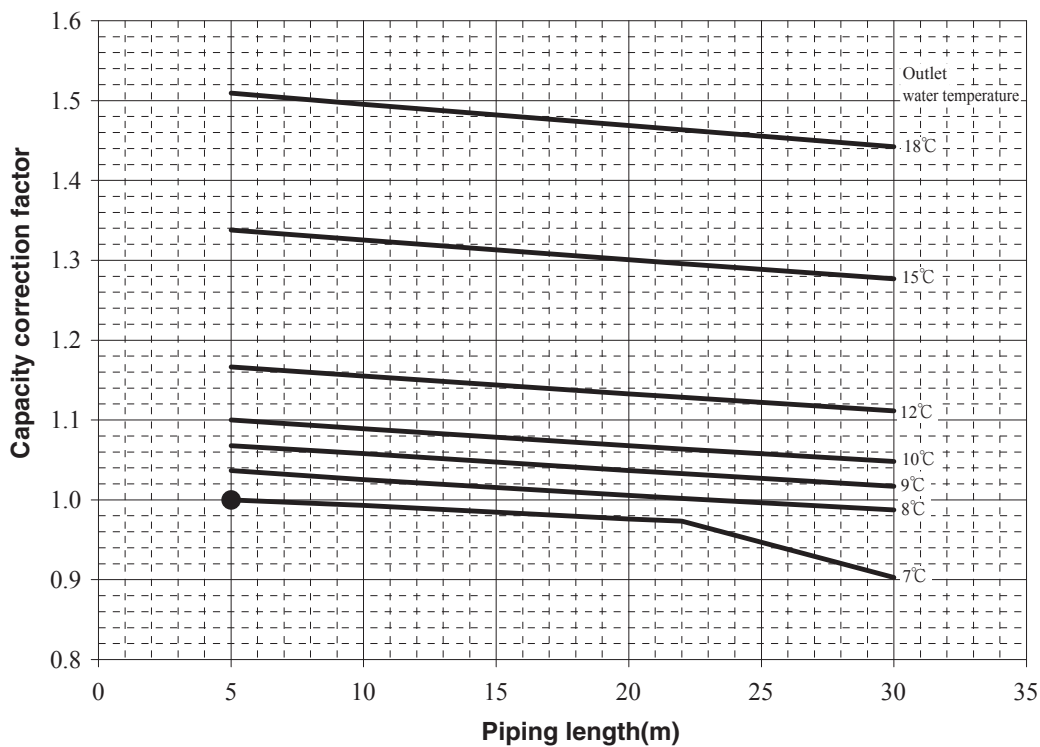
HMA60-S – FDCW60VNX-A

HSB60-W – FDCW60VNX-A

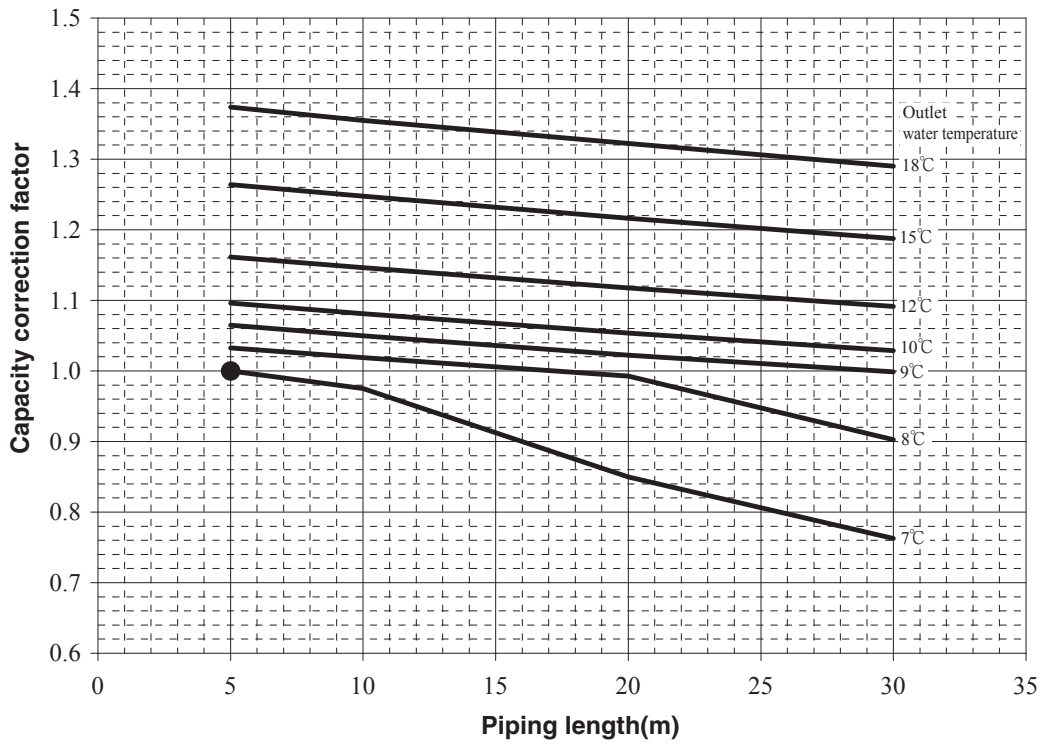


HMA100-S – FDCW71VNX-A

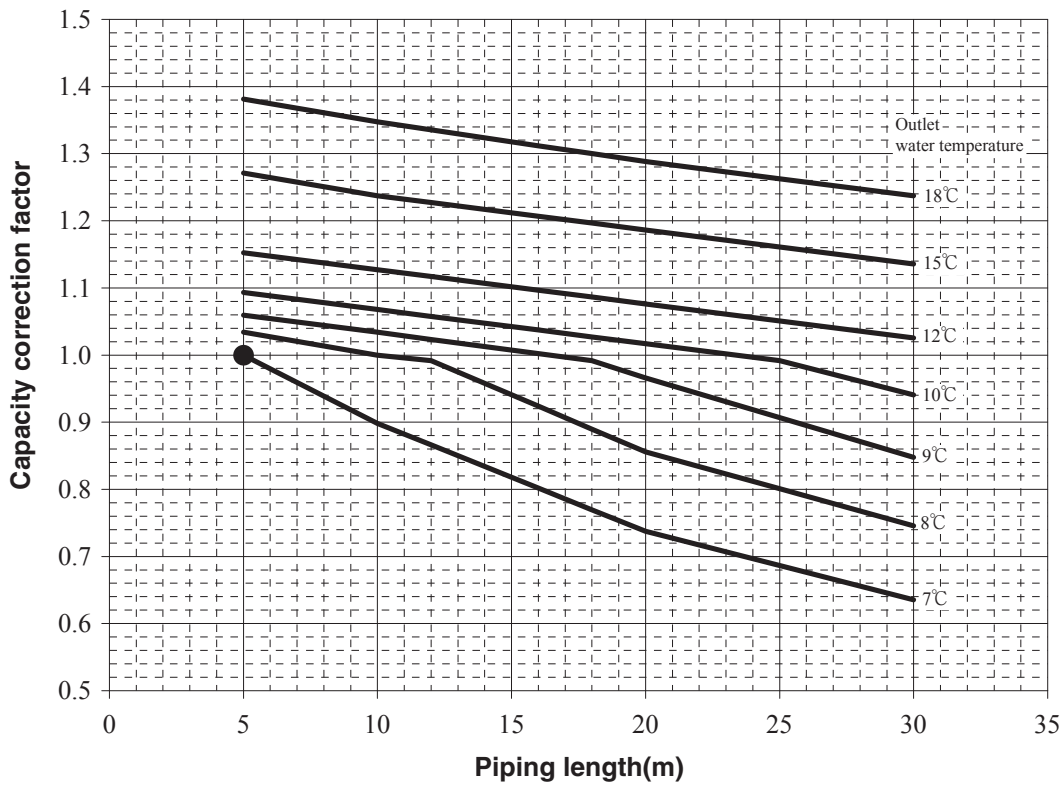
HSB100-W – FDCW71VNX-A



HMA100-S – FDCW100VNX-A
HSB100-W – FDCW100VNX-A



HSB140 – FDCW140VNX-A



How to calculate estimated capacity according to ambient temperature, water outlet temperature and piping length

- (1) Read the cooling capacity at 7degC outlet and required ambient temperature.
- (2) Read the capacity correction factor at required water outlet temperature and piping length.
- (3) Multiply the values (1) and (2).

Example: HMA100-S, Ambient temperature 25degC, Water outlet 8degC, piping length 20m

- (1) Capacity at 25degC ambient and 7degC outlet: 8.0kW
- (2) Correction factor according to ambient temp and piping length: 1.01
- (3) Estimated capacity: $8.0 \times 1.01 = 8.0\text{kW}$

Example: HSB140, Ambient temperature 25degC, Water outlet 8degC, piping length 20m

- (1) Capacity at 25degC ambient and 7degC outlet: 13.2kW
- (2) Correction factor according to ambient temp and piping length: 0.85
- (3) Estimated capacity: $13.2 \times 0.85 = 11.2\text{kW}$

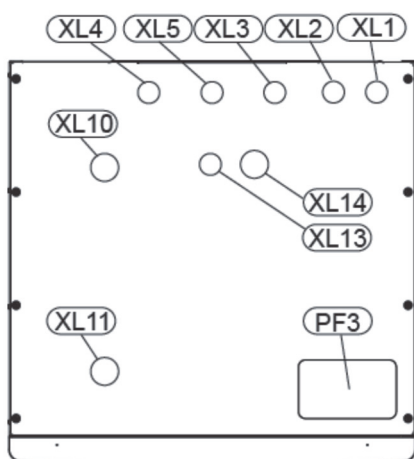
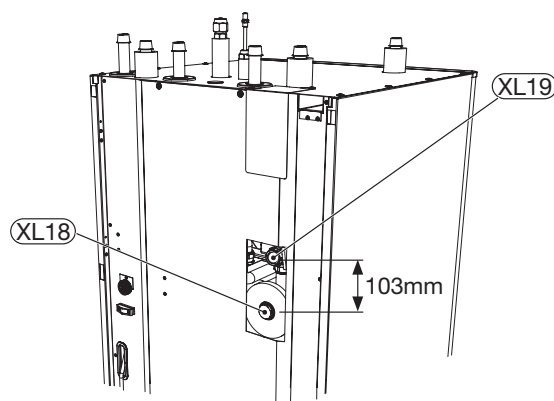
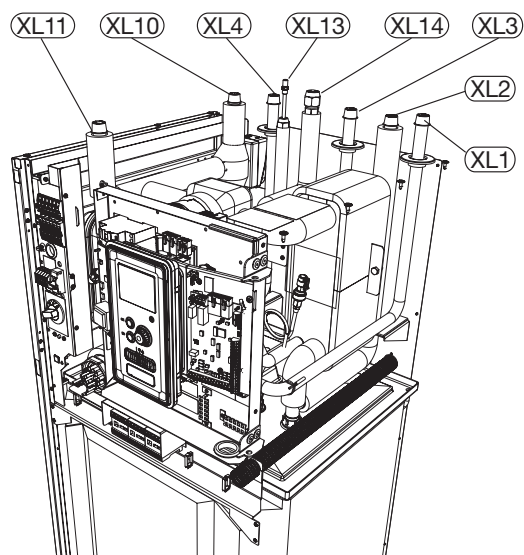
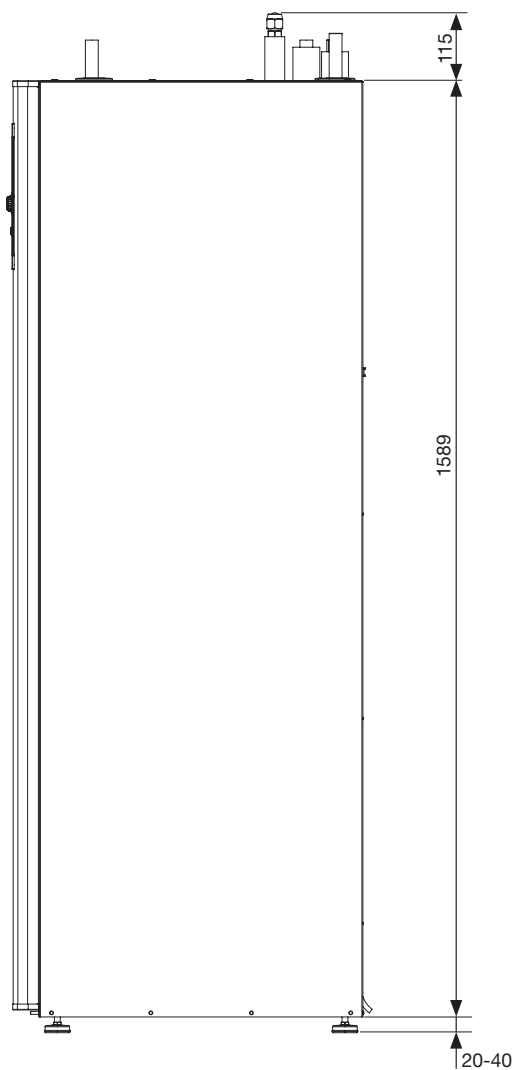
Note: The calculation result is only advisory and is not accurate.

Dimensions

Indoor units

All in one type

HMA60-S/HMA100-S

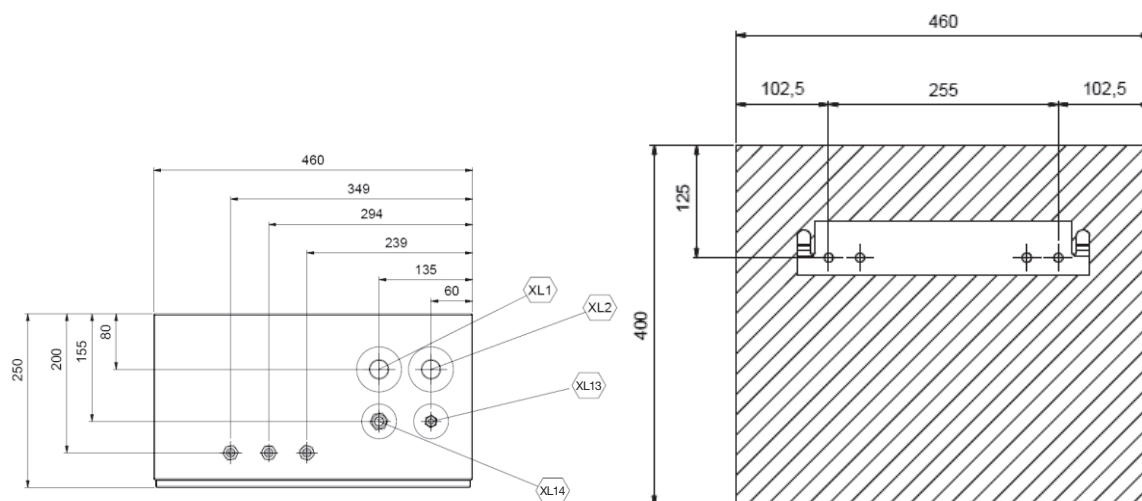


Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content	Content	
		HMA60-S	HMA100-S
XL1	Connection, heating medium supply	φ 22 mm	
XL2	Connection, heating medium return	φ 22 mm	
XL3	Connection, cold water	φ 22 mm	
XL4	Connection, hot water	φ 22 mm	
XL5	Connection, circulation	φ 15 mm	
XL10	Connection, cooling	φ 22 mm	
XL11	Connection, safety group, manometer	φ 22 mm	
XL13	Connection, liquid cooling medium	1/4"	3/8"
XL14	Connection, gas cooling medium	1/2"	5/8"
XL18	Connection, return from an additional heat source	φ 22 mm	
XL19	Connection, supply of an additional heat source	φ 22 mm	
PF3	Serial number plate	—	—

Split box

HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140

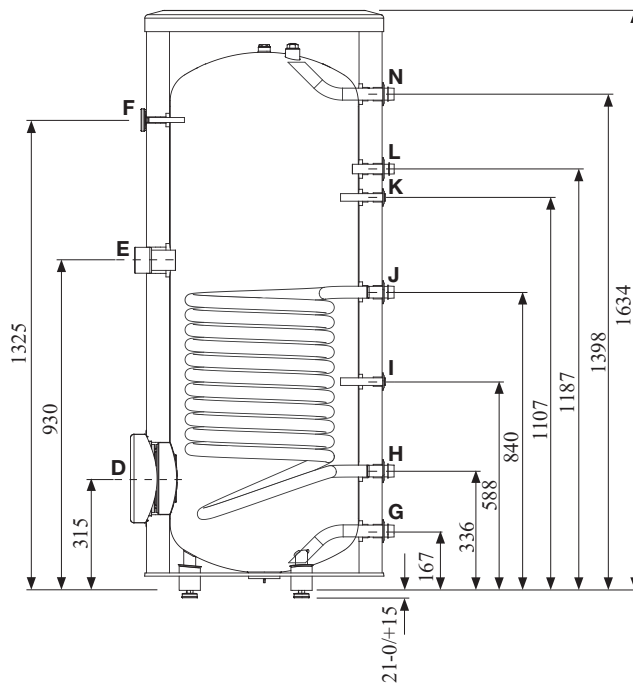
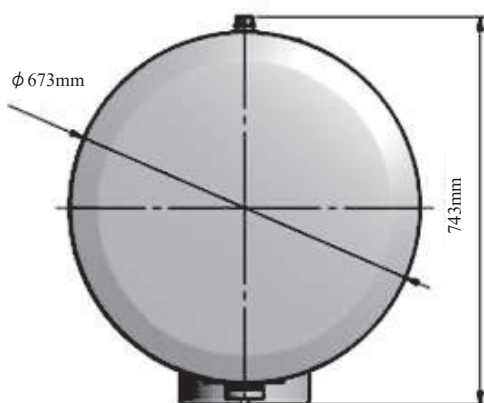
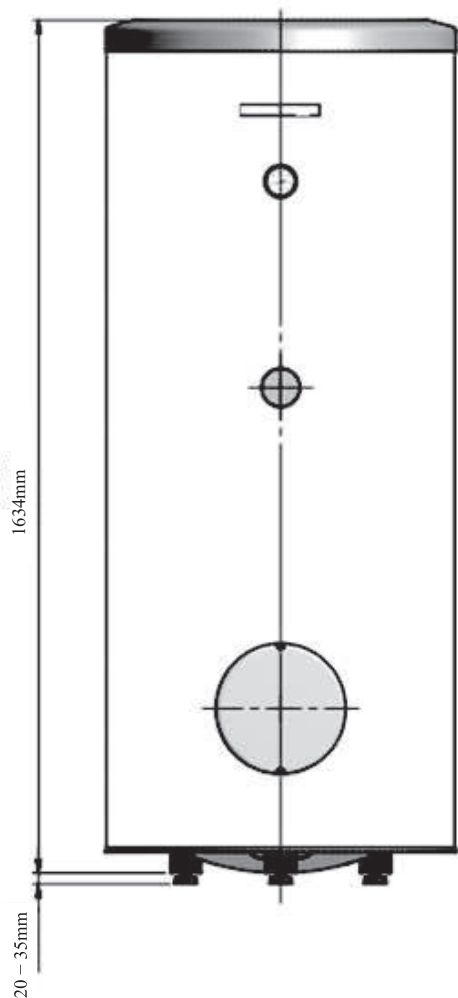


Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content		
		HSB60-W	HSB100-W HSB140
XL1	Climate system supply	φ 22 mm	φ 28 mm
XL2	Climate system return	φ 22 mm	φ 28 mm
XL13	Connection, liquid line	1/4"	3/8"
XL14	Connection, gas line	1/2"	5/8"

Tank unit

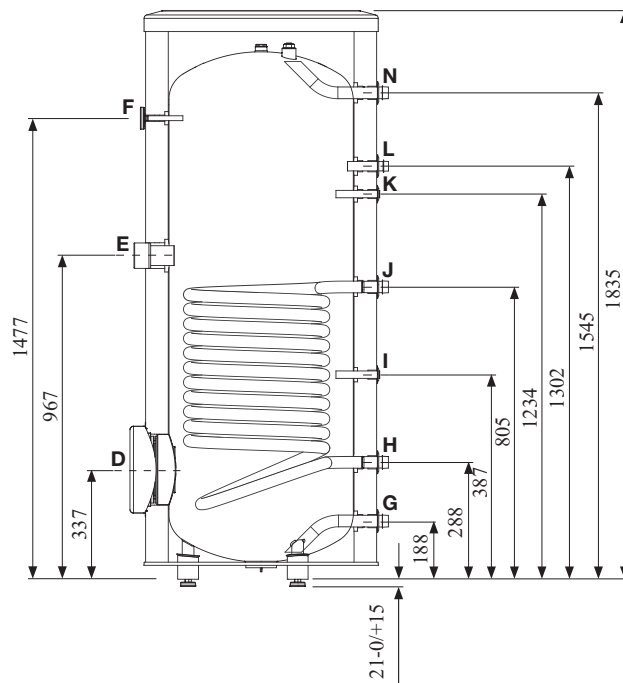
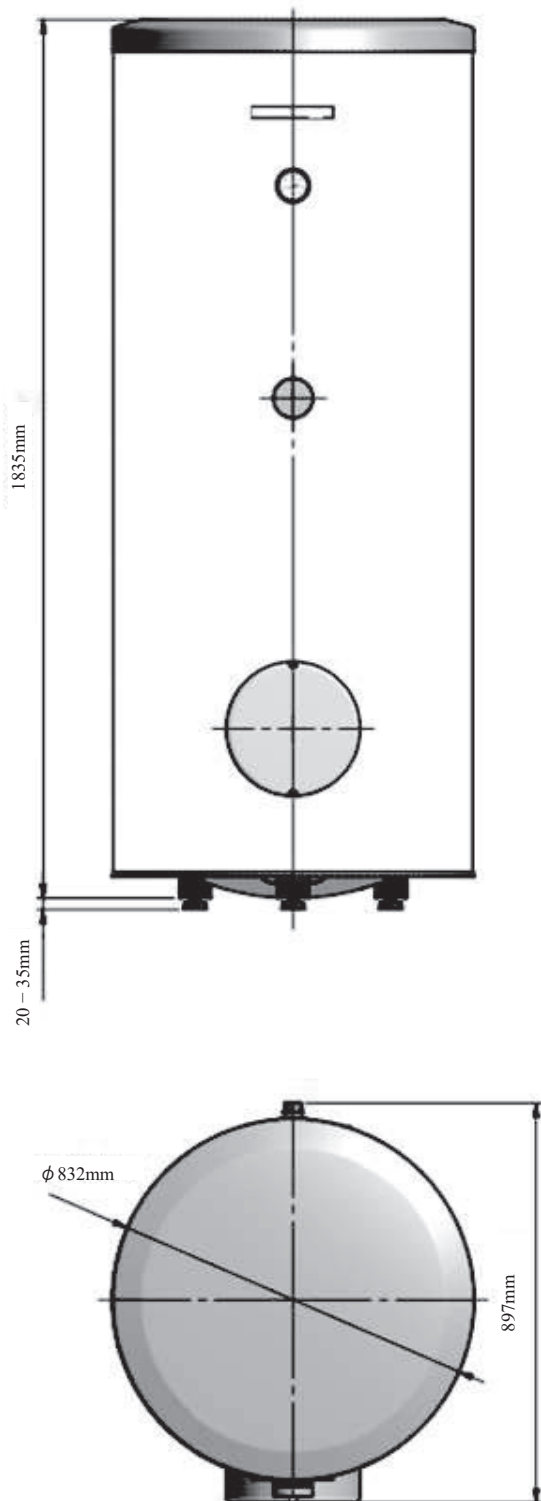
PT300



Meaning of symbol

Connection			PT300
D	Inspection opening	mm	φ 120
E	Heating unit connection	inch	1½" Female
F	Thermometer enclosure	mm	φ 10 Female
N	Hot water outlet	inch	1" Male
L	Hot water circulation	inch	¾" Male
K	Temperature sensor enclosure (BT7)	mm	φ 16 Female
J	Coil supply	inch	1" Male
I	Temperature sensor enclosure (BT6)	mm	φ 16 Female
H	Return from coil	inch	1" Male
G	Cold water input	inch	1" Male

PT500

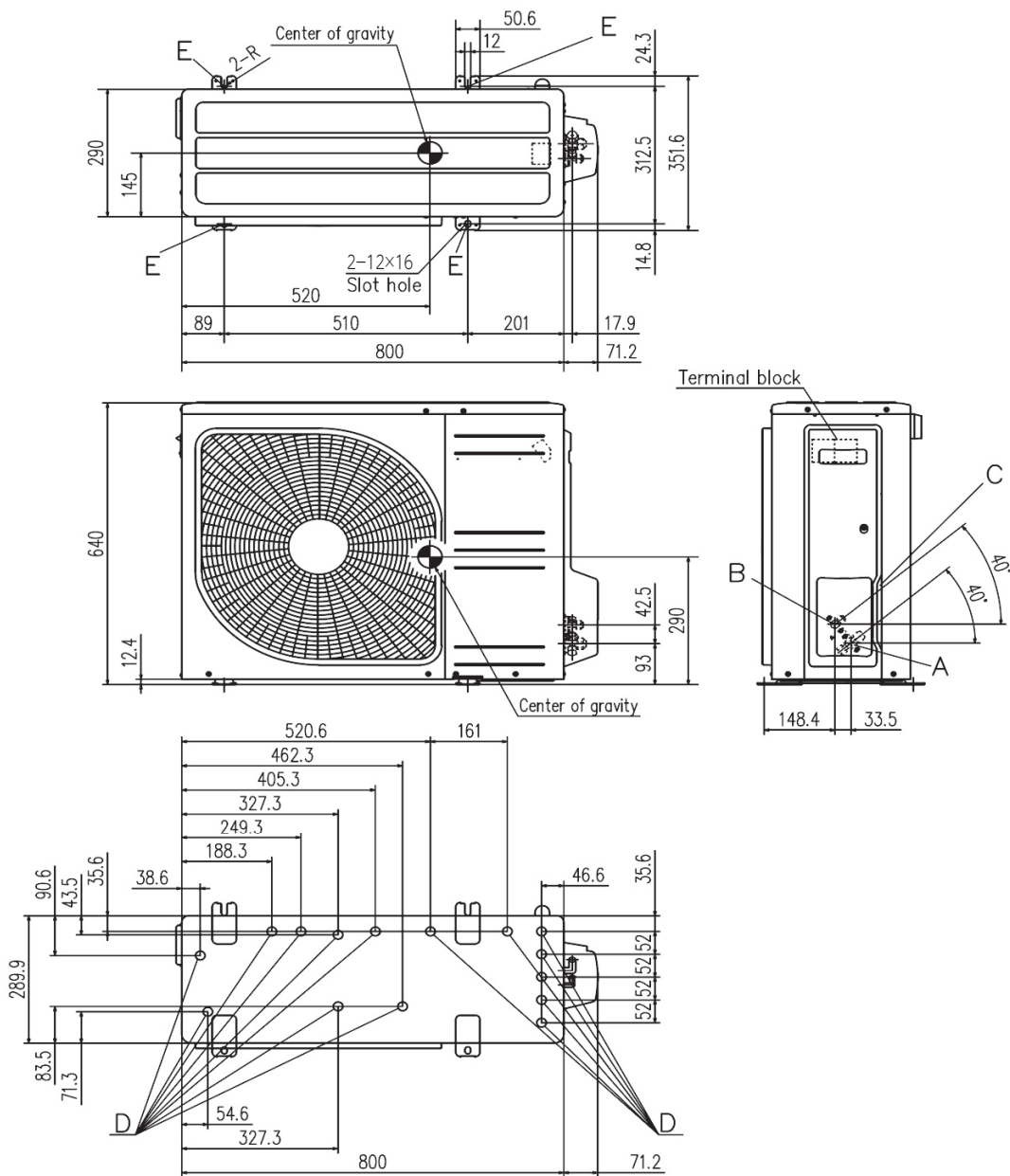


Meaning of symbol

Connection			PT500
D	Inspection opening	mm	φ 120
E	Heating unit connection	inch	1½" Female
F	Thermometer enclosure	mm	φ 10 Female
N	Hot water outlet	inch	1" Male
L	Hot water circulation	inch	¾" Male
K	Temperature sensor enclosure (BT7)	mm	φ 16 Female
J	Coil supply	inch	1" Male
I	Temperature sensor enclosure (BT6)	mm	φ 16 Female
H	Return from coil	inch	1" Male
G	Cold water input	inch	1" Male

Outdoor units

FDCW60VNX-A



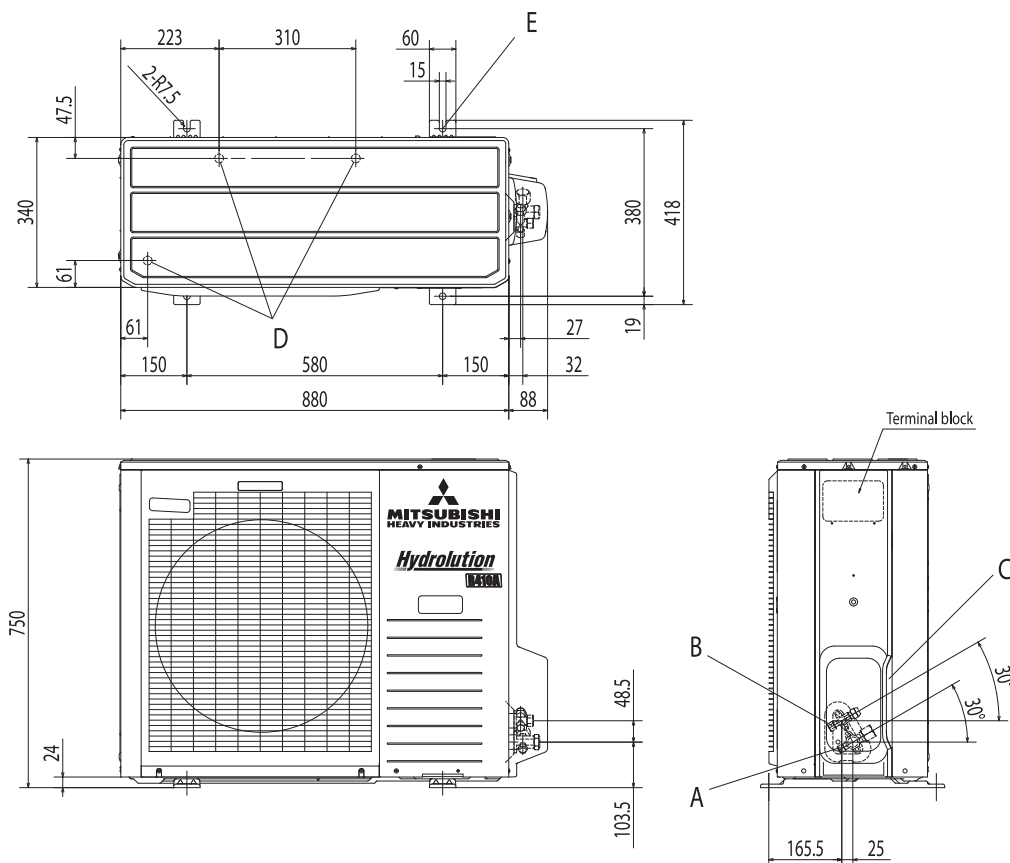
Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content	
A	Service valve connection (gas side)	φ 12.7 (1/2") (Flare)
B	Service valve connection (liquid side)	φ 6.35 (1/4") (Flare)
C	Pipe/cable draw-out hole	
D	Drain discharge hole	φ 20×15 places
E	Anchor bolt hole	M10×4 places

Notes

- (1) It must not be surrounded by walls on the four sides.
- (2) The unit must be fixed with anchor bolts. An anchor bolt must not protrude more than 15mm.
- (3) Where the unit is subject to strong winds, lay it in such a direction that the blower outlet faces perpendicularly to the dominant wind direction.
- (4) Leave 1m or more space above the unit.
- (5) A wall in front of the blower outlet must not exceed the units height.
- (6) The model name label is attached on the lower right corner of the front panel.

FDCW71VNX-A



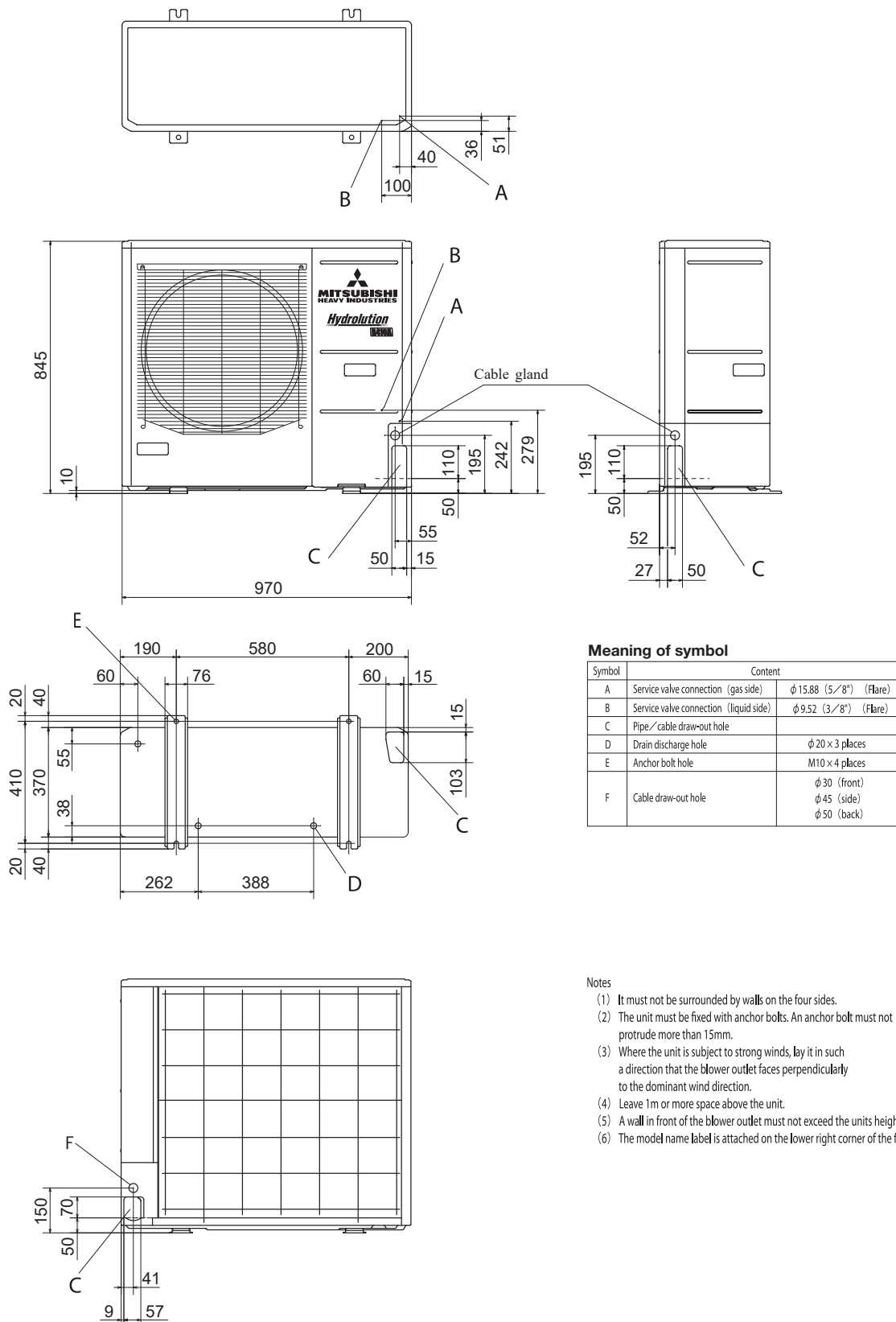
Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content	
A	Service valve connection (gas side)	φ 15.88 (5/8") (Flare)
B	Service valve connection (liquid side)	φ 9.52 (3/8") (Flare)
C	Pipe/cable draw-out hole	
D	Drain discharge hole	φ 20 × 3 places
E	Anchor bolt hole	M10 × 4 places

Notes

- (1) It must not be surrounded by walls on the four sides.
- (2) The unit must be fixed with anchor bolts. An anchor bolt must not protrude more than 15mm.
- (3) Where the unit is subject to strong winds, lay it in such a direction that the blower outlet faces perpendicularly to the dominant wind direction.
- (4) Leave 1m or more space above the unit.
- (5) A wall in front of the blower outlet must not exceed the units height.
- (6) The model name label is attached on the lower right corner of the front panel.

FDCW100VNX-A

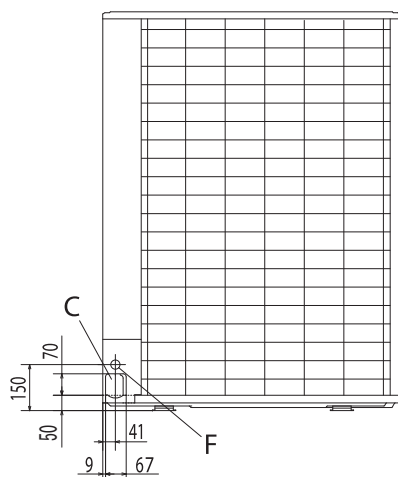
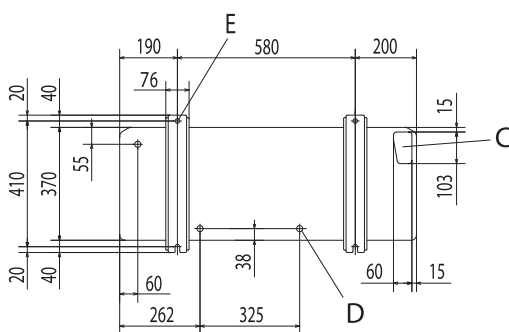
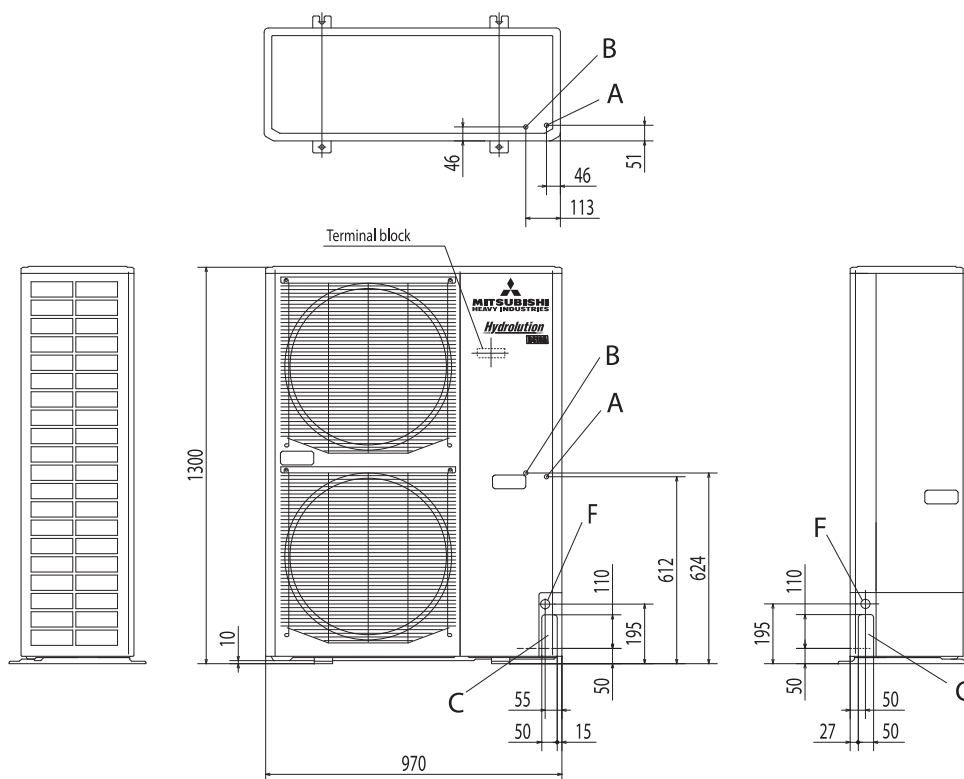


Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content	
A	Service valve connection (gas side)	φ 15.88 (5/8") (Flare)
B	Service valve connection (liquid side)	φ 9.52 (3/8") (Flare)
C	Pipe/cable draw-out hole	
D	Drain discharge hole	φ 20 × 3 places
E	Anchor bolt hole	M10 × 4 places
F	Cable draw-out hole	φ 30 (front) φ 45 (side) φ 50 (back)

- Notes
- (1) It must not be surrounded by walls on the four sides.
 - (2) The unit must be fixed with anchor bolts. An anchor bolt must not protrude more than 15mm.
 - (3) Where the unit is subject to strong winds, lay it in such a direction that the blower outlet faces perpendicularly to the dominant wind direction.
 - (4) Leave 1m or more space above the unit.
 - (5) A wall in front of the blower outlet must not exceed the units height.
 - (6) The model name label is attached on the lower right corner of the front panel.

FDCW140VNX-A



Meaning of symbol

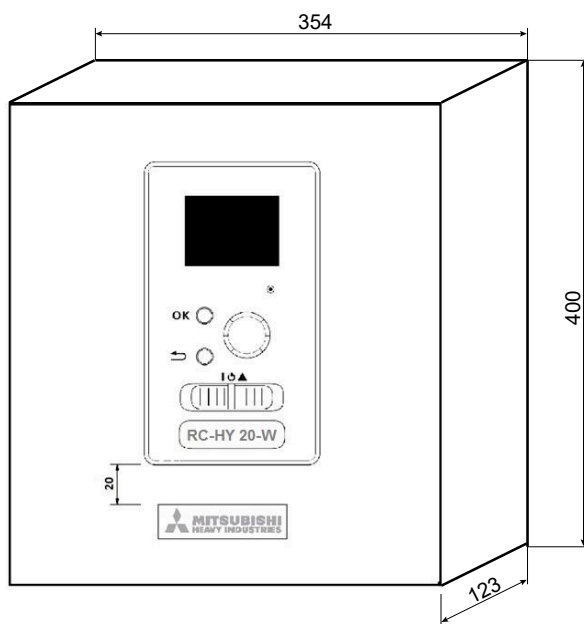
Symbol	Content
A	Service valve connection (gas side) ϕ 15.88 (5/8") (Flare)
B	Service valve connection (liquid side) ϕ 9.52 (3/8") (Flare)
C	Pipe/cable draw-out hole
D	Drain discharge hole ϕ 20 x 3 places
E	Anchor bolt hole M10 x 4 places
F	Cable draw-out hole ϕ 30 (front) ϕ 45 (side) ϕ 50 (back)

Notes

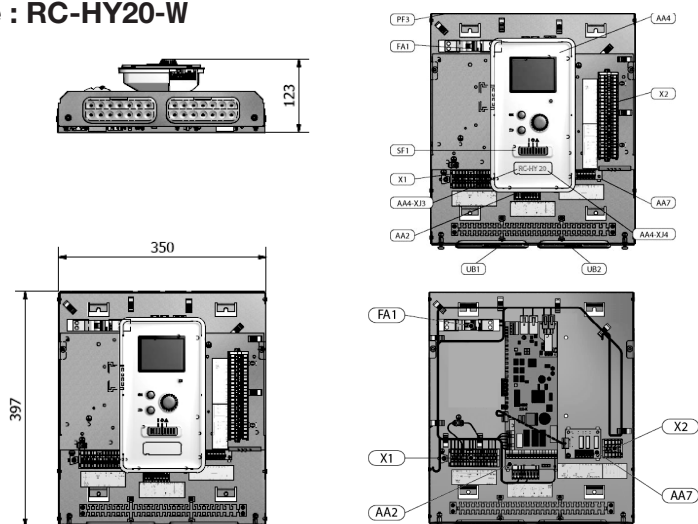
- (1) It must not be surrounded by walls on the four sides.
- (2) The unit must be fixed with anchor bolts. An anchor bolt must not protrude more than 15mm.
- (3) Where the unit is subject to strong winds, lay it in such a direction that the blower outlet faces perpendicularly to the dominant wind direction.
- (4) Leave 1m or more space above the unit.
- (5) A wall in front of the blower outlet must not exceed the units height.
- (6) The model name label is attached on the lower right corner of the front panel.

Controller

Outside : RC-HY20/40-W



Inside : RC-HY20-W

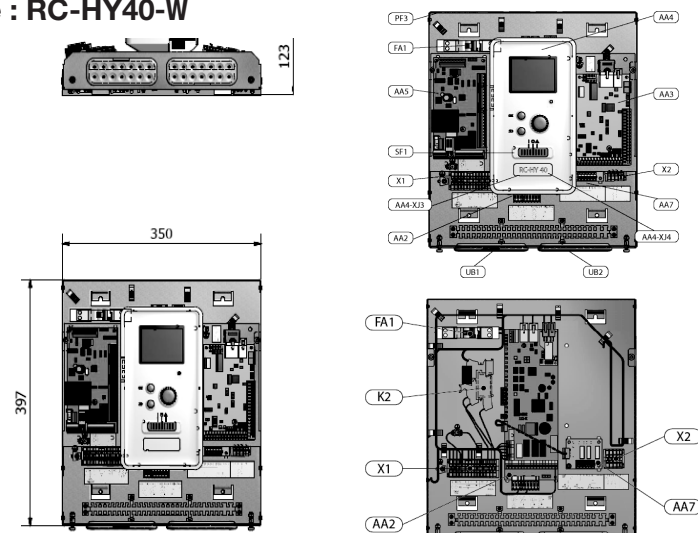


Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content
AA2	Base card
AA4	Display unit
AA4-XJ3	USB socket
AA4-XJ4	Service outlet (No function)
AA7	Extra relay circuit board
FA1	Miniature circuit breaker
X1	Terminal block, incoming electrical supply
X2	Terminal block, control signal circulation pump, sensors, AUX inputs and heat pump
SF1	Switch
PF3	Serial number plate
UB1	Cable grommet, incoming supply electricity, power for accessories
UB2	Cable gland, signal

Designations in components locations according to standard IEC 81346-1 and 81346-2

Inside : RC-HY40-W



Meaning of symbol

Symbol	Content
AA2	Base card
AA3	Input circuit board
AA4	Display unit
AA4-XJ3	USB socket
AA4-XJ4	Service outlet (No function)
AA5	Accessory board
AA7	Extra relay circuit board
FA1	Miniature circuit breaker
X1	Terminal block, incoming electrical supply
X2	Terminal block, AUX4 – AUX6
SF1	Switch
PF3	Serial number plate
UB1	Cable grommet, incoming supply electricity, power for accessories
UB2	Cable gland, signal

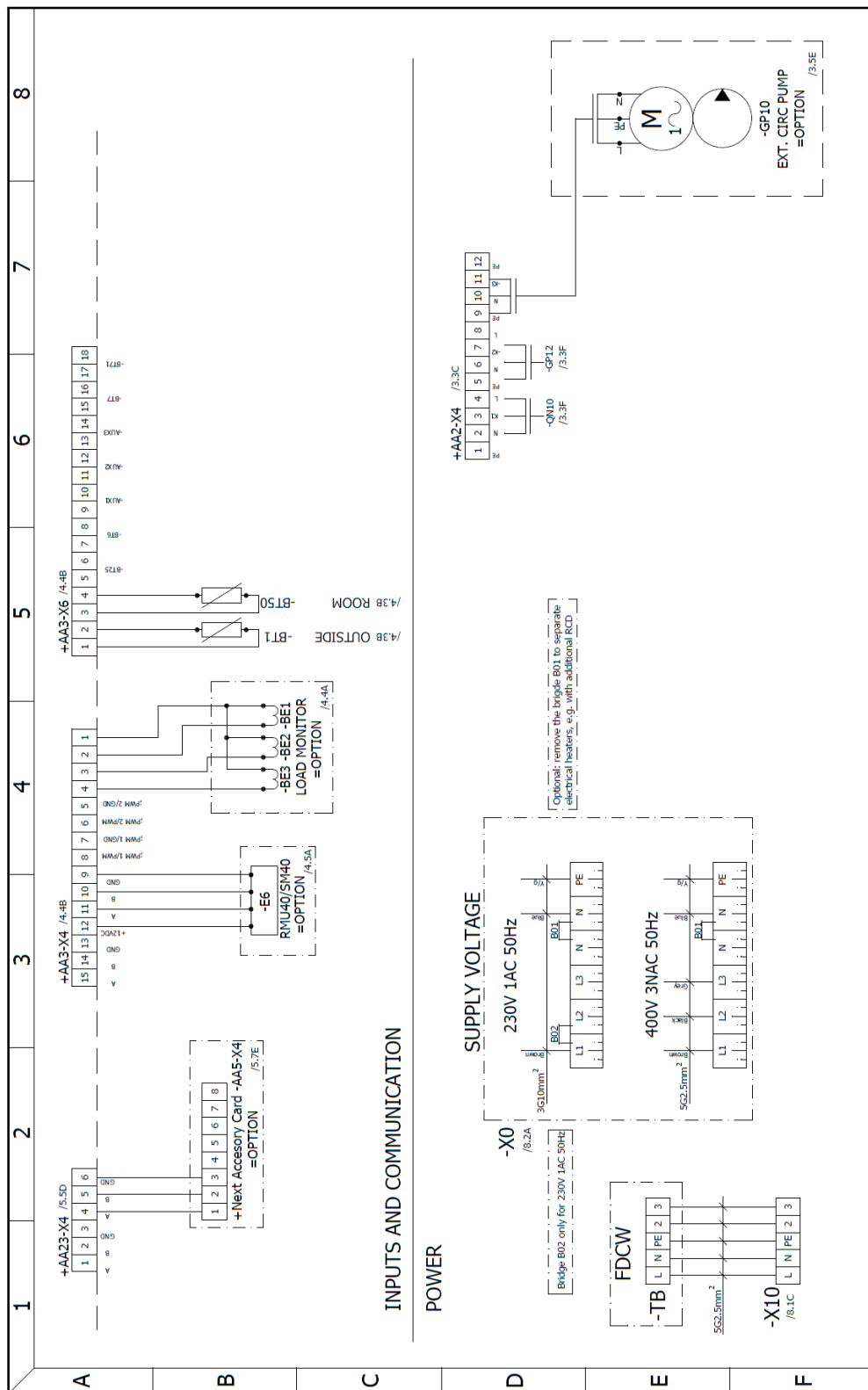
Designations in components locations according to standard IEC 81346-1 and 81346-2

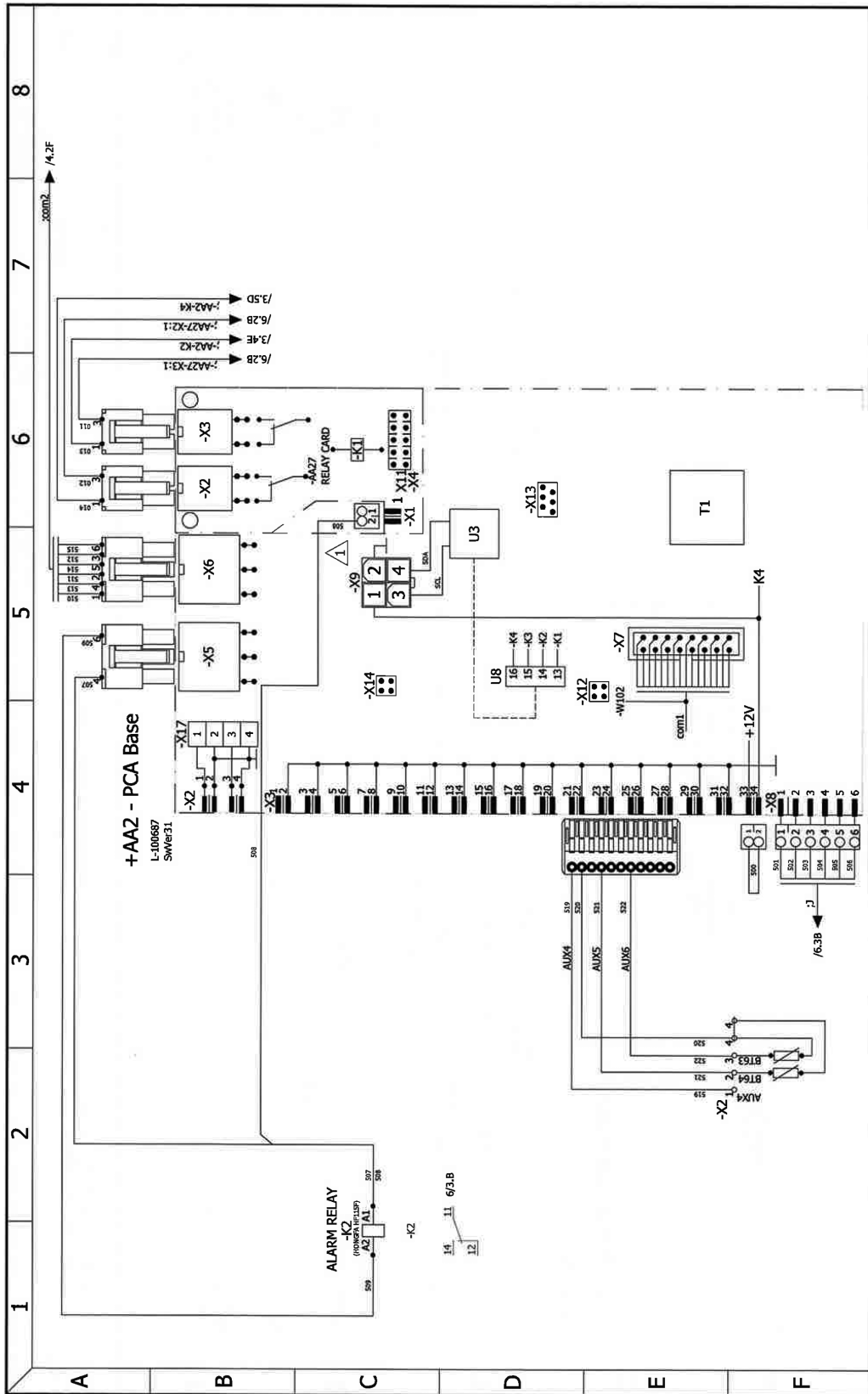
Electrical circuit diagram

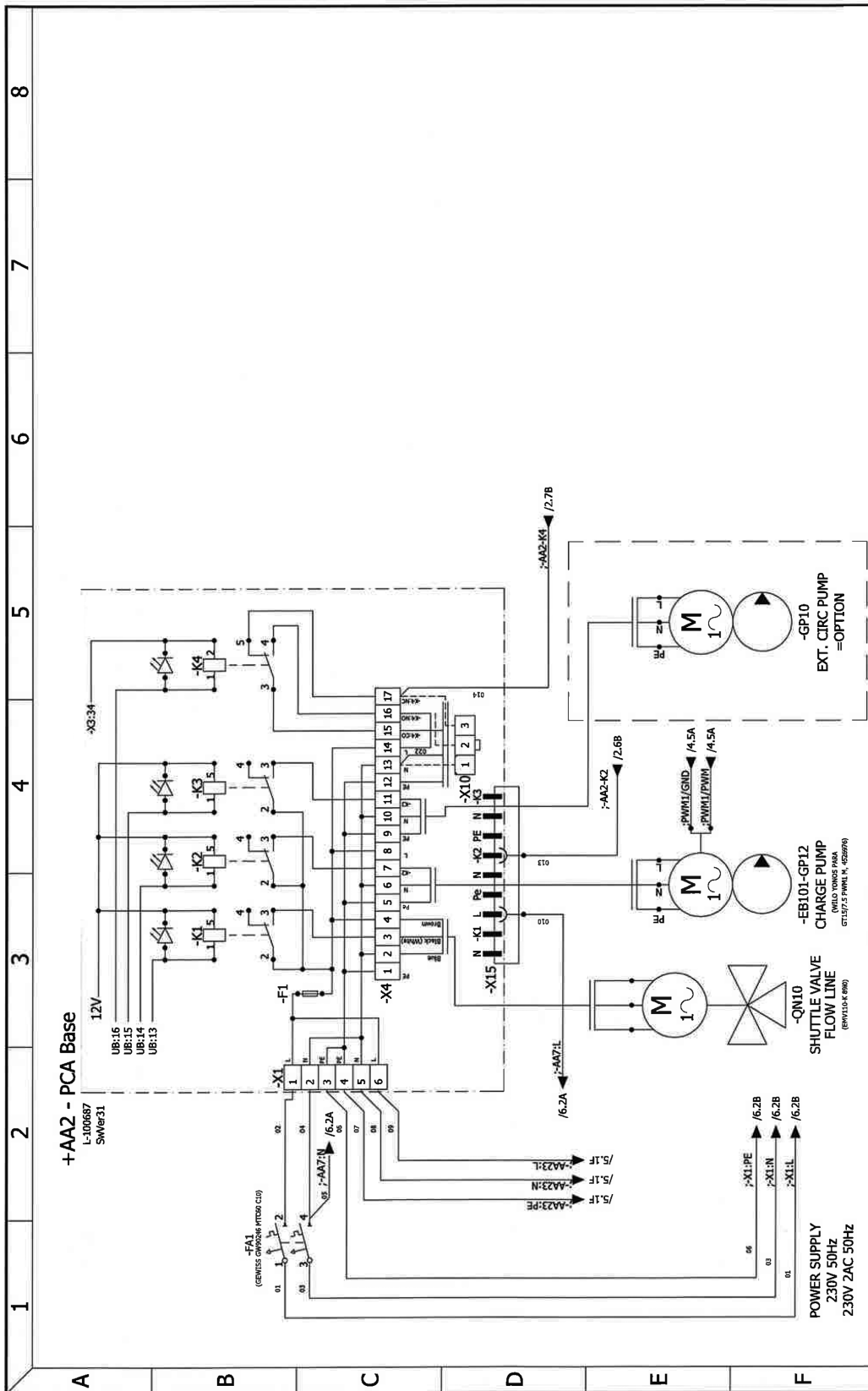
Indoor units

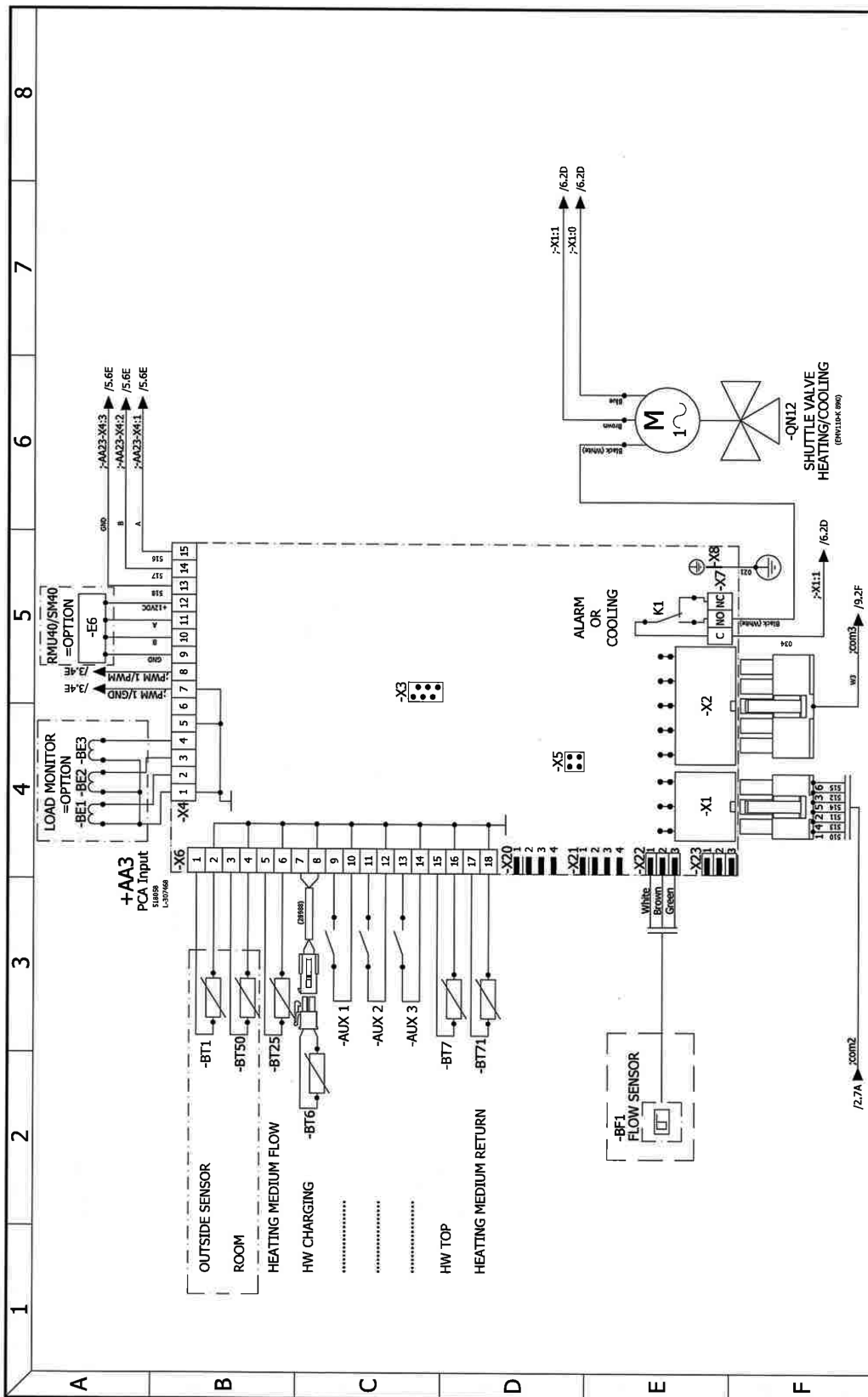
All in one type

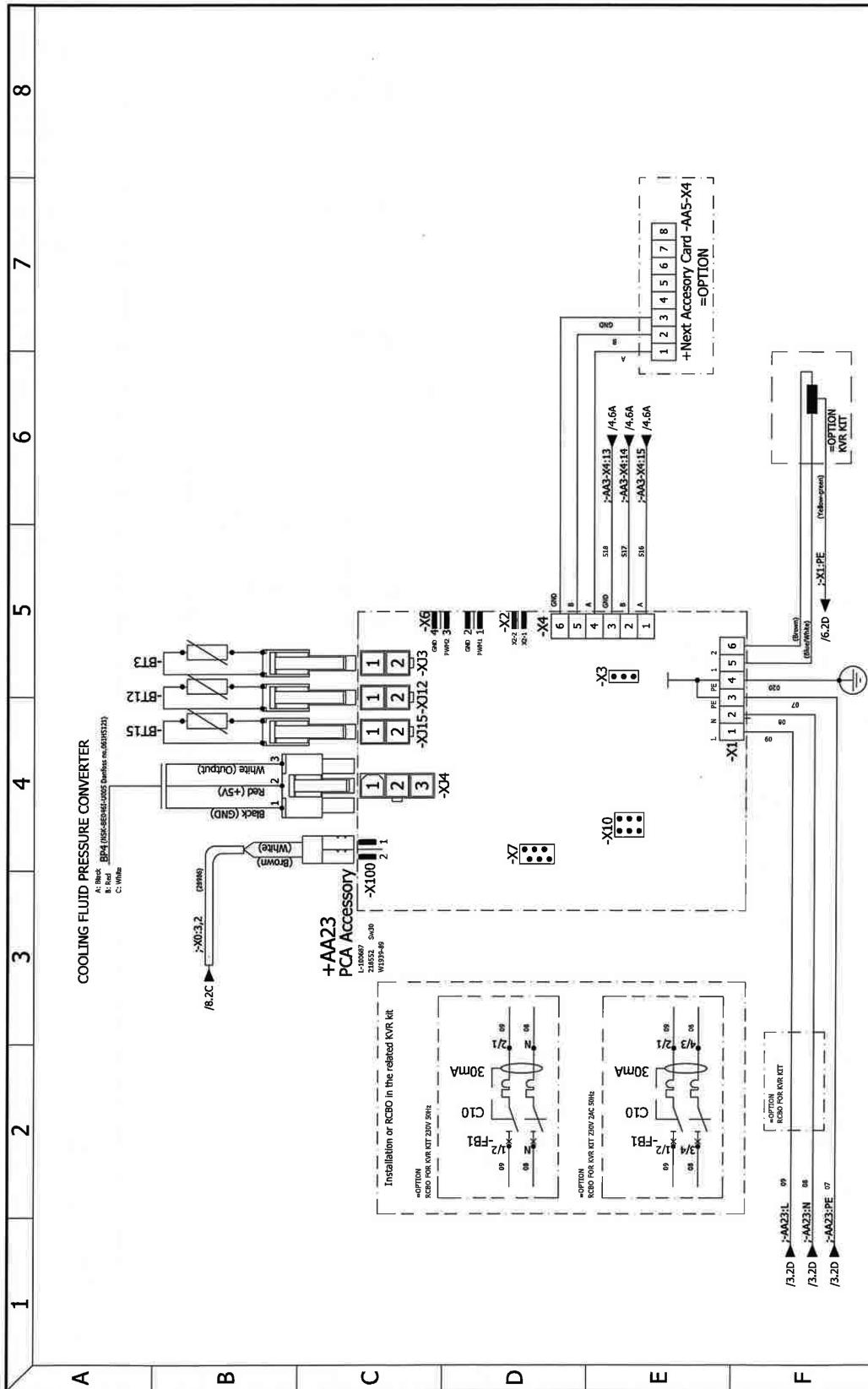
HMA60-S/HMA100-S

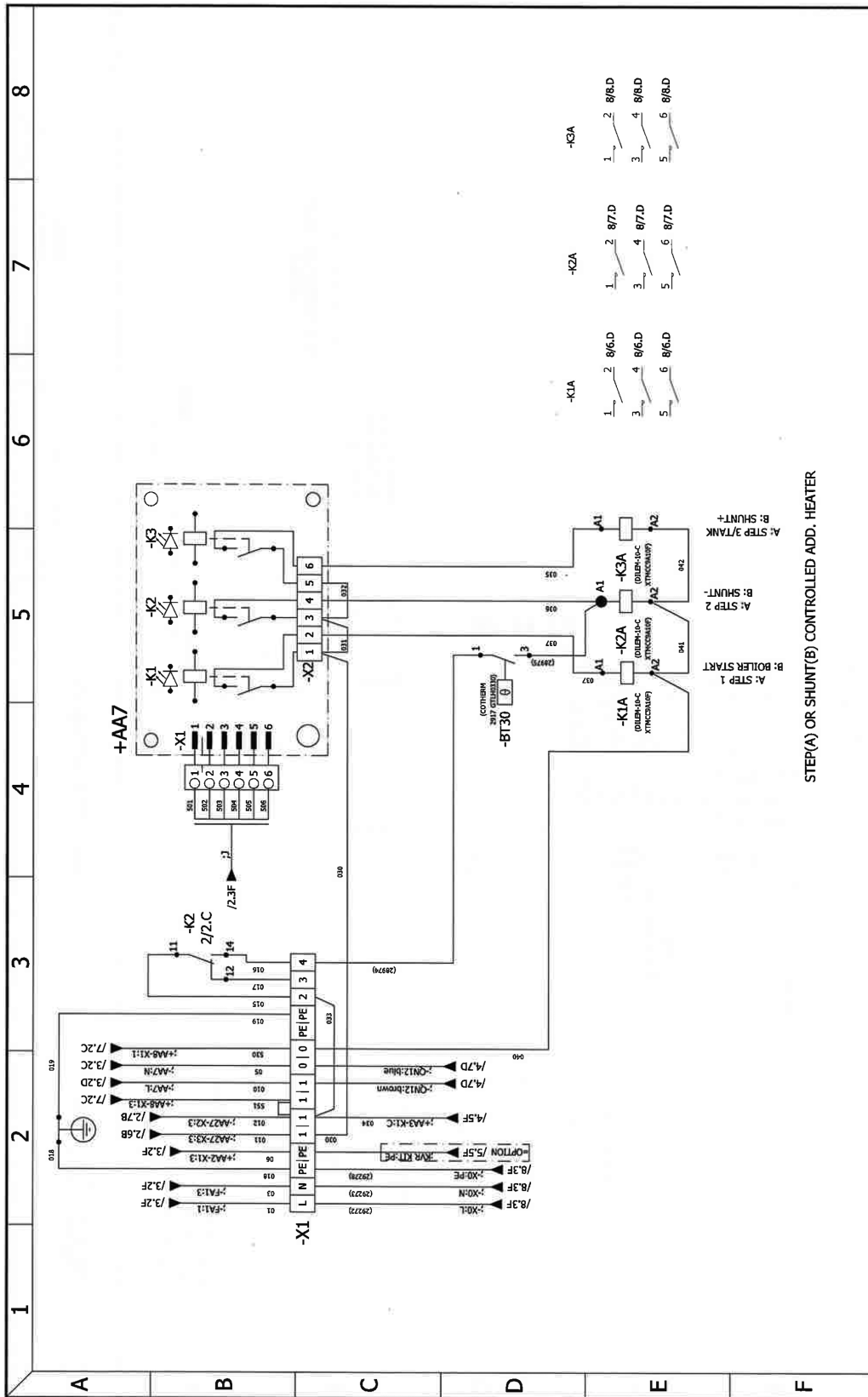


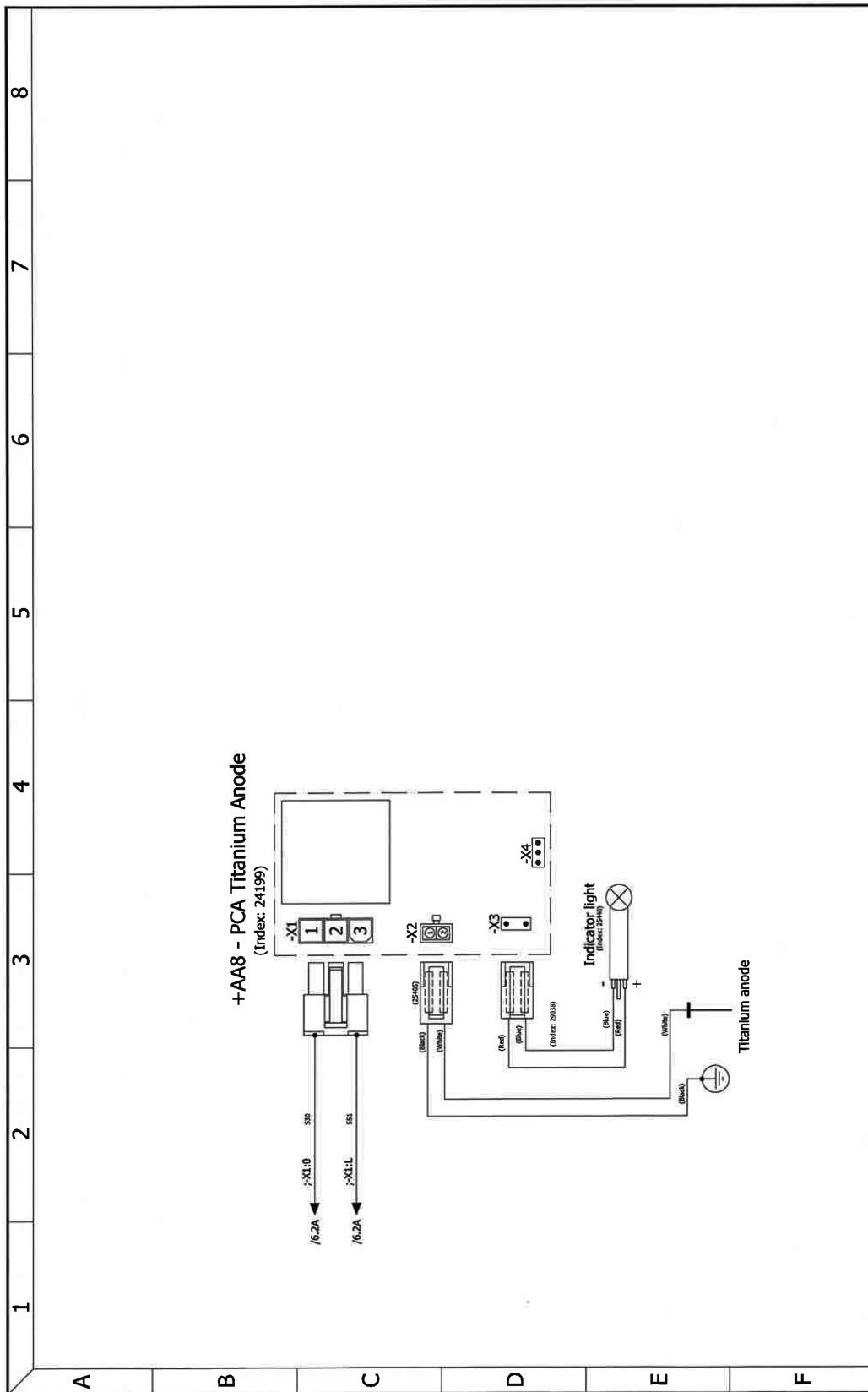


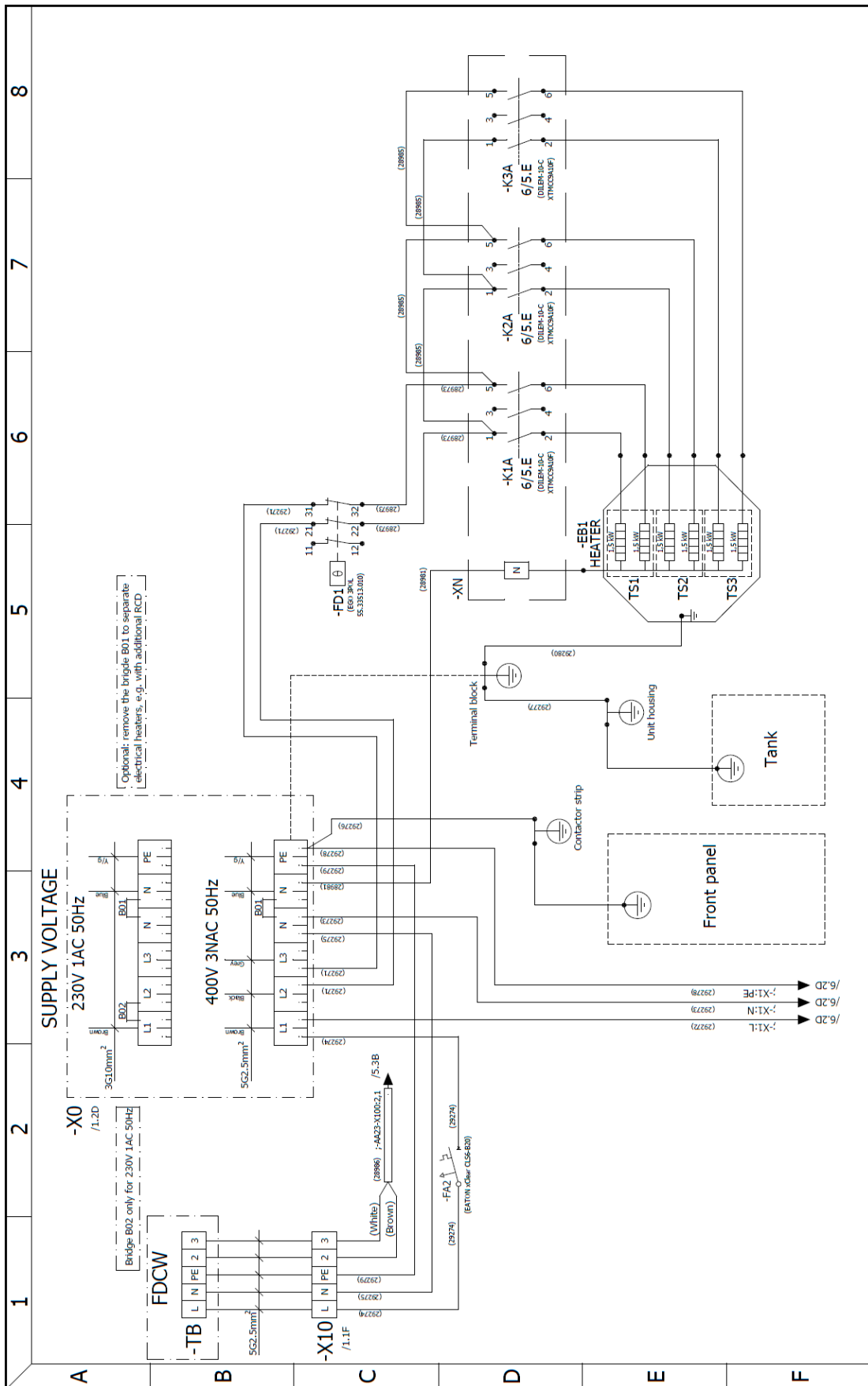


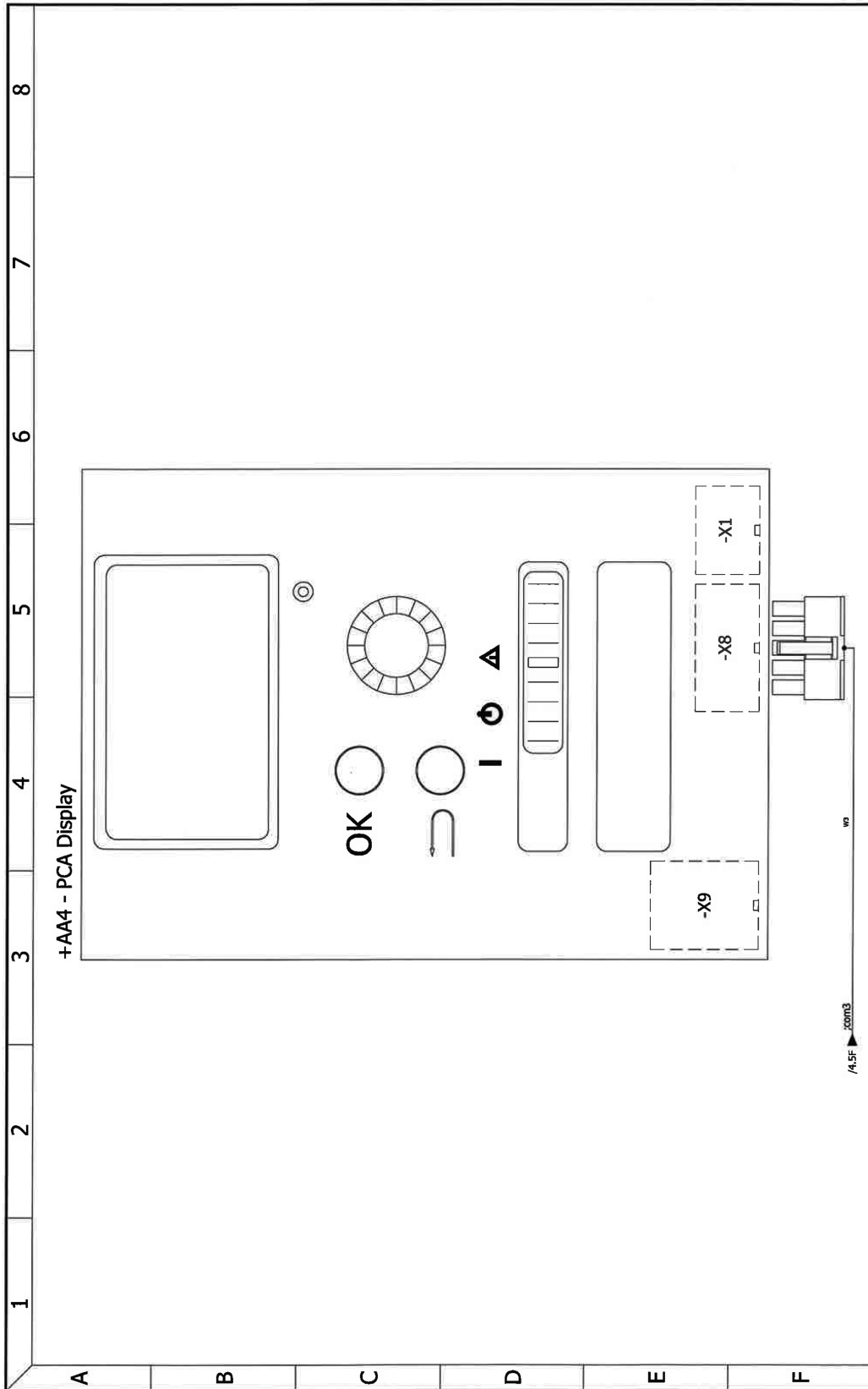






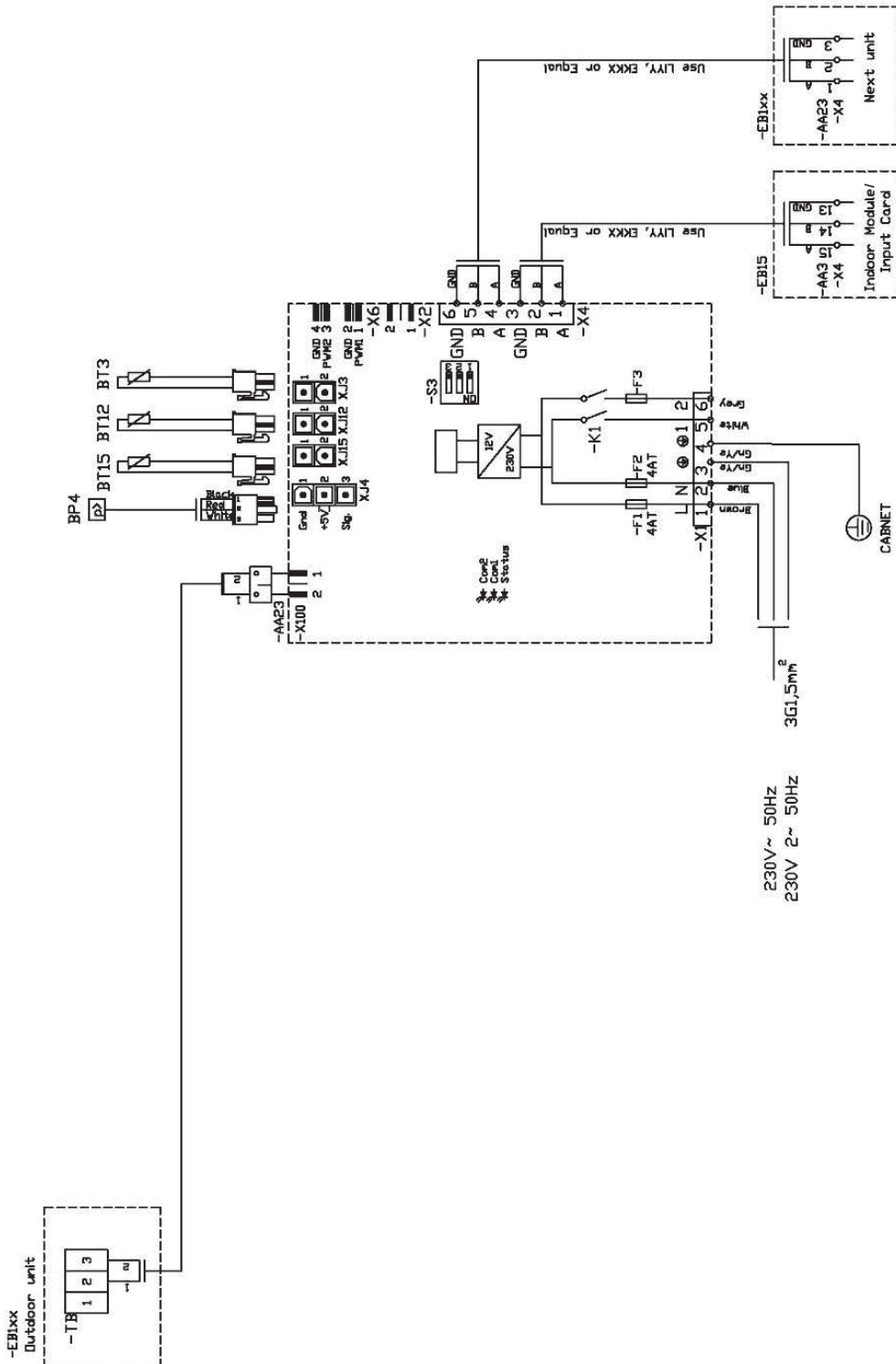






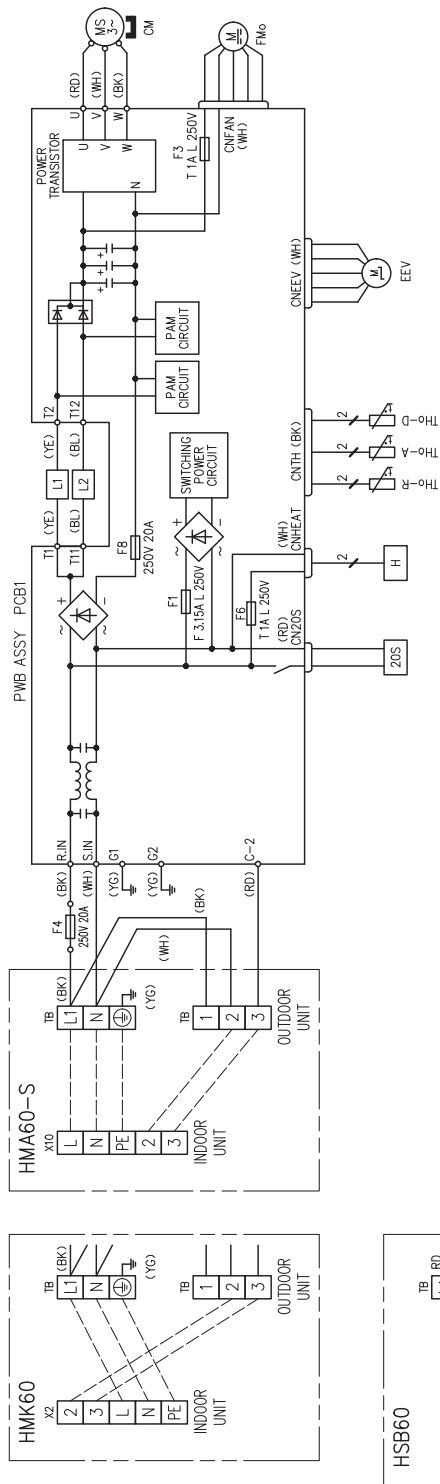
Split box

HSB60-W



Outdoor units

FDCW60VNX-A



Meaning of marks

Item	Description
20S	Solenoid coil for 4-way valve
CN20S	Connector
CNEEV	Compressor motor
CNFAN	Electric expansion valve (coil)
CNTH	Fan motor
CNHEAT	Heater
CM	Reactor
EEV	Heat exchanger temperature sensor
FMo	Outdoor air temperature sensor
H	Discharge pipe temperature sensor
L1,2	
THo-R	
THo-A	
THo-F	

Color marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow/Green

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

Model name	MAX running current (A)	Power cable wire size x number*	Power cable length (m)	Connecting cable wire size x number*
FDCW60VNX-A	15	2.0mm ² x 3	13	1.5mm ² x 3

- * The wire numbers include Earth wire (Yellow/Green).
- Switchgear or Circuit breaker capacity should be chosen according to national or regional electricity regulations.
- The power cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the national or regional electricity regulations.

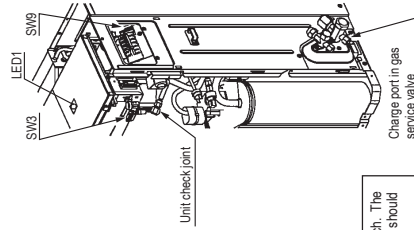
FDCW 71VNX-A

WARNING
ELECTRIC SHOCK
 Take care so as NOT to touch live parts when operating pump down switch, and local setting switches.

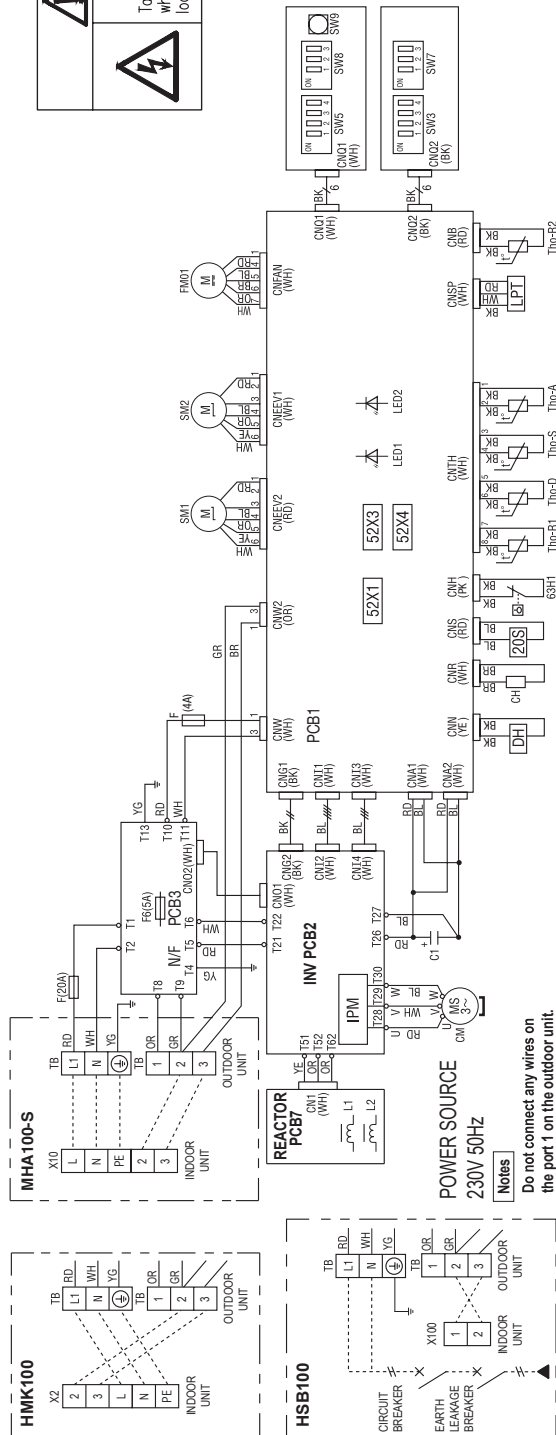


Position of compressor Terminals

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow/Green
GR	Gray
PK	Pink



PSC011G534K



POWER SOURCE
 230V 50Hz

Notes

Do not connect any wires on the port 1 on the outdoor unit.

Precaution

Be sure to read the instruction manual and installation manual of outside unit and indoor unit before you turn on power.

1. This is R410A air-conditioning system. Use only R410A refrigerant.
2. Before conduct a test run, do not fail to make sure that service valves are closed.
3. Turn on power 6 hours prior to a test run to energize the crankcase heater.
4. Always give a 3-minute or longer interval before you start the unit again. Whenever it is stopped. A failure to observe these instructions can result in a compressor breakdown.
5. The 4-way valve (20S) is energized during heating operation.
6. Check discharge pressure and intake pressure, using the check joint provided inside the unit and the gas service valve charge port. The check joint in the unit and the gas service valve charge port offer measurements of discharge pressure and intake pressure or intake pressure and discharge pressure respectively, which switch depending on a cooling or heating operation.
7. **This outdoor unit may start in the standby mode (waiting for a compressor startup), which can continue up to 30 minutes, to prevent the oil level in the compressor from lowering on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.**

Error code

Printed circuit board LED lamp display	Indoor Unit display	Error Code in Error Log	Contents of display
Keeps flashing	-	-	Normal
2 times flash	-	E5	Communication error between indoor unit - outdoor unit
1 time flash	0/low error	E54	Open phase error
	High/R temp	E55	High pressure error of cooling (Thi-R sensor detection)
	Pinnet high	E56	Discharge gas temperature error (Thi-D sensor detection)
	Start Thot	E57	Defective outdoor unit heat exchanger thermistor
	Start Thot	E58	Defective outdoor temperature thermistor
	Start Thot	E59	Defective discharge gas temperature thermistor
	Start Thot	E53	Defective suction temperature thermistor
	IP alarm	E40	IGH1 operation
	IP alarm	E42	Current cut
	IP alarm	E45	Inverter communication error
5 times flash	Inverter error	E47	AF over current error
	Inverter error	E51	Inverter PCB error (FO defective)
	Fan alarm	E60	Compressor rotor position detection error
	IP alarm	E49	Low pressure error (PSL thermistor detection)
	Inverter error	E54	Defective low pressure thermistor
		E55	Defective low pressure thermistor PSL
		E59	Error starting of compressor

Local setting switch (Setup at the time of shipment OFF)

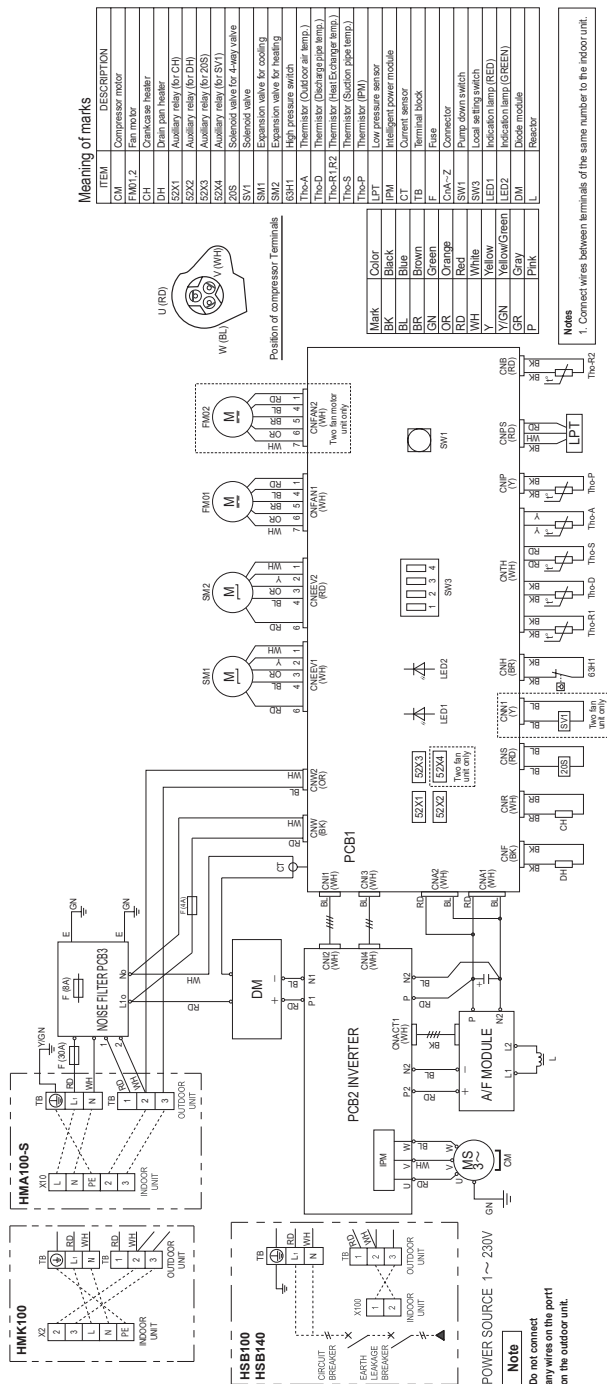
It becomes easy to go into defrost operation by turning ON the switch. The area where outside temperature becomes below in the freezing point should turn ON the switch at the time of heating operation.

The outdoor fan is operated for 10 seconds every 10 minutes by turning ON the switch during compressor stop at outside temperature 3 degrees C or less. When used in a heavy snowfall area, please turn ON the switch.

Defrost control change	Gas service valve charge port
SW3-1	Intake pressure (low pressure)
SW3-2	Discharge pressure (high pressure)

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
CM	Compressor motor
FM01	Fan motor
CH	Crankcase heater
DH	Drain pan heater
52X1	Auxiliary relay (for CH)
52X3	Auxiliary relay (for 20S)
52X4	Auxiliary relay (for DH)
20S	Solenoid valve for 4-way valve
SM1	Expansion valve for cooling
SM2	Expansion valve for heating
63H1	High pressure switch
Tho-A	Thermistor (Outdoor air temperature)
Tho-D	Thermistor (Discharge pipe temperature)
Tho-R1,R2	Thermistor (Heat exchanger temperature)
Tho-S	Thermistor (Suction pipe temperature)
LPT	Low pressure sensor
IPM	Intelligent power module
TB	Terminal block
F	Fuse
CNA~Z	Connector
SW9	Pump down switch
SW3,5,7,8	Local setting switch
LED1	Indication lamp (GREEN)
LED2	Indication lamp (RED)
L1,L2	Reactor
C1	Capacitor

FDCW 100VNX-A, 140VNX-A



5. Error code

Outdoor unit LED	Indoor unit Display	Error Code in Error Log	Contents
LED1 (Green) flashes	—	Stay off	Normal
LED2 (Red) flashes	—	Liquid crystal flashing or off	Connection error between outdoor and indoor unit
Keeps flashing	01 compressor	E5	Communication error between outdoor and indoor unit
		E34	Phase wiring is open
		E35	High pressure error of cooling
		E36	Discharge gas temp. error
		E37	Defective outdoor unit Heat Exchanger thermistor
		E38	Defective outdoor temp. thermistor
		E39	Defective discharge pipe thermistor
		E53	Defective suction pipe thermistor
		E40	High pressure switch (6SH1) is on operation
		E41	IPM overheat error
		E42	Current cut
		E45	Communication error between inverter control boards
		E51	Abnormal inverter control board
		E48	Outdoor fan motor error
		E49	Abnormal low pressure or obsolete low pressure sensor
		E54	Defective low pressure sensor
		E57	Shortage of refrigerant
		E59	Compressor starting error

3. Pump down operation

Pump down operation can be done by using SW1 when the indoor unit is in Add Heat Only mode.
 Carry out the pump down operation according to the following procedure.
 ① Check that the unit is NOT in operation and close the liquid gas service valve.
 At the same time check that the gas service valve is fully open.
 ② Pump down operation starts when SW1 is kept pressed for 2 seconds.
 ③ Pump down operation needs to be completed in about 3 or 4 minutes.
 After completed, close the gas service valve.
 If pump down operation needs to be done again, follow the method ①-②.
 NOTE : Power supply to the outdoor unit will be turned OFF after 10 minutes has elapsed when the indoor unit is turned into Add Heat Only mode.
 Make sure to start Pump down operation before the power is turned OFF.

4. Condition of electronic expansion valves

The steady condition of electronic expansion valves are as follows.

Expansion valve for cooling	When power source is time ON	
	In cooling	When turned normally OFF / When turned abnormally OFF
Expansion valve for heating <td>Fully closed <td>Fully open </td></td>	Fully closed <td>Fully open </td>	Fully open
Expansion valve for cooling <td>Fully open <td>Fully closed </td></td>	Fully open <td>Fully closed </td>	Fully closed
Expansion valve for heating <td>Fully closed <td>Fully open </td></td>	Fully closed <td>Fully open </td>	Fully open

Precaution

- Be sure to read the installation sheet attached to the outdoor unit and the instruction manual and installation sheet attached to the indoor unit before power is turned on.
- This unit is designed for R410A refrigerant. Do not use any other refrigerant than R410A.
- Be sure to turn on the power source of air conditioner 6 hours before operation.
- This unit is NOT under operation at the time some temperature which is fully warmed for protecting of compressor.
- Starting the compressor too early can cause damage to it.
- When operation stops, wait for 3 minutes to start again.
- Reconfirm that the check valves are fully open before operation.
- Check the operation of the electronic expansion valve (if there is a problem with the operation).
- The outdoor unit may start in the standby mode (heating for a compressor startup) which can continue up to 30 minutes. To prevent the call loss in the compressor from lowering on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker (that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure).

1. local setting switch SW3 (Set up at shipment OFF)

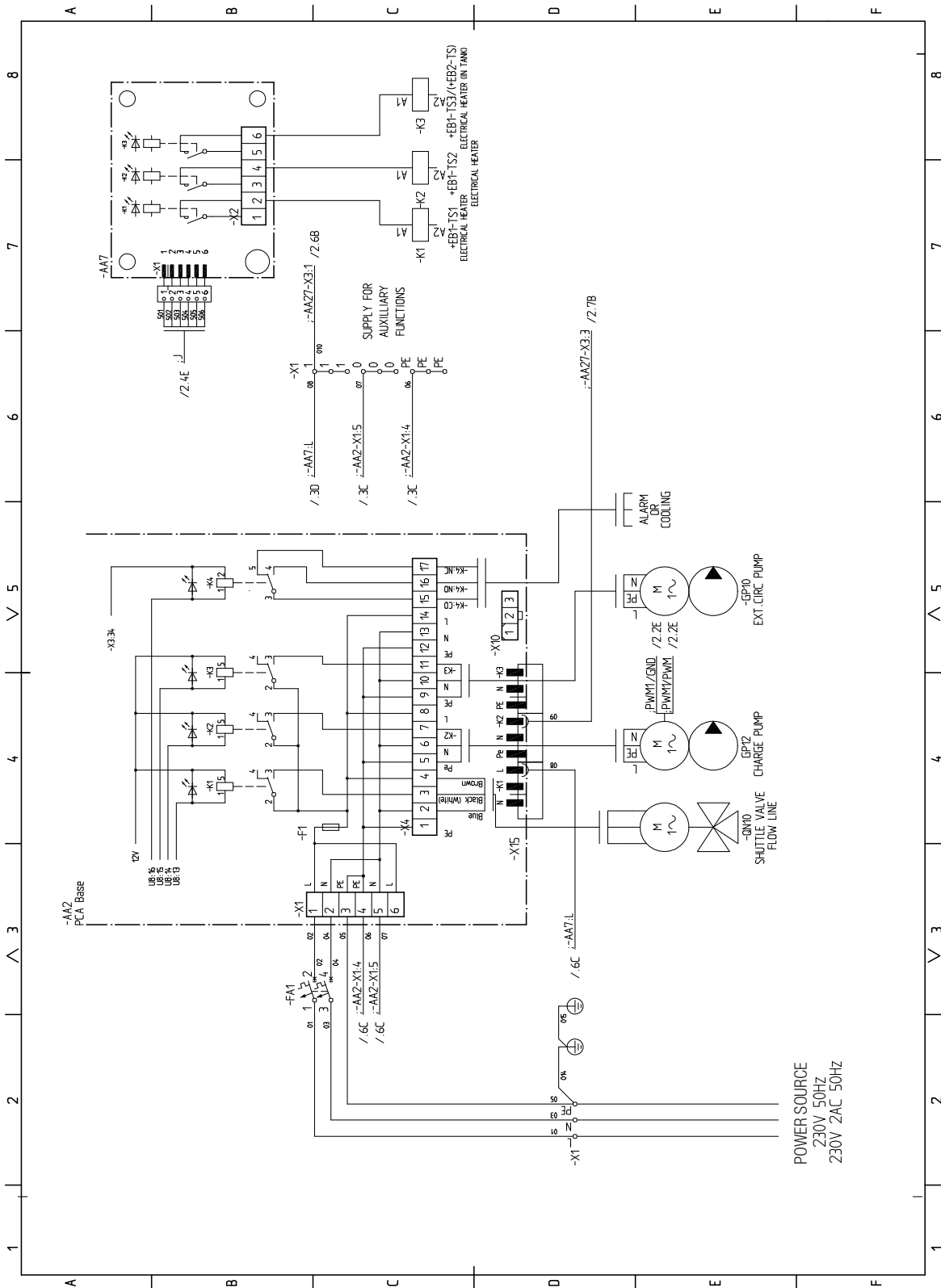
Cooling operation	Charge port of pipe	Charge port of gas check valve
Heating operation	High pressure	Low pressure
	Low pressure	High pressure

SW3-1 : Direct control change. The direct operation manual becomes shorter by turning ON this switch. This switch should be turned ON in the area where outside temperature becomes below the heating point.
 SW3-2 : Slow guard fan control. When this switch is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan will run for 10 minutes after the outdoor temperature falls to 3 °C or lower and the compressor is not running. When the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.

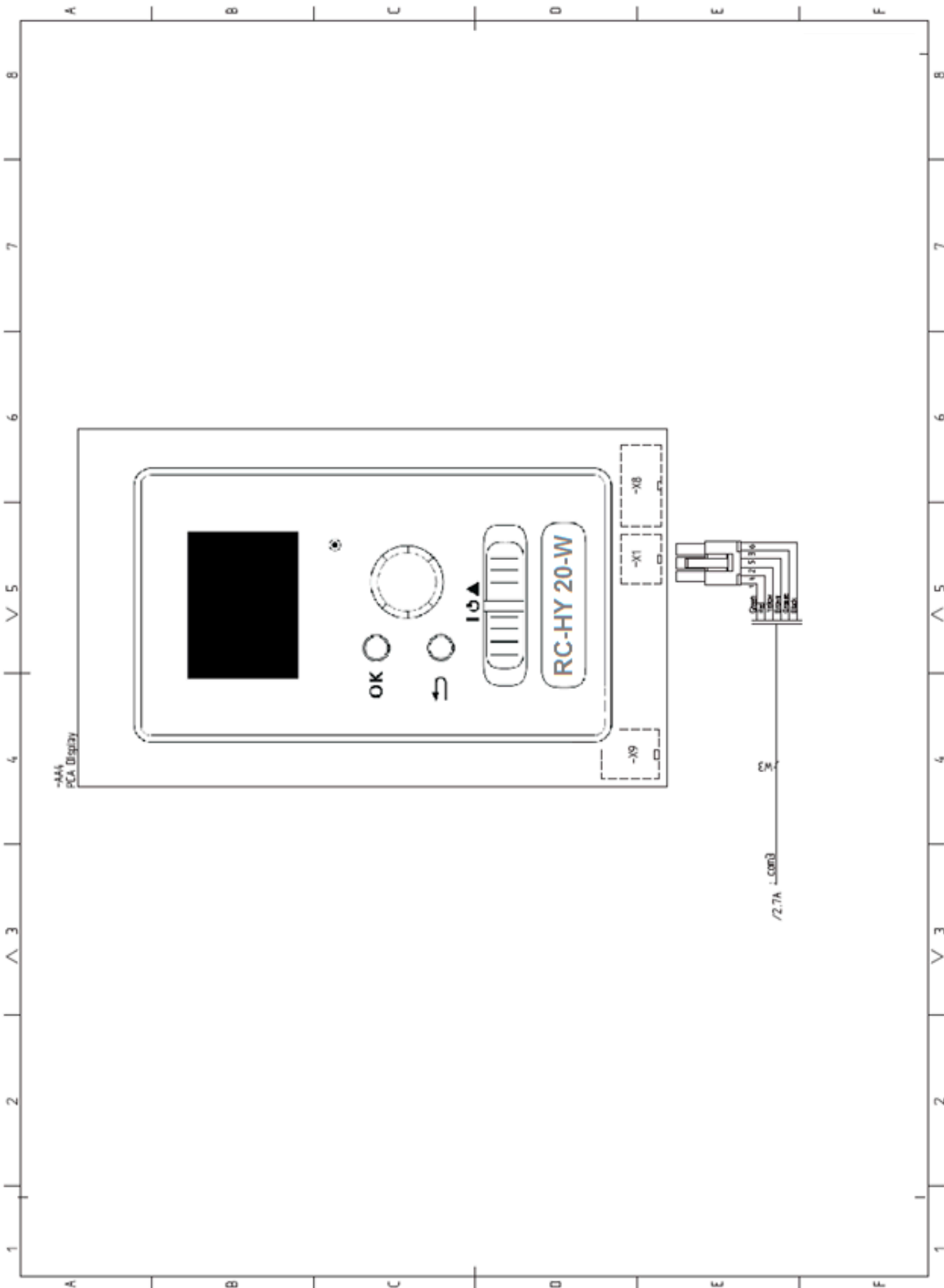
2. Refrigerant charge

Be sure to charge refrigerant in liquid phase from refrigerant cylinder. When charging in gas phase, refrigerant composition changes. This unit is charged with enough refrigerant for a piping length of 15m. When the piping length is less than 15m, additional charge is not necessary. When the piping length exceeds 15m or re-charge refrigerant servicing, charge necessary amount of refrigerant by re-calculating from the piping length in the following table.
 Additional charge amount (kg) = (Main piping length (m) - 15(m)) x 0.06(kg/m)
 * No need of additional charge when calculated charge amount is negative.
 Piping length of customer (main pipe) m

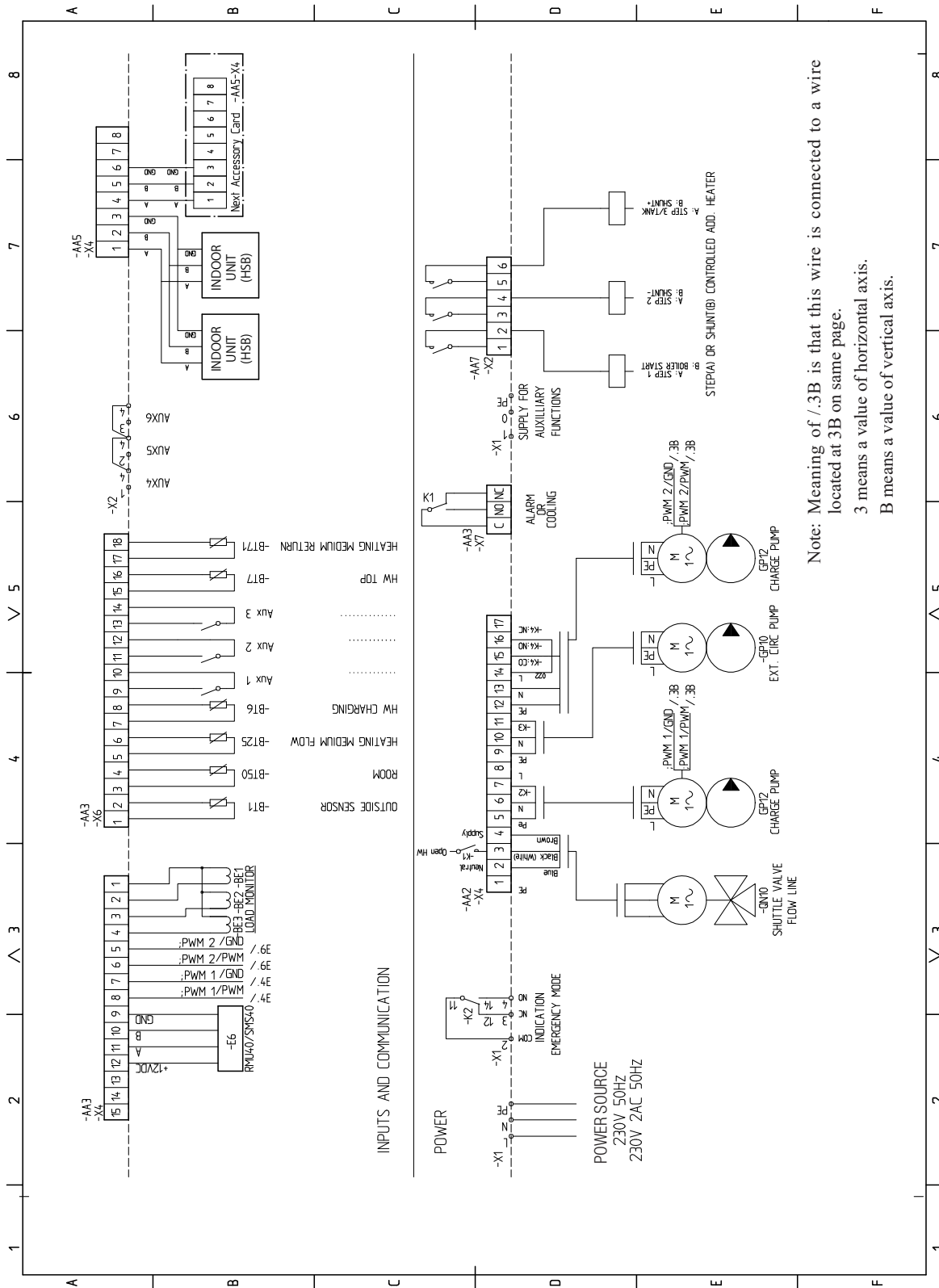
RC-HY20-W - sheet 3



RC-HY20-W - sheet 4

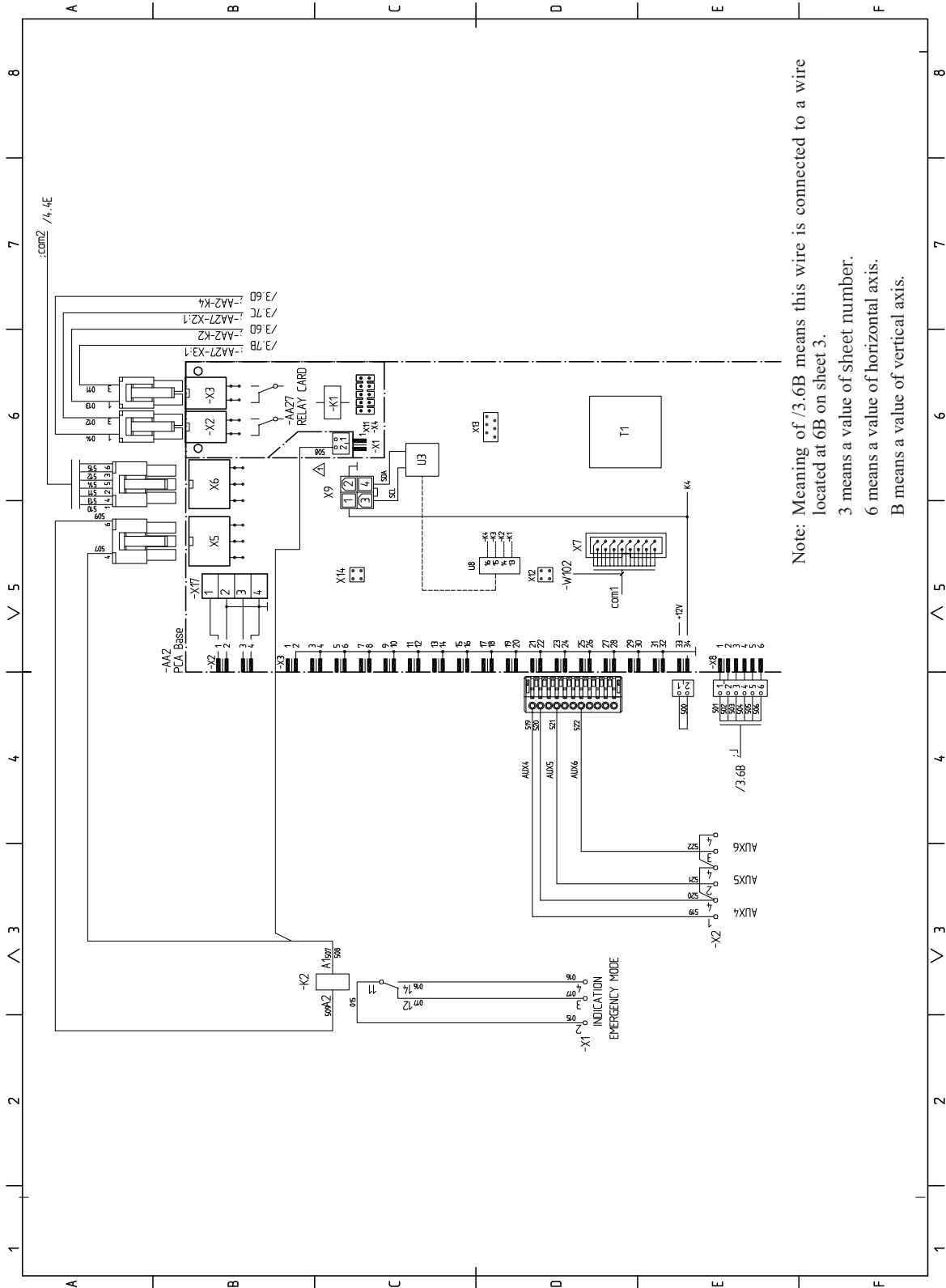


RC-HY40-W- sheet 1



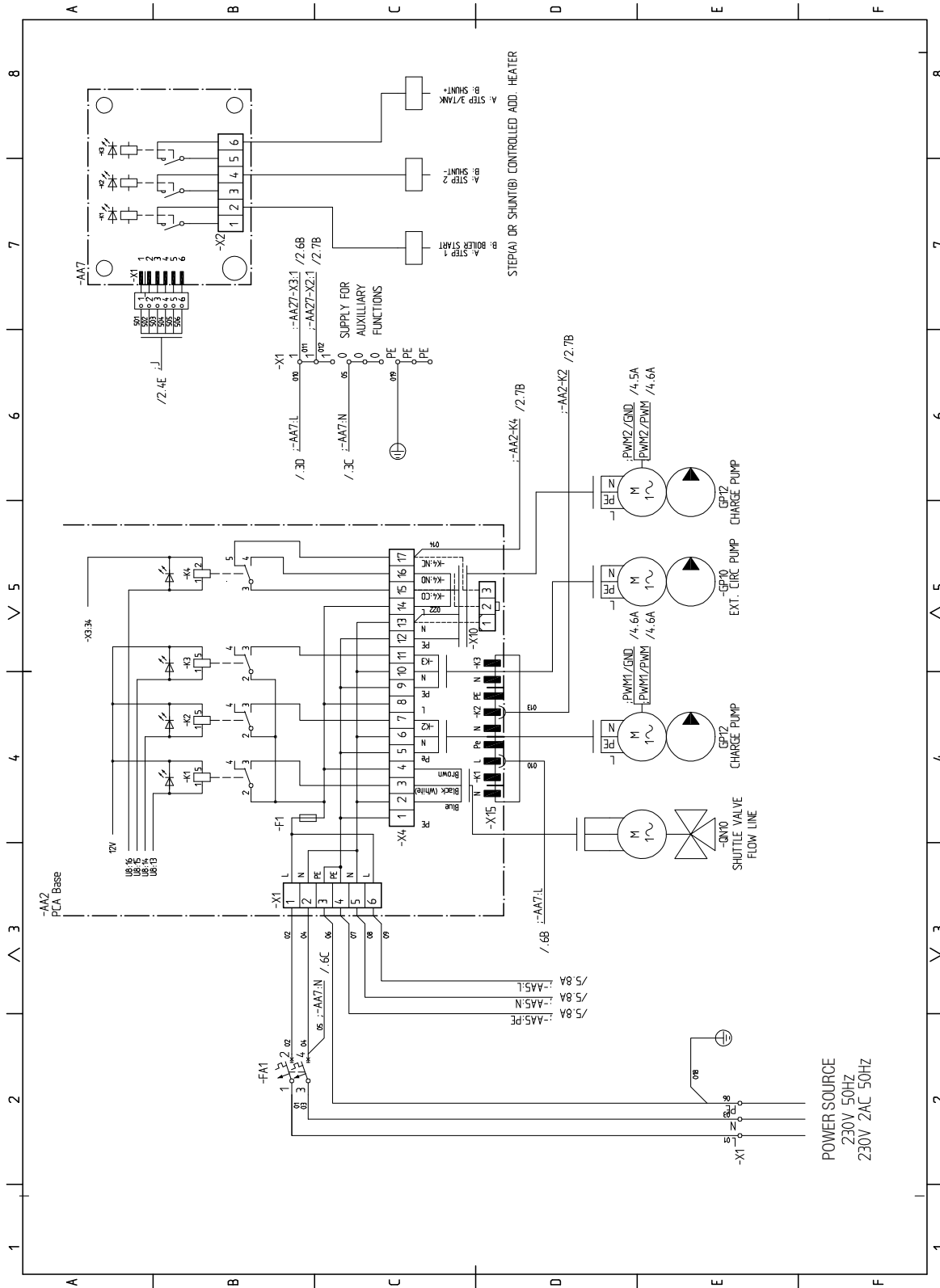
Note: Meaning of / .3B is that this wire is connected to a wire located at 3B on same page.
3 means a value of horizontal axis.
B means a value of vertical axis.

RC-HY40-W- sheet 2

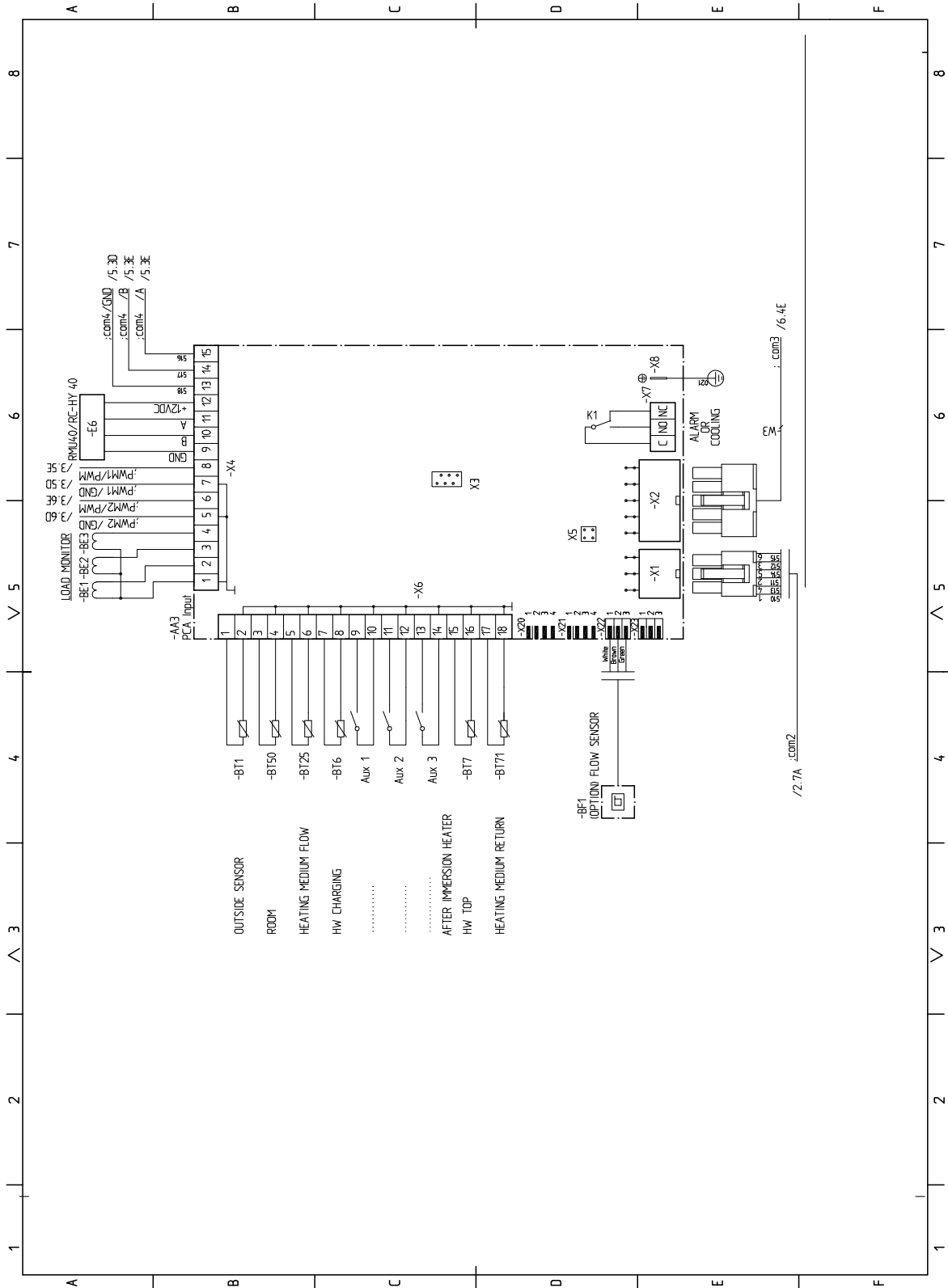


Note: Meaning of /3.6B means this wire is connected to a wire located at 6B on sheet 3.
 3 means a value of sheet number.
 6 means a value of horizontal axis.
 B means a value of vertical axis.

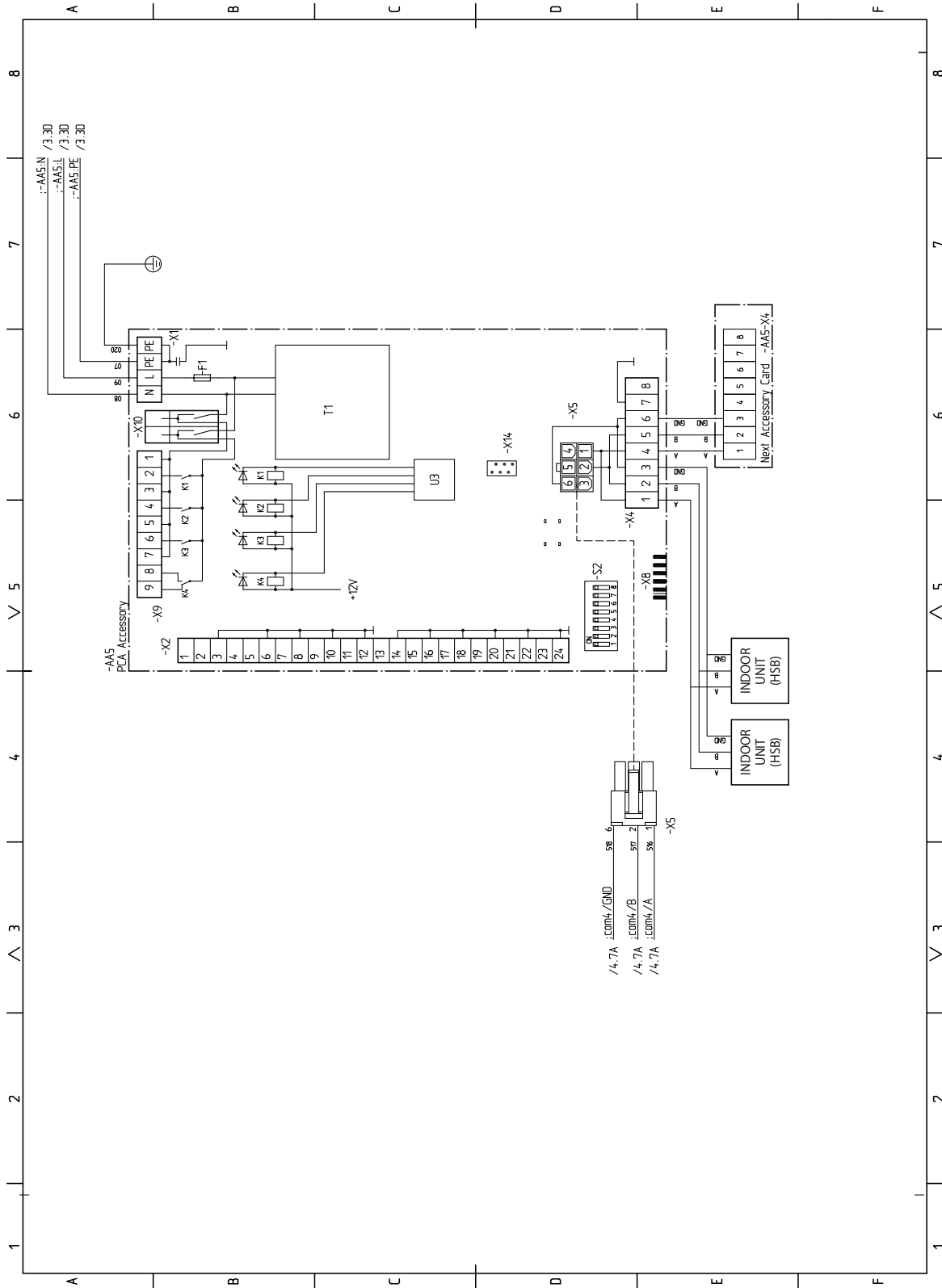
RC-HY40-W- sheet 3



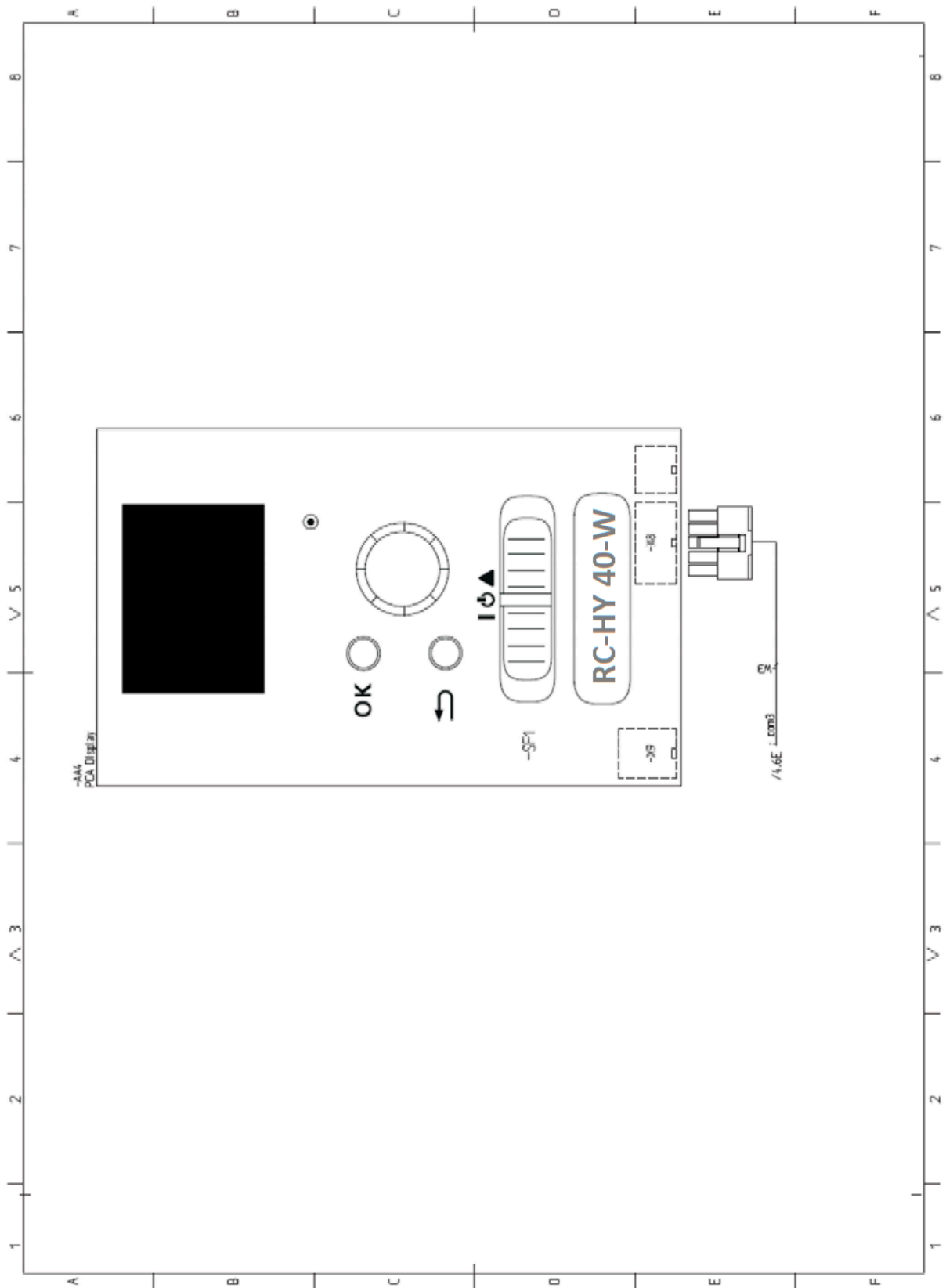
RC-HY40-W- sheet 4



RC-HY40-W- sheet 5



RC-HY40-W- sheet 6



Installation

Outdoor unit installation

PSC012D066T

FDCW60VNX-A

60VNX
Designed for R410A refrigerant

- This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to the respective installation manuals supplied with the units.
- Read this manual carefully before you set to installation work and carry it out according to the instructions contained in this manual.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- We recommend you to read this "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before the installation work in order to gain full advantage of the functions of the unit and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling.
- The precautions described below are divided into [⚠️ WARNING] and [⚠️ CAUTION]. The matters with possibilities leading to serious consequences such as death or serious personal injury due to erroneous handling are listed in the [⚠️ WARNING] and the matters with possibilities leading to personal injury or damage of the unit due to erroneous handling including probability leading to serious consequences in some cases are listed in [⚠️ CAUTION]. These are very important precautions for safety. Be sure to observe all of them without fail.
- The meaning of "Marks" used here are as shown below.
 - ⊘ Never do it under any circumstance.
 - ⚠️ Always do it according to the instruction
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual. If unusual noise can be heard during the test, consult the dealer.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.
- Our company does not assume any responsibility for the damage caused by use of our products without following the instructions mentioned in our manuals.



WARNING

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction. ● Install the system in full accordance with the instruction manual.
Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire. ● Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.
Improper safety measures can result in personal injury. ● Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.
If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, it may cause fall of the unit, water leaks, electric shocks, fire, refrigerant leak, substandard performance, control failure and personal injury. ● When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage accordance with ISO5149.
Consult the expert about prevention measures. If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of leakage, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents. ● Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced. ● After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system.
If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced. ● Hang up the unit at the specified points with ropes which can support the weight in lifting for portage. And to avoid jolting out of alignment, be sure to hang up the unit at 4-point support.
An improper manner of portage such as 3-point support can cause death or serious personal injury due to falling of the unit ● Install the unit in a location with good support.
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury. ● Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury ● The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.
Power source with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire. ● Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.
Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment. ● Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.
Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire. ● Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.
Loose connections can cause anomalous heat production or fire. ● Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.
Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire. ● Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.
Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current. ● This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.
Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When plugging this unit, a plug conforming to the norm IEC60884-1 must be used.
Using improper plug can cause electric shock or fire. ● Do not perform brazing work in the airtight room
It can cause lack of oxygen. ● Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.
Using existing parts for R22 or R407C can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit. ● Tighten the flare nut by using double spanners and torque wrench according to prescribed method. Be sure not to tighten the flare nut too much.
Loose flare connection or damage on the flare part by tightening with excess torque can cause burst or refrigerant leaks which may result in lack of oxygen. ● Do not open the service valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated in state of opening service valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant ● Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire. ● Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition
The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst. ● Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.
If the power source is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan. ● Consult the dealer or an expert regarding removal of the unit.
Incorrect installation can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire. ● Stop the compressor before closing valve and disconnecting refrigerant pipes in case of pump down operation.
If disconnecting refrigerant pipes in state of opening service valves before compressor stopping, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant circuit ● Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.
If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury. ● Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections
Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks. ● Be sure to fix up the service panels.
Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water. ● Do not perform any repairs or modifications by yourself. Consult the dealer if the unit requires repair.
If you repair or modify the unit, it can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire. ● Do not use any other refrigerant except the HFC-refrigerant (R410A).
It may cause the serious trouble like malfunction or explosion. ● Do not vent R410A into atmosphere.
R410A is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential(GWP)=2088. |
|---|--|



CAUTION

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care
Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting. Never connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe because if gas leaks, it could cause explosion or ignition. ● Use the circuit breaker for all pole with correct capacity.
Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire. ● Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.
The isolator should be locked in accordance with EN60204-1. ● Take care when carrying the unit by hand.
If the unit weighs more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins. ● Dispose of any packing materials correctly.
Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and dispose of it after tear it up. ● Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld spatter when welding work is done near the indoor unit.
If weld spatter entered into the indoor unit during welding work, it can cause pin-hole in drain pan and result in water leakage. To prevent such damage, keep the indoor unit in its packing or cover it. ● Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.
Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables. ● Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.
If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents. ● Perform installation work properly according to this installation manual.
Improper installation can cause abnormal vibrations or increased noise generation. ● Earth leakage breaker of appropriate capacity must be installed
If the earth leakage breaker of appropriate capacity is not installed, it can cause fire or electric shocks. ● Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.
Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire. ● Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire. ● Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfuric acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.
Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire. ● Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.
Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.. ● When the outdoor unit is installed on a roof or a high place, provide permanent ladders and handrails along the access route and fences and handrails around the outdoor unit.
If safety facilities are not provided, it can cause personal injury due to falling from the installation place. ● Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming. ● Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.
Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Do not use the base flame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.
Using an old and damaged base flame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury. ● Do not install the unit in the locations listed below <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating. -Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur. -Vehicles and ships -Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used. -Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant. -Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used. -Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines -Locations with heavy snow (if installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual) -Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke -Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high) -Locations with ammoniac atmospheres (e.g. organic fertilizer) -Locations with calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent) -Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit -Locations without good air circulation. -Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit -Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation) -Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire. ● Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood. -Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc. -Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure. -Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously. (on the wall or at the place near bed room) -Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m) -Locations where drainage cannot run off safely. It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim ● Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.
It can cause the damage of the items. ● Do not touch any buttons with wet hands
It can cause electric shocks ● Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury. ● Do not clean up the unit with water
It can cause electric shocks ● Do not operate the outdoor unit with any article placed on it.
You may incur property damage or personal injury from a fall of the article. ● Do not step onto the outdoor unit.
You may incur injury from a drop or fall. ● Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.
Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury. ● Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.
Aluminum fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn. |
|---|---|

1. TOOLS

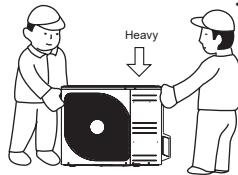
Locally procured parts		Tools for installation work		
(a) Anchor bolt(M10-M12)×4 pcs	Plus headed driver	Spanner wrench	Vacuum pump*	
(b) Putty	Knife	Torque wrench [14.0-62.0N/m(1.4-6.2kgf·m)]	Gauge manifold *	
(c) Electrical tape	Saw	Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm]	Charge hose *	
(d) Connecting pipe	Tape measure	Flaring tool set *	Vacuum pump adapter* (Anti-reverse flow type)	
(e) Connecting cable	Pipe cutter	Flare adjustment gauge	Gas leak detector *	
(f) Power cable				
(g) Clamp and screw (for finishing work)				

*Designed specifically for R410A

2. OUTDOOR UNIT INSTALLATION

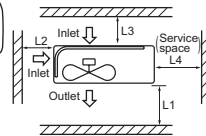
1. Haulage

- Always carry or move the unit with two or more persons.
- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (outlet side) is heavier.
- A person carrying the right hand side must take care of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold the handle provided on the front panel of the unit with his right hand and the corner column section of the unit with his left hand.



3. Installation space

- There must be 1 meter or larger space between the unit and the wall in at least 1 of the 4 sides. Walls surrounding the unit from 4 sides is not acceptable. The wall height on the outlet side should be 1200 mm or less. Refer to the following figure and table for details.



Example installation Size	(mm)			
	I	II	III	IV
L1	Open	280	280	180
L2	100	75	Open	Open
L3	100	80	80	80
L4	250	Open	250	Open

CAUTION

When a unit is hauled, take care of its gravity center position which is shifted towards right hand side. If the unit is not hauled properly, it can go off balance and fall resulting in serious injury.

2. Selecting the installation location

- Select the suitable installation location where:
- Unit will be stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.
 - There is no obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
 - There is enough space for service and maintenance of unit.
 - Neighbours are not bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.
 - Outlet air of the unit does not blow directly to animals or plants.
 - Drain water can be discharged properly.
 - There is no risk of flammable gas leakage.
 - There are no other heat sources nearby.
 - Unit is not directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
 - Unit is not directly exposed to oil mist and steam.
 - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will not generate or accumulate.
 - Unit is not directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.
 - No TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
 - Unit is not affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipments.
 - Strong wind does not blow against the unit outlet.
 - Heavy snowfalls do not occur (If installed, provide proper protection to avoid snow accumulation).

NOTE

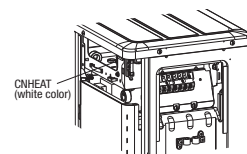
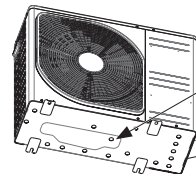
When more than one unit are installed side by side, provide a 250mm or wider interval between them as a service space.

CAUTION

When more than one unit are installed in parallel directions, provide sufficient inlet space so that short-circuiting may not occur.

4. Drain piping work (if necessary)

- Carry out drain piping work if condensed water needs to be drained out.
- Prepare another drain tray made of metallic material for collecting drain when base heater is used.
 - Do not use drain elbow and grommet made of plastic for drain piping when base heater for outdoor unit is used. Plastic grommet and elbow will be damaged and burnt in worst case.
 - In case plastic grommet and drain elbow is used in warm climate area, disconnect the connector for heater on PCB shown in the drawing.



NOTE

If the unit is installed in the area where there is a possibility of strong wind or snow accumulation, the following measures are required.

(1) Location of strong wind

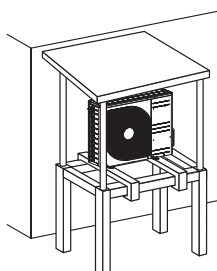
- Place the unit with its outlet side facing the wall.
- Place the unit such that the direction of air from the outlet gets perpendicular to the wind direction.



- Use wind guard in case outdoor unit is installed where ambient temperature drops below -10°C and natural wind blows into outdoor unit directly. For details, refer to technical manual.

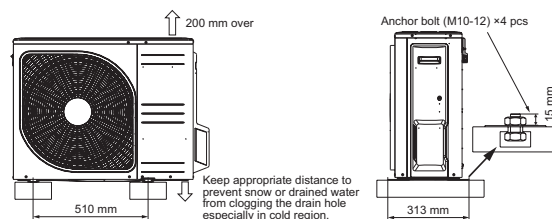
(2) Location of snow accumulation

- Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.
- Install the unit under eaves or provide the roof on site.



5. Installation

- Install the unit on a flat level base.
- While installing the unit, keep space and fix the unit's legs with 4 anchor bolts as shown in the figure below. The protrusion of an anchor bolt from the foundation surface must be kept within 15mm.



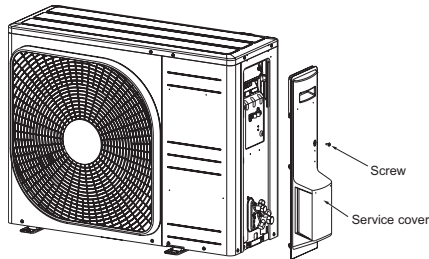
CAUTION

- Install the unit properly so that it does not fall over during earthquake, strong wind, etc.
- Make sure that unit is installed on a flat level base. Installing unit on uneven base may result in unit malfunction.

3. PREPARATION FOR WORK

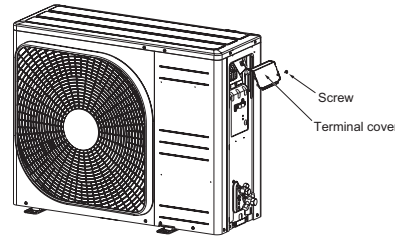
1. Removing service cover

Remove the screw. Slide service cover downwards and remove it.



2. Removing terminal cover

Remove the screw and take out terminal cover.

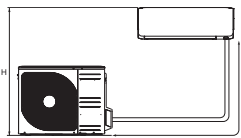


4. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Restrictions on unit installation

Abide by the following restrictions on unit installation. Improper installation can cause compressor failure or performance degradation.

	Dimensional restrictions
Connecting pipe length(L)	30m or less
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units(H)*	7m or less



* Outdoor unit installation position can be higher as well as lower than the indoor unit installation position.

2. Preparation of connecting pipe

2.1. Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

	Pipe diameter (mm)	Minimum thickness (mm)
Gas pipe	ø12.7	0.8
Liquid pipe	ø6.35	0.8

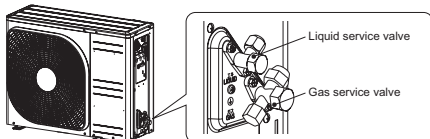
* Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

2.2. Cutting connecting pipe

- Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
- Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
- Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

3. Piping work

Check that both liquid and gas service valves are fully closed. Carry out the piping work with service valves fully closed.



3.1. Flaring pipe

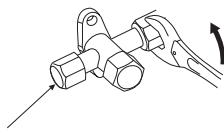
- Take out flare nuts from the service valves of outdoor unit and engage them onto connecting pipes.
 - Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.
- Flare dimensions for R410A are different from those for conventional refrigerant. Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a flare adjustment gauge.

Copper pipe outer diameter	A	B	Rigid (clutch) type	
			R410A	Conventional
ø6.35	9.1			
ø9.52	13.2		0-0.5	1.0-1.5
ø12.7	16.6			

3.2. Connecting pipes

- Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.
- Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

Service valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N·m)
ø6.35 (1/4")	14-18
ø9.52 (3/8")	34-42
ø12.7 (1/2")	49-61



Do not hold the valve cap area with a spanner

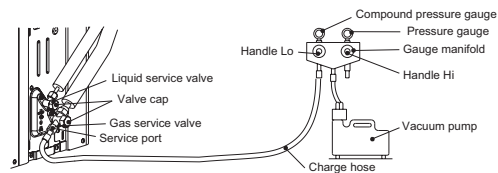
CAUTION

- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.
- Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. The flared nuts may crack resulting in refrigerant leakage.

4. Evacuation

- Connect vacuum pump to gauge manifold. Connect charge hose of gauge manifold to service port of outdoor unit.
- Run the vacuum pump for at least one hour after the vacuum gauge shows -0.1MPa (-76cm Hg).
- Confirm that the vacuum gauge indicator does not rise even if the system is left for 15 minutes or more. Vacuum gauge indicator will rise if the system has moisture left inside or has a leakage point. Check the system for the leakage point. If leakage point is found, repair it and return to (1) again.
- Close the Handle Lo and stop the vacuum pump. Keep this state for a few minutes to make sure that the compound pressure gauge pointer does not swing back.
- Remove valve caps from liquid service valve and gas service valve.
- Turn the liquid service valve's rod 90 degree counterclockwise with a hexagonal wrench key to open valve. Close it after 5 seconds, and check for gas leakage. Using soapy water, check for gas leakage from indoor unit's flare and outdoor unit's flare and valve rods. Wipe off all the water after completing the check.
- Disconnect charging hose from gas service valve's service port and fully open liquid and gas service valves. (Do not attempt to turn valve rod beyond its stop.)
- Tighten service valve caps and service port cap to the specified torque shown in the table below.

Service valve size (mm)	Service valve cap tightening torque (N·m)	Service port cap tightening torque (N·m)
ø6.35 (1/4")	20-30	10-12
ø9.52 (3/8")		
ø12.7 (1/2")	25-35	



CAUTION

- To prevent different oil from entering into the refrigeration system, do not use tools designed for any other refrigerant type (R22, R407C, etc.).
- To prevent vacuum pump oil from entering into the refrigeration system, use a counterflow prevention adapter.

5. Additional refrigerant charge

Additional refrigerant charge is required only when connecting pipe length exceeds 15 m.

5.1 Calculating additional refrigerant charge

Additional refrigerant charge can be calculated using the formula given below.
Additional refrigerant charge (g) = { Connecting pipe length (m) - Factory charged length 15 (m) } x 20 (g/m)

NOTE

- If additional refrigerant charge calculation result is negative, there is no need to remove the refrigerant.
- If refrigerant recharge is required for the unit with connecting pipe length 15m or shorter, charge the factory charged volume as shown in the table below.

Factory charged volume(kg)	1.50
----------------------------	------

5.2 Charging refrigerant

- Charge the R410A refrigerant in liquid phase from service port with both liquid and gas service valves shut. Since R410A refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, make sure that refrigerant is discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time.
- When it is difficult to charge a required refrigerant volume, fully open both liquid and gas service valves and charge refrigerant, while running the unit in the cooling mode. When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete the charge operation within 30 minutes.
- Write the additional refrigerant charge calculated from the connecting pipe length on the label attached on the service cover.

CAUTION

Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause unit malfunction.

5. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure that all the electrical work is carried out in accordance with the national or regional electrical standards.
- Make sure that the earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed (Refer to the table given below).
- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completed.
- Do not use a condensative capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It does not improve power factor. Moreover, it can cause an abnormal overheat accident).

Breaker specifications

Phase	Earth leakage breaker	Circuit breaker
Single phase	Leakage current: 30mA, 0.1sec or less	Over current: 20A

Main fuse specification

Specification	Parts No.	Code on LABEL, WIRING
250V 20A	SSA564A136A	F4

1. Preparing cable

(1) Selecting cable

Select the power source cable and connecting cable in accordance with the specifications mentioned below.

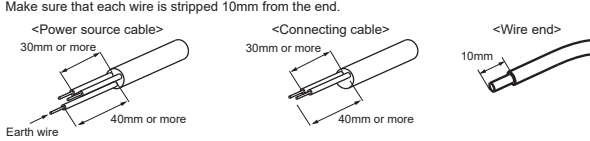
(a) Power source cable

- 3 cores * 2.0mm² or more, conformed with 60245 IEC57
- When selecting the power source cable length, make sure that voltage drop is less than 2%.
- If the wire length gets longer, increase the wire diameter.

(b) Connecting cable

- 2 cores * 1.5mm², conformed with 60245 IEC57
- * 1 Earth wire is included (Yellow).

(2) Arrange each wire length connecting to the outside unit as shown below.



Refer to the installation manual for Indoor unit when arrange each wire connecting to the Indoor unit.

(3) Attach round crimp-type terminal to each wire connecting to the outside unit as shown in the below.



Refer to the installation manual for Indoor unit when arrange each wire connecting to the Indoor unit.

⚠ CAUTION

Power source cable and connecting cable must conform to the specifications mentioned in the manual. Using cables with wrong specifications may result in unit malfunction.

2. Connecting cable

(1) Remove the service cover.

(2) Connect the cables according to the instructions and figures given below.

(a) Connect the earth wire of power source cable.

An earth wire must be connected before connecting the other wires of power source cable. Keep the earth wire longer than the remaining two wires of power source cable.

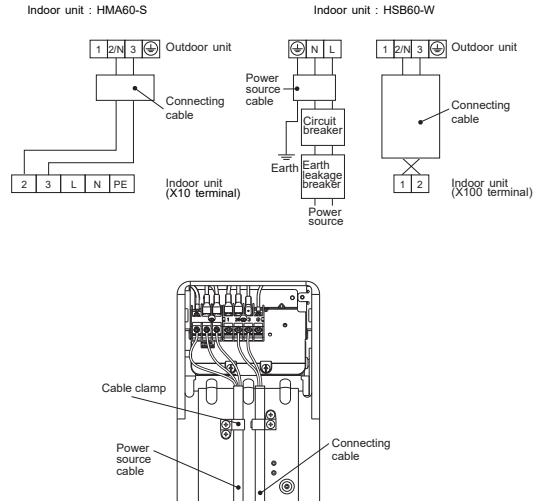
(b) Connect the remaining two wires (N and L) of power source cable.

(c) Connect the wires of connecting cable. Make sure that for each wire, outdoor and indoor side terminal numbers match.

(3) Fasten the cables properly with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections.

Moreover, make sure that cables do not touch the piping, etc. When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection.

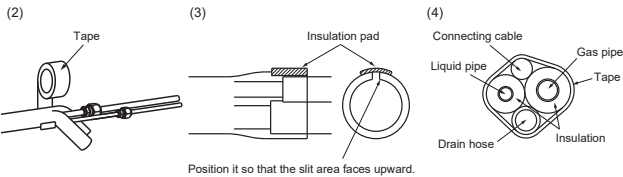
<Circuit diagram>



6. FINISHING WORK

1. Heating and condensation prevention

- (1) Dress the connecting pipes (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation. Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.
- (2) Wrap the refrigerant pipings of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
- (3) Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
- (4) Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



NOTE

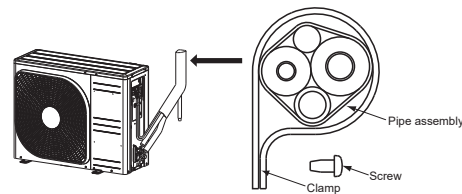
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

⚠ CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate(water) formation during cooling operation. Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

2. Finishing work

- (1) Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
- (2) Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- (3) Install the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.



⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

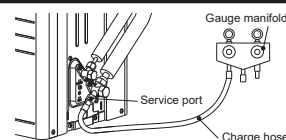
7. INSTALLATION TEST CHECK POINTS

After finishing the installation work, check the following points again before turning on the power. Conduct test run (Refer to indoor unit installation manual) and ensure that the unit operates properly.

Power source voltage complies with the rated voltage of air-conditioner.		No gas leaks from the joints of the service valves.	
Earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker are installed.		Indoor and outdoor side pipe joints have been insulated.	
Power cable and connecting cable are securely fixed to the terminal block.		Drain hose (if installed) is fixed properly.	
Both liquid and gas service valves are fully open.		Screw of the service cover is tightened properly.	

8. PUMP DOWN (IN CASE OF RELOCATION OR DISPOSAL OF UNIT)

- (1) Connect charge hose of gauge manifold to service port of outdoor unit.
- (2) Close the liquid service valve with hexagonal wrench key.
- (3) Fully open the gas service valve with hexagonal wrench key.
- (4) Carry out forced cooling operation (For forced cooling operation procedure, refer to indoor unit installation manual).
- (5) When the low pressure gauge becomes 0.01MPa, close the gas service valve and stop forced cooling operation.



FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A

PSC012D066V

71VNX, 100VNX, 140VNX
Designed for R410A refrigerant

- This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to the respective installation manuals supplied with the units.
- Read this manual carefully before you set to installation work and carry it out according to the instructions contained in this manual.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- We recommend you to read this "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before the installation work in order to gain full advantage of the functions of the unit and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling.
 - The precautions described below are divided into [**WARNING**] and [**CAUTION**]. The matters with possibilities leading to serious consequences such as death or serious personal injury due to erroneous handling are listed in the [**WARNING**] and the matters with possibilities leading to personal injury or damage of the unit due to erroneous handling including probability leading to serious consequences in some cases are listed in [**CAUTION**]. These are very important precautions for safety. Be sure to observe all of them without fail.
 - The meaning of "Marks" used here are as shown below.
- Never do it under any circumstance. Always do it according to the instruction
- 5 and 6 HP units of single phase power source are equipment complying with IEC 61000-3-12.
 - Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
 - Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.
 - Our company does not assume any responsibility for the damage caused by use of our products without following the instructions mentioned in our manuals.

Check before installation work

[Accessory]

Edging 	1 piece	knock-out hole protection (100VNX, 140VNX only)
--	---------	---

- Model name and power source
- Refrigerant piping length
- Piping, wiring and miscellaneous small parts
- Indoor unit installation manual

WARNING

- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction.
- **Install the system in full accordance with the instruction manual.**
Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.**
If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, it may cause fall of the unit, water leaks, electric shocks, fire, refrigerant leak, substandard performance, control failure and personal injury.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage accordance with ISO5149.**
Consult the expert about prevention measures. If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of leakage, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.**
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.
- **After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system.**
If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced.
- **Hang up the unit at the specified points with ropes which can support the weight in lifting for portage. And to avoid jolting out of alignment, be sure to hang up the unit at 4-point support.**
An improper manner of portage such as 3-point support can cause death or serious personal injury due to falling of the unit.
- **Install the unit in a location with good support.**
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.**
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.**
Power source with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire.
- **Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.**
Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.
- **Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.**
Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.**
Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.
- **Do not perform brazing work in the airtight room.**
It can cause lack of oxygen.
- **Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.**
Using existing parts for R22 or R407C can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.
- **Tighten the flare nut by using double spanners and torque wrench according to prescribed method. Be sure not to tighten the flare nut too much.**
Loose flare connection or damage on the flare part by tightening with excess torque can cause burst or refrigerant leaks which may result in lack of oxygen.
- **Do not open the service valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.**
If the compressor is operated in state of opening service valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition.**
The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.**
If the power source is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.
- **Consult the dealer or an expert regarding removal of the unit.**
Incorrect installation can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.
- **Stop the compressor before closing valve and disconnecting refrigerant pipes in case of pump down operation.**
If disconnecting refrigerant pipes in state of opening service valves before compressor stopping, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant circuit.
- **Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.
- **Be sure to fix up the service panels.**
Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Do not perform any repairs or modifications by yourself. Consult the dealer if the unit requires repair.**
If you repair or modify the unit, it can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.
- **Do not use any other refrigerant except the HFC-refrigerant (R410A).**
It may cause the serious trouble like malfunction or explosion.

CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care.**
Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting. Never connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe because of gas leaks; it could cause explosion or ignition.
- **Use the circuit breaker for all pole with correct capacity.**
Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
The isolator should be locked in accordance with EN60204-1.
- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.
- **Dispose of any packing materials correctly.**
Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury if it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld spatter when welding work is done near the indoor unit.**
If weld spatter entered into the indoor unit during welding work, it can cause pin-hole in drain pan and result in water leakage. To prevent such damage, keep the indoor unit in its packing or cover it.
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness tests by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Perform installation work properly according to this installation manual.**
Improper installation can cause abnormal vibrations or increased noise generation.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire or electric shocks.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfuric acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **When the outdoor unit is installed on a roof or a high place, provide permanent ladders and handrails along the access route and fences and handrails around the outdoor unit.**
If safety facilities are not provided, it can cause personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics.**
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.**
Using an old and damaged base frame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below.**
 - Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
 - Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
 - Vehicles and ships
 - Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
 - Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
 - Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
 - Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines.
 - Locations with heavy snow (if installed, be sure to provide base frame and snow hood mentioned in the manual)
 - Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke
 - Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high)
 - Locations with ammoniac atmospheres (e.g. organic fertilizer)
 - Locations with calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent)
 - Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit
 - Locations without good air circulation.
 - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
 - Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation)
 - Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit
 - It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.**
 - Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood.
 - Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc.
 - Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure.
 - Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously. (on the wall or at the place near bed room)
 - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
 - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
 - It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
It can cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands.**
It can cause electric shocks.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.
- **Do not clean up the unit with water.**
It can cause electric shocks.
- **Do not operate the outdoor unit with any article placed on it.**
You may incur property damage or personal injury from a fall of the article.
- **Do not step onto the outdoor unit.**
You may incur injury from a drop or fall.

Notabilia as a unit designed for R410A

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A. R410A will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R410A has a pink indication mark on the top.
- A unit designed for R410A has adopted a different size indoor unit operation valve charge port and a different size check joint provided in the unit to prevent the charging of a wrong refrigerant by mistake. The processed dimension of the flared part of a refrigerant pipe and a flare nut's parallel side measurement have also been altered to raise strength against pressure. Accordingly, you are required to arrange dedicated R410A tools listed in the table on the right before installing or servicing this unit.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R410A. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

Dedicated R410A tools	
a)	Gauge manifold
b)	Charge hose
c)	Electronic scale for refrigerant charging
d)	Torque wrench
e)	Flare tool
f)	Protrusion control copper pipe gauge
g)	Vacuum pump adapter
h)	Gas leak detector

1. HAULAGE AND INSTALLATION (Take particular care in carrying in or moving the unit, and always perform such an operation with two or more persons.)

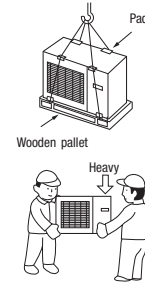
CAUTION When a unit is hoisted with slings for haulage, take into consideration the offset of its gravity center position. If not properly balanced, the unit can be thrown off-balance and fall.

1) Delivery

- Deliver the unit as close as possible to the installation site before removing it from the packaging.
- When some compelling reason necessitates the unpacking of the unit before it is carried in, use nylon slings or protective wood pieces so as not to damage the unit by ropes lifting it.

2) Portage

- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (diffuser side) is heavier. A person carrying the right hand side must take heed of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold with his right hand the handle provided on the front panel of the unit and with his left hand the corner column section.



3) Selection of installation location for the outdoor unit

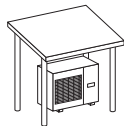
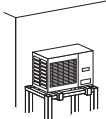
Be sure to select a suitable installation place in consideration of following conditions.

- A place where it is horizontal, stable and can endure the unit weight and will not allow vibration transmittance of the unit.
 - A place where it can be free from possibility of bothering neighbors due to noise or exhaust air from the unit
 - A place where the unit is not exposed to oil splashes.
 - A place where it can be free from danger of flammable gas leakage.
 - A place where drain water can be disposed without any trouble.
 - A place where the unit will not be affected by heat radiation from other heat source.
 - A place where snow will not accumulate.
 - A place where the unit can be kept away 5m or more from TV set and/or radio receiver in order to avoid any radio or TV interference.
 - A place where good air circulation can be secured, and enough service space can be secured for maintenance and service of the unit safely.
 - A place where the unit will not be affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipment.
 - A place where chemical substances like sulfuric gas, chloric gas, acid and alkali (including ammonia), which can harm the unit, will not be generated and not remain.
 - A place where strong wind will not blow against the outlet air blow of the unit.
- Do not install the unit in places which exposed to sea breeze (e.g. coastal area) or calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent), exposed to ammonia substance (e.g. organic fertilizer).

4) Caution about selection of installation location

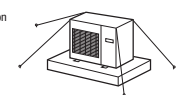
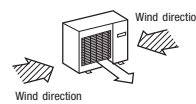
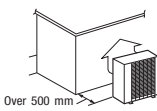
- (1) If the unit is installed in the area where the snow will accumulate, following measures are required.
The bottom plate of unit and intake, outlet may be blocked by snow.

1. Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.
2. Provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site.
Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.
3. Install the unit under eaves or provide the roof on site.



- (2) If the unit can be affected by strong wind, following measures are required.
Strong wind can cause damage of fan (fan motor), or can cause performance degradation, or can trigger anomalous stop of the unit due to rising of high pressure or dropping of low pressure.

1. Install the outlet air blow side of the unit to face a wall of building, or provide a fence or a windbreak screen.
2. Install the outlet air blow side of the unit in a position perpendicular to the direction of wind.
3. The unit should be installed on the stable and level foundation. If the foundation is not level, tie down the unit with wires.

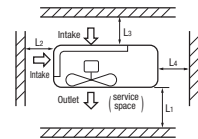


- Since drain water generated by defrost control may freeze, following measures are required.
- Don't execute drain piping work by using a drain elbow and drain grommets (optional parts). [Refer to Drain piping work.]
 - Recommend setting Defrost Control (SW3-1) and Snow Guard Fan Control (SW3-2). [Refer to Setting SW3-1, SW3-2.]

5) Installation space

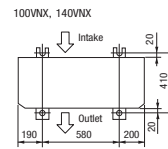
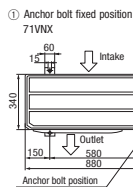
- Walls surrounding the unit in the four sides are not acceptable.
- There must be a 1-meter or larger space in the above.
- Where a danger of short-circuiting exists, install guide louvers.
- When more than one unit are installed, provide sufficient intake space consciously so that short-circuiting may not occur.
- Where piling snow can bury the outdoor unit, provide proper snow guards.
- A barrier wall placed in front of the exhaust diffuser must not be higher than the unit.
- Advisable to keep the right side service space (L4) more than 300 mm for easy maintenance.

Size	71VNX			100VNX, 140VNX		
	I	II	III	I	II	III
L1	Open	Open	500	Open	Open	500
L2	300	250	Open	300	5	Open
L3	100	150	100	150	300	150
L4	250	250	250	5	5	5

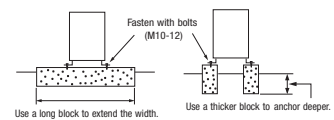


6) Installation

- In installing the unit, fix the unit's legs with bolts specified on the left.
 - The protrusion of an anchor bolt on the front side must be kept within 15 mm.
 - Securely install the unit so that it does not fall over during earthquakes or strong winds, etc.
 - Refer to the left illustrations for information regarding concrete foundations.
 - Install the unit in a level area. (With a gradient of 5 mm or less.)
- Improper installation can result in a compressor failure, broken piping within the unit and abnormal noise generation.



② Notabilia for installation



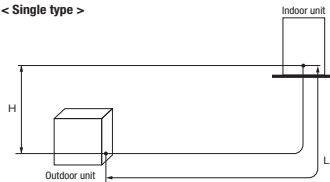
2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK

1) Restrictions on unit installation and use

- Check the following points in light of the indoor unit specifications and the installation site.
- Observe the following restrictions on unit installation and use. Improper installation can result in a compressor failure or performance degradation.

Restrictions	Dimensional restrictions			Marks appearing in the drawing on the right
	71VNX	100VNX	140VNX	
One-way pipe length of refrigerant piping	30m or less	30m or less	30m or less	L
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher,	7m or less		H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower,	7m or less		H

< Single type >



2) Determination of pipe size

- Determine refrigerant pipe size pursuant to the following guidelines based on the indoor unit specifications.

	71VNX, 100VNX, 140VNX	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
Outdoor unit connected	φ15.88 Flare	φ9.52 Flare
Refrigerant piping	φ15.88	φ9.52
Indoor unit connected	φ15.88	φ9.52
Connected indoor unit model	HSB100, HMK100 (71VNX, 100VNX), HSB140 (140VNX)	

3) Refrigerant pipe wall thickness and material

- Select refrigerant pipes of the table shown on the right wall thickness and material as specified for each pipe size.

Pipe diameter [mm]	9.52	15.88
Minimum pipe wall thickness [mm]	0.8	1.0
Pipe material*	O-type pipe	O-type pipe

*Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe C1220T, JIS H 3300

NOTE

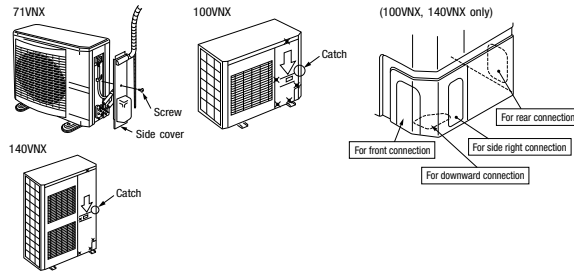
- Select pipes having a wall thickness larger than the specified minimum pipe thickness.

4) On-site piping work

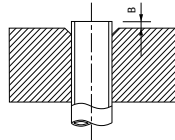
IMPORTANT Take care so that installed pipes may not touch components within a unit. If touching with an internal component, it will generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

How to remove the service panel First remove the screw (s) (X mark) of the service panel or the side cover and push it down into the direction of the arrow mark and then remove it by pulling it toward you.

- The pipe can be laid in any of the following directions: side right, front, rear and downward. (100VNX, 140VNX)
- Remove a knock-out plate provided on the pipe penetration to open a minimum necessary area and attach an edging material supplied as an accessory by cutting it to an appropriate length before laying a pipe. (100VNX, 140VNX)
- Carry out the on site piping work with the service valve fully closed.
- Give sufficient protection to a pipe end (compressed and blazed, or with an adhesive tape) so that water or foreign matters may not enter the piping.
- Bend a pipe to a radius as large as practical.(R100~R150) Do not bend a pipe repeatedly to correct its form.
- Flare connection is used between the unit and refrigerant pipe. Flare a pipe after engaging a flare nut onto it. Flare dimensions for R410A are different from those for conventional R407C. Although we recommend the use of flaring tools designed specifically for R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a protrusion control gauge.



Copper pipe outer diameter	A
φ6.35	9.1
φ9.52	13.2
φ12.7	16.6
φ15.88	19.7



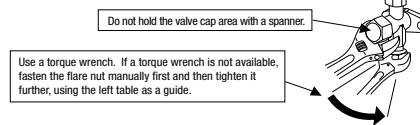
Copper pipe outer diameter	In the case of a rigid (clutch) type	
	With an R410A tool	With a conventional tool
φ6.35	0~0.5	0.7~1.3
φ9.52		
φ12.7		
φ15.88		

● Tighten a flare joint securely with a double spanner.

CAUTION Do not apply force beyond proper fastening torque in tightening the flare nut.

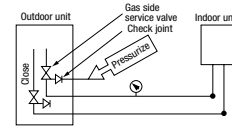
Fix both liquid and gas service valves at the valve main bodies as illustrated on the right, and then fasten them, applying appropriate fastening torque.

Service valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N·m)	Tightening angle (°)	Recommended length of a tool handle (mm)
φ6.35 (1/4")	14~18	45~60	150
φ9.52 (3/8")	34~42	30~45	200
φ12.7 (1/2")	49~61	30~45	250
φ15.88 (5/8")	68~82	15~20	300



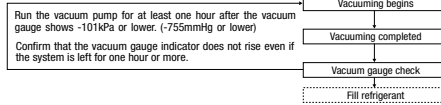
5) Air tightness test

- Although outdoor and indoor units themselves have been tested for air tightness at the factory, check the connecting pipes after the installation work for air tightness from the service valve's check joint equipped on the outdoor unit side. While conducting a test, keep the service valve shut all the time.
 - Raise the pressure to 0.5 MPa, and then stop. Leave it for five minutes to see if the pressure drops.
 - Then raise the pressure to 1.5 MPa, and stop. Leave it for five more minutes to see if the pressure drops.
 - Then raise the pressure to the specified level (4.15 MPa), and record the ambient temperature and the pressure.
 - If no pressure drop is observed with an installation pressurized to the specified level and left for about one day, it is acceptable. When the ambient Temperature fall 1°C, the pressure also fall approximately 0.01 MPa. The pressure, if changed, should be compensated for.
 - If a pressure drop is observed in checking e) and a) - d), a leak exists somewhere. Find a leak by applying bubble test liquid to welded parts and flare joints and repair it. After repair, conduct an air-tightness test again.
- In conducting an air-tightness test, use nitrogen gas and pressurize the system with nitrogen gas from the gas side. Do not use a medium other than nitrogen gas under any circumstances.



6) Evacuation

Work flow When the system has remaining moisture inside or a leaky point, the vacuum gauge indicator will rise. Check the system for a leaky point and then draw air to create a vacuum again.



Pay attention to the following points in addition to the above for the R410A and compatible machines.

- To prevent a different oil from entering, assign dedicated tools, etc. to each refrigerant type. Under no circumstances must a gauge manifold and a charge hose in particular be shared with other refrigerant types (R22, R407C, etc.).
- Use a counterflow prevention adapter to prevent vacuum pump oil from entering the refrigerant system.

7) Additional refrigerant charge

(1) Calculate a required refrigerant charge volume from the following table.

	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe φ 9.52)	Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
71VNX	0.06	2.55	15
100VNX	0.06	2.9	15
140VNX	0.06	4.0	15

● This unit contains factory charged refrigerant covering 15m of refrigerant piping and additional refrigerant charge on the installation site is not required for an installation with up to 15m refrigerant piping. When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m, additionally charge an amount calculated from the pipe length and the above table for the portion in excess of 15m.

Formula to calculate the volume of additional refrigerant required

$$\text{Additional charge volume (kg)} = \{ \text{Main pipe length (m)} - \text{Length covered without additional charge 15 (m)} \} \times 0.06 \text{ (kg/m)}$$

*When an additional charge volume calculation result is negative, it is not necessary to charge refrigerant additionally.

● To charge refrigerant again to the system, recover refrigerant from the system first and then charge the same volume as initial charge.

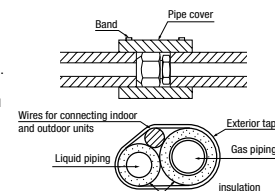
(2) Charging refrigerant

- Since R410A refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, you should charge it, keeping the container cylinder upside down or using a refrigerant cylinder equipped with a siphon tube.
- Charge refrigerant always from the liquid side service port with the service valve shut. When you find it difficult to charge a required amount, fully open the outdoor unit valves on both liquid and gas sides and charge refrigerant from the gas (suction) side service port, while running the unit in the cooling mode. In doing so, care must be taken so that refrigerant may be discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time. When the cylinder valve is throttled down or a dedicated conversion tool to change liquid-phase refrigerant into mist is used to protect the compressor, however, adjust charge conditions so that refrigerant will gasify upon entering the unit.
- In charging refrigerant, always charge a calculated volume by using a scale to measure the charge volume.
- When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete a charge operation within 30 minutes. Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause a compressor failure.

NOTE ● Write down the additional and total refrigerant volume on the label in front.

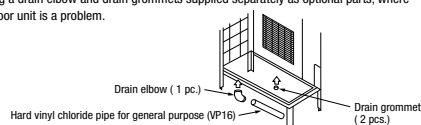
8) Insulation on piping

- Dress refrigerant pipes (both gas and liquid pipes) for heat insulation and prevention of dew condensation.
- Use a heat insulating material that can withstand 120°C or a higher temperature. Poor heat insulating capacity can cause heat insulation problems or cable deterioration.
 - Improper heat insulation/anti-dew dressing can result in a water leak or dripping causing damage to household effects, etc.
 - All gas pipes must be securely heat insulated in order to prevent damage from dripping water that comes from the condensation formed on them during a cooling operation or personal injury from burns because their surface can reach quite a high temperature due to discharged gas flowing inside during a heating operation.
 - Wrap indoor units' flare joints with heat insulating parts (pipe cover) for heat insulation (both gas and liquid pipes).
 - Give heat insulation to both gas and liquid side pipes. Bundle a heat insulating material and a pipe tightly together so that no gaps may be left between them and wrap them together with a connecting cable by a dressing tape.
 - Both gas and liquid pipes need to be dressed with 20 mm or thicker heat insulation materials above the ceiling where relative humidity exceeds 70%.



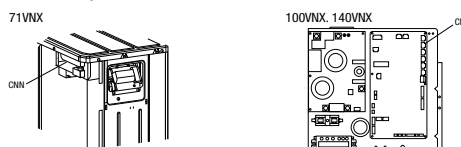
3. DRAIN PIPING WORK

● Execute drain piping by using a drain elbow and drain grommets supplied separately as optional parts, where water drained from the outdoor unit is a problem.



- There are 3 drain holes provided on the bottom plate of an outdoor unit to discharge condensed water.
- When condensed water needs to be led to a drain, etc., install the unit on a flat base (supplied separately as an option part) or concrete blocks.
- Connect a drain elbow as shown in the illustration and close the other two drain holes with grommets.

- Do not use drain elbow and grommet made of plastic for drain piping when base heater for outdoor unit is used. Plastic grommet and elbow will be damaged and burnt in worst case.
- Prepare another drain tray made of metallic material for collecting drain when base heater is used.
- In case plastic grommet and drain elbow is used in warm climate area, disconnect the connector for heater on PCB shown in the drawing.



4. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK For details of electrical cabling, refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

PSC012D066V

Electrical installation work must be performed by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country.

Electrical installation work must be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installations in the country.

- Ground the unit. Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or telephone grounding wire. If improperly grounded, an electric shock or malfunction may result.
- A grounding wire must be connected before connecting the power cable. Provide a grounding wire longer than the power cable.
- Do not lay electronic control cables (remote control and signaling wires) and other cables together outside the unit. Laying them together can result in the malfunctioning or a failure of the unit due to electric noises.
- Fasten cables so that they do not touch the piping, etc.
- When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection and then attach the cover securely. (Improper cover attachment can result in malfunctioning or a failure of the unit, if water penetrates into the box.)

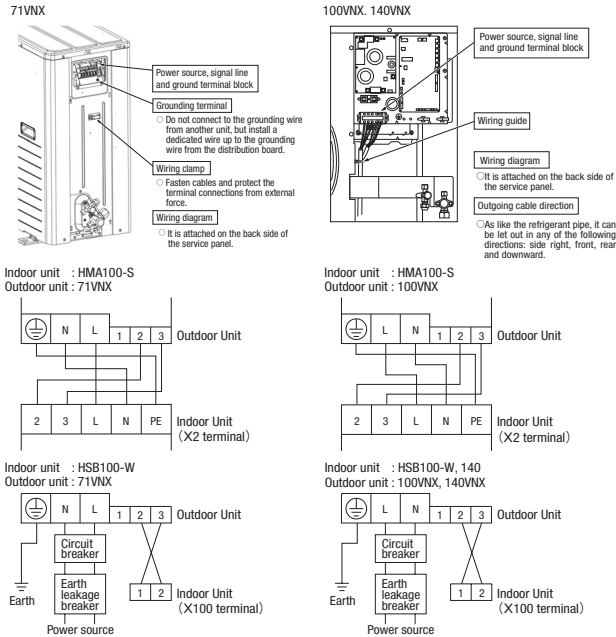
- Connect a pair bearing a common terminal number with an indoor-outdoor connecting wire.
- In cabling, fasten cables securely so that no external force may work on terminal connections.
- Grounding terminals are provided in the control box.

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

- Always perform grounding system installation work with the power cord unplugged.

Main fuse specification

Model	Specification	Part No.
71VNX	250V 20A	SSA564A117
100VNX,140VNX	250V 30A	SSA564A161



5. COMMISSIONING For details of commissioning, refer to the Indoor unit installation manual

- WARNING**
- Before conduct a test run, make sure that the operation valves are open.
 - Turn on power 6 hours prior to a test run to energize the crank case heater.
 - Do not turn on the power when the ambient temperature is below -20°C to avoid breakdown of electronic component.
 - In case of the first operation after turning on power, even if the unit does not operate for 30 minutes, it is not a breakdown.
 - Always give a 3-minute or longer interval before you start the unit again whenever it is stopped.
 - Removing the service panel will expose high-voltage live parts and high-temperature parts, which are quite dangerous. Take utmost care not to incur an electric shock or burns. Do not leave the unit with the service panel open.

A failure to observe these instructions can result in a compressor breakdown.

- When you leave the outdoor unit with power supplied to it, be sure to close the panel.

Item No used in the installation manual	Item	Check item	Check
2	Refrigerant plumbing	Were air-tightness test and vacuum extraction surely performed?	
		Are heat insulation materials installed on both liquid and gas pipes?	
		Are operation valves surely opened for both liquid and gas systems?	
4	Electric wiring	Is the unit free from cabling errors such as uncompleted connection, or reversed phase?	
		Doesn't cabling cross-connect between units, where more than one unit are installed?	
		Do indoor-outdoor connecting cables connect between the same terminal numbers?	
		Is the unit grounded with a dedicated grounding wire not connected to another unit's grounding wire?	
		Are cables free from loose screws at their connection points?	
		Are cables held down with cable clamps so that no external force works onto terminal connections?	

- CAUTION**
- When you operate switches (SW3) for on-site setting, be careful not to touch a live part.
 - You cannot check discharge pressure from the liquid operation valve charge port.
 - The 4-way valve (20S) is energized during a heating operation.
 - When power supply is cut off to reset the unit, give 3 minutes or more before you turn on power again after power is cut off. If this procedure is not observed in turning on power again, "Communication error between outdoor and indoor unit" may occur.

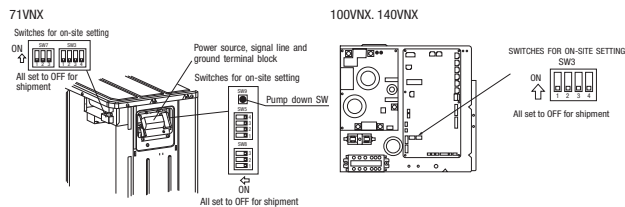
1) Test run method
Refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

2) Checking the state of the unit in operation
Use check joints provided on the piping before and after the four-way valve installed inside the outdoor unit for checking discharge pressure and suction pressure. As indicated in the table shown on the right, pressure detected at each point will vary depending on whether a cooling or heating operation has been selected.

	Check joint of the pipe	Charge port of the gas operation valve
Cooling operation (High pressure)	Discharge pressure (High pressure)	Suction pressure (Low pressure)
Heating operation (Low pressure)	Suction pressure (Low pressure)	Discharge pressure (High pressure)

3) Setting SW3-1, SW3-2, on-site

- Defrost control switching (SW3-1)
 - When this switch is turned ON, the unit will run in the defrost mode more frequently.
 - Set this switch to ON, when installed in a region where outdoor temperature falls below zero during the season the unit is run for a heating operation.
- Snow guard fan control (SW3-2)
 - When this switch is turned on, the outdoor unit fan will run for 10 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3°C or lower and the compressor is not running.
 - When the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.



4) Failure diagnosis in a test run

Indoor Unit Display	Error Code in Error Log	Printed circuit board LED(The cycles of 5 seconds)		Failure event	Action
		Red LED	Green LED		
High pressure alarm	E40	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	63H1 actuation or operation with operation valves shut (occurs mainly during a heating operation)	1. Check whether the operation valves are open. 2. If an error has been canceled when 3 minutes have elapsed since a compressor stop, you can restart the unit by effecting Check Reset from the remote control unit.
Low pressure alarm	E49	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	Low pressure error or operation with operation valves shut (occurs mainly during a cooling operation)	

- If an error code other than those listed above is indicated, refer to the wiring diagram of the outdoor unit and the indoor unit installation manual.

5) The state of the electronic expansion valve.

The following table illustrates the steady states of the electronic expansion valve.

	When power is turned on	When the unit comes to a normal stop		When the unit comes to an abnormal stop	
		During a cooling operation	During a heating operation	During a cooling operation	During a heating operation
Valve for a cooling operation	Complete shut position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position	Full open position
Valve for a heating operation	Full open position	Full open position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position

6) Heed the following on the first operation after turning on the power source.

This outdoor unit may start in the standby mode (waiting for a compressor startup), which can continue up to 30 minutes, to prevent the oil level in the compressor from lowering on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.

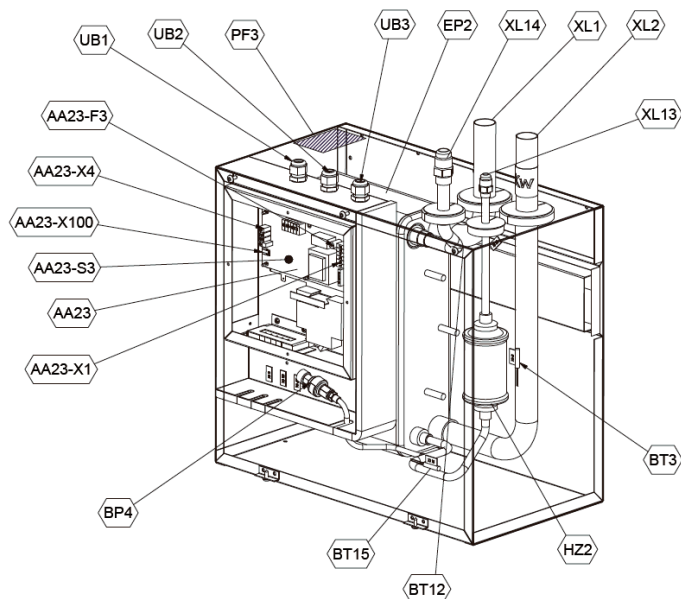
Indoor unit installation

General information for installer

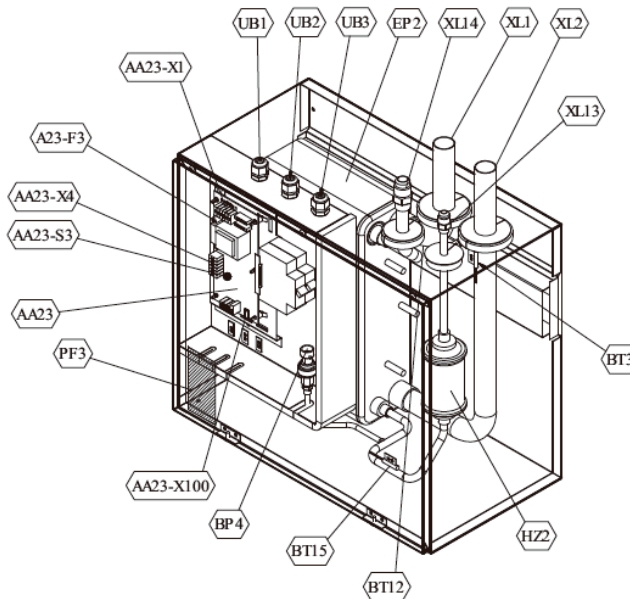
For outdoor unit installation information, see installation manual for outdoor unit.

Over view and design

HSB series



HSB60-W, HSB100-W



HSB140

Pipe connections

- XL1 (Red mark) Climate system supply
- XL2 (Blue mark) Climate system return
- XL14 Connection, gas line
- XL13 Connection, liquid line

Valves etc.

- EP2 Heat exchanger
- HQ1 Particle filter (supplied)
- HZ2 Drying filter

Electrical components

- AA23 Communication board
- AA23-F3 Fuse for external heating cable
- AA23-S3 DIP switch, addressing of outdoor unit
- AA23-X1 Terminal block, incoming supply, connection of KVR
- AA23-X4 Terminal block, communication with indoor module / control module
- AA23-X100 Terminal block, communication outdoor module

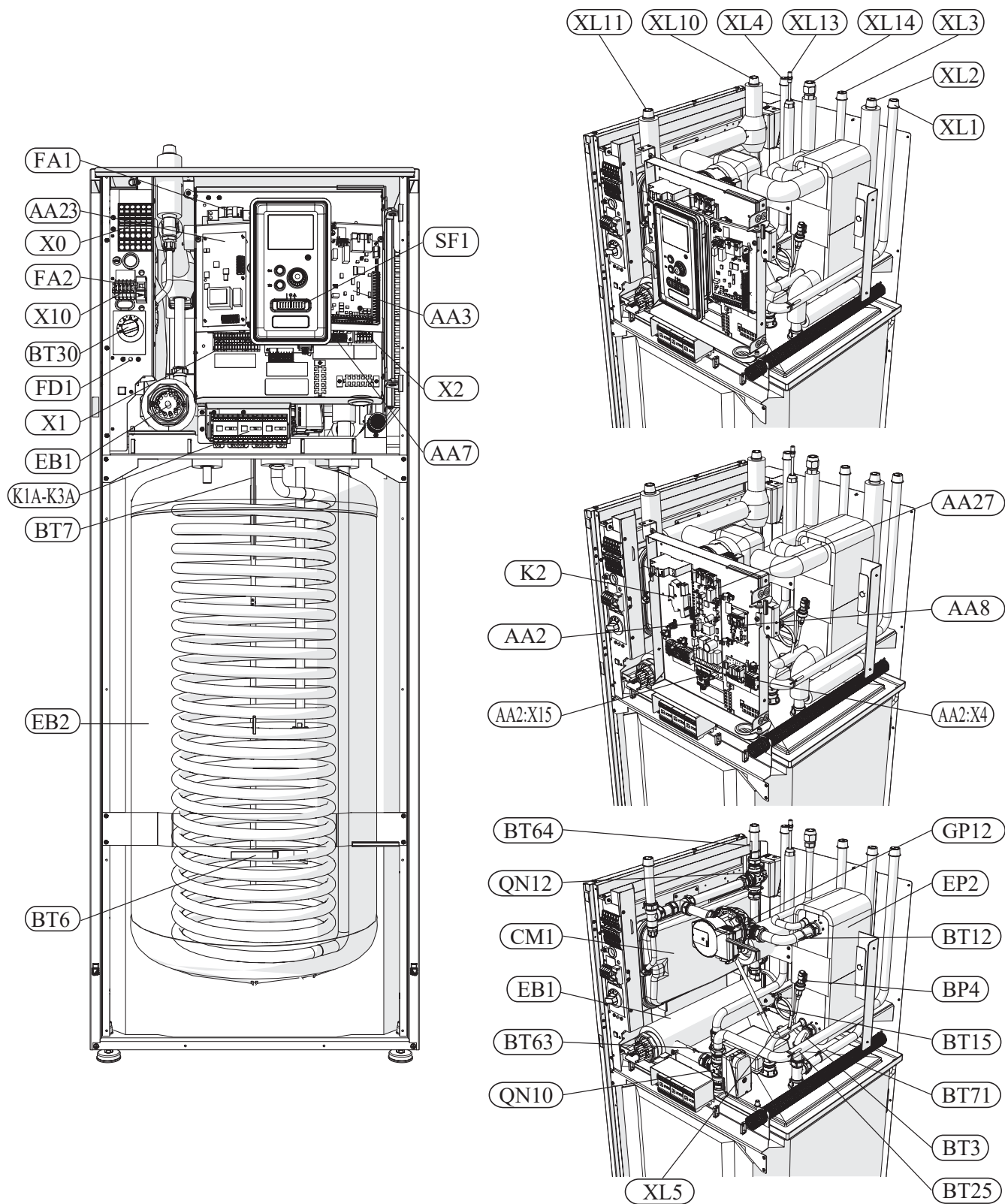
Sensor, thermostats

- BP4 Pressure sensor, high pressure
- BT3 Temperature sensor, heating medium, return
- BT12 Temperature sensor, condenser, supply
- BT15 Temperature sensor, fluid pipe



Miscellaneous

- UB1 Cable gland
- UB2 Cable gland
- UB3 Cable gland

HMA series



Pipe connections

- XL1 () Connection, heating medium, supply
- XL2 () Connection, heating medium, return
- XL3 Connection, cold water
- XL4 Connection, hot water
- XL5 Connection, hot water circulation
- XL10 Connection, cooling
- XL11 Connection, safety group, manometer
- XL13 Connection, liquid cooling medium
- XL14 Connection, gas cooling medium

HVAC elements

- CM1 Diaphragm expansion vessel, closed
- QN10 Isolation valve, domestic hot water / central heating
- QN12 Isolation valve, cooling/heating
- GP12 Circulation pump
- EP2 Heat exchanger

Sensors

- BP4 Pressure sensor, high pressure
- BT3 Temperature sensor, heating medium return
- BT6 Temperature sensor, hot water loading
- BT7 Temperature sensor, top of the hot water heater
- BT12 Temperature sensor, condenser outlet
- BT15 Temperature sensor, liquid
- BT25 Temperature sensor, heating medium supply
- BT63 Temperature sensor, heating medium supply downstream the submersible heater
- BT64 Temperature sensor, cooling medium supply
- BT71 Temperature sensor, heating medium return

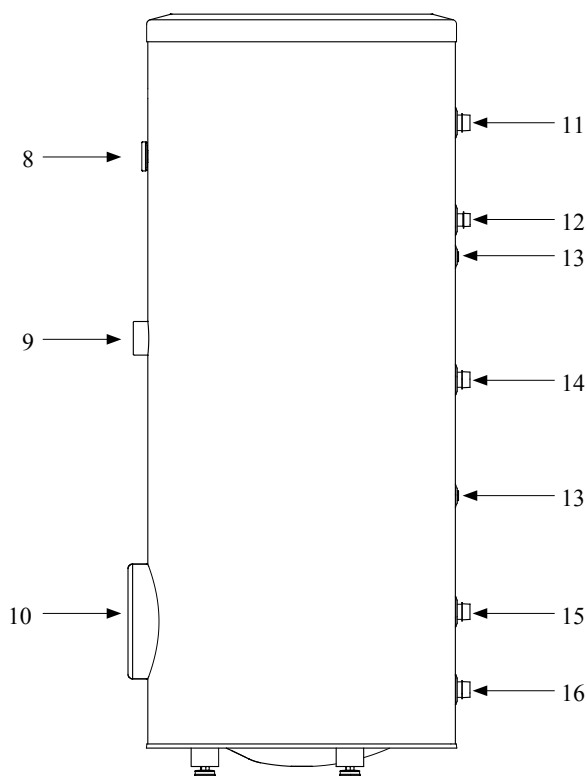
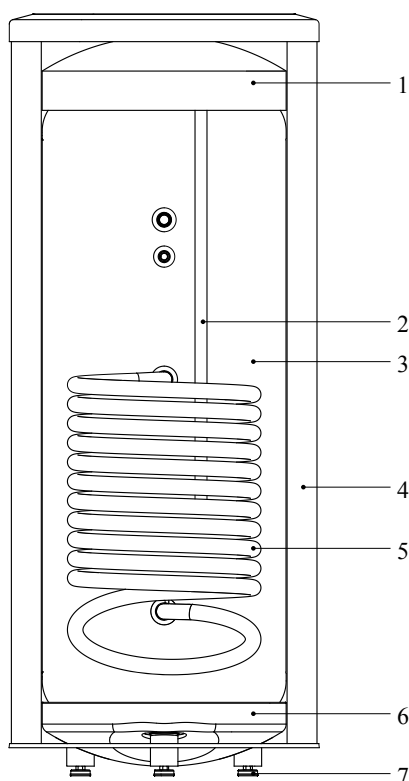
Electrical elements

- X0 High voltage terminal block 400V~/230V~
- X1 Low voltage terminal block 230V~
- X2 Low voltage terminal block 230V~
- X10 Low voltage terminal block 230V~
- AA2:X4 Low voltage terminal block
- AA2: X15 Low voltage terminal block
- K1A-K3A Submersible heater switch
- K2 Alarm relay
- BT30 Thermostat - emergency mode
- AA2 Main card
- AA3 Sensor card
- AA23 Communication card
- AA7 Relay card
- AA8 Titanium anode card
- AA27 Relay card
- FD1 Temperature limiter
- FA1 Circuit breaker (to internal module)
- FA2 Circuit breaker (AMS outdoor unit)
- EB1 Submersible heater

Other

- SF1 Controller switch
- EB2 Domestic hot water tank

PT series



Section of the PT storage tanks

1. Upper insulation of the storage tank
2. Protective magnesium anode
3. Enamelled tank
4. Side insulation of the storage tank
5. Coil
6. Lower insulation of the storage tank
7. Adjustable foot

Side view of the PT storage tanks

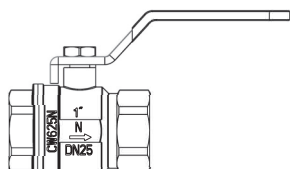
8. Thermometer
9. Connector pipe for mounting electric heating unit
10. Inspection opening
11. Hot water intake connector pipe
12. Hot water circulation connector pipe
13. Temperature sensor cover
14. Coil supply connector pipe
15. Connection of return line from the coil
16. Cold water supply connector pipe

Transport and storage

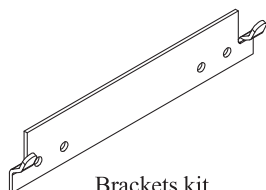
Indoor unit and tank unit must be transported and stored vertically in dry conditions.

Supplied components

HSB series Indoor unit



Particle filter R25 (HQ1).



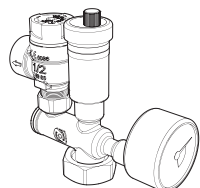
Brackets kit



Replace by $\frac{3}{8}$ " flare on HSB when outdoor unit is FDCW71VNX-W

Flare reduction (HSB100-W only)

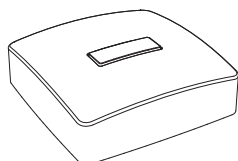
HMA-S series Indoor unit with tank



Safety valve (3bar) with pressure gauge and automatic air vent (1 piece)
*The opening pressure of the safety valve is 3bar.

• Strap for single-phase connection.

• Particle filter R25 (HQ1)



Temperature sensor (2 items)



Current sensor

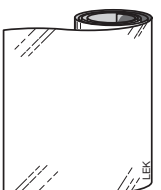
RC-HY20/40-W Control unit



Sensor (2 items)



Insulation tape



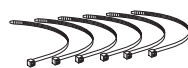
Aluminium tape



Heating pipe paste



Temperature sensor



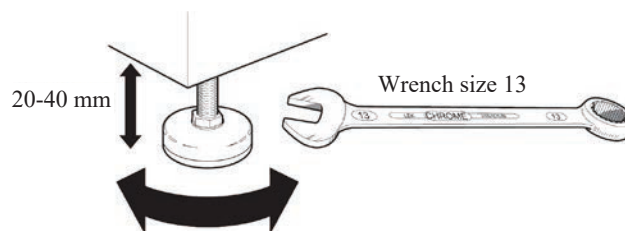
Cable ties

• Current sensor (RC-HY40-W only)

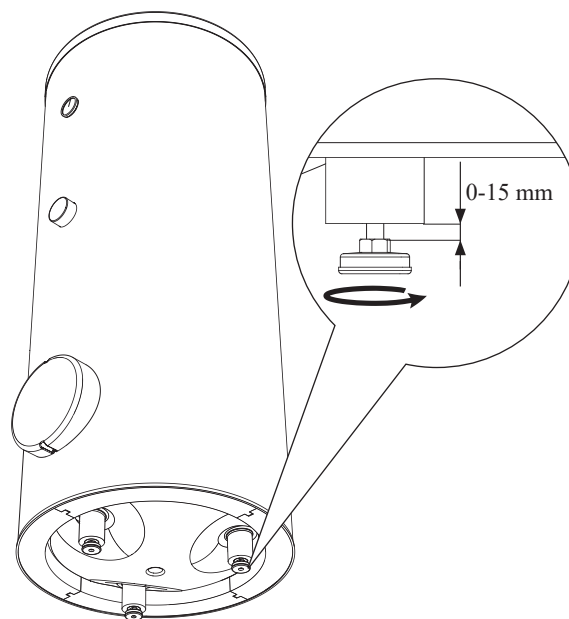
Assembly

- It is recommended that indoor unit is installed in a room with existing floor drainage, most suitably in a utility room or boiler room.
- For indoor unit and control unit, the mounting surface must be firm, flat and vertical, preferably a concrete wall.
- Indoor unit with tank and tank unit must be set on a solid waterproof base that would keep the weight of the unit. The height-adjusting legs allow for levelling and stable setting.

HMA series



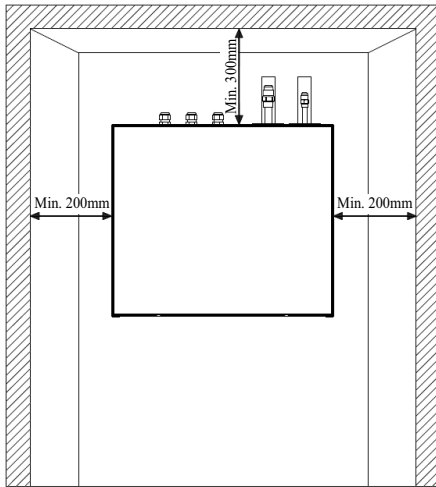
PT series



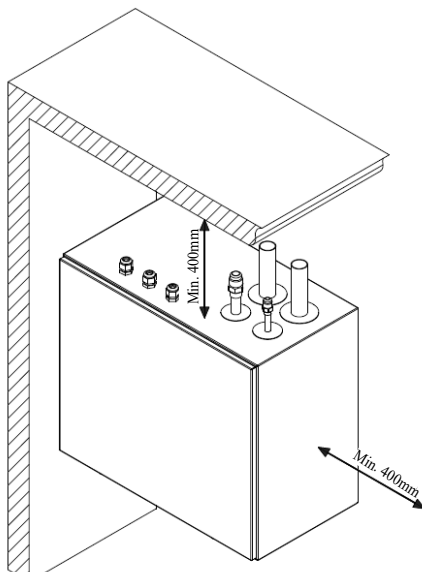
- For indoor unit with tank, floor drain port is required to connect drain hose in case cooling function is used.
- Install indoor unit with its back to an outside wall, ideally in a room where noise does not matter. If this is not possible, avoid placing it against a wall behind a bedroom or other room where noise may be a problem.
- Route pipes so they are not fixed to an internal wall that backs on to a bedroom or living room.
- Install indoor unit with tank, tank unit and its pipings to indoor unit indoors in order to avoid icing.
- Ensure free space described in the following figures for future maintenance.

HSB series

Recommendation for positioning on wall

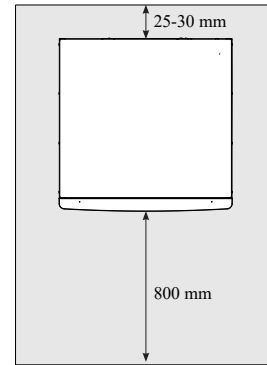


Recommendation for positioning in corner



*Min 800mm is required in front

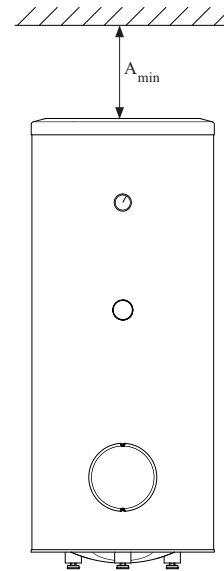
HMA-S series



IMPORTANT

When using an additional heat source, leave behind the device the space necessary for non trouble free connections and subsequent maintenance.

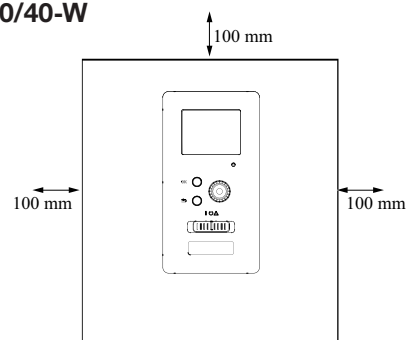
PT series



A_{min} is required on top to replace anode bar, and 500mm is required in front to replace immersion heater if equipped.

Application	Connector pipe dia.	Type of anode	A_{min}
PT300	1"	Chain $\phi 26 \times 8$	150mm
	$\frac{3}{4}$ "	Titanium anode	200mm
PT500	$1\frac{1}{4}$ "	Chain $\phi 33 \times 5$	150mm
	$\frac{3}{4}$ "	Titanium anode	400mm

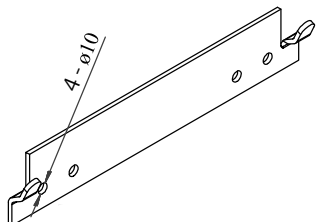
RC-HY20/40-W



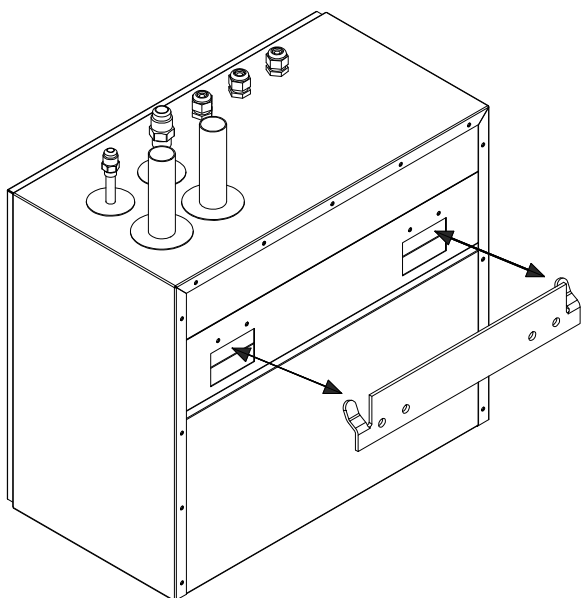
Hanging indoor unit

It is recommended that the split box is installed in a room with existing floor drainage, most suitably in a utility room or boiler room.

1. The bracket for the split box is mounted to the wall by use of appropriate screws.



2. Insert the split box in the bracket mounted to the wall.



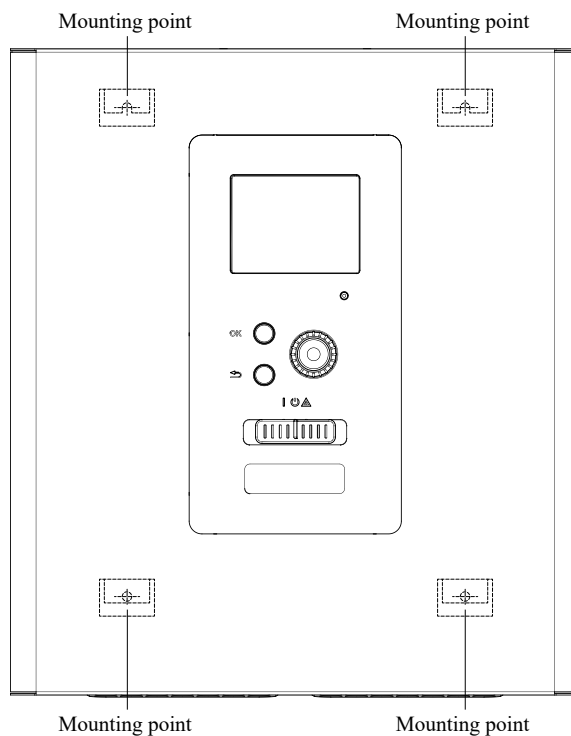
NOTE

Indoor unit weigh A kg excluding water inside.

Indoor unit	A
HSB60-W	16
HSB100-W	18
HSB140	23

Hanging control unit

Use all mounting points and install control unit upright against a flat wall. Make sure whole back surface faces the wall.



Dimensioning expansion vessel

The expansion vessel volume must be at least 5% of total water volume in the circulation system.

HMA-S series is equipped with an expansion vessel with a volume of 10 liters.

Initial pressure and max height difference

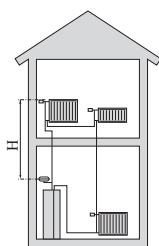
Recommended maximum height difference between expansion vessel and the highest point in the system is 5m.

The initial pressure of the pressure expansion vessel must be dimensioned according to the maximum height (H) between the vessel and the highest positioned radiator, see figure. An initial pressure of 0.5bar (5 mvp) means a maximum permitted height difference of 5m.

If the standard initial pressure in the pressure vessel is not high enough it can be increased by filling via the valve in the expansion vessel. The expansion vessel's standard initial pressure must be entered in the check list on User's manual.

Any change in the initial pressure affects the ability of the expansion vessel to handle the expansion of the water.

Consult local distributor in case height difference exceeds 5m.



Recommended installation order

1. Hang indoor unit and control unit to appropriate position and connect indoor unit and tank unit.
2. Connect indoor unit to climate system, cold and hot water lines as well as any external heat sources. See pages 80,81.
3. Install refrigerant pipes according to the description on the Installation manual for outdoor unit.
4. Connect current limiter, any centralised load control and external contacts as well as the cable between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
5. Connect incoming electricity to indoor unit and/or outdoor unit. See pages 92, 98–99, 111–113.
6. Follow the commissioning instructions on pages 114–127.

Pipe installation

General

Pipe installation must be carried out in accordance with current norms and directives.

A following table shows plumbing necessary for each product.

	Refrigerant	Plumbing
HSB	Necessary	Necessary
HMA-S	Necessary	Necessary
PT	—	Necessary
PC-HY	—	—

This heat pump system is designed for low or medium temperature heating system. It is recommended water temperature must not exceed 55°C on supply and 45°C on return at lowest design outdoor temperature (DOT) though indoor unit can operate with a return temperature of up to 65°C and an outgoing temperature from the unit of 65°C.

Indoor unit is not equipped with shut off valves; these must be installed outside the heat pump to facilitate any future servicing.

Indoor unit can be connected to the radiator system, floor heating system and/or fan convectors.

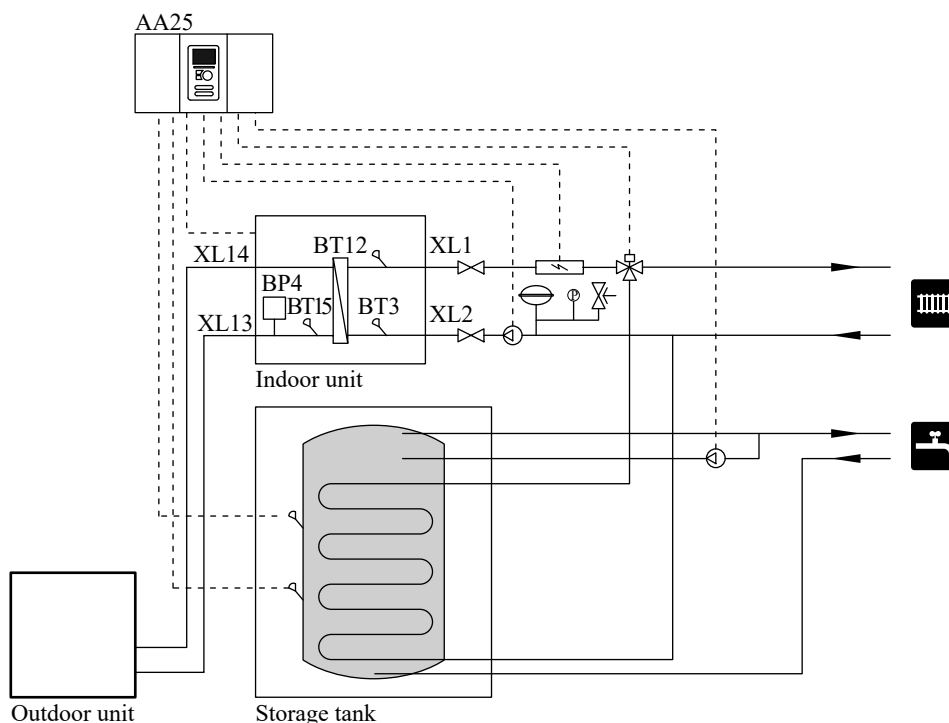
Safety valve is not equipped with in indoor unit. Make sure to install safety valve in the circuit.

Installation diagram

FDCW series outdoor unit provides heat for space heating and domestic hot water using free energy in the outdoor air within the range of low temperature up to -20°C. Connection is different according to the type of indoor unit (see below figures). The system is controlled by RC-HY20-W or RC-HY40-W control unit.

HSB series

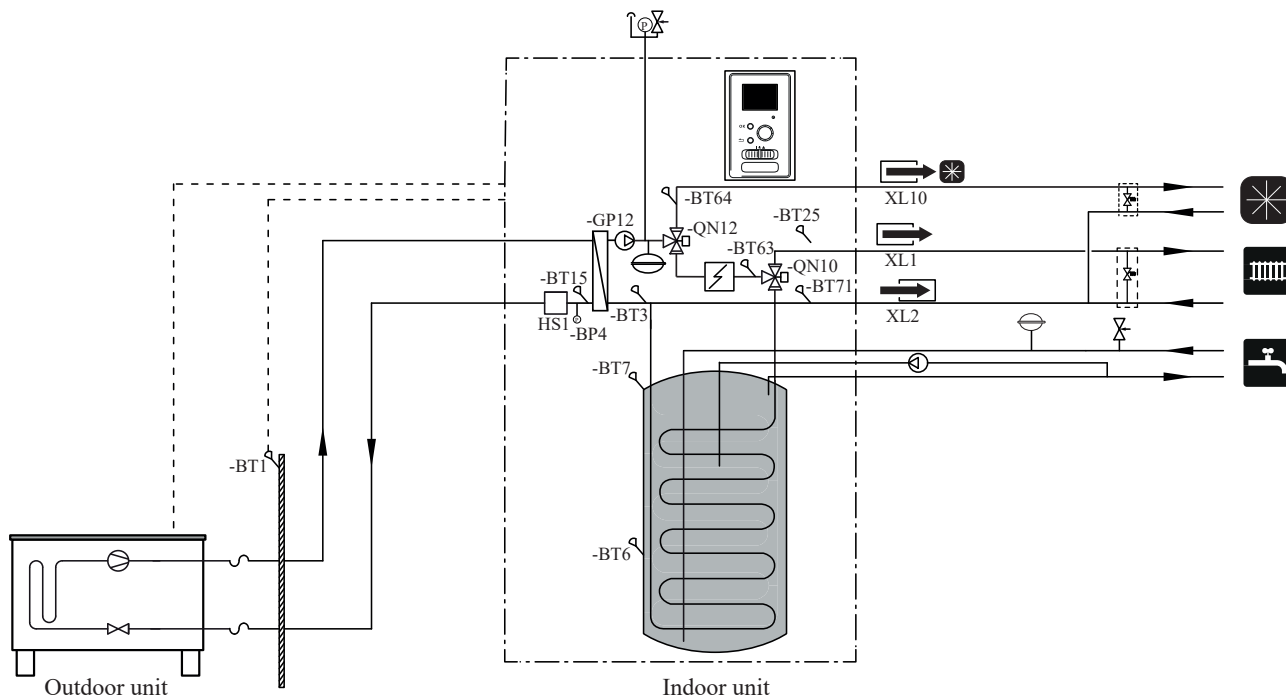
HSB series indoor unit is equipped with plate heat exchanger. It needs to install expansion vessel, shut-off valves, safety valve, electric heater and circulation pump to make a complete heating system. In case domestic hot water is required, 3-way valve and tank is also necessary.



HMA-S series

HMA-S indoor unit is equipped with coil water heater, expansion vessel, safety valve, electric heater, plate heat exchanger, sensors and gauge, circulation pump, and controller.

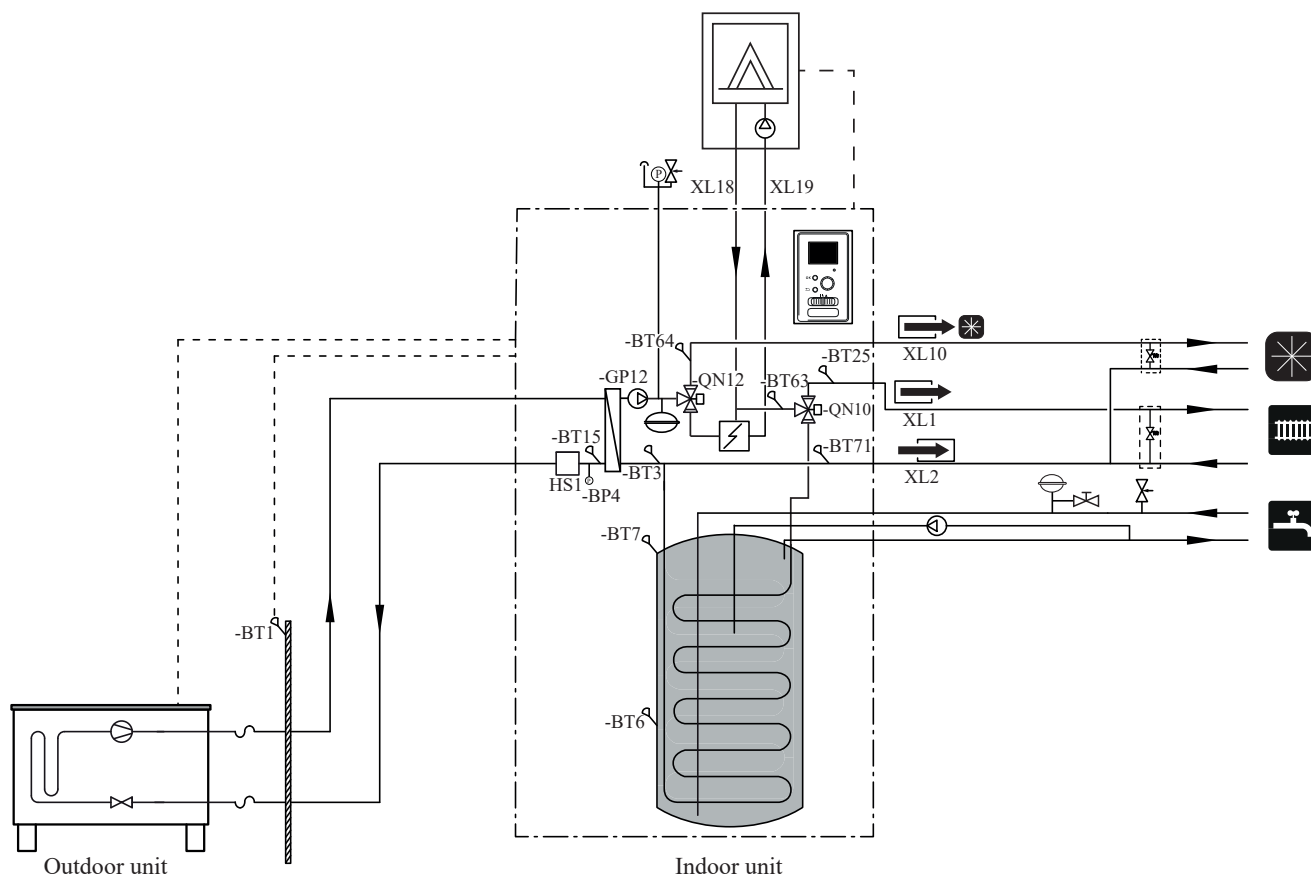
Basic connection diagram



Symbol	Description
	Cut-off valve
	Non-return valve
	Three-way valve
	Safety valve
	Temperature sensor
	Diaphragm expansion vessel
	Manometer
	Vent
	Circulation pump
	Electric module

Symbol	Description
	Particulate filter
	Compressor
	Heat exchanger
	Cooling
	Central heating systems
	Domestic hot water
	Relief valve
	Additional heat source

Scheme with the connection of an additional heat source



Indoor HMA-S module

- It is recommended that the HMA-S module should be installed in a room with a floor drain, at best in a utility room or a boiler house.
- The floor must be solid, concrete at best.
- The HMA-S module must be set with its back to the outer wall, at best in a room where noise is not a problem. If possible, do not place the device near a wall of a bedroom or another room where noise might be a problem.
- The device can be leveled using regulated legs.
- Pipes must be led in such a way that they are not adjacent to the bedroom or living room.
- Remember to leave about 800mm free space at the front and 220mm over the device to provide for future maintenance.

Recommended order of assembly

1. Connect HMA-S module to the heating system, cold, and hot water pipelines.
2. Install the cooling medium pipes.
3. Connect the outdoor temperature sensor, and cables between HMA-S and outdoor unit.
4. Connect power supply to module HMA-S .
5. Proceed according to start-up instructions in chapter Start-up and regulation.

System requirements

The minimum water volume in the climate system is subject to the values in the table below. If it is not fulfilled, volume vessel must be installed.

(liter)

	With underfloor cooling application	Without underfloor cooling application
HSB60-W, HMA60-S FDCW60VNX-A	80	50
HSB100-W, HMA100-S FDCW71VNX-A	80	50
HSB100-W, HMA100-S FDCW100VNX-A	100	80
HSB140 FDCW140VNX-A	150	150

Overflow valve

NOTE

A free flow is required for all docking options, which means that an overflow valve must be installed.

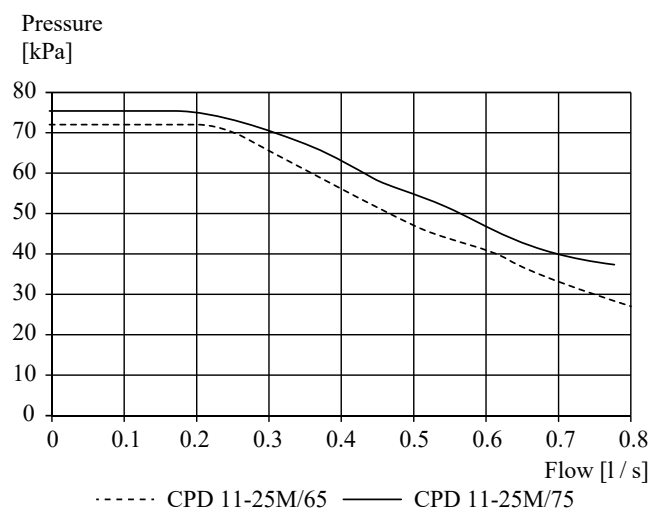
The circulation pump may become damaged.

Pump capacity diagram

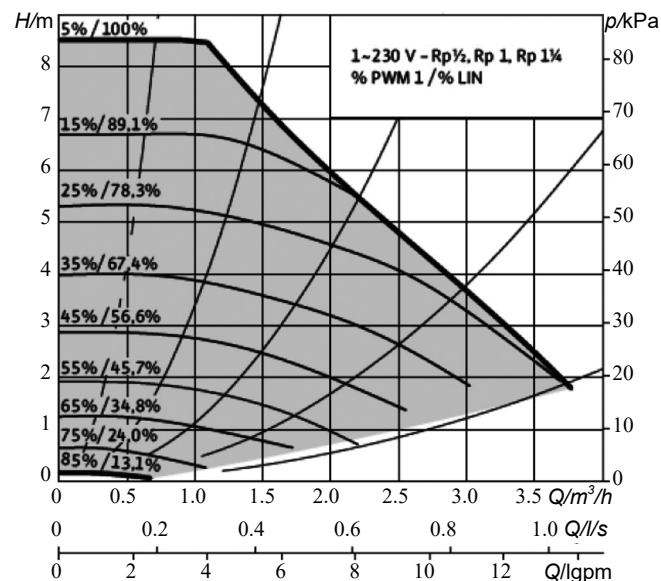
HSB series

HSB series is not equipped with circulation pump.

This graph shows the characteristic of CPD11-25M65 and 75.

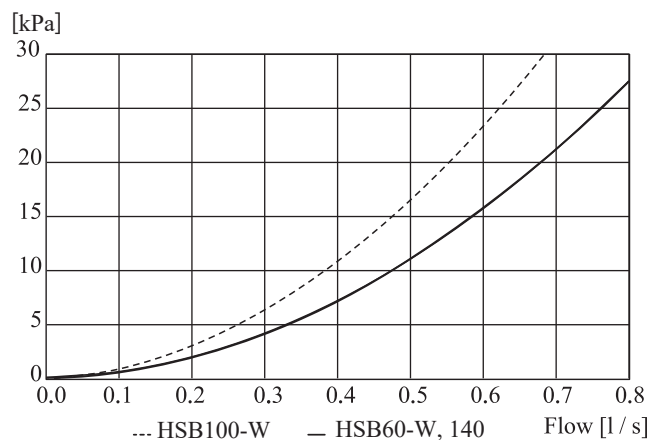


HMA-S series

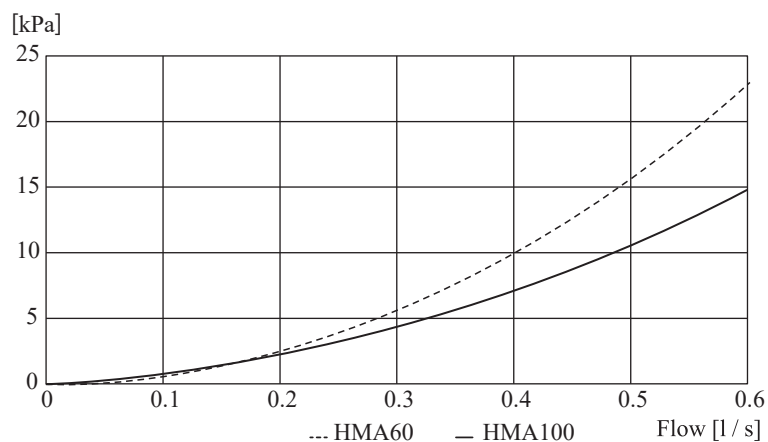


Pressure drop in indoor unit

HSB series



HMA-S series



Connection of extra circulation pump

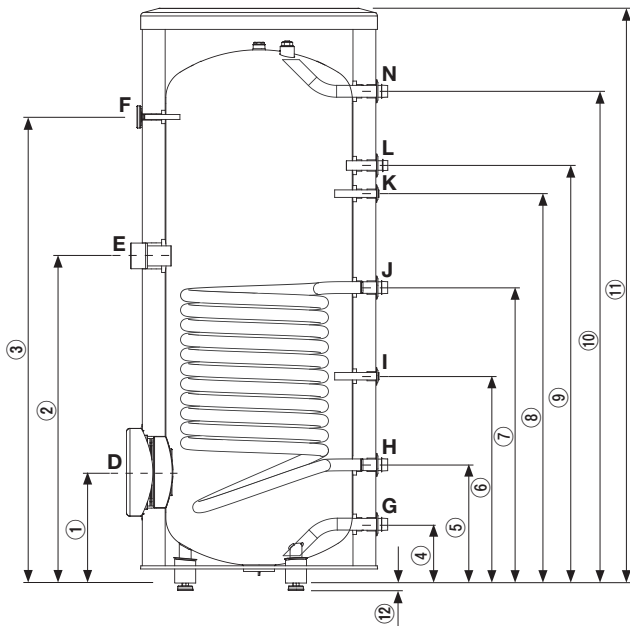
When connecting extra circulation pumps, requirements for pressure, maximum flow etc. must be satisfied.

NOTE

Non-return valve must be installed in case extra circulation pump is used.

The circulation pump may become damaged.

PT300/500



Meaning of symbol

Connection		U/m	PT300/500
D	Inspection opening	mm	φ 120
E	Heating unit connection	inch	1½" Female
F	Thermometer enclosure	mm	φ 10 Female
N	Hot water outlet	inch	1" Male
L	Hot water circulation	inch	¾" Male
K	Temperature sensor enclosure (BT7)	mm	φ 16 Female
J	Coil supply	inch	1" Male
I	Temperature sensor enclosure (BT6)	mm	φ 16 Female
H	Return from coil	inch	1" Male
G	Cold water input	inch	1" Male

Dimensions			
		PT300	PT500
①	mm	315	337
②	mm	930	967
③	mm	1325	1477
④	mm	167	188
⑤	mm	336	288
⑥	mm	588	387
⑦	mm	840	805
⑧	mm	1107	1234
⑨	mm	1187	1302
⑩	mm	1398	1545
⑪	mm	1634	1835
⑫	mm	21-0/+15	

Water circuit

Connection to heating system

Connect XL1 to supply line and XL2 to return line from heating system.

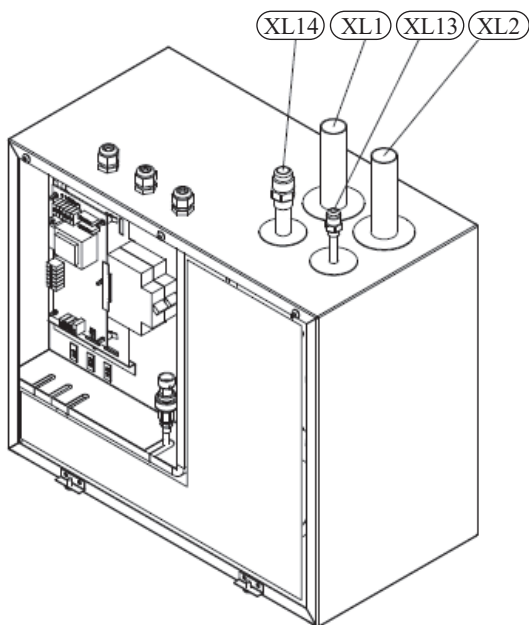
- All required safety devices and shut-off valves must be installed as close to the indoor unit as possible.
- Install bleed valves where necessary, highest point of the water system in usual case.
- When connecting to a system with thermostats on all radiators, install an overflow valve or remove some of the thermostats to ensure sufficient flow.
- Install a safety valve with manometer on heating circuit and hot water circuit. (FL2)

For HSB series install a safety valve for heating circuit on the water pipe returning to indoor unit since it doesn't have port for FL2.

The entire length of the overflow water pipe from the safety valves must be inclined to prevent water pockets and must also be frost proof.

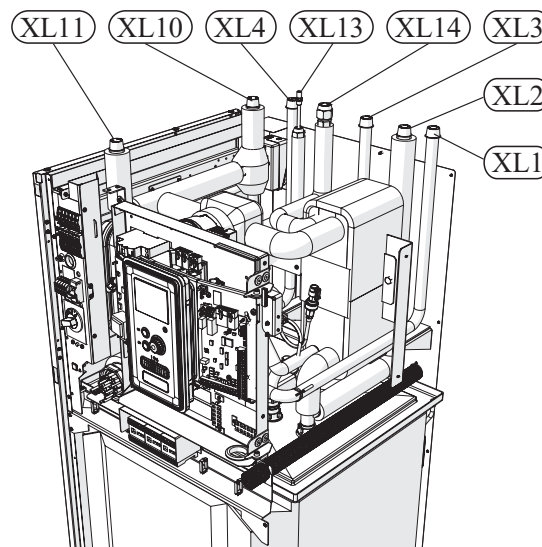
- The end of overflow water pipe from the safety valves must left open to the atmosphere. The water may drip from the pipe.

HSB series



Install safety valve as close to XL2 as possible.

HMA-S series



Install safety valve FL2 on XL11.

Connection to hot water heater

For HSB series indoor unit, it is necessary to connect PT storage tank unit applying 3-way valve in order to use domestic hot water function.

For HMA-S series indoor unit, 180L tank unit is integrated in indoor unit.

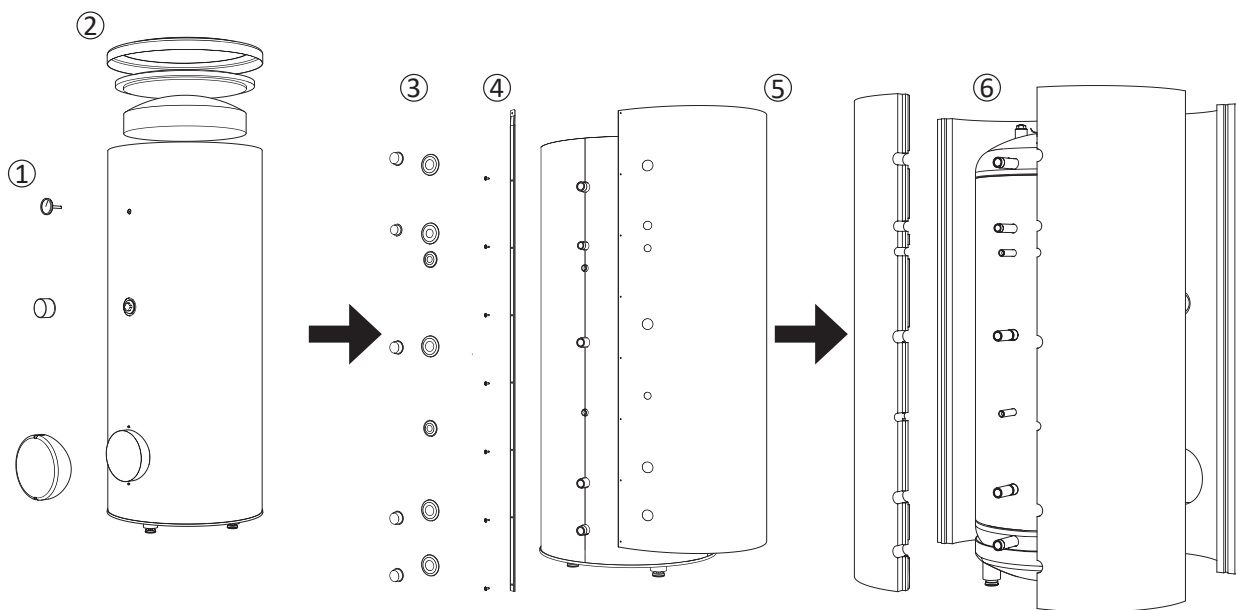
Housing disassembly of tank unit

Removable housing with thermal insulation facilitates transport and installation of the storage tank. Disassembly the housing in the following order (see next page figure):

1. Remove the temperature gauge, plug of the heating element connector pipe and blanking plate of the inspection opening.
2. Remove the upper cover of the housing together with thermal insulation.
3. Remove the plugs from the connector pipes and black bushings.
4. Remove the fixing screws and the strip connecting the housing jacket.
5. Remove the jacket surrounding the tank (housing jacket).
6. Remove the four-piece thermal insulation.

After the installation of the storage tank in its final location, reinstall the removed components in the reverse order.

Housing and thermal insulation disassembly



Connecting hot water tank to indoor unit

CAUTION

Installation and commissioning of the storage tank shall only be done by appropriately qualified installer. The installer should inform the user of the functions of the product and provide the necessary information on its safe use.

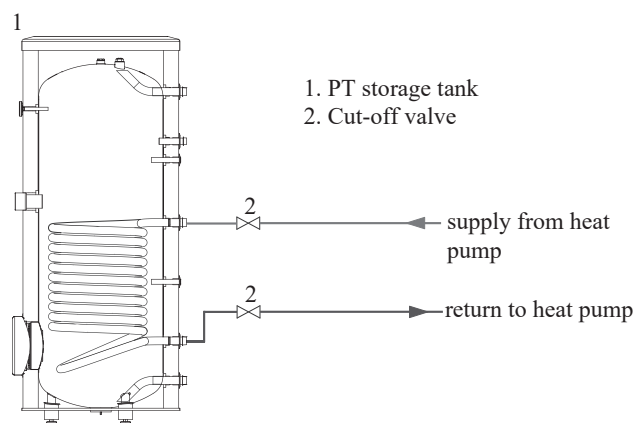
Information

We recommend installing a strainer in order to protect the pumps, check valve and the components of the heating system.

- Tank and its pipings to indoor unit must be installed indoors where the temperature wouldn't drop below 15°C in order to prevent pipings from icing.
- Maximum piping length between indoor unit and tank is 10 m.
- Tank unit should be placed on firm, preferably a concrete floor or foundation.

- Tank unit can be aligned using the adjustable feet.
- Protection against overpressure shall be made in accordance with the relevant regulations.
- Connect the heating system according to the installation diagram (see figure).

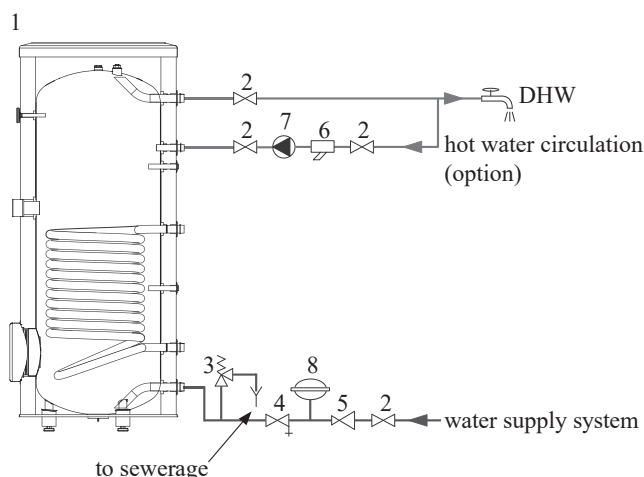
Installation diagram of the PT storage tank with one coil.



Connecting hot water tank to water main

- Install a mixing valve if the temperature exceeds 60 °C.
- It is recommended to install a thermostatic mixing valve for stable temperature hot water supply.
- Connect the storage tank to the water supply system of water pressure at least 1bar and max 10bar. Install a pressure reducer if the pressure at the cold water inlet to the tank is higher than allowed.
- Install a safety valve which have a maximum 8.0 bar opening pressure on the incoming domestic water line according to outline diagram in order to protect the storage tank against overpressure. Pressure increases during heating the water.
- During heating the water, small and temporary water flow from the safety valve can occur, which indicates that the pressure has increased above the rated value, which triggered the valve. This may in no way be prevented.
- Safety valve drain line should be installed with a decline, in an environment free of freezing and remain open to the atmosphere. The manufacturer is not responsible for flooding the room through the safety valve.
- Blocked safety valve can cause equipment failure. Drain the outflow from the safety valve to the sewerage or drain grate.
- Connect the water supply system according to the installation diagram.

Installation diagram of the PT storage tank with one coil.



1. PT storage tank
2. Cut-off valve
3. Safety valve
4. Drain valve
5. Pressure reducer (option, if the pressure in the system exceeds the allowable value)
6. Strainer
7. Hot water circulating pump
8. Hot water expansion vessel

Information

In order to minimize the flow of water from the safety valve associated with the thermal expansion of the liquid, it is advisable to install a suitable expansion vessel at the cold water connection (see item 8.)

CAUTION

Installation of the appropriate safety valve in the cold water supply line protecting the unit against overpressure is mandatory!

CAUTION

Installation of necking of any kind (such as reducers, dirt pockets, etc.) and cut-off valves between the storage tank and the safety valve is not allowed. Only a T-pipe with a drain valve and a T-pipe with an expansion vessel may be installed in these line sections.

CAUTION

Never block the safety valve or drain line. This can cause a dangerous overpressure in the storage tank.

CAUTION

When heating water, slight, temporary discharge from the safety valve can occur. This is a correct safety valve function. Any attempt to interfere in its operation can lead to the danger and destruction of the storage tank.

CAUTION

Never use the equipment with clogged safety valves.

Connection

After the installation and levelling the tank, follow the procedure below (for the connector pipe symbols, refer to page 85):

1. Remove protecting plugs from the connector pipes
2. Connect the hot water intake line (N).
3. Connect the cold water supply line together with the required safety valves (G).
4. If the system has the hot water circulation system, connect it to the connector pipe (L). Otherwise, plug the pipe.
5. Connect the supply (J) and return (H) of the heating medium to the coil.

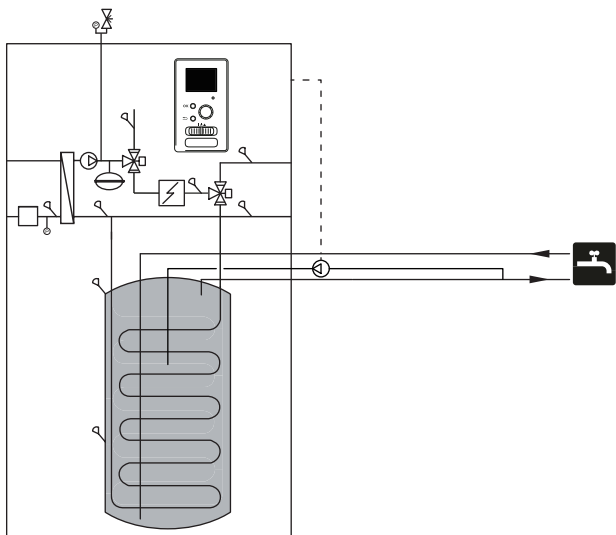
CAUTION

If there is an electric heating module installed in the storage tank, fill the tank with water before connecting it to the electrical installation.

Hot water circulation circuit

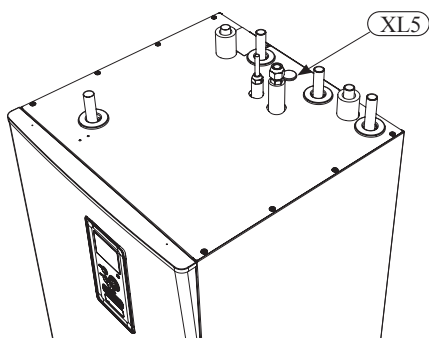
Hot water circulation function is available for HMA-S series and PT series.

HMA-S series

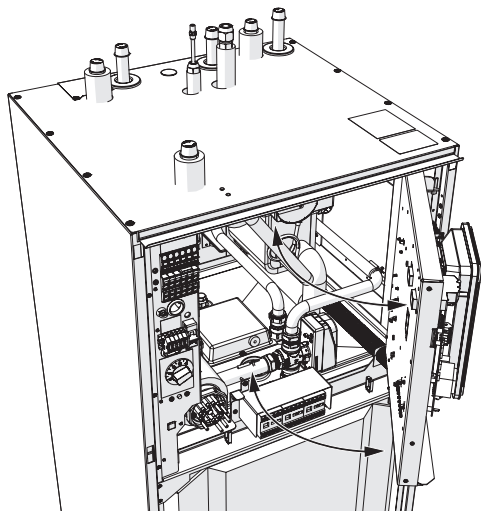


To connect the circulation:

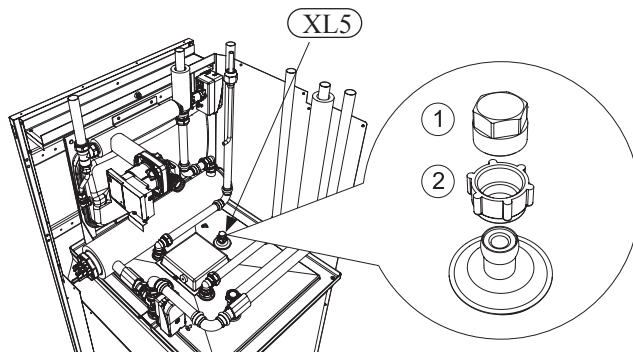
1. Remove the XL5 plug from the top of the housing.



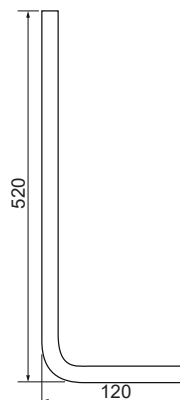
2. Remove the front panel, then move the control box to the right to gain access, to the hydraulic connections.



3. Remove the plug from the circulation pipe (XL5).



4. Install the elbow, facing the rear housing, on the circulation pipe.
5. Connect the pipe to the elbow, with the dimensions shown in the figure below, leading pipe in the top of the housing, in place of the XL5 plug.
6. At the output of the pipe from the HMA-S unit, install the circulating pump, and then connect its control to the expansion card.
7. Install the control box and the front panel.



Circulation pipe dimensions (*)



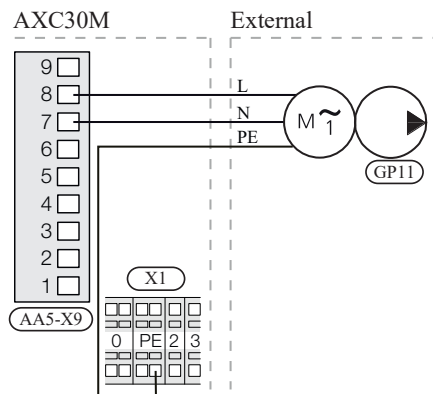
Elbow 15×15 (*)

(*) Prepared on site.

Connection of the hot water circulation pump control

The DHW circulation pump should be connected AXC30M accessory card.

Connections : AA5-X9:8 (230V), AA5-X9:7 (N) and X1: PE



PT series

If the system has the hot water circulation system, connect it to the port L (see page 85).

Then install the Cut-off valves, circulation pump and strainer.

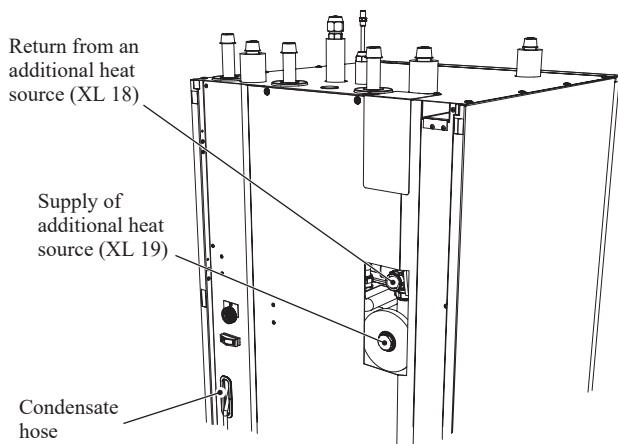
Connection of external heat source

HSB series

External heat source, e.g. a gas or oil boiler or electric heater, can be connected on supply line of heating system (XL1).

HMA-S series

An external heat source, eg a gas or oil boiler, can be connected to the back of the HMA-S, removing the access block to the connection sockets (picture below). Scheme on page 82.



Refrigerant circuit

Connecting refrigerant pipes

See Installation manual for outdoor unit.

Piping insulation

Install insulation on all piping in order to avoid condensation during cooling operation.

It is also strongly recommended to insulate piping for heating only application in order to avoid getting burned or reducing the heating capacity.

The thickness of the insulation should be 20mm where the relative humidity exceeds 70%.

Drain connection

HMA-S series is equipped with a condensate hose in the heat exchanger section. The hose drains all condensate away from the device to minimize the risk of damage. If necessary, the hose can be extended.

Electrical installation

General

Indoor unit must be installed via an isolator switch in accordance with the local codes and regulations.

For HMA-S series, electrical equipments, except outdoor air sensor, room sensor, current transformers and outdoor unit has been connected at the factory.

- Disconnect the indoor unit, outdoor unit and control unit before insulation testing of the house wiring.
- If the building is equipped with an earth-fault breaker, Hydrolution should be equipped with a separate one.
- Do not lay communication, sensor or signal cables for external connection close to high voltage lines.
- Minimum cross section of communication, sensor or signal cables for external connection must be 0.5mm² up to 50 m, for example EKKX, LiYY or equivalent.
- Use screened three core cable for communication between controller (RC-HY20/40-W) and indoor unit (HSB series / HMA-S series).
- When laying cables into indoor units and controllers, be sure to route the cable grommet (UB1 AND UB2).
- Be careful to route cables not to be damaged by metal edge or trapped by panels.
- Outdoor unit is equipped with a single phase compressor. This means that phase L1 is loaded with up to α A during compressor operation.

Outdoor unit	α
FDCW60VNX-A	15
FDCW71VNX-A	16
FDCW100VNX-A	23
FDCW140VNX-A	25

NOTE

Electrical installation and service must be carried out under the supervision of a qualified electrician.

Turn off the circuit breaker before carrying out any servicing.

Electrical installation and wiring must be carried out in accordance with the stipulations in force.

Make sure to turn off the power source during installation.

NOTE

Do not turn on the power on control until the boiler is filled with water.

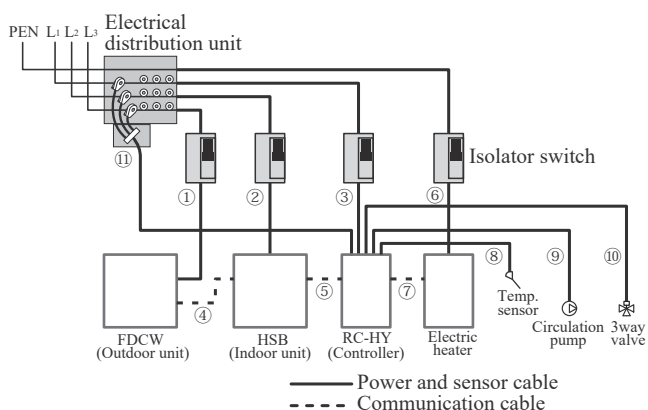
The circulation pump and immersion heater may become damaged.

NOTE

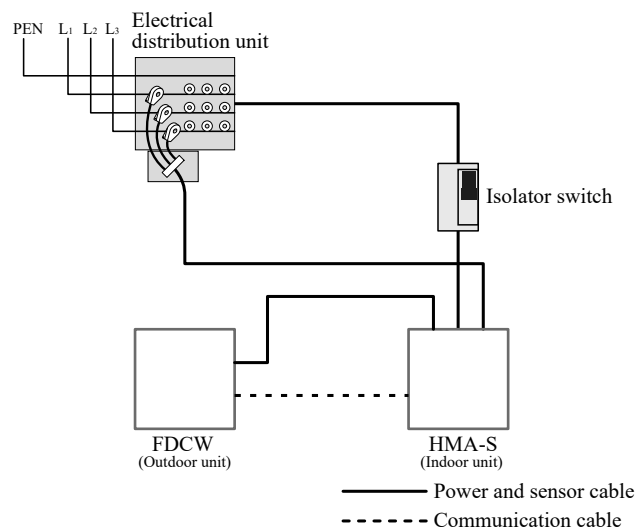
If the power source cable is damaged, only authorised person may replace it to avoid danger or damage.

Principle diagram, electrical installation

HSB series



HMA-S series



Item		Cable size
①	POWER - FDCW60VNX-A	3 cores, 2.0mm ² (power cable)
	POWER - FDCW71VNX-A	3 cores, 3.5mm ² (power cable)
	POWER - FDCW100VNX-A	3 cores, 5.5mm ² (power cable)
	POWER - FDCW140VNX-A	
②	POWER - HSB60-W	3 cores, 1.5mm ² (power cable)
	POWER - HSB100-W	
	POWER - HSB140	
③	POWER - Controller	3 cores, 1.5mm ² (power cable)
④	Outdoor unit - Indoor unit	2 cores, 1.5mm ² (communication cable)
⑤	Indoor unit - Controller	3 cores, 0.5mm ² , LiYY, EKKX or equivalent (communication cable)
⑥	Power - Electrical heater	Selected according to power source voltage(230V/400V). Please refer to installation manual for ELK.
⑦	Controller - Electrical heater	4 cores, 0.5mm ² (communication cable)
⑧	Controller - Temperature sensors	2 cores, 0.5mm ² (each sensor)
⑨	Controller - Circulation pump	3 cores, 0.75mm ² (power cable)
		2 cores, 0.5mm ² (communication cable)
⑩	Controller - 3-way valve for switching heating/hot water	3 cores, 0.75mm ²
⑪	Current sensor (RC-HY40-W only)	6 cores, 0.5mm ²

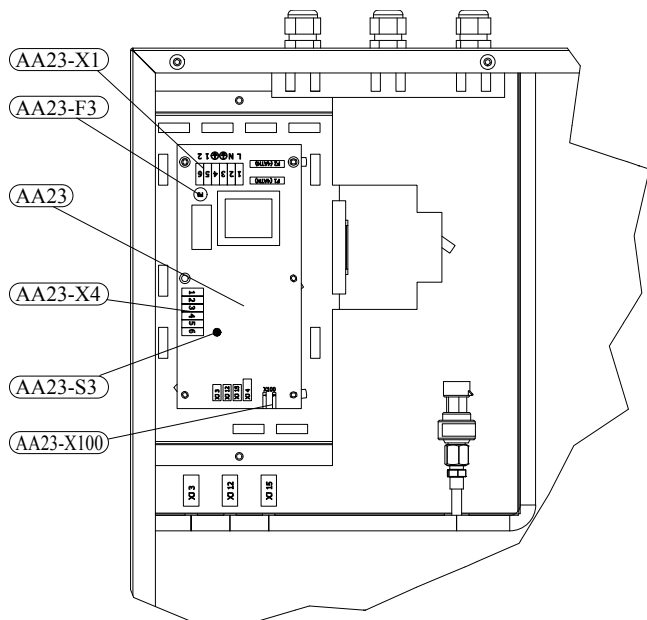
The cable size shown on the above table is reference value. Choose appropriate size according to local laws and regulations.

	Cable size
Power - HMA60-S	6 cores, 10.0mm ²
Power - HMA100-S	6 cores, 10.0mm ²
HMA60-S - FDCW60VNX-A	5 cores, 2.5mm ² (power/communication cable)
HMA100-S - FDCW71VNX-A	
HMA100-S - FDCW100VNX-A	

The cable size shown on the above table is reference value. Choose appropriate size according to local laws and regulations.

Electrical components

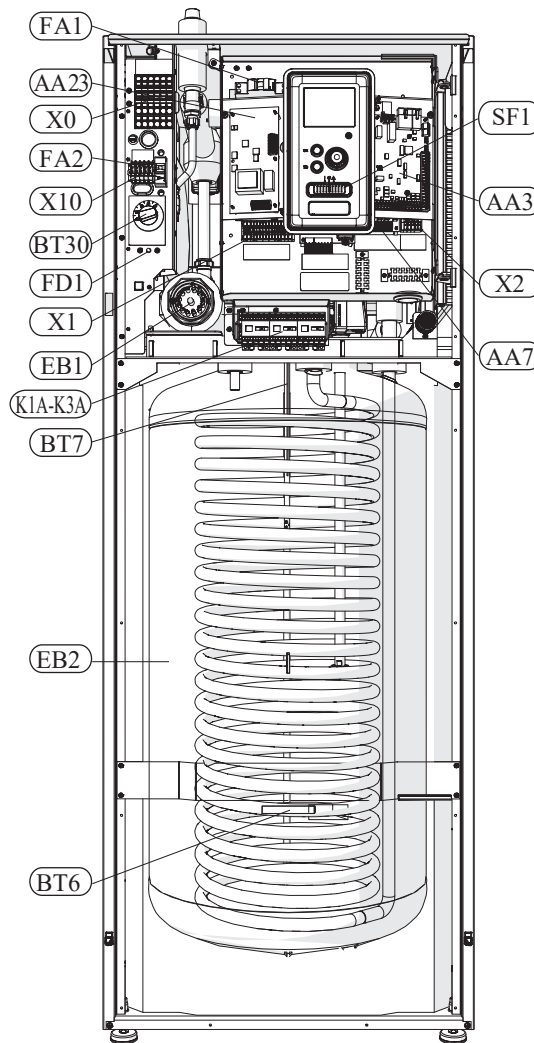
HSB series



Explanation

- AA23 Communication board
- AA23-F3 Fuse for external heating cable
- AA23-S3 DIP switch, addressing of outdoor unit
- AA23-X1 Terminal block, incoming supply, connection of KVR
- AA23-X4 Terminal block, communication with indoor module / control module
- AA23-X100 Terminal block, communication outdoor module FDCW

HMA-S series



Explanation

- X0 Voltage terminal block 400V-
- X1 Voltage terminal block 230V-
- X2 Voltage terminal block 230V-
- X10 Voltage terminal block 230V-
- FA1 Circuit breaker (to internal module)
- K1A-K3A Submersible heater contact
- BT30 Thermostat, standby mode
- AA3 Sensor card
- AA23 Communication card
- AA7 Relay card
- FA2 Circuit breaker (to internal module)
- FD1 Temperature limiter

Temperature limiter

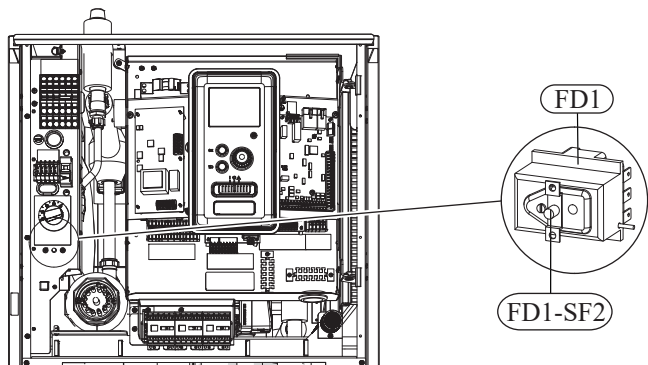
Temperature limiter (FD1) cuts off the power supply of the electrical heating module if the temperature increases to the range of approximately 98°C or decreases below -8°C, and can be reset manually.

Important

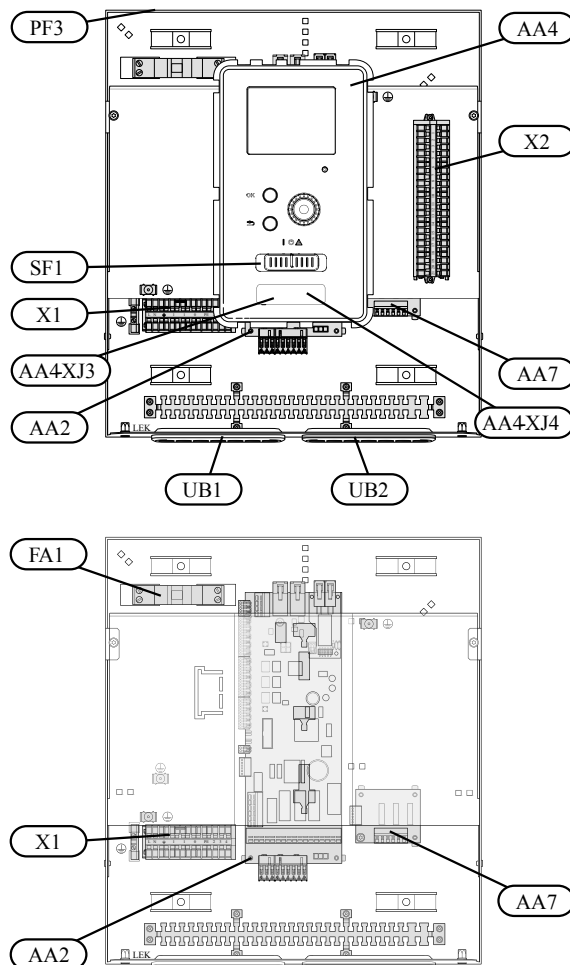
In the case of the thermal fuse, please report it to an authorized service facility to eliminate the possible cause.

Resetting

Temperature limiter (FD1) is accessible behind the front cover. Temperature limiter is reset by strong pressing of the button (FD1-SF2) using a small screwdriver. Press the button, max. 15 N (approx. 1.5kg).



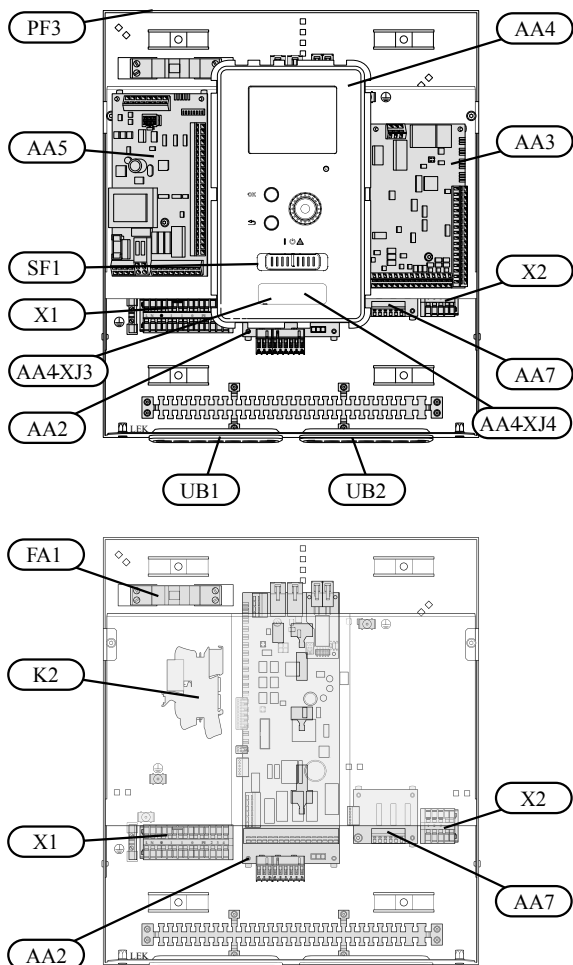
RC-HY20-W



Explanation

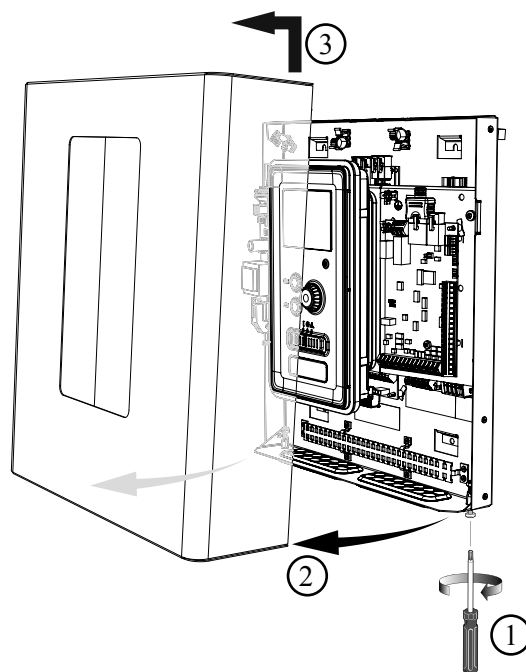
- AA2 Base card
- AA4 Display unit
- AA4-XJ3 USB socket
- AA4-XJ4 Service outlet (No function)
- AA7 Extra relay circuit board
- FA1 Miniature circuit-breaker
- X1 Terminal block, incoming electrical supply
- X2 Terminal block, control signal circulation pump, sensors AUX inputs and heat pump
- SF1 Switch
- PF3 Serial number plate
- UB1 Cable grommet, incoming supply electricity, power for accessories
- UB2 Cable grommet, signal

RC-HY40-W



Accessibility, electrical connection for controller

The cover of the control module is opened using a Torx 25 screwdriver. Assembly takes place in the reverse order.

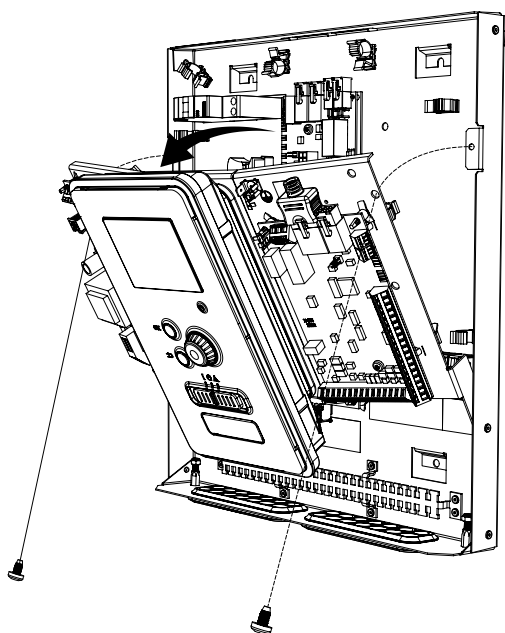


NOTE

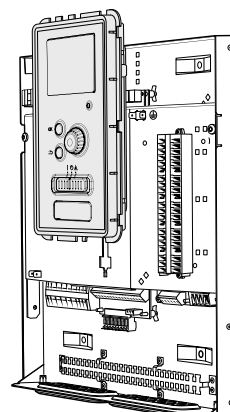
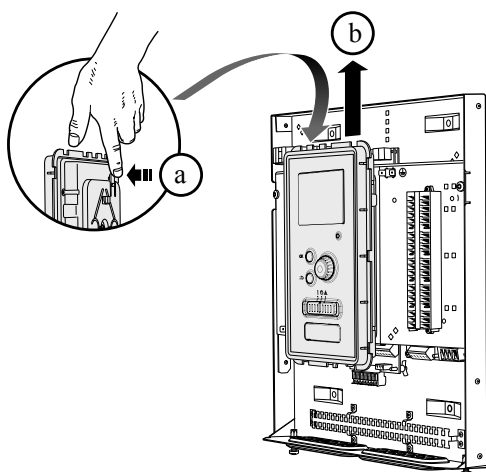
The cover to access the base board is opened using a Torx 25 screwdriver.

Explanation

- AA2 Base card
- AA3 Input circuit board
- AA4 Display unit
- AA4-XJ3 USB socket
- AA4-XJ4 Service outlet (No function)
- AA5 Accessory card
- AA7 Extra relay circuit board
- FA1 Miniature circuit-breaker
- K2 Emergency mode relay
- X1 Terminal block, incoming electrical supply
- X2 Terminal block, AUX4 - AUX6
- SF1 Switch
- PF3 Serial number plate
- UB1 Cable grommet, incoming supply electricity, power for accessories
- UB2 Cable grommet, signal



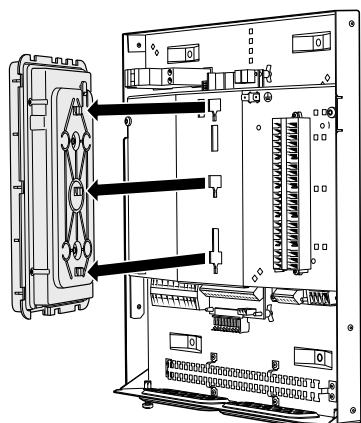
The display may need to be moved for easier access when connecting electrics. This is easily done by following these steps.



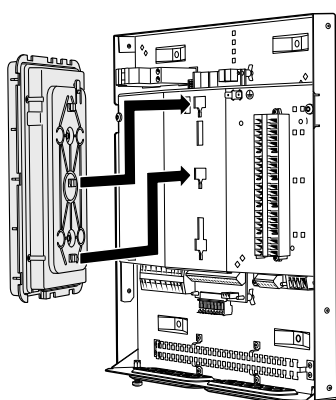
1. Press in the catch on the upper rear side of the display unit towards you (a) and move the display unit upwards (b) so that the mountings unhook from the panel.

4. Secure the display on the panel.

5. When the electrical connection is ready the display must be reinstalled with three mounting points again, otherwise the front cover cannot be installed.



2. Lift the display unit from its mountings.



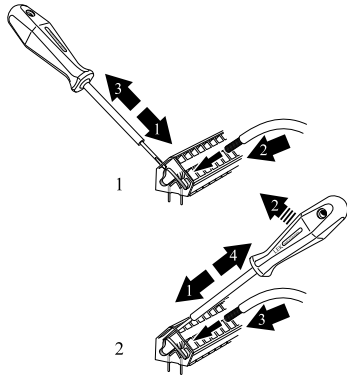
3. Align the two lower mountings on the reverse of the display unit with the two upper holes in the panel as illustrated.

Cable lock

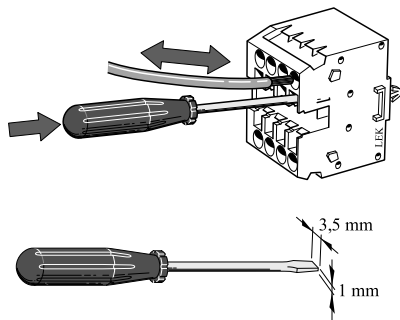
Use a suitable tool to release/lock cables in the terminal block.

HSB series, RC-HY20/40-W

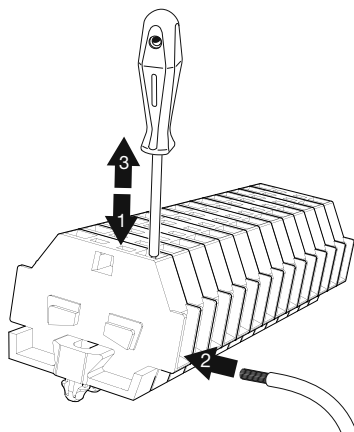
Terminal block on the electrical card



Terminal block



HMA-S series



System connection

NOTE

To prevent interference, unshielded communication and/or sensor cables to external connections must not be laid closer than 20cm from high voltage cables.

HSB series

Recommended fuse size

The recommended fuse size shown in the following table is reference value. Choose appropriate size according to local laws and regulations.

			Fuse size
Indoor unit	HSB	60-W	6A/230V 1AC 50Hz
		100-W	
		140	
Outdoor unit	FDCW	60	20A/230V 1AC 50Hz
		71	
		100	30A/230V 1AC 50Hz
		140	
Controller	RC-HY	20-W	10A/230V 1AC 50Hz
		40-W	
Electric heater	ELK	9M1	16A/400V 3NAC 50Hz 9kW
			40A/230V 1AC 50Hz 9kW
			20A/230V 1AC 50Hz 4.5kW

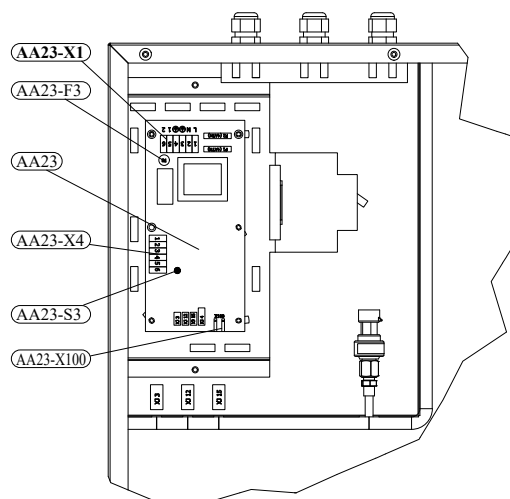
Recommended cable size

The recommended cable size shown in the page 92. Choose appropriate size according to local laws and regulations.

Power source

In case of HSB series, power source is made to indoor unit, outdoor unit and controller separately. 230V 1AC 50Hz is applied.

For indoor unit, incoming supply is connected on AA23-X1 terminal.

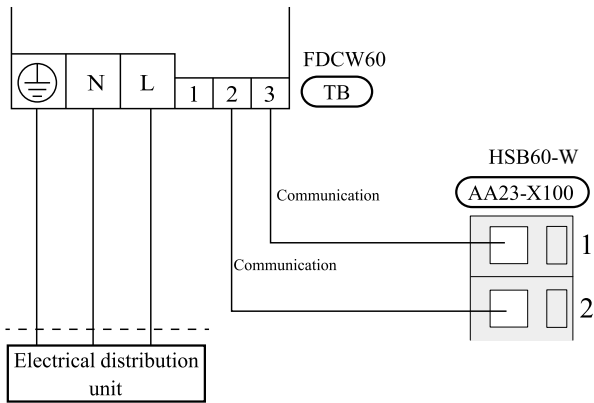


For outdoor unit, incoming supply is connected on TB terminal. See figure on Connection between indoor and outdoor unit.

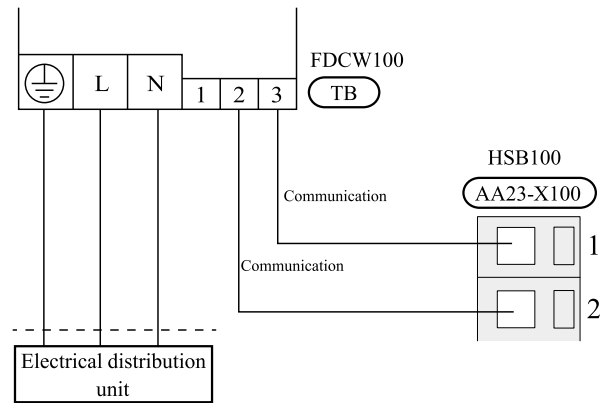
Connection between indoor and outdoor unit

The communication cable between indoor and outdoor unit is connected between terminal AA23-X100 in indoor unit and TB in outdoor unit. Screened 2 cores cable is recommended.

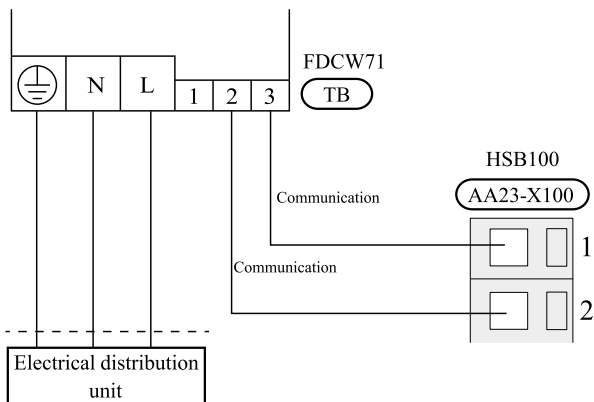
<HSB60-W with FDCW60VNX-A>



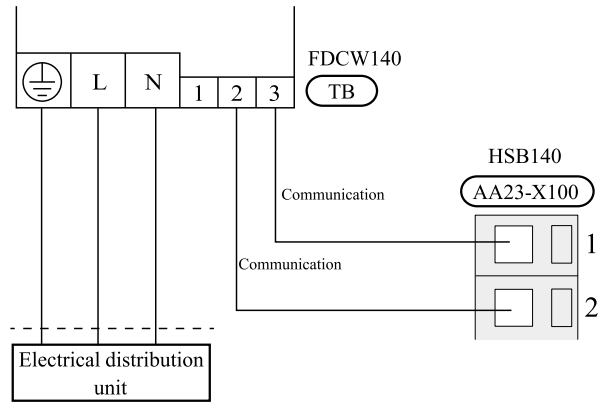
<HSB100-W with FDCW100VNX-A>



<HSB100-W with FDCW71VNX-A>



<HSB140 with FDCW140VNX-A>



Connection between indoor unit and controller

See Connection for RC-HY20/40-W.

Cascade connection setting

In case of cascade connection system, it is necessary to allot unique address to each indoor unit. Set the DIP switch S3-1, -2 and -3 according to the following table.

Address	S3:1	S3:2	S3:3
1	OFF	OFF	OFF
2	On	OFF	OFF
3	OFF	On	OFF
4	On	On	OFF
5	OFF	OFF	On
6	On	OFF	On
7	OFF	On	On
8	On	On	On

RC-HY20-W

Recommended fuse size

Please refer to page 98.

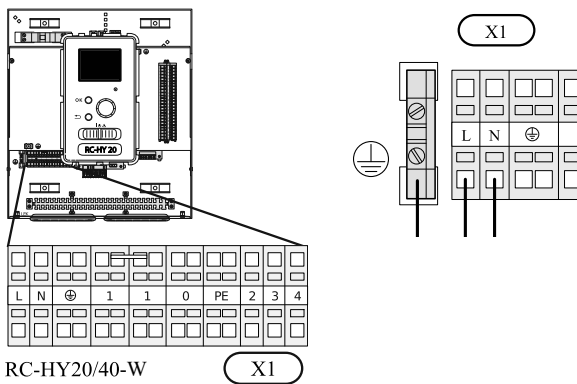
Recommended cable size

Please refer to page 92.

Power source

Connect power cable on X1 terminal as shown below.

RC-HY20/40-W must be installed via an isolator switch with a minimum breaking gap of 3mm. Minimum cable area must be sized according to the fuse rating used.

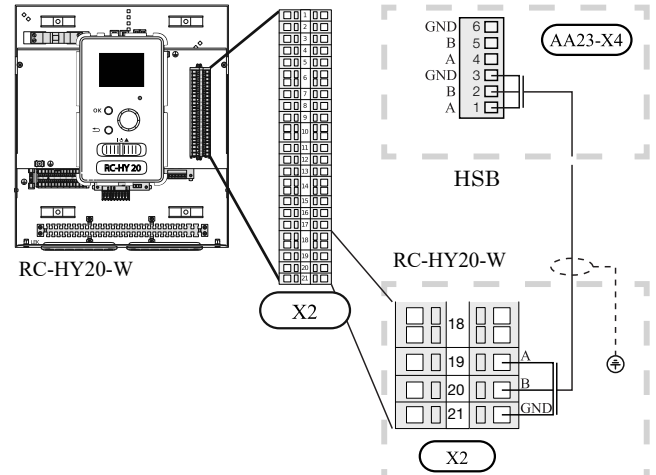


Connection between indoor unit and controller

Signal cable is connected between controller and indoor unit with screened 3 cores cable for HSB series. Choose correct terminal according to the type of controller as shown below.

<HSB series with RC-HY20-W>

Connect the port 19(A), 20(B) and 21(GND) on X2 terminal on RC-HY20-W to the port 1, 2 and 3 on X4 terminal on AA23 board on HSB series respectively.

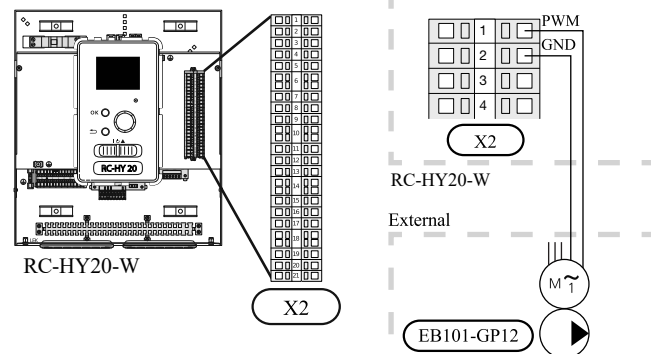
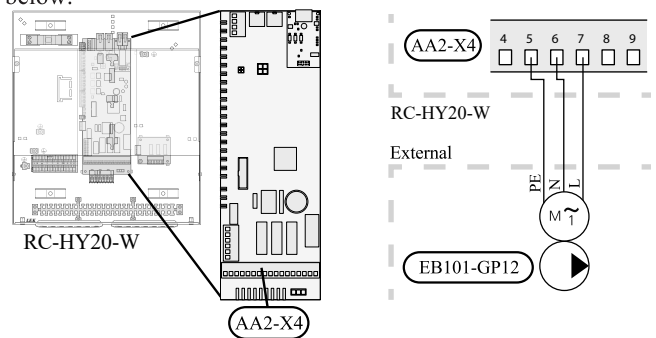


Circulation pump (GP12)

For HSB series, circulation pump (GP12) is installed outside of indoor unit. Choose correct terminal according to the type of controller.

<HSB series with RC-HY20-W>

Connect the port 5, 6 and 7 on X4 terminal on AA2 board on RC-HY20/40-W to the port PE, N and L on circulation pump respectively. Control signal cable is connected between the port 1 and 2 on X2 terminal on RC-HY20 and PWM and GND on circulation pump respectively as shown below.



3-way valve (QN10/QN12)

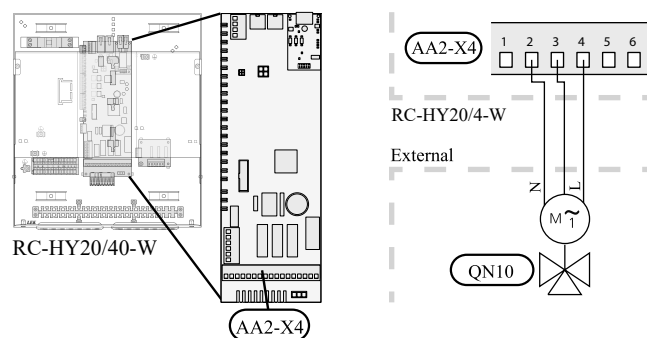
3-way valve is used for switching heating / hot water production (QN10), or switching heating / cooling (QN12). Install appropriate valves according to the system structure on site.

HSB series is not equipped with 3-way valve. Install the valves on right position according to the diagram and connect wires on appropriate port according to the type of controller.

<HSB series with RC-HY20-W>

- **3-way valve for Heating / Hot water (QN10)**

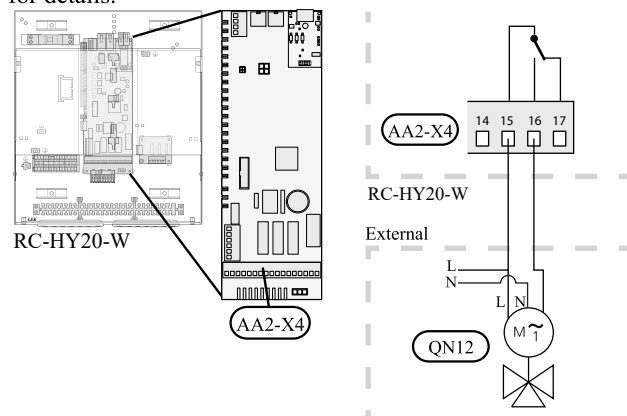
Connect the N, Control and L wire on 3-way valve to the port 2, 3 and 4 on X4 terminal on AA2 board on RC-HY20/40-W respectively as shown below.



- **3-way valve for Heating / Cooling (QN12)**

QN12 can be controlled with potential free variable relay. Connect L and Control wire on 3-way valve to the port 15 and 16 on X4 terminal on AA2 board on RC-HY20-W respectively. Also, connect L and N wire to power supply as shown below.

Additional setting is necessary in menu 5.4. See Menu system for details.



CAUTION

The relay outputs can have a max load of 2 A at resistive load (230V AC).

Sensor

Sensor connection is different according to the combination of indoor unit and controller. Refer to the appropriate combination mentioned below.

Use two-core cable with a minimum 0.5mm² cross section.

Regarding other sensors not mentioned in this chapter, refer to page 102, Optional connections.

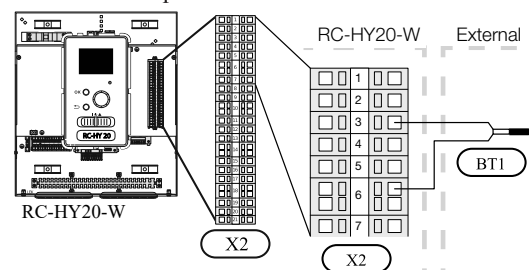
<RC-HY20-W with HSB series>

- **Ambient air temperature sensor BT1**

Install ambient air temperature sensor (BT1) in the shade on a wall facing north or north-west, so it is unaffected by the morning sun.

Connect the sensor to the port 3 and 6 on X2 terminal.

If a conduit is used it must be sealed to prevent condensation in the sensor capsule.

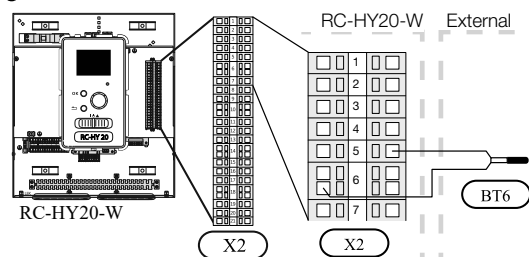


- **Hot water charging sensor BT6 (tank bottom)**

The temperature sensor, hot water charging (BT6) is placed in the submerged tube on the water heater.

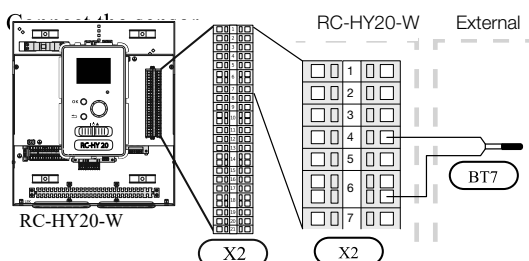
Connect the sensor to the port 5 and 6 on X2 terminal.

Hot water charging is activated in menu 5.2 or in the start guide.



- **Hot water sensor BT7 (tank top)**

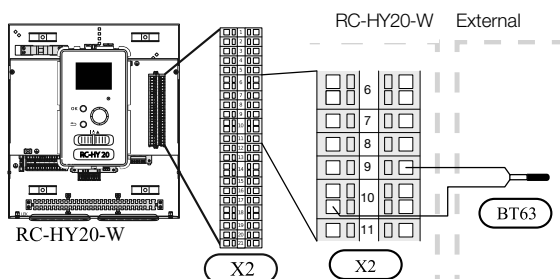
A temperature sensor for hot water top (BT7) can be connected to RC-HY20-W to show the water temperature at the top of the tank (if it is possible to install a sensor at the top of the tank).



• **Temperature sensor BT63, outlet at additional heater**

This sensor is used in case electric heater is placed before 3-way valve (QN10) for switching heating/hot water (see page 329 for diagram).

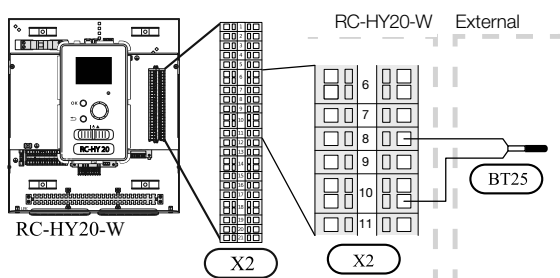
Connect temperature sensor, external supply after electric heater (BT63) to the port 9 and 10 on terminal X2.



• **Temperature sensor BT25, outlet for heating**

This sensor is used in case electric heater is placed after 3-way valve (QN10) for switching heating/ hot water (see page 329 for diagram).

Connect temperature sensor, external supply (BT25) to the port 8 and 10 on X2 terminal.



• **Temperature sensor BT71, return line for heating**

This sensor is used in case electric heater is placed after 3-way valve (QN10) for switching heating/ hot water (see page 330 for diagram).

For connection, see page 104, AUX inputs.

• **Temperature sensor BT64, outlet for cooling**

This sensor is used in case cooling application is required.

For connection, see page 104, AUX inputs.

Option connections

• **Room sensor BT50**

Room sensor can be connected to controller.

The room temperature sensor has up to three functions:

1. Show current room temperature in the control module display.
2. Option of changing the room temperature in °C.
3. Makes it possible to change/stabilise the room temperature.

Install the sensor in a neutral position where the set temperature is required. A suitable location is on a free inner wall in a hall approx. 1.5 m above the floor.

Do not install the sensor where correct room temperature cannot be detected such as in a recess, between shelves, behind a curtain, above or close to a heat source, in a draft from an external door or in direct sunlight.

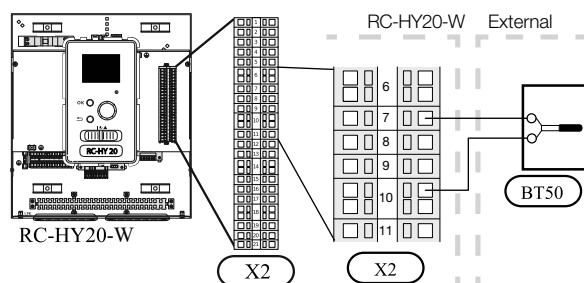
Closed radiator thermostats can also cause problems.

The control module can operate without the sensor, but if user wants to read off the accommodation's indoor temperature in controller display, the sensor must be installed.

Connect the room sensor to the port 7 and 10 on X2 terminal.

If the sensor is to be used to change the room temperature in °C and/or to change/stabilise the room temperature, the sensor must be activated in menu 1.9.4.

If the room sensor is used in a room with underfloor heating, it should only have an indicative function, not control of the room temperature.



CAUTION

Changes of temperature in accommodation take time. For example, short time periods in combination with underfloor heating will not give a noticeable difference in room temperature.

Use two-core cable with a minimum 0.5mm² cross section.

• Step controlled additional heat

NOTE

Mark up any junction boxes with warnings for external voltage.

External step controlled additional heat can be controlled by up to three potential-free relays in the control module (3-step linear or 7-step binary). Alternatively two relays (2-step linear or 3-step binary) can be used for step controlled additional heat, which means that the third relay can be used to control the immersion heater in the water heater/accumulator tank.

Step in occurs with at least 1 minute intervals and step outs with at least 3 seconds intervals.

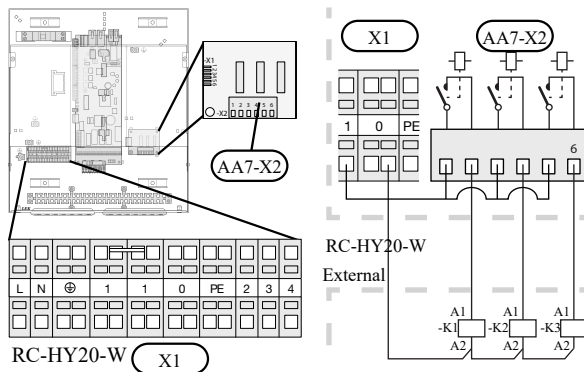
Step 1 is connected to terminal block X2:2 on the additional relay board (AA7).

Step 2 is connected to terminal block X2:4 on the additional relay board (AA7).

Step 3 or immersion heater in the water heater/accumulator tank is connected to terminal block X2:6 on the additional relay board (AA7).

The settings for step controlled additional heat are made in menu 4.9.3 and menu 5.1.12.

All additional heat can be blocked by connecting a potential-free switch function to the software controlled input on terminal block X2 which is selected in menu 5.4.



If the relays are to be used for control voltage, bridge the supply from terminal block X1:1 to X2:1, X2:3 and X2:5 on additional relay board (AA7). Connect the neutral from the external additional heat to terminal block X1:0 (N).

Use a cable with appropriate cross section.

For connection, see the installation manual for additional heater.

• Relay output for emergency mode

NOTE

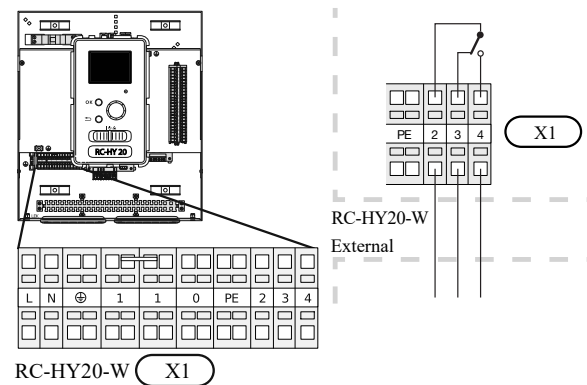
Mark up any junction boxes with warnings for external voltage.

When the switch (SF1) is in "Δ" mode (emergency mode) the circulation pump is activated (EB101-GP12).

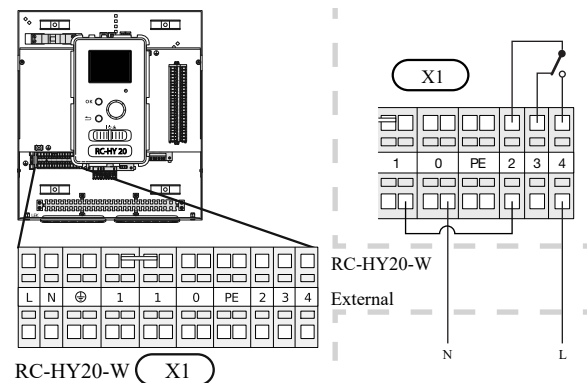
CAUTION

No hot water is produced when emergency mode is activated.

The emergency mode relay can be used to activate external additional heat. Between the port 2 and 4 is closed during emergency mode. An external thermostat must be connected to the control circuit (port 4) to control the temperature. Ensure that the heating medium circulates through the external additional heating.

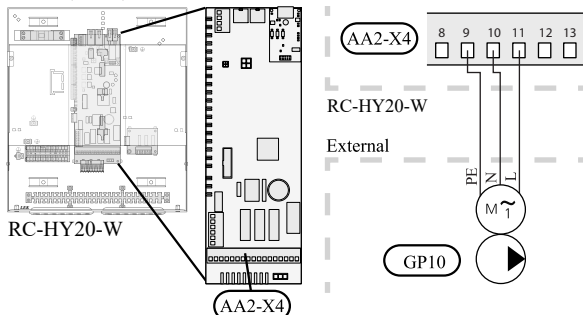


If the relay is to be used for control voltage, bridge the supply from terminal block X1:1 to X1:2 and connect neutral and control voltage from the external additional heat to X1:0 (N) and X1:4 (L).



• External circulation pump

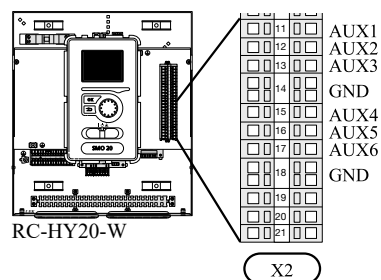
Connect the external circulation pump (GP10) to terminal block X4:9 (PE), X4:10 (N) and X4:11 (230 V) on the base board (AA2) as illustrated.



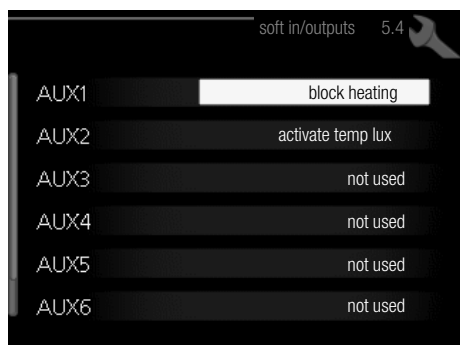
• AUX inputs

Other external inputs are available on the port 11 through 18 on X2 terminal on RC-HY20-W.

AUX1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 correspond to the port 11, 12, 13, 15, 16 and 17 respectively. Port 14 and 18 are GND and are common to the all auxiliary circuit. Connect a sensor or switch between AUX and GND with a two-core cable with a minimum cross section of 0.5mm².



Select the appropriate function in menu 5.4.



■ Temperature sensor, cooling/heating (BT74)

Additional room sensor (BT74) is applied in case user wants to determine the operation mode (cooling/heating) with a temperature in a particular room.

This option can be chosen only in case cooling function is available.

■ Temperature sensor, external return line (BT71)

Temperature sensor BT71 is applied in case additional heater is placed after 3-way valve (see page 330 for diagram).

■ Temperature sensor, flow line cooling (BT64)

Temperature sensor BT64 is required in case 4-pipe system is used for cooling operation. (see pages 329, 330 for diagram)

This option can be chosen only in case cooling function is activated.

■ Contact for external tariff blocking

In cases where external tariff blocking is required it must be connected to terminal block X2.

Tariff blocking means that the additional heat, the compressor, heating and cooling are disconnected by connecting a potential free switch function to the input selected in menu 5.4.

A closed contact results in the electrical output being disconnected.

■ Switch for “SG ready”

NOTE

This function can only be used in mains networks that support the "SG Ready"-standard. "SG Ready" requires two AUX inputs.

This function can only be used in power source networks that support the “SG Ready” standard. “SG Ready” requires two AUX inputs.

“SG Ready” is a smart tariff management scheme in which electricity supplier can affect indoor and hot water temperature or simply prohibits additional heat and/or the compressor operation in heat pump at certain period of the day. You can choose which operation mode is affected by this function in menu 4.1.5 after the function is activated.

Choose two external input circuits and connect potential-free switches, and set “SG Ready A” and “SG Ready B” in menu 5.4. The system works differently according to the combination of the circuit open/closed.

- **Blocking (A: Closed, B: Open)**
 “SG Ready” is active. Compressor operation and additional heat is prohibited.
- **Normal mode (A: Open, B: Open)**
 “SG Ready” is not active. No effect on the system.
- **Low price mode (A: Open, B: Closed)**
 “SG Ready” is active. The system operates to provide higher capacity than normal mode by using lower tariff electricity. You can select the operation mode (heating/hot water/cooling) affected by this function in menu 4.1.5.
- **Overcapacity mode (A: Closed, B: Closed)**
 “SG Ready” is active. The system supplies higher capacity than Low price mode since the electricity price is supposed to be very low in this mode. You can select the operation mode (heating/hot water/cooling) affected by this function in menu 4.1.5.

■ **Contact for activation of “temporary lux”**

Temporary hot water production function “temporary lux” is activated with this signal. Connect the terminals with a potential-free switch and choose the function in menu 5.4.

“Temporary lux” is activated only when the switch is closed.

■ **Contact for activation of “external adjustment”**

Target temperature offset for supply temperature or room temperature can be done with this signal.

When a room sensor is connected and activated, the target room temperature is offset in °C if the switch is closed. When a room sensor is not connected, target supply water temperature (heat curve) is offset instead. The degree of offset can be set in menu 5.4.

■ **Switch for external alarm**

Alarms from external devices can be connected to the control and appear as an info alarm. Potential-free signal of NO or NC type can be connected.

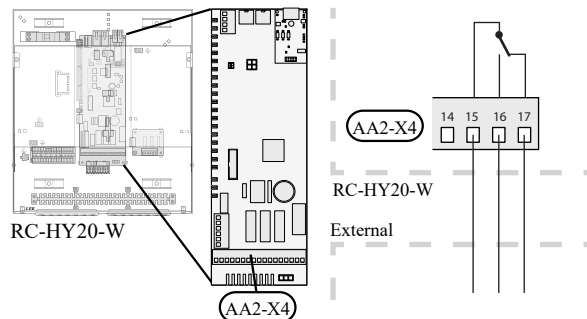
■ **Switch for external blocking**

This function is used in case certain operation mode needs to be prohibited. The operation at selected operation mode is prohibited when the switch is closed. Following functions can be managed.

- Additional heat
- compressor operation
- heating mode
- cooling mode
- hot water mode

• **AUX outputs**

External output is available on the port 15 to 17 on X4 terminal on AA2 board on RC-HY20-W. The relay output can have a max load of 2A at resistive load.



Following functions are available. Select the function in menu 5.4.

• **Indication of buzzer alarm**

When an alarm occurs, the circuit becomes closed between the port 15 and 16. During normal operation, the port 15 and 17 is closed.

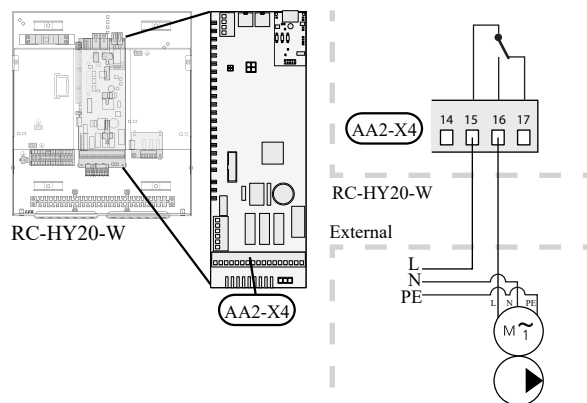
• **Cooling mode indication / Active cooling mode (4-pipe cooling)**

When the system turns into cooling mode, the circuit becomes closed between the port 15 and 16. By using this signal, it is possible to switch 3-way valve for 4-pipe cooling or to assemble a display circuit indicating cooling mode. For details of connecting the 3-way valve, refer to page 101.

• **External pump control (GP10)**

External pump (GP10) is used in case additional heater is placed after 3-way valve that switches heating/hot water (refer to page 330 for diagram).

Connect the circulation pump as shown below using the port 15 and 16 on X4 terminal.



• **Hot water circulation pump control (GP11)**

In case the distance between hot water tap and hot water storage tank is far, the hot water supply line temperature is likely to drop and it may take time to supply hot water from the tap. In that case, hot water circulation pump (GP11) is applied to maintain hot water supply line temperature warm (refer to page 89).

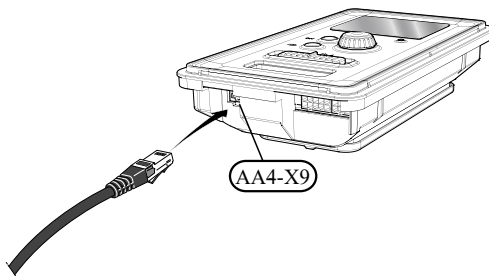
For details of connecting the pump, refer to External pump control (GP10).

NOTE

Mark up any junction boxes with warnings for external voltage.

• myUpway™

Connect the network connected cable (straight, Cat.5e UTP) with RJ45-contact (male) to contact AA4-X9 on the display unit (as illustrated). Use the cable grommet (UB2) in the control module for cable routing.



RC-HY40-W

Recommended fuse size

Please refer to page 98.

Recommended cable size

Please refer to page 92.

Power source

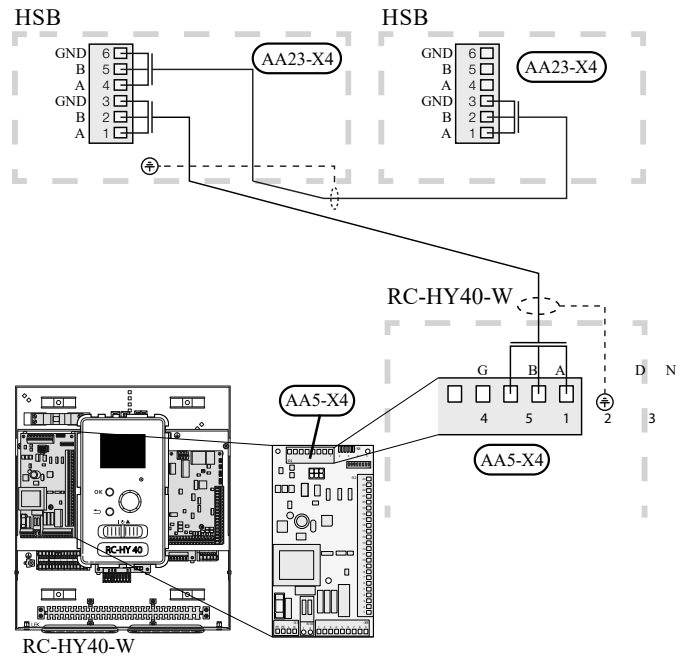
Please refer to page 92.

Connection between indoor unit and controller

<HSB series with RC-HY40-W>

Connect the port 1(A), 2(B) and 3(GND) on X4 terminal on AA5 board on RC-HY40-W to the port 1, 2 and 3 on X4 terminal on AA23 board on HSB series respectively.

In case several systems are connected to one controller, connect the port 4, 5 and 6 on X4 terminal on AA23 board on HSB series close to the controller to the port 1, 2 and 3 on X4 terminal on AA23 board on another HSB series.

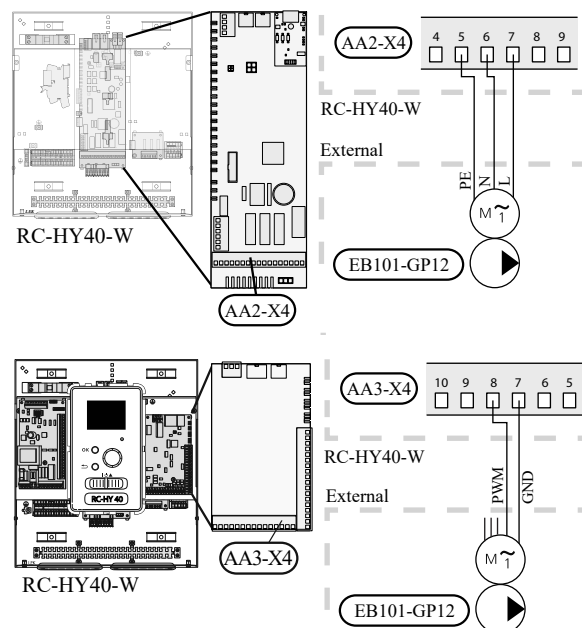


Circulation pump (GP12)

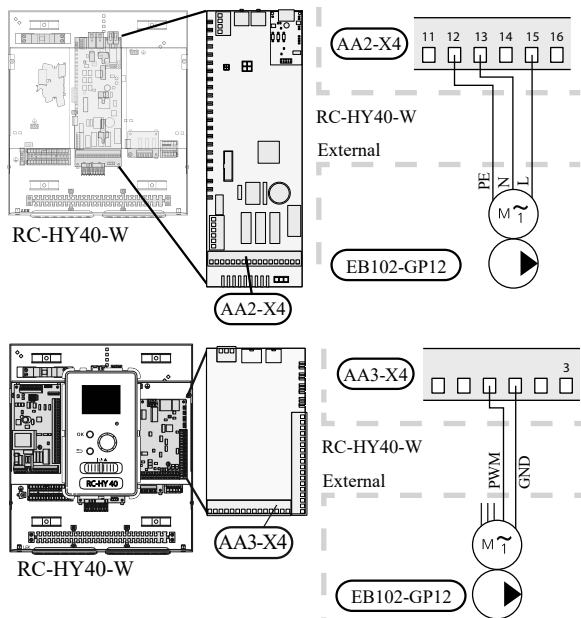
For HSB series, circulation pump (GP12) is installed outside of indoor unit. Choose correct terminal according to the type of controller.

<HSB series with RC-HY40-W>

Connect the port 5, 6 and 7 on X4 terminal on AA2 board on RC-HY40-W to the port PE, N and L on circulation pump (EB101-GP12) respectively. Control signal cable is connected between the port 7 and 8 on X4 terminal on AA3 board on RC-HY40 and GND and PWM on circulation pump respectively as shown below.



RC-HY40-W can connect and control up to two pumps. Connect the port 12, 13 and 15 on X4 terminal on AA2 board on RC-HY40-W to the port PE, N and L on second circulation pump (EB102-GP12) respectively. Control cable is connected between the port 5 and 6 on X4 terminal on AA3 board on RC-HY40-W and GND and PWM on circulation pump respectively as shown below.



3-way valve (QN10/QN12)

3-way valve is used for switching heating / hot water production (QN10), or switching heating / cooling (QN12). Install appropriate valves according to the system structure on site.

HSB series is not equipped with 3-way valve. Install the valves on right position according to the diagram and connect wires on appropriate port according to the type of controller.

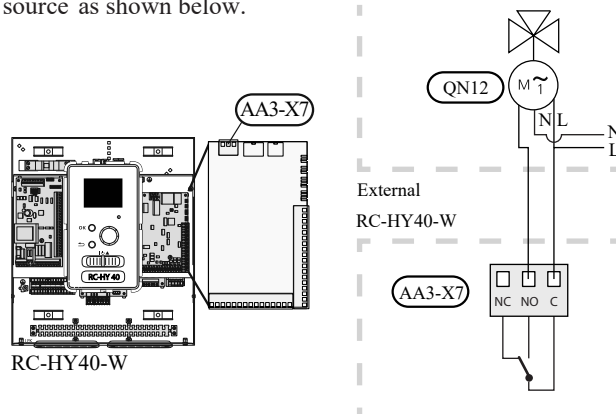
<HSB series with RC-HY40-W>

- 3-way valve for Heating / Hot water (QN10)

Refer to 3-way valve connection for HSB series with RC-HY20-W.

- 3-way valve for Heating / Cooling (QN12)

QN12 can be controlled with potential free variable relay. Connect L and control wire on 3-way valve to the port C and NO on X7 terminal on AA3 board on RC-HY40-W respectively. Also, connect L and N wire to power source as shown below.



CAUTION

The relay outputs may be subjected to a max load of 2A at resistive load (230V AC).

Sensor

Sensor connection is different according to the combination of indoor unit and controller. Refer to the appropriate combination mentioned below.

Use 2 cores cable with a minimum 0.5mm² cross section.

Regarding other sensors not mentioned in this chapter, refer to page 109, option connections.

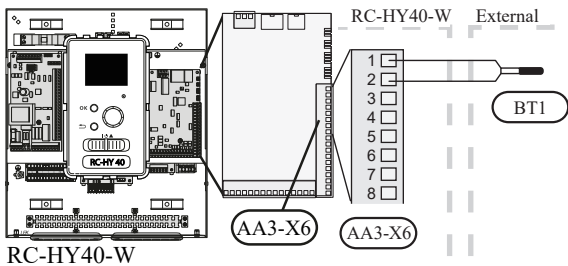
<RC-HY40-W with HSB series>

• **Ambient air temperature sensor BT1**

Install ambient air temperature sensor (BT1) in the shade on a wall facing north or north-west, so it is unaffected by the morning sun for example.

Connect the sensor to the port 1 and 2 on X6 terminal on AA3 board.

If a conduit is used it must be sealed to prevent condensation in the sensor capsule.

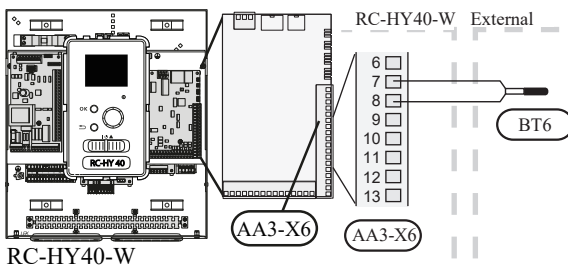


• **Hot water charging sensor BT6 (tank bottom)**

The temperature sensor, hot water charging (BT6) is placed in the submerged tube on the water heater.

Connect the sensor to the port 7 and 8 on X6 terminal on AA3 board.

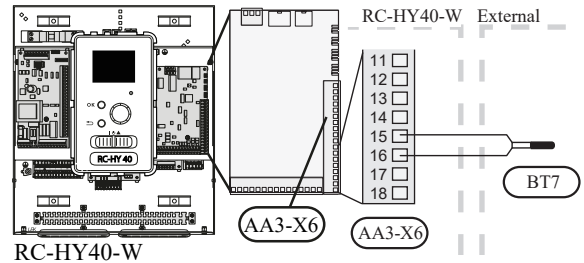
Hot water charging is activated in menu 5.2 or in the start guide.



• **Hot water sensor BT7 (tank top)**

A temperature sensor for hot water top (BT7) can be connected to RC-HY40-W to show the water temperature at the top of the tank (if it is possible to install a sensor at the top of the tank).

Connect the sensor to the port 15 and 16 on X6 terminal on AA3 board.



• **Temperature sensor BT63, outlet at additional heater**

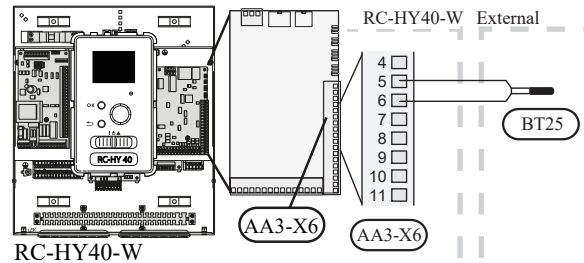
This sensor is used in case electric heater is placed before 3-way valve (QN10) for switching heating/ hotwater (see page 329 for diagram).

For connection, see page 99, AUX inputs of RC-HY20.

• **Temperature sensor BT25, outlet for heating**

This sensor is used in case electric heater is placed after 3-way valve (QN10) for switching heating/ hot water (see page 330 for diagram).

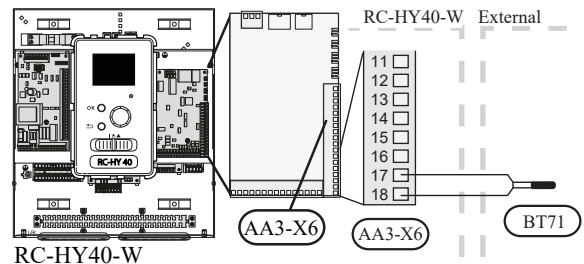
Connect temperature sensor, external supply line (BT25) to the port 5 and 6 on X6 terminal on AA3 board.



• **Temperature sensor BT71, return line for heating**

This sensor is used in case electric heater is placed after 3-way valve (QN10) for switching heating/ hot water (see page 330 for diagram).

Connect temperature sensor, external return line (BT71) to the port 17 and 18 on X6 terminal on AA3 board.



• **Temperature sensor BT64, outlet for cooling**

This sensor is used in case cooling application is required.

For connection, see page 104, AUX inputs.

Option connection

• **Load monitor**

In case many power electrical appliances are connected in the property and the electric heater is energised at the same time, there is a risk of tripping the main fuse of the property.

The control module has an integrated load monitor that controls the power steps of the electric heater by disconnecting step by step in the event of overload in a phase. It will be reconnected if other current consumption is reduced.

Connecting current sensors

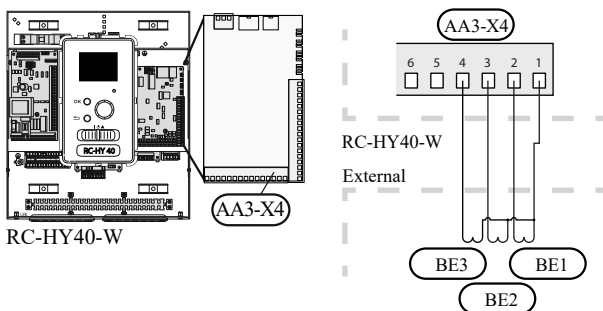
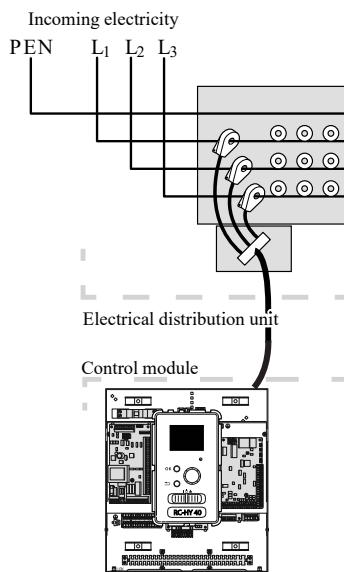
A current sensor (BE1 - BE3) should be installed on each incoming phase conductor in to the electrical distribution unit to measure the current. This is best done in the electrical distribution unit.

Connect the current sensors to a multi-core cable in an enclosure next to the electrical distribution unit. Use a multi-core cable of at least 0.5mm² from the enclosure to the heat pump.

Connect the cable to terminal block X4:1 to 4.

X4:1 is the common terminal block for the three current sensors.

Set the size of the property's main fuse in menu 5.1.12.



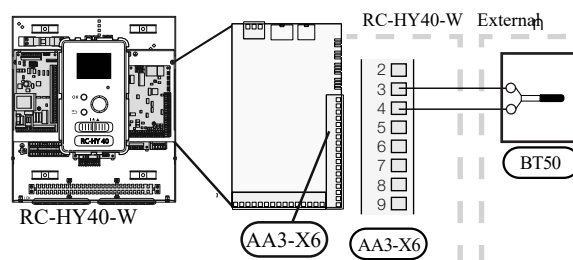
• **Room sensor BT50**

Refer to Room sensor BT50 for RC-HY20-W for function and installation place.

Connect the room sensor to terminal block X6:3 and X6:4 on the input board (AA3).

If the sensor is to be used to change the room temperature in °C and/or to change/stabilise the room temperature, the sensor must be activated in menu 1.9.4.

If the room sensor is used in a room with underfloor heating, it should only have an indicatory function, not control of the room temperature.



CAUTION

Changes of temperature in accommodation take time. For example, short time periods in combination with underfloor heating will not give a noticeable difference in room temperature.

• **Step controlled additional heat**

Refer to the explanation for RC-HY20-W.

• **Relay output for emergency mode**

Refer to the explanation for RC-HY20-W.

• **Emergency mode thermostat**

Refer to the explanation for RC-HY20-W.

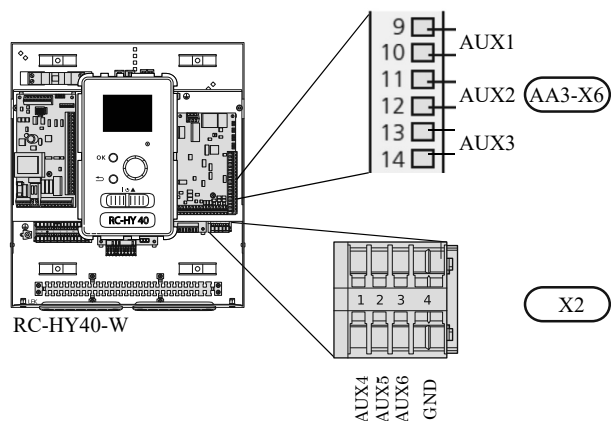
• **External circulation pump**

Refer to the explanation for RC-HY20-W.

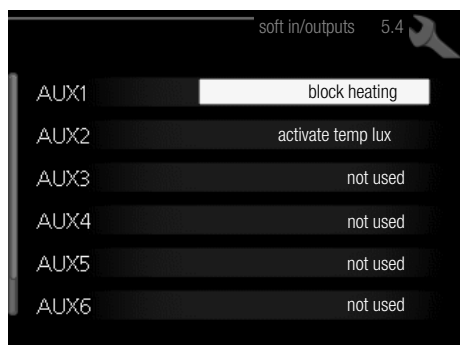
• **AUX inputs**

Up to 6 other external inputs are available on RC-HY40-W.

AUX1 through 3 correspond to the port 9/10, 11/12, 13/14 respectively on X6 terminal on AA3 board. AUX4 through 6 correspond to the port 1, 2 and 3 on X2 terminal on RC-HY40. Port 4 on X2 terminal is GND and is common to AUX4 through 6. Connect a sensor or switch between AUX and GND with a 2 cores cable with a minimum cross section of 0.5mm².



Select the appropriate function in menu 5.4.



- Temperature sensor, external supply at additional heat before reversing valve (BT63)
Temperature sensor BT63 is applied in case additional heater is placed before 3-way valve (see page 329 for diagram)

The following functions are available. For details, see AUX inputs for RC-HY20-W.

- Temperature sensor, cooling/heating (BT74)
- Temperature sensor, external return line (BT71)
- Temperature sensor, flow line cooling (BT64)
- Contact for external tariff blocking
- Switch for “SG ready”
- Contact for activation of “temporary lux”
- Contact for activation of “external adjustment”
- Switch for external alarm
- Switch for external blocking

• **AUX outputs**

External output is available on the port NC, NO and C on X7 terminal on AA3 board on RC-HY40-W. The relay output can have a max load of 2A at resistive load.

Following functions are available. Select the function in menu 5.4.

- Indication of buzzer alarm

When an alarm occurs, the circuit becomes closed between the port NO and C. During normal operation, the port NC and C is closed.

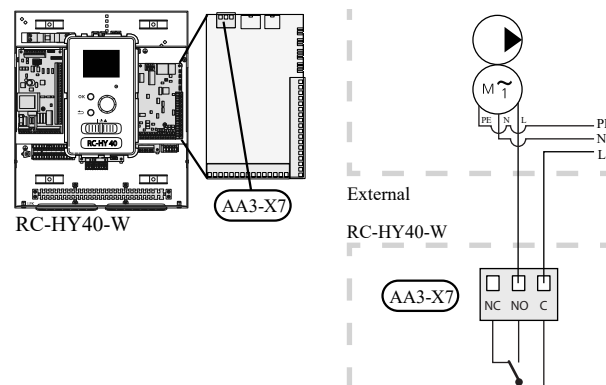
- Cooling mode indication / Active cooling mode (4-pipe cooling)

When the system turns into cooling mode, the circuit becomes closed between the port NO and C. By using this signal, it is possible to switch 3-way valve for 4-pipe cooling or to assemble a display circuit indicating cooling mode. For details of connecting the 3-way valve, refer to page 107.

- External pump control (GP10)

External pump (GP10) is used in case additional heater is placed after 3-way valve that switches heating/hot water (refer to page 330 for diagram).

Connect the circulation pump using the port NO and C on X7 terminal on AA3 board as shown below.



- Hot water circulation pump control (GP11)

In case the distance between hot water tap and hot water storage tank is far, the hot water supply line temperature is likely to drop and it may take time to supply hot water from the tap. In that case, hot water circulation pump (GP11) is applied to maintain hot water supply line temperature warm (refer to page 89).

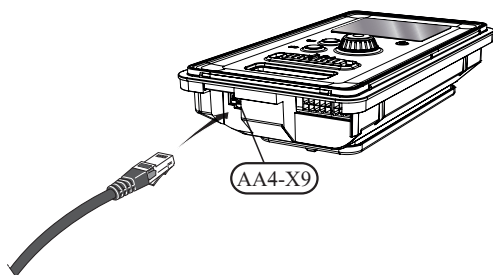
For details of connecting the pump, refer to External pump control (GP10).

NOTE

Mark up any junction boxes with warnings for external voltage.

• myUpway™

Connect the network connected cable (straight, Cat.5e UTP) with RJ45-contact (male) to contact AA4-X9 on the display unit (as illustrated). Use the cable grommet (UB2) in the control module for cable routing.



HMA-S series

Circuit breaker

The automatic heating control system, circulation pump and their wiring in the HMA-S series are internally protected by an overcurrent switch (FA1).

The outdoor module and accessories are internally protected in the HMA-S series by an overcurrent breaker (F1).

Recommended fuse size

The recommended fuse size shown in the following table is reference value. Choose appropriate size according to local laws and regulations.

		Fuse size	
Indoor unit	HMA-S	60	50A for single-phase 25A for three-phase
		100	

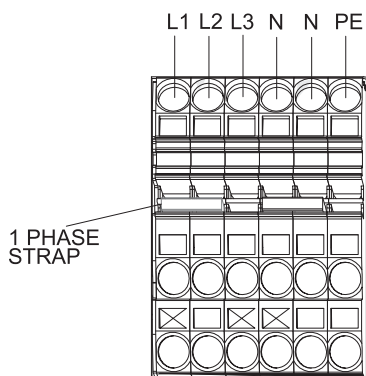
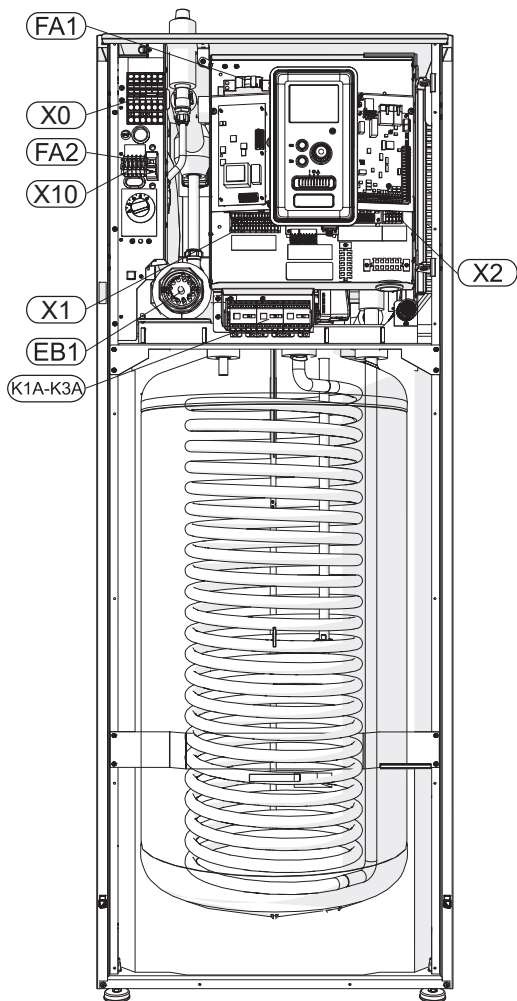
Recommended cable size

The recommended fuse size shown in the following table is reference value. Choose appropriate size according to local laws and regulations.

	Cable size
Power - HMA60-S	6 cores, 10mm ² (power/communication cable)
Power - HMA100-S	6 cores, 10mm ² (power/communication cable)
HMA60-S - FDCW60VNX-A	5 cores, 2.5mm ² (power/communication cable)
HMA100-S - FDCW71VNX-A	
HMA100-S - FDCW100VNX-A	

Power source

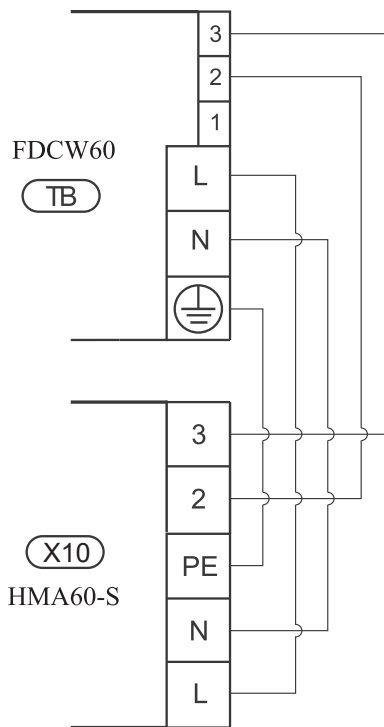
In case of HMA-S, the power source is to be connected to clamp (X0) via the input at the back of the unit. The cable must be dimensioned according to the applicable standards. HMA-S can be connected to the power source 230V single phase and 400V three phase as specified on the clamp (X0). A removable connection which is included with the unit must be connected between L1 and L2, when power source is 230V single phase.



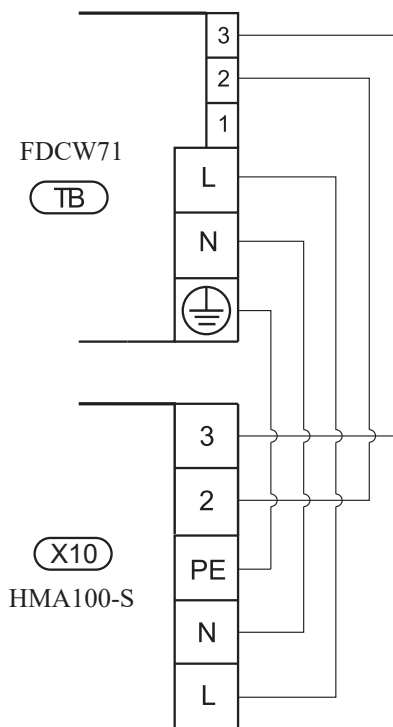
Connection between indoor and outdoor unit

For interconnection cable between indoor unit and outdoor unit, connect 2, 3, L, N and PE port for outdoor unit on X10 terminal on HMA-S to 2, 3, L, N, and ⏏ port on outdoor unit respectively according to the below figure.

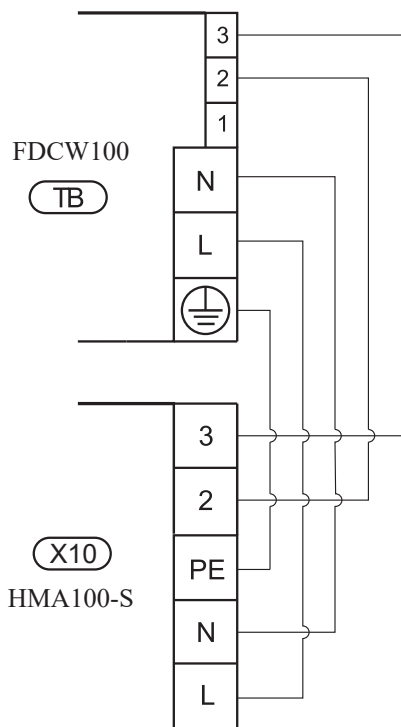
<HMA60-S with FDCW60VN-X-A>



<HMA100-S with FDCW71VN-X-A>

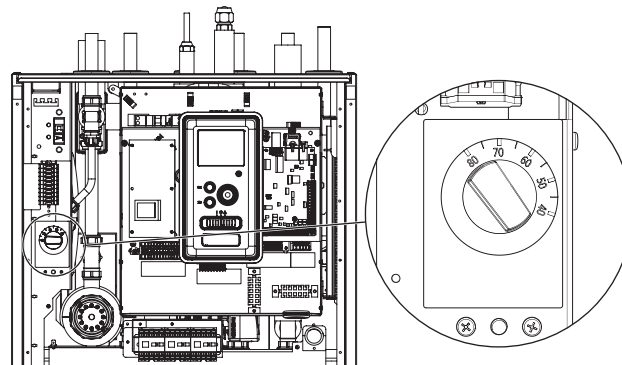


<HMA100-S with FDCW100VNX-A>



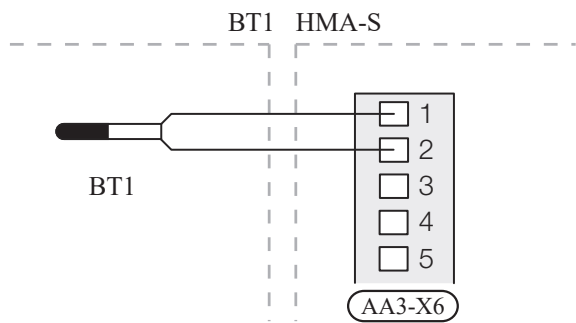
• Emergency mode thermostat

In the emergency mode, the supply temperature is set using a thermostat (T1). It must be set according to the demand of the circuits in operation. The available regulation range is between 6 and 67°C. Remember that for floor heating, the settings must be min. 20°C, max. 35–45°C in order to preserve heat comfort in the room and assure effective system operation.



External temperature sensor


The outdoor temperature sensor (included in the kit) should be connected to the HMA-S unit on the AA3-X6:1 and AA3-X6:2.



Commissioning and adjusting

Preparations

Before starting commissioning, check the followings;

- The signal cable is connected between indoor unit and outdoor unit as well as indoor unit and controller according to the instruction.
- The power cable is connected to indoor unit, outdoor unit and controller according to the instruction.
- Operation switch in controller is in the position .
- The service valves on outdoor unit (QM35 and QM36) are open.
- Drain valve is closed before filling water in the system.
- Temperature limiter and electrical switch are not tripped.
- The system is filled with water and well vented.
- There are no leaks on the water pipe.

Filling and venting

Hot water tank

1. Open the hot water tap as well as venting valve if applicable, and then open the cold water cut-off valve at the inlet.
2. Fill the storage tank until obtaining uniform water outflow at the hot water tap, and then close the hot water tap and venting valve.
3. Fill the water heater coil in the tank. See Climate system for details.

After the installation and levelling the tank, follow the procedure below (for the connector pipe symbols, refer to page 31):

1. Remove protecting plugs from the connector pipes
2. Connect the hot water intake line (N).
3. Connect the cold water supply line together with the required safety valves (G).
4. If the system has the hot water circulation system, connect it to the connector pipe (L). Otherwise, plug the pipe.
5. Connect the supply (J) and return (H) of the heating medium to the coil.

CAUTION

If there is an electric heating module installed in the storage tank, fill the tank with water before connecting it to the electrical installation.

CAUTION

Open the hot water intake valves before heating the system up for the first time or after a longer break in its operation in order to check whether the storage tank is filled with water and the cut-off valve at the cold water inlet is not closed.

Climate system

1. Open the vent at the top of the heating system.
2. Open all shut-off valves, where installed, so that water flows into all circuits.
3. Open the valve for filling the heating circuit and fill it with water.
4. Close the vent when water comes out continuously without bubbles.
5. Check the manometer and close the filling valve when the pressure reaches the required value (2 bar is recommended).
6. Start the circulation pump of the heating system, and open the vent from time to time and release the all remaining air in the heating system.
7. Open safety valve until the pressure of the heating system drops down to about 1 bar. If the pressure drops below 1 bar during venting, add additional water in the circuit.

Inspection of installation

Current regulations require that the climate system is inspected before it is commissioned. The inspection must be carried out by a suitably qualified person and must be documented. Do not replace any part of the system without carrying out new checks.

Start-up and inspection

Before start-up

1. In case of cascade connection, check if each indoor unit has a unique address. See Cascade connection setting on page 100 for details.
2. For an outdoor unit equipped with a crank case heater, it is necessary to supply power 6-8 hours before starting compressor operation to heat the compressor with the heater. To do this, supply power to whole system and disable the compressor operation from menu 5.2.2 on the controller. Disable additional heater as well if necessary.
3. After 6-8 hours, enable the compressor operation in menu 5.2.2 on the controller and enable the additional heater in menu 4.9.2 and 4.9.3 on the controller.
4. Start commissioning by the following steps.

*Step 2 and 3 are not necessary for FDCW60VNX-A.

Commissioning with heat pump

Start guide is shown on the display on the controller when it is turned ON for the first time. Follow the start guide in the display, or choose menu 5.7 to show the start guide. For details, see Start guide on page 116.

Commissioning with additional heater only

Follow the start guide in the display as same as commissioning with heat pump, and then follow the list below.

1. Go to menu 4.2 op. mode.
2. Mark "add. heat only" using the control knob and then press the OK button.
3. Return to the main menus by pressing the Back button.

CAUTION

When commissioning without MTH air/water heat pump an alarm communication error may appear in the display. The alarm is reset if the relevant heat pump is deactivated in menu 5.2.2 ("installed heat pump").

3-way valve operation check

1. Activate "AA2-K1 (QN10)" in menu 5.6.
2. Check that the reversing valve opens or is open for hot water charging.
3. Deactivate "AA2-K1 (QN10)" in menu 5.6.

AUX function check

To check any function connected to the AUX socket,

1. Activate "AA2-X4 (RC-HY20-W)" or "AA3-X7 (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S)" in menu 5.6.
2. Check the desired function.
3. Deactivate "AA2-X4 (RC-HY20-W)" or "AA3-X7 (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S)" in menu 5.6.

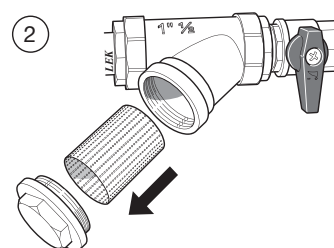
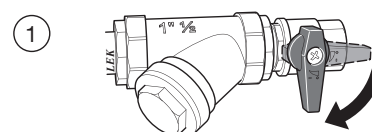
Cooling mode

In case the climate system contains a cooling circuit, activate cooling function in menu 5.11.1.1. After that, you can choose cooling mode indication in menu 5.4 for the AUX output.

Cleaning particle filter

Clean the particle filter (HQ1) after installation.

1. Close valve QM31 and the valve by the particle filter (HQ1).
2. Open the safety valve (QM20) to ensure that the pressure in HSB series drops.
3. Clean the particle filter (HQ1) as illustrated.



Secondary adjustment

Air is initially released from the hot water and venting may be necessary. If bubbling sounds can be heard from the heat pump, the circulation pump and radiators the entire system will require further venting. When the system is stable (correct pressure and all air eliminated) the automatic heating control system can be set as required.

Start guide

NOTE

Fill in the climate system with water before the switch is set to "I".

1. Set the control module's switch to "I".
2. Follow the instructions in the start guide in the control module display. If the start guide does not start when you start the control module, start it manually in menu 5.7.

TIP

See "control" for a more in-depth introduction to the installation's control system (operation, menus etc.).

Commissioning

The start guide is displayed when installation is started, It describes what needs to carry out at the first start together with basic settings during installation.

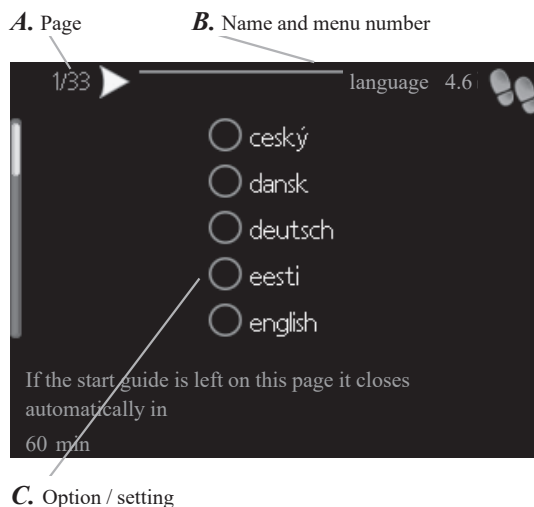
The start guide is displayed so that it cannot be bypassed in order to carry out the start-up correctly. You can start the start guide later in menu 5.7.

During the start-up guide, reversing valves and the shunt are run back and forth to help vent the heat pump.

CAUTION

As long as the start guide is active, no function in the heat pump will start automatically.
Each time the controller is ON, the guide will appear until it is completed on the last page.

Operation in the start guide



A. Page

You can see the current page of the start guide.

Scroll between the pages of the start guide as follows:

1. Turn the control knob until the arrow is marked in the top left corner (at the page number).
2. Press OK button to proceed to the next page in the start guide.

B. Name and menu number


You can see the menu name of this page. The number refers to the menu number in the control system.

To read more about affected menus, see the help menu or read the user manual.

C. Option / setting

Make settings for the system here.

D. Help menu

 In many menus there is a symbol indicating that extra help is available.

To access the help text:

1. Use the control knob to select the help symbol.
2. Press OK button.

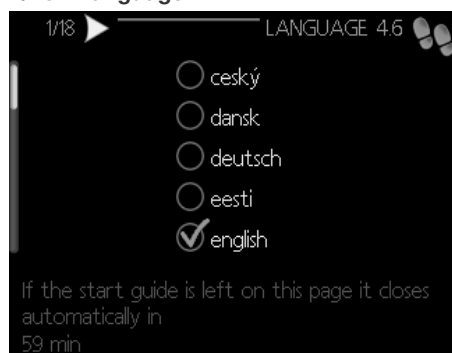
The help text often consists of several windows that you can scroll between using the control knob.

Start guide - RC-HY20-W

This menu is shown at the first time that the heat pump is started. It ensures that commissioning is carried out correctly and all necessary steps are followed.

The following menus are basic settings. If accessories are connected other menus will appear.

1/18 - Language

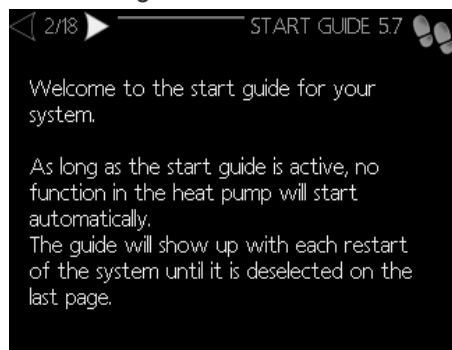


Select the language of the controller.

Factory setting: English

Available languages: Czech, Danish, German, Estonian, English, Spanish, French, Croatian, Icelandic, Italian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Romanian, Russian, Slovenian, Finnish, Swedish, Turkish.

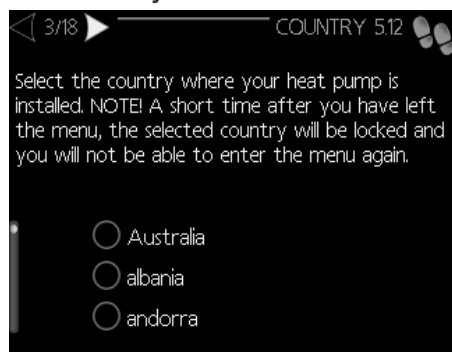
2/18 - Start guide



This menu displays information about the start guide.

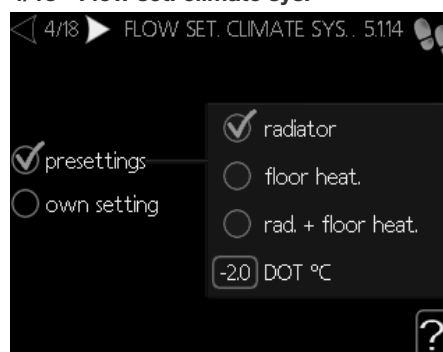
No action needed.

3/18 - Country



Select the country where your heat pump is located.

4/18 - Flow set. climate sys.



The type of heating distribution system the heating medium pump works towards is set here.

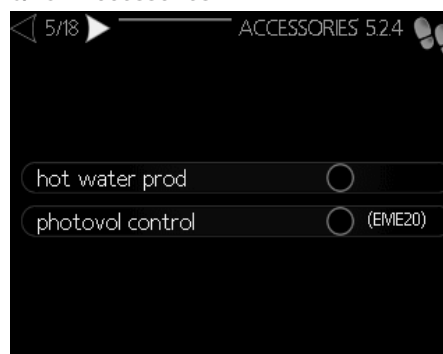
Factory setting: Presettings - Radiator

Setting range:

- **Presettings**
 - Radiator
 - Floor heating
 - Rad. + floor heat
- **Own setting**
 - Setting range dt at DOT: 0.0 - 25.0°C
 - Setting range DOT: -40.0 - 20.0°C

Where dt at DOT is the difference in degrees between the flow and return temperature at dimensioned outdoor temperature.

5/18 - Accessories



Activate additional connected accessories here.

Setting range: hot water prod, photovol control (EME20)

6/18 - Soft in/outputs

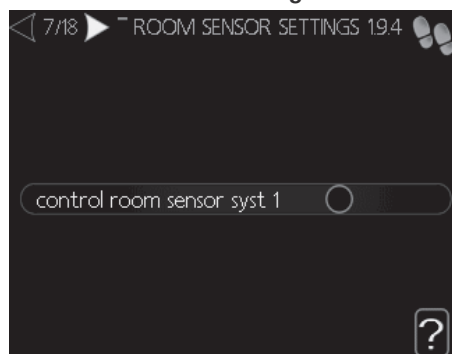


Set the function of each input and output for each terminal (if connected)

Setting range:

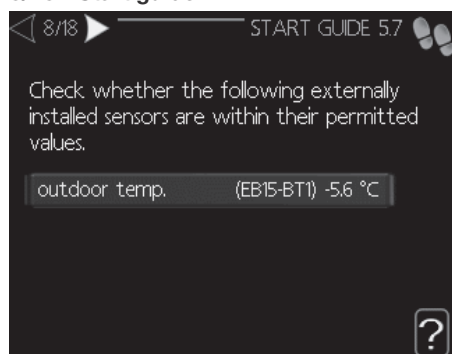
- **Aux 1-6**
 - Temperature sensor, cooling/heating (BT74)
 - Temperature sensor, external return line (BT71)
 - Temperature sensor, flow line cooling (BT64)
 - Contact for external tariff blocking
 - Switch for "SG Ready"
 - Contact for activation of "external adjustment"
 - Switch for external alarm
 - Switch for external blocking
- **AA2-X4**
 - Alarm output
 - Cooling mode indication
 - Active cooling 4-pipe
 - External heating medium pump (GP10)
 - Hot water circulation (GP11)

7/18 - Room sensor settings



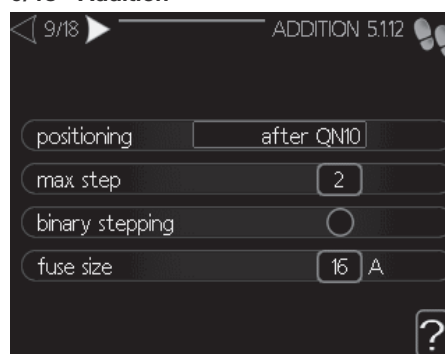
Activate and set the room temperature sensor RTS40M (if connected)

8/18 - Start guide



Check if the values of the shown temperature sensors are correct.

9/18 - Addition



Set addition settings here.

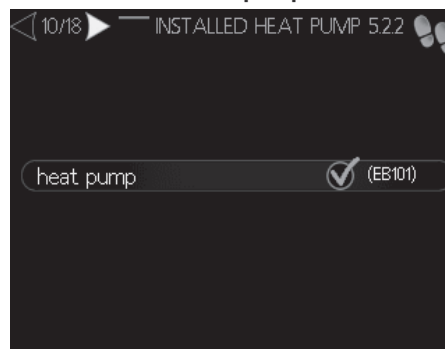
Factory setting:

- **Positioning:** Before QN10
- **Max step:** 3
- **Fuse size:** 16A

Setting range:

- **Positioning:**
 - Before QN10
 - After QN10
- **Max step:**
 - Binary stepping deactivated: 0–3
 - Binary stepping activated: 0–7
- **Fuse size:** 11–200A

10/18 - Installed heat pump



Enable heat pump (EB101) here.

11/18 - Time & date

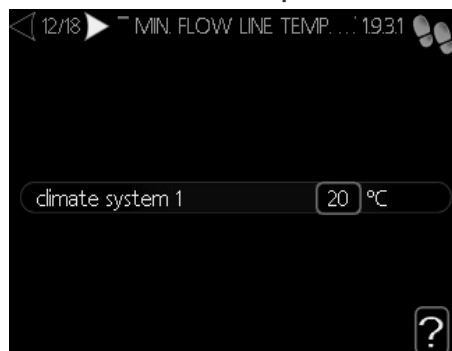


Set time, date and time zone here.

If the system is connected to myUpway then time and date are

set automatically.

12/18 - Mln. flow line temperature

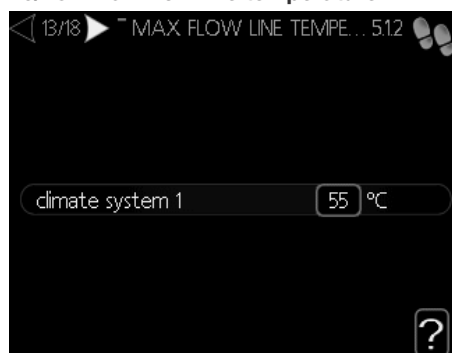


Set the minimum flow line temperature of the climate system.

Factory setting: 20°C

Setting range: 5–70°C

13/18 - Max. flow line temperature

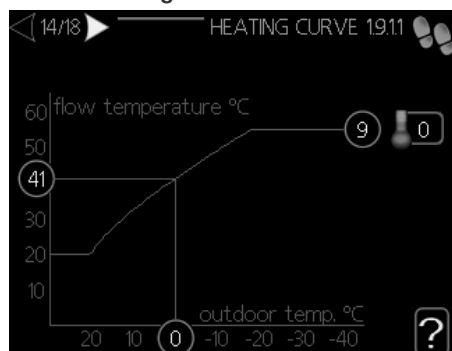


Set the maximum flow line temperature of the climate system.

Factory setting: 60°C

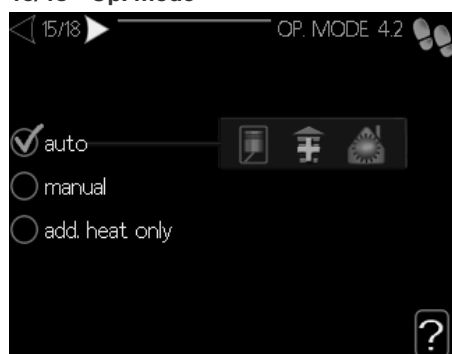
Setting range: 5–70°C

14/18 - Heating curve



View and set (if desired) the space heating curve.

15/18 - Op. mode



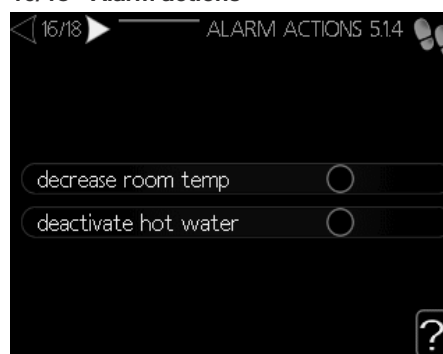
Set the operating mode of the heat pump.

Factory setting: Auto

Setting range:

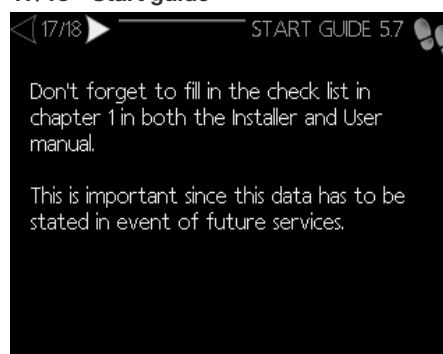
- Auto
- Manual
 - Heating
 - Cooling
 - Add. heat only
- Add. heat only
 - Heating

16/18 - Alarm actions



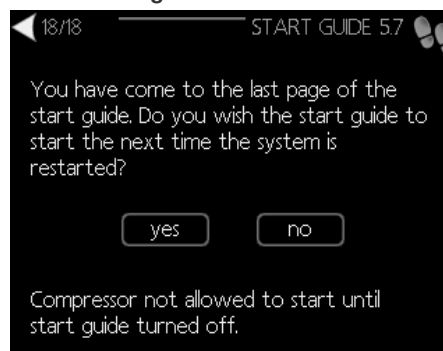
Set how to control the heat pump in case of alarm.

17/18 - Start guide



Information message from the controller. No action needed.

18/18 - Start guide



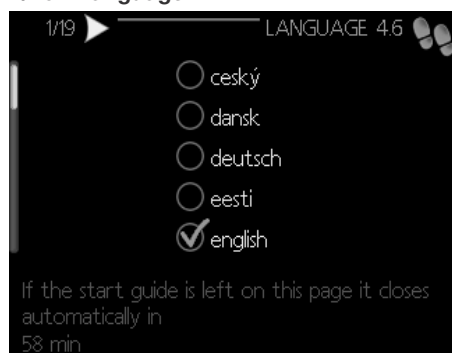
Commissioning guide finishes here. You can set it to open again upon restart of the controller or do not open it anymore.

Start guide - RC-HY40-W

This menu is shown at the first time that the heat pump is started. It ensures that commissioning is carried out correctly and all necessary steps are followed.

The following menus are basic settings. If accessories are connected other menus will appear.

1/19 - Language

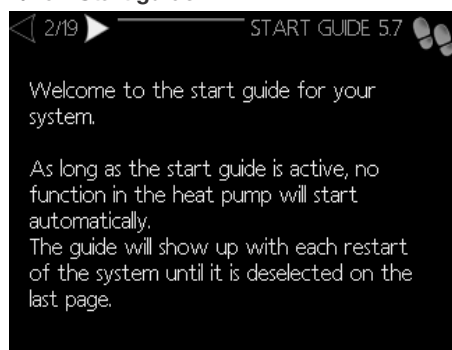


Select the language of the controller.

Factory setting: English

Available languages: Czech, Danish, German, Estonian, English, Spanish, French, Croatian, Icelandic, Italian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Romanian, Russian, Slovenian, Finnish, Swedish, Turkish.

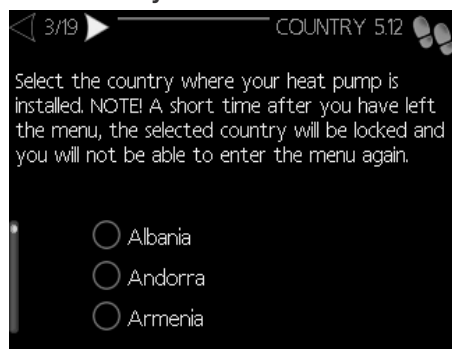
2/19 - Start guide



This menu displays information about the start guide.

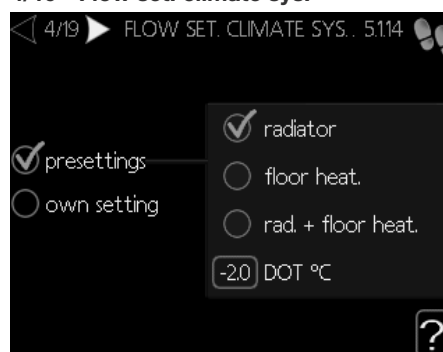
No action needed.

3/19 - Country



Select the country where your heat pump is located.

4/19 - Flow set. climate sys.



The type of heating distribution system the heating medium pump works towards is set here.

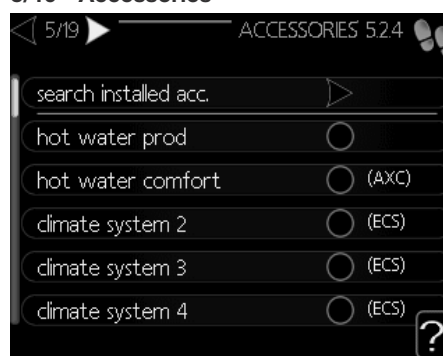
Factory setting: Presettings - Radiator

Setting range:

- **Presettings**
 - Radiator
 - Floor heating
 - Rad. + floor heat
- **Own setting**
 - Setting range dt at DOT: 0.0–25.0°C
 - Setting range DOT: -40.0–20.0°C

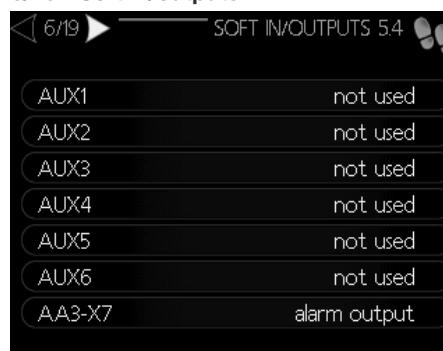
Where dt at DOT is the difference in degrees between the flow and return temperature at dimensioned outdoor temperature.

5/19 - Accessories



Activate or search for additional connected accessories here.

6/19 - Soft in/outputs



Set the function of each input and output for each terminal (if connected)

Setting range:

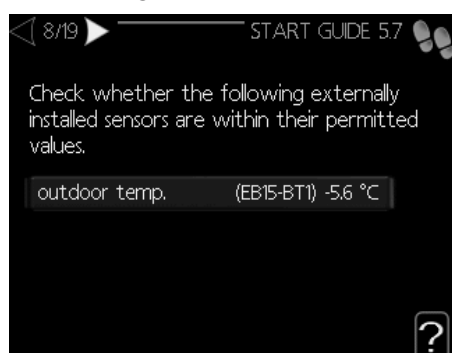
- **Aux 1-6**
 - Temperature sensor, cooling/heating (BT74)
 - Temperature sensor, heating supply downstream the submersible heater (BT63)
 - Temperature sensor, flow line cooling (BT64)
 - Temperature sensor, boiler (BT52)
 - Contact for external tariff blocking
 - Switch for "SG Ready"
 - Contact for activation of "external adjustment"
 - Switch for external alarm
 - Switch for external blocking
- **AA3-X7**
 - Alarm output
 - Cooling mode indication
 - Active cooling 4-pipe
 - External heating medium pump (GP10)
 - Hot water circulation (GP11)

7/19 - Room sensor settings



Activate and set the room temperature sensor RTS40M (if connected) for each climate system

8/19 - Start guide



Check if the values of the shown temperature sensors are correct.

9/19 - Addition



Set addition settings here.

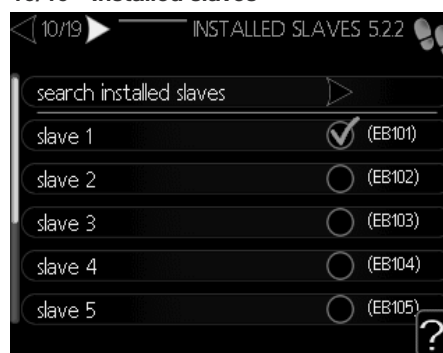
Factory setting:

- **Positioning:** Before QN10
- **Max step:** 3
- **Fuse size:** 16A
- **Transformation ration:** 16A

Setting range:

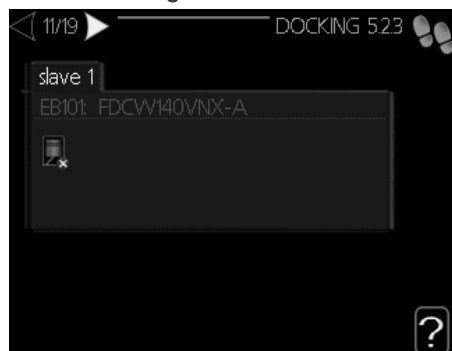
- **Add. tupe:**
 - step controlled
 - shunt controlled
- **Positioning:**
 - Before QN10
 - After QN10
- **Max step:**
 - Binary stepping deactivated: 0–3
 - Binary stepping activated: 0–7
- **Fuse size:** 11–200A
- **Transforamtion ratio:** 300–3000

10/19 - Installed slaves



Search for installed slaves and enable them (if connected) here. If everything is correct the units are automatically selected after searching for installed slaves.

11/19 - Docking



Set docking for each slave (if installed).

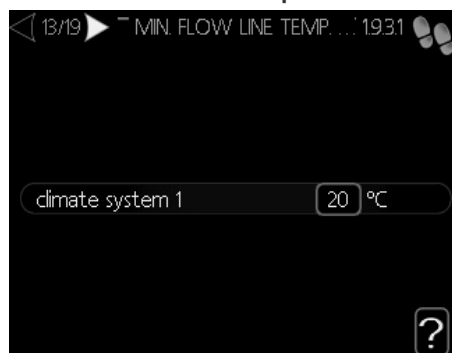
12/19 - Time & date



Set time, date and time zone here.

If the system is connected to myUpway then time and date are set automatically.

13/19 - Min. flow line temperature

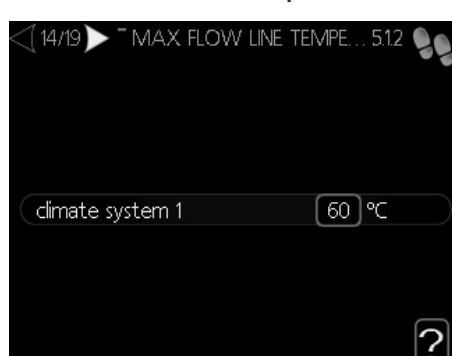


Set the minimum flow line temperature of the climate system.

Factory setting: 20°C

Setting range: 5–70°C

14/19 - Max. flow line temperature

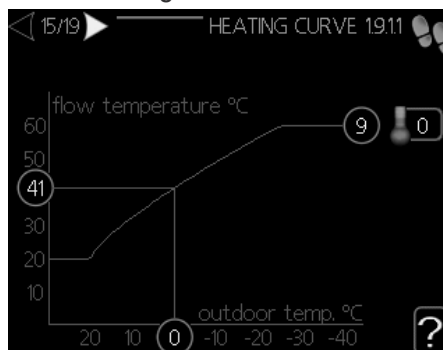


Set the maximum flow line temperature of the climate system.

Factory setting: 60°C

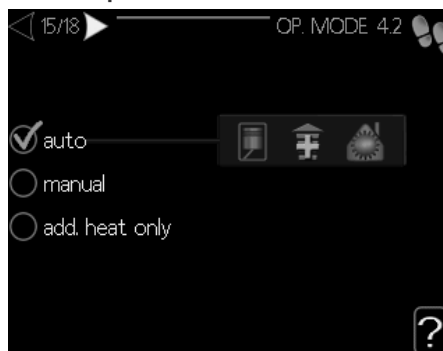
Setting range: 5–70°C

15/19 - Heating curve



View and set (if desired) the space heating curve.

16/19 - Op. mode



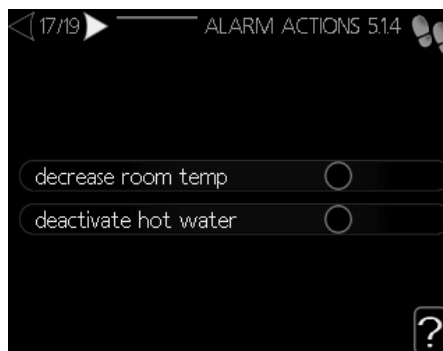
Set the operating mode of the heat pump.

Factory setting: Auto

Setting range:

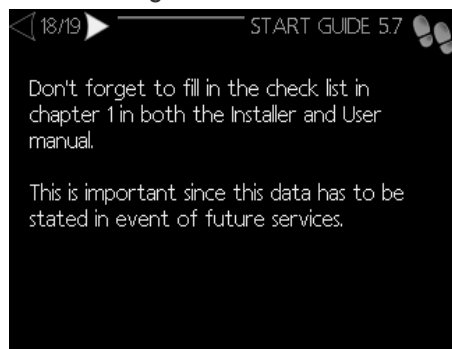
- Auto
- Manual
 - Heating
 - Cooling
 - Add. heat only
- Add. heat only
 - Heating

17/19 - Alarm actions



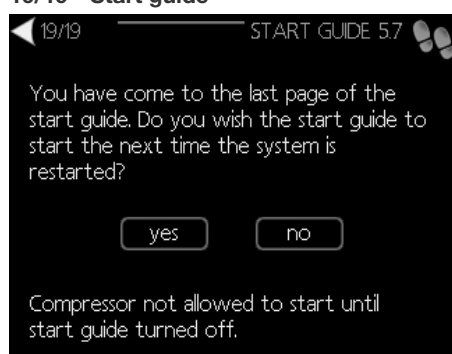
Set how to control the heat pump in case of alarm.

18/19 - Start guide



Information message from the controller. No action needed.

19/19 - Start guide



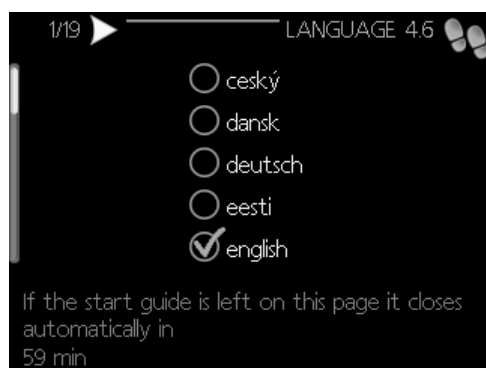
Commissioning guide finishes here. You can set it to open again upon restart of the controller or do not open it anymore.

Start guide – HMA60/100-S

This menu is shown at the first time that the heat pump is started. It ensures that commissioning is carried out correctly and all necessary steps are followed.

The following menus are basic settings. If accessories are connected other menus will appear.

1/19 – Language

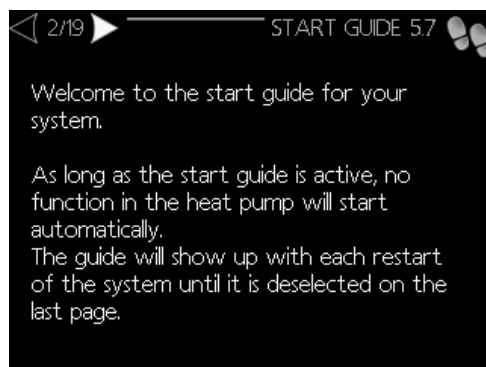


Select the language of the controller.

Factory setting: English

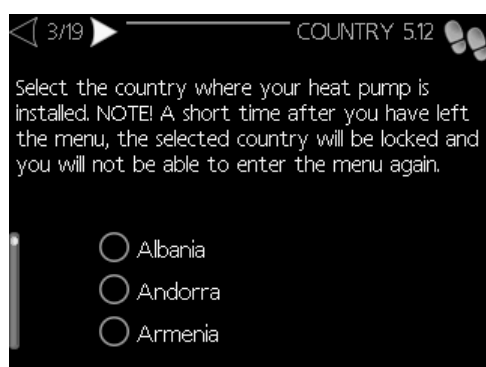
Available languages: Czech, Danish, German, Estonian, English, Spanish, French, Croatian, Icelandic, Italian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Romanian, Russian, Slovenian, Finnish, Swedish, Turkish.

2/19 – Start guide



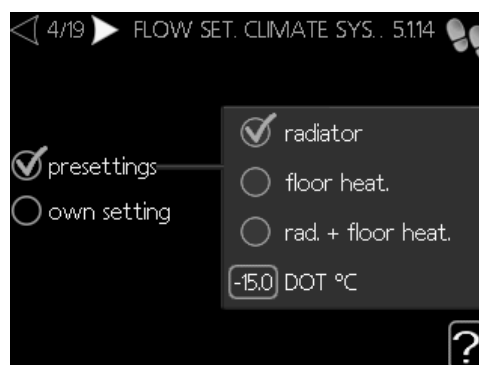
This menu displays information about the start guide. No action needed.

3/19 – Country



Select the country where your heat pump is located.

4/19 – Flow set. Climate system



The type of heating distribution system the heating medium pump works towards is set here.

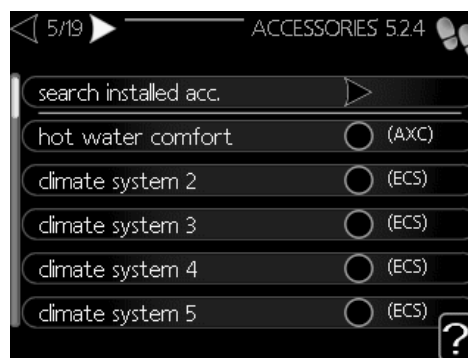
Factory settings: Presettings – Radiator

Setting range:

- **Pre-settings**
 - Radiator
 - Floor heating
 - Rad. + Floor heat.
- **Own setting**
 - Setting range dt at DOT: 0.0 – 25.0 °C
 - Setting range DOT: -40.0 – 20.0 °C

Where dt at DOT is the difference in degrees between the flow at return temperature at dimensioned outdoor temperature.

5/19 – Accessories



Activate or search for additional connected accessories here. Hot water production is enabled from factory and cannot be disabled.

6/19 – Soft in/outputs



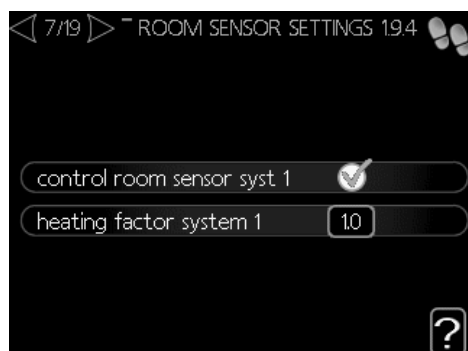
Set the function of each input and output for each terminal (if connected).

Setting range:

- AUX 1-6
 - o Temperature sensor, cooling/heating (BT74)
 - o Temperature sensor, heating supply downstream the submersible heater (BT63)
 - o Temperature sensor, flow line cooling (BT64)
 - o Temperature sensor, boiler (BT52)
 - o Contact for external tariff blocking
 - o Switch for “SG ready”
 - o Contact for activation of “external adjustment”
 - o Switch for external alarm
 - o Switch for external blocking
- AA3-X7
 - o Alarm output
 - o Cooling mode indication
 - o Active cooling 4 pipe
 - o External heating medium pump (GP10)
 - o Hot water circulation (GP11)
 - o Holiday output

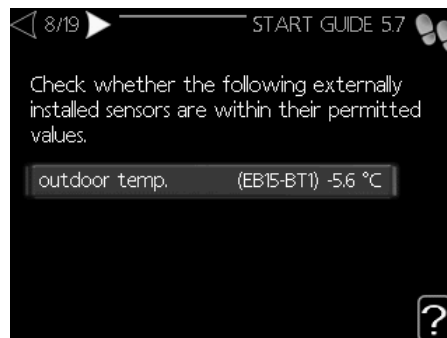
Note: From factory BT63, BT64 sensors are connected and AA3-X7 has the QN12 valve connected for cooling mode function/active cooling 4-pipe.

7/19 – Room sensor settings



Activate and set the room temperature sensor RTS40M (if connected) for each climate system

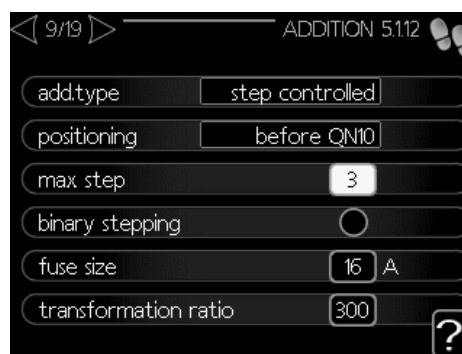
8/19 – Start guide



Check if the values of the shown temperature sensors are correct.

9/19 – Addition

< For software version 9350R6 or older >



Set addition settings here.

Factory setting:

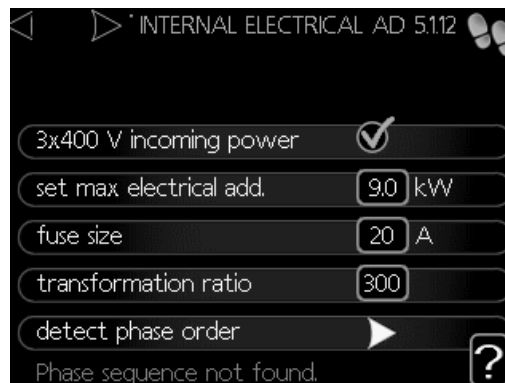
- **Add type:** step controlled
- **Positioning:** Before QN10
- **Max step:** 3
- **Fuse size:** 16A
- **Transformation ratio:** 300

Setting range:

- **Add type:** step controlled (locked)
- **Positioning:** Before QN10 (locked)
- **Max step:**
 - o **Binary stepping deactivated:** 0-3
 - o **Binary stepping activated:** 0-7
- **Fuse size:** 1 – 200 A
- **Transformation ratio:** 300 – 3000

9/19 – Internal electrical ad.

< For software version 9542R2 or earlier >



Set addition settings here.

Factory setting:

- **3 x 400V income power:** enabled
- **Set max electrical add. :** 9 kW
- **Fuse size:** 20 A
- **Transformation ratio:** 300

Setting range:

- **3 x 400V income power:** enabled/disabled
- **Set max electrical add. :** 0 – 9 kW (enabled)/ 0 – 4.5 (disabled)
- **Fuse size:** 1 – 200 A
- **Transformation ratio:** 300

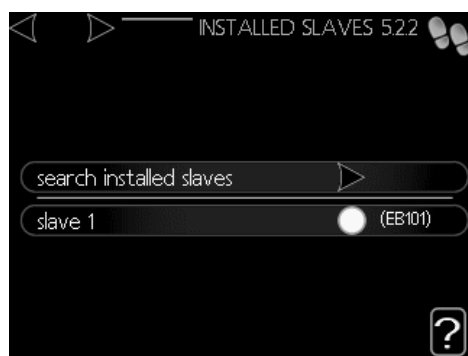
Additionally it is possible to detect phase order (if current sensors are connected)

10/19 – Slaves

< For software version 9350R6 or older >

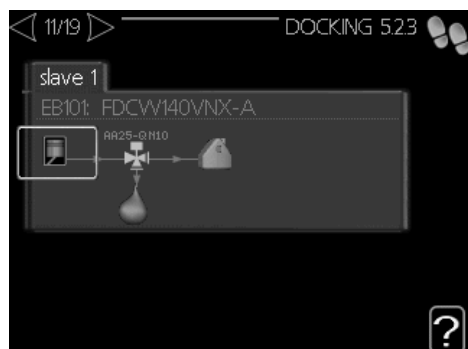


< For software version 9542R2 or earlier >



Search for installed slaves and enable them (if connected) here. If everything is correct the units are automatically selected after searching for installed slaves.

11/19 – Docking



Set outdoor unit docking. As from factory the unit comes set as space heating and hot water only the above docking will appear automatically. If other accessories are connected please adjust the docking accordingly.

Note: cooling mode docking will adjust automatically after enabling cooling mode on service menu 5.11.1.1

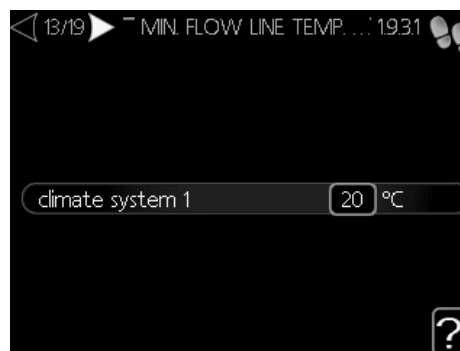
12/19 – Time & date



Set time and date here.

If the system is connected to myUpway then time and date are set automatically.

13/19 – Min. flow line temperature

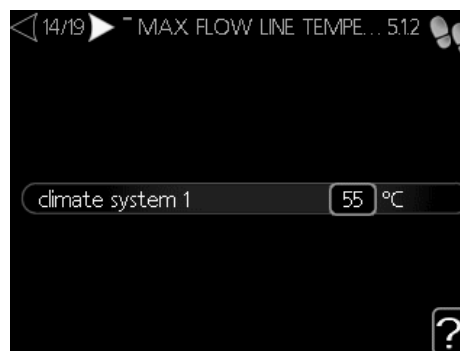


Set the minimum flow line temperature of the climate system.

Factory setting: 20.0 °C

Setting range: 5.0 – 70.0 °C

14/19 – Max. flow line temperature



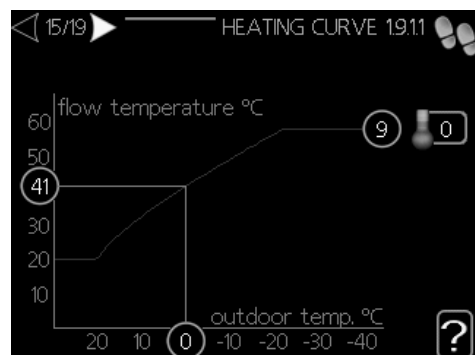
Set the maximum flow line temperature of the climate system.

Factory setting: 55.0 °C

Setting range: 5.0 – 70.0 °C

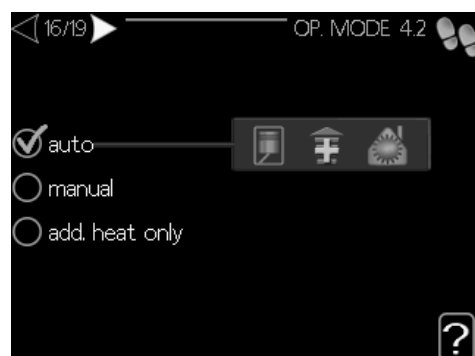
Note: even though the software allows 70°C, this indoor unit should work at a maximum temperature of 65°C.

15/19 – Heating curve



View and set (if desired) the space heating curve

16/19 – Op. Mode



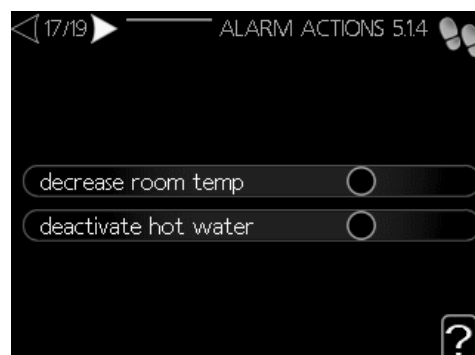
Set the operation mode of the heat pump.

Factory setting: Auto

Setting range:

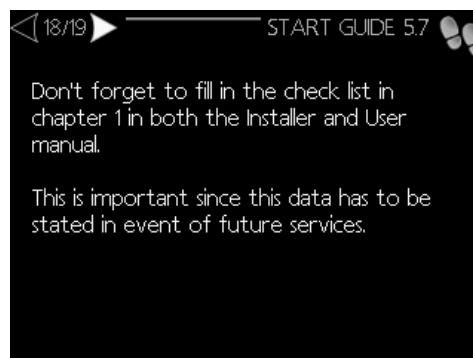
- **Auto**
- **Manual**
 - Heating
 - Cooling
 - Add. heat only
- **Add. heat only**
 - Heating

17/19 – Alarm actions



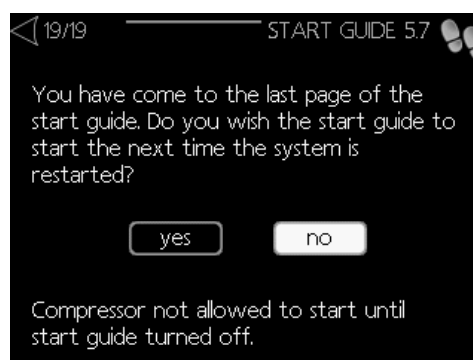
Set how to control the heat pump in case of alarm.

18/19 – Start guide



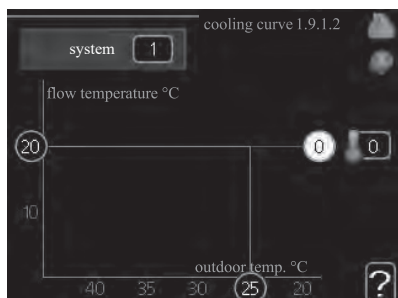
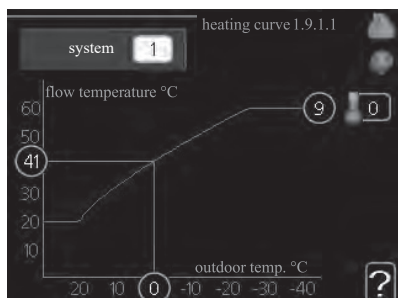
Information message from the controller. No action needed

19/19 – Start guide



Commissioning guide finishes here. It is possible to set it to open again upon restart of the controller or do not open it anymore.

Heating/cooling curve setting



heating curve

Setting range: 0 – 15

Default value: 9

cooling curve (accessory required)

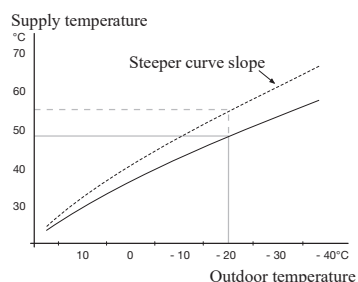
Setting range: 0 – 9

Default value: 0

The prescribed heating curve for your house can be viewed in the menu heating curve . The task of the heating curve is to give an even indoor temperature, regardless of the outdoor temperature, and thereby energy efficient operation. From this heating curve, the control module determines the temperature of the water to the heating system, supply temperature, and there by the indoor temperature. Select the heating curve and read off how the supply temperature changes at different outdoor temperatures here. If there is cooling function, the same settings can be made for the cooling curve.

Curve coefficient

The heating/cooling curve shows the relation between the target supply temperature and the corresponding outdoor temperature. A steep curve indicates that supply temperature becomes higher at low outdoor air temperature in heating and it becomes lower at high outdoor air temperature in cooling.



The optimum slope depends on the climate conditions in your location, the type of heating device (radiators or under floor heating) and how well insulated the house is.

The curve is set when the heating installation is installed, but may need adjusting later. Normally, the curve will not need further adjustment.

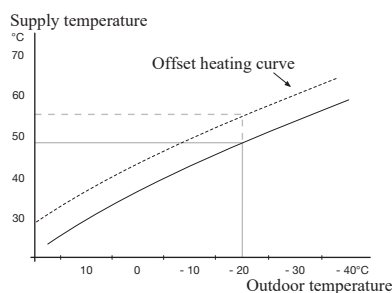
CAUTION

In the event of making fine adjustments of the indoor temperature, the curve must be offset up or down instead, this is done in menu 1.1 temperature .

Curve offset

The target temperature can be offset in parallel over the entire outdoor temperature range by this function. This is offset by 5 °C by adjusting 2 steps.

The target temperature can be parallel offset in the entire outdoor temperature range with this function. It is offset by 5 °C by adjusting 2 steps.



Flow line temperature – maximum and minimum values

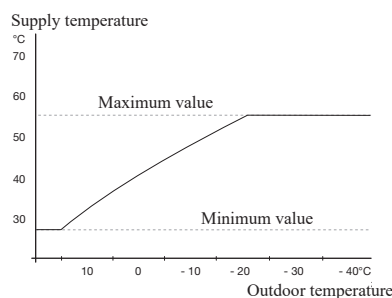
This function is used in order to limit max-min supply temperature. The heating / cooling curve becomes flat beyond max / min target temperature.

CAUTION

Underfloor heating systems are normally max flow line temperature set between 35 and 45°C. Take care not to cause low temperature burns in case it is set higher than 35°C.

Must be restricted with underfloor cooling min. flow line temp. to prevent condensation.

Check the max temperature for your floor with your installer/floor supplier.



The figure at the end of the curve indicates the curve number. The figure beside the thermometer icon gives the curve offset. Use the control knob to set a new value.

Confirm the new setting by pressing the OK button.

Curve 0 is an own curve created in menu 1.9.7.

To select another curve (slope):

1. Press OK button to access the setting mode
2. Select a new curve. The curves are numbered from 0 to 15, and the bigger number curve has steeper slope.
Curve 0 means that own curve (menu 1.9.7) is used.
3. Press OK button to exit the setting.

To read off a curve:

1. Turn the control knob so that the ring on the shaft with the outdoor temperature is marked.
2. Press OK button.
3. Follow the grey line up to the curve and out to the left to read off the value for the supply temperature at the selected outdoor temperature.
4. You can now select to take read outs for different outdoor temperatures by turning the control knob to the right or left and read off the corresponding flow temperature.
5. Press OK or Back button to exit read off mode.

TIP

Wait 24 hours before making a new setting, so that the room temperature has time to stabilise.

If it is cold outdoors and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve slope by one increment.

If it is cold outdoors and the room temperature is too high, lower the curve slope by one increment.

If it is warm outdoors and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve offset by one increment.

If it is warm outdoors and the room temperature is too high, lower the curve offset by one increment.

Hot water circulation setting

hot water recirc

operating time

Setting range: 1 – 60 min

Default value: 60 min

downtime

Setting range: 0 – 60 min

Default value: 0 min

Set the hot water circulation for up to three periods per day here. During the set periods the hot water circulation pump will run according to the settings above.

"operating time" decide how long the hot water circulation pump must run per operating instance.

"downtime" decide how long the hot water circulation pump must be stationary between operating instances.

Hot water circulation is activated in menu 5.4 "soft inputs and outputs".

SG Ready

This function can only be used in mains networks that support the "SG Ready"-standard .

Make settings for the function "SG Ready" here.

Low price mode means that the electricity supplier has a low tariff and the system uses this to reduce costs.

Over capacity mode means that the electricity supplier has set the tariff very low and the system uses this to reduce the costs as much as possible.

affect room temperature

Here you set whether room temperature should be affected when activating "SG Ready".

With low price mode of "SG Ready" the parallel off set of the indoor temperature is increased by "+1". If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature increases by 1 °C.

With over capacity mode of "SG Ready" the parallel offset for the indoor temperature is increased by "+2".

If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature increases by 2 °C.

affect hot water

Here you set whether the temperature of the hot water should be affected when activating "SG Ready".

With low price mode on "SG Ready" the stop temperature of the hot water is set as high as possible at only compressor operation (immersion heater not permitted).

With over capacity mode of "SG Ready" the hot water is set to "luxury" (immersion heater permitted).

affect cooling (accessory required)

Here you set whether room temperature during cooling operation should be affected when activating "SG Ready".

With low price mode of "SG Ready" and cooling operation the indoor temperature is not affected.

With over capacity mode of "SG Ready" and cooling operation the parallel off set for the indoor temperature is reduced by "-1".

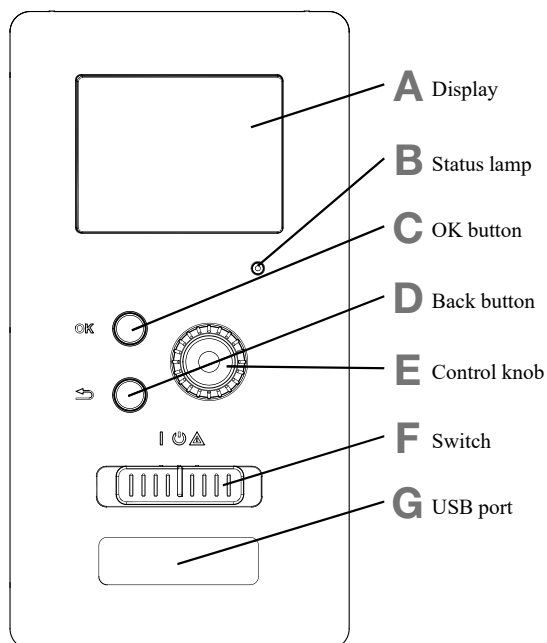
If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature decreases by 1 °C.

NOTE

The function must be connected to two AUX inputs and activated in menu 5.4.

Control

Control Display unit



A Display

Instructions, settings and operational information are shown on the display. The easy-to-read display and menu system, make it easy to navigate between various menus and options, set comfort and get the necessary information.

B Status lamp

The status lamp indicates the status of the control module. It:

- lights green during normal operation.
- lights yellow in emergency mode.
- lights red in the event of an alarm.

C OK button

The OK button is used to:

- confirm selections of sub menus/options/set values/page in the start guide.

D Back button

The back button is used to:

- go back to the previous menu.
- change a setting that has not been confirmed.

E Control knob

The control knob can be turned to the right or left. You can:

- scroll in menus and between options.
- increase and decrease values.
- change pages in multiple page instructions (for example help text and service info).

F Switch (SF1)

The switch shows three positions:

- On (I)
- Standby (⏻)
- Emergency mode (⚠)

Emergency mode must only be used in the event of a fault on the control module. In this mode, the compressor in the heat pump is turned off and the immersion heater is activated.

The control module display is not illuminated and the status lamp lights yellow.

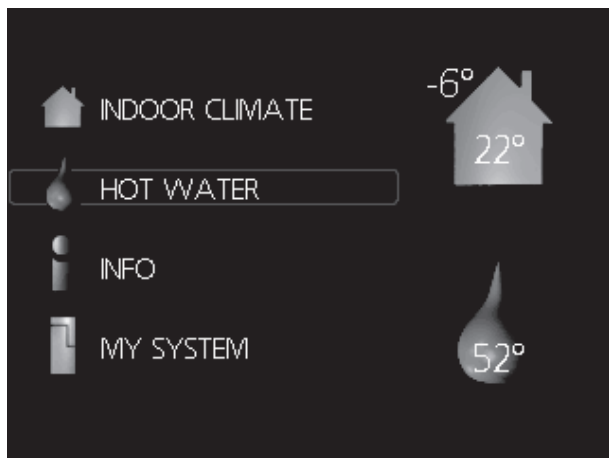
G USB port

The USB port is hidden behind the plastic badge of the product name.

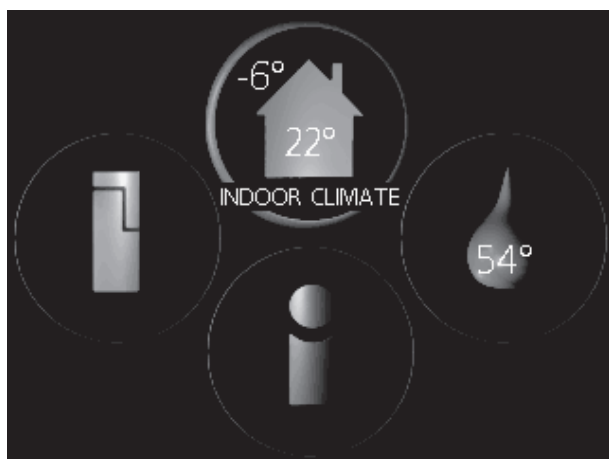
The USB port is used to update the software.

Menu system

RC-HY20-W



RC-HY40-W



Menu 1 - INDOOR CLIMATE

Setting and scheduling the indoor climate. See information in the help menu or user manual.

Menu 2 - HOT WATER

Setting and scheduling hot water production. See information in the help menu or user manual.

This menu only appears if a water heater is installed in the system.

Menu 3 - INFO

Display of temperature and other operating information and access to the alarm log. See information in the help menu or user manual.

Symbols in the display

The following symbols can appear in the display during operation.

Symbol	Description
	This symbol appears when there is information to be noticed in menu 3.1.
	<p>These two symbols indicate whether the compressor in the outdoor unit or additional heat in the installation is blocked via controller.</p> <p>These functions will be blocked for example, when either of the operation mode is blocked in menu 4.2, when blocking of either function is scheduled in menu 4.9.5, or when an alarm for blocking the operation occurs.</p> <p> Blocking the compressor.</p> <p> Blocking additional heat.</p>
	This symbol appears if periodic increase or lux mode for the hot water is activated.
	This symbol indicates if "holiday setting" is active in menu 4.7.
	This symbol indicates if the controller has contact with myUpway.
	This symbol indicates if cooling is active.

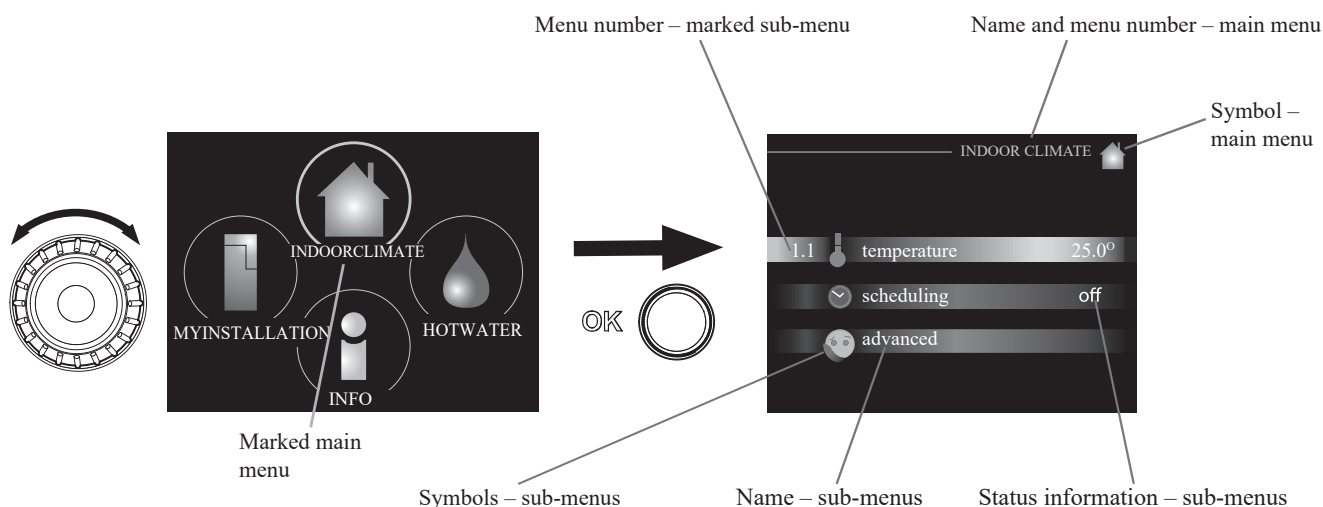
Menu 4 - MY INSTALLATION

Setting time, date, language, display, operating mode etc. See information in the help menu or user manual.

Menu 5 - SERVICE

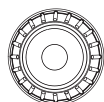
Advanced settings. These settings are not available to the end user. The menu is made visible by pressing the Back button for 7 seconds in the top screen.

*1 HMA unit integrates RC-HY40-W controller.



Operation

To move the cursor, turn the control knob to the left or the right. The marked position is brighter and/or has a light frame.

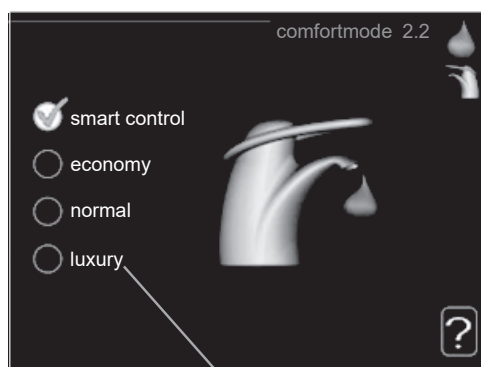


Selecting menu


To advance in the menu system select a main menu by marking it and then pressing the OK button. A new window opens with sub-menus.

Select one of the sub-menus by marking it and then pressing the OK button.



Selecting options



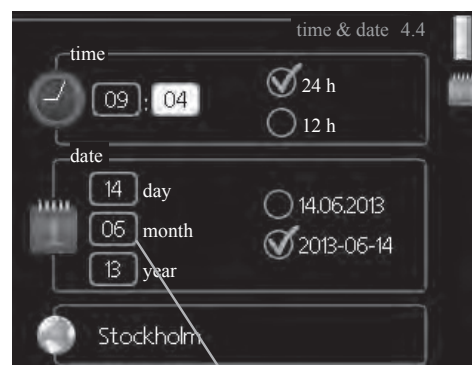
Alternative

In an options menu the current selected option is indicated by a green tick. 

To select another option:





1. Mark the applicable option. One of the options is pre-selected (white). 
2. Press the OK button to confirm the selected option. The selected option has a green tick. 

Setting a value

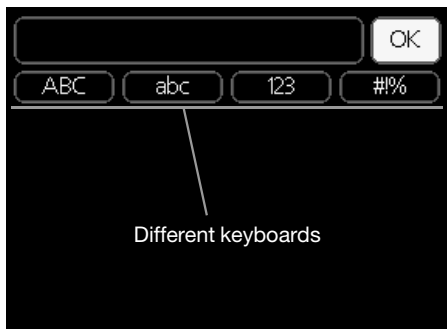


Values to be changed

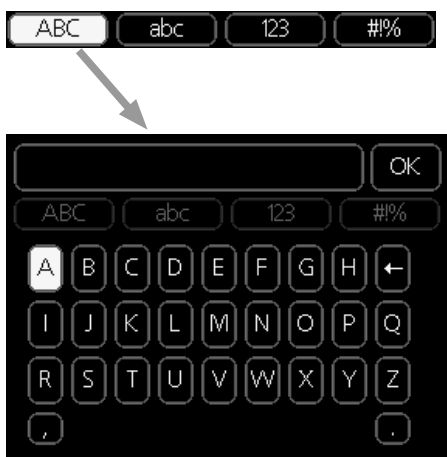
To set a value:

1. Mark the value you want to set using the control knob. 
2. Press the OK button. The background of the value becomes green, which means that you have accessed the setting mode. 
3. Turn the control knob to the right to increase the value and to the left to reduce the value. 
4. Press the OK button to confirm the value you have set. To change and return to the original value, press the Back button. 

Use the virtual keyboard



In some menus where text may require entering, a virtual keyboard is available.

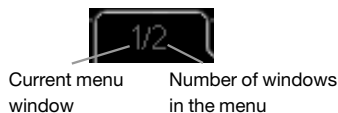


Depending on the menu, you can gain access to different character sets which you can select using the control knob. To change character table, press the Back button. If a menu only has one character set, the keyboard is displayed directly.

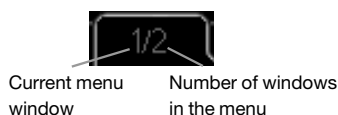
When you have finished writing, mark "OK" and press the OK button.

Scroll through the windows

A menu can consist of several windows. Turn the control knob to scroll between the windows.



Scroll through the windows in the start guide



1. Turn the control knob until one of the arrows in the top left corner (at the page number) has been marked.
2. Press the OK button to skip between the steps in the start guide.

Help menu

? In many menus there is a symbol that indicates that extra help is available.

To access the help text:

1. Use the control knob to select the help symbol.
2. Press the OK button.

The help text often consists of several windows that you can scroll between using the control knob.

Menu list

** Accessories are needed. ** Heat pump with cooling function required. 40"

MENU		RC-HY20-W	RC-HY40-W		
1 INDOOR CLIMATE					
1.1 - temperature	1.1.1 heating	✓	✓		
	1.1.2 cooling **	✓	✓		
1.3 - scheduling	1.3.1 heating	✓	✓		
	1.3.2 cooling **	✓	✓		
1.9 - advanced	1.9.1 curve	1.9.1.1 heating curve	✓	✓	
		1.9.1.2 cooling curve **	✓	✓	
	1.9.2 external adjustment		✓	✓	
	1.9.3 min. flow line temp.	1.9.3.1 heating	✓	✓	
		1.9.3.2 cooling **	✓	✓	
	1.9.4 room sensor settings		✓	✓	
	1.9.5 cooling settings *		✓	✓	
	1.9.7 own curve	1.9.7.1 heating	✓	✓	
		1.9.7.2 cooling **	✓	✓	
1.9.8 point offset		✓	✓		
2 HOTWATER					
2.1 temporary lux		✓	✓		
2.2 comfort mode		✓	✓		
2.3 scheduling		✓	✓		
2.9 advanced	2.9.1 periodic increase	✓	✓		
	2.9.2 hot water recirc. *	✓	✓		
3 INFO					
3.1 service info		✓	✓		
3.2 compressor info		✓	✓		
3.3 add. heat info		✓	✓		
3.4 alarm log		✓	✓		
3.5 indoor temp. log		✓	✓		
4. MY SYSTEM					
4.1 plus functions	4.1.1 Pool 1		—	✓	
	4.1.2 Pool 2		—	✓	
	4.1.3 internet	4.1.3.1 myUpway™	✓	✓	
		4.1.3.8 tcp/ip settings	✓	✓	
		4.1.3.9 proxy settings	✓	✓	
	4.1.5 SG Ready		✓	✓	
	4.1.6 smart price adaption™		✓	✓	
	4.1.8 smart energy source™	4.1.8.1 settings		—	✓
		4.1.8.2 set. Price		—	✓
		4.1.8.3 CO2 impact		—	✓
4.1.8.4 tariff periods, electricity		—	✓		
4.1.8.6 tariff per, ext. shunt add		—	✓		

** Accessories are needed. ** Heat pump with cooling function required. 40"

MENU		RC-HY20-W	RC-HY40-W
	4.1.8.7 tariff per, ext. step add	—	✓
	4.1.10 Solar electricity	✓	✓
4.2 op. mode		✓	✓
4.3 my icons		✓	✓
4.4 time & date		✓	✓
4.6 language		✓	✓
4.7 holiday setting		✓	✓
4.9 advanced	4.9.1 op. prioritisation	✓	✓
	4.9.2 auto mode setting	✓	✓
	4.9.3 degree minute setting	✓	✓
	4.9.4 factory setting user	✓	✓
	4.9.5 schedule blocking	✓	✓
	4.9.6 schedule silent mode	✓	✓
5 SERVICE			
5.1 operating settings	5.1.1 hot water settings *	✓	✓
	5.1.2 max flow line temperature	✓	✓
	5.1.3 max diff flow line temp.	✓	✓
	5.1.4 alarm actions	✓	✓
	5.1.12 addition	✓	✓
	5.1.14 flow set. climate system	✓	✓
	5.1.22 heat pump testing	✓	✓
	5.1.23 compressor curve	✓	✓
5.2 system settings	5.2.2 installed slaves	✓	✓
	5.2.3 docking	✓	✓
	5.2.4 accessories	✓	✓
5.3 accessory settings	5.3.2 shunt controlled add. heat *	—	✓
	5.3.3 extra climate system *	—	✓
	5.3.4 solar heating *	—	✓
	5.3.6 step controlled add. heat	—	✓
	5.3.8 hot water comfort *	—	✓
	5.3.10 modbus *	—	✓
	5.3.20 flow sensor*	—	✓
5.4 soft in/outputs		✓	✓
5.5 factory setting service		✓	✓
5.6 forced control		✓	✓
5.7 start guide		✓	✓
5.8 quick start		✓	✓
5.9 floor drying function		✓	✓
5.10 change log		✓	✓

"* Accessories are needed. ** Heat pump with cooling function required. 40"

MENU		RC-HY20-W	RC-HY40-W
5.11 slave settings	5.11.1 EB101	5.11.1.1 heat pump	✓
		5.11.1.2 charge pump (GP12)	✓
	5.11.2 EB102	—	✓
	5.11.3 EB103	—	✓
	5.11.4 EB104	—	✓
	5.11.5 EB105	—	✓
	5.11.6 EB106	—	✓
	5.11.7 EB107	—	✓
	5.11.8 EB108	—	✓
5.12 country		✓	✓

RC-HY20/40-W – at your service

Set the indoor climate

Overview

Sub-menus



For the menu "INDOOR CLIMATE" there are several sub-menus. Status information for the relevant menu can be found on the display to the right of the menus.

"temperature" Setting the temperature for the climate system. The status information shows the set values for the climate system.

"scheduling" Scheduling heating and cooling. Status information "set" is displayed if you set a schedule but it is not active now, "holiday setting" is displayed if the vacation schedule is active at the same time as the schedule (the vacation function is prioritised), "active" displays if any part of the schedule is active, otherwise it displays "off".

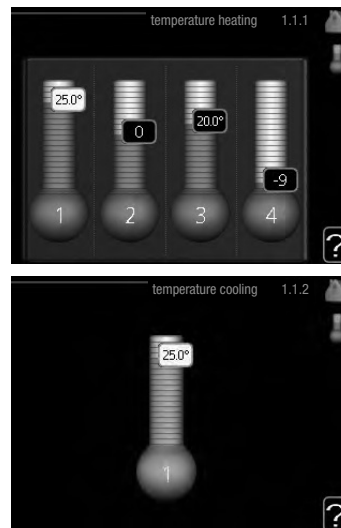
"advanced" Setting of heat curve, adjusting with external contact, minimum value for supply temperature, room sensor and cooling function.

Menu 1.1 - temperature

If the house has several climate systems, this is indicated on the display by a thermometer for each system.

Choose heating or cooling and then set the desired temperature in the next menu "temperature heating/cooling" in menu 1.1.

Set the temperature (with room sensors installed and activated):



heating

Setting range: 5 – 30 °C

Default value: 20

cooling (accessory is required)

Setting range: 5 – 30 °C

Default value: 25

The value in the display appears as a temperature in °C if the climate system is controlled by a room sensor.

CAUTION

A slow heat-releasing heating system, such as for example, underfloor heating, may not be suitable for control using the heat pump's room sensor.

To change the room temperature, use the control knob to set the desired temperature in the display. Confirm the new setting by pressing the OK button. The new temperature is shown on the right-hand side of the symbol in the display.

Setting the temperature (without room sensors activated):

Setting range: -10 to +10

Default value: 0

The display shows the set values for heating (curve offset). To increase or reduce the indoor temperature, increase or reduce the value on the display.

Use the control knob to set a new value. Confirm the new setting by pressing the OK button.

The number of steps the value has to be changed to achieve a degree change of the indoor temperature depends on the heating installation. One step is usually enough but in some cases several steps may be required.

The new value is shown on the right-hand side of the symbol in the display.

CAUTION

An increase in the room temperature can be slowed by the thermostats for the radiators or under floor heating. Therefore, open the thermostats fully, except in those rooms where a cooler temperature is required, e.g. bedrooms.

TIP

Wait 24 hours before making a new setting, so that the room temperature has time to stabilise.

If it is cold outside temperature and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve slope in menu 1.9.1.1 by one increment.

If it is cold outside temperature and the room temperature is too high, reduce the curve slope in menu 1.9.1.1 by one increment.

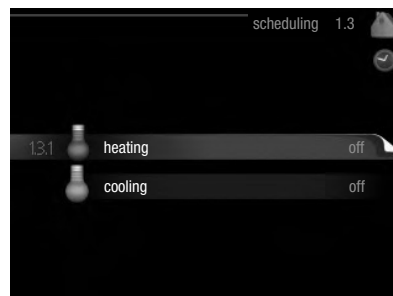
If it is warm outside temperature and the room temperature is too low, increase the value in menu 1.1.1 by one increment.

If it is warm outside temperature and the room temperature is too high, reduce the value in menu 1.1.1 by one increment.

Menu 1.3 - temperature scheduling

In the menu scheduling indoor climate (heating/cooling) is scheduled for each weekday.

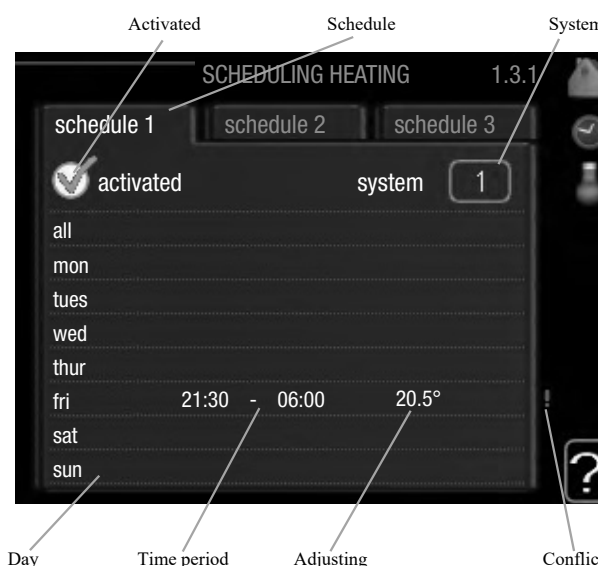
You can also schedule a longer period during a selected period (vacation) in menu 4.7.



Menu 1.3.1 - heating

Increases or decreases in the accommodation temperature can be scheduled here for up to three time periods per day. One step is usually enough to change the room temperature by one degree, but in some cases several steps may be required for the accommodation temperature.

If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature (°C) is set during the time periods.



Schedule: The schedule to be changed is selected here.

Activated: Scheduling for the selected period is activated here. Set times are not affected at deactivation.

System (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only):

Which climate system the schedule is for is selected here. This alternative is only displayed if more than one climate system is present.

Day: Select which day or days of the week the schedule is to apply to here. To remove the scheduling for a particular day, the time for that day must be reset by setting the start time to the same as the stop time. If the line "all" is used, all days in the period are set for these times.

Time period: The start and stop time for the selected day for scheduling are selected here.

Adjusting: How much the heating curve is to be offset in relation to menu 1.1 during scheduling is set here. If the rooms sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature is set in °C.

Conflict: If two settings conflict with each other a red exclamation mark is displayed.

TIP

If you wish to set similar scheduling for every day of the week start by filling in "all" and then changing the desired days.

TIP

*Set the stop time earlier than the start time so that the period extends beyond midnight. Scheduling then stops at the set stop time the day after.
Scheduling always starts on the date that the start time is set for.*

CAUTION

Changes of temperature in accommodation take time. For example, short time periods in combination with underfloor heating will not give a noticeable difference in room temperature.

Time period: The start and stop time for the selected day for scheduling are selected here.

Adjusting: Here, you set when active cooling will not be permitted.

Conflict: If two settings conflict with each other a red exclamation mark is displayed.

TIP

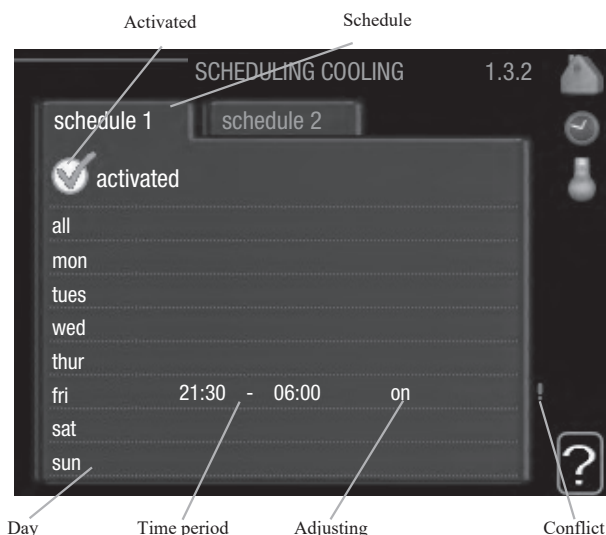
If you wish to set similar scheduling for every day of the week start by filling in "all" and then changing the desired days.

TIP

*Set the stop time earlier than the start time so that the period extends beyond midnight. Scheduling then stops at the set stop time the day after.
Scheduling always starts on the date that the start time is set for.*

Menu 1.3.2 - cooling

Here you can schedule when cooling is permitted in the accommodation for up to two different time periods per day.

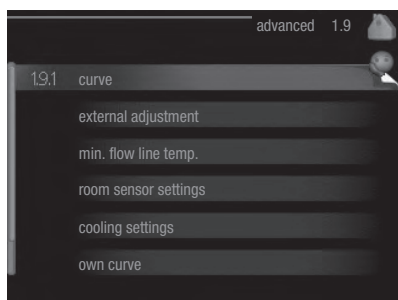


Schedule: The schedule to be changed is selected here.

Activated: Scheduling for the selected period is activated here. Set times are not affected at deactivation.

Day: Select which day or days of the week the schedule is to apply to here. To remove the scheduling for a particular day, the time for that day must be reset by setting the start time to the same as the stop time. If the line "all" is used, all days in the period are set for these times.

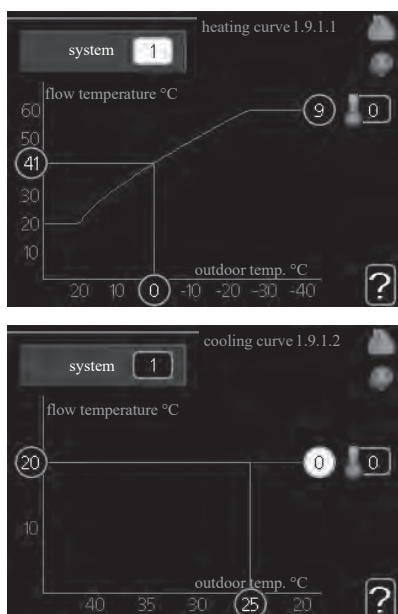
Menu 1.9 - advanced



Menu "advanced" has orange text and is intended for the advanced user. This menu has several sub-menus.

- "**curve**" Setting the curve slope for heating and cooling.
- "**external adjustment**" Setting the heat curve offset when the external contact is connected.
- "**min. flow line temp.**" Setting minimum permitted flow line temperature.
- "**room sensor settings**" Settings regarding the room sensor.
- "**cooling settings**" Settings for cooling.
- "**own curve**" Setting own curve for heating and cooling.
- "**point offset**" Setting the offset of the heating curve or cooling curve at a specific outdoor temperature.

Menu 1.9.1 - Heating/cooling curve setting



heating curve

Setting range: 0 – 15
Default value: 9

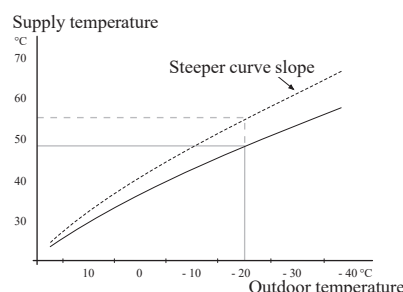
cooling curve (accessory required)

Setting range: 0 – 9
Default value: 0

The prescribed heating curve for your house can be viewed in the menu "heating curve". The task of the heating curve is to give an even indoor temperature, regardless of the outdoor temperature, and thereby energy efficient operation. From this heating curve, the control module determines the temperature of the water to the heating system, supply temperature, and therefore the indoor temperature. Select the heating curve and read off how the supply temperature changes at different outdoor temperatures here. If there is cooling function, the same settings can be made for the cooling curve.

Curve coefficient

The heating/cooling curve shows the relation between the target supply temperature and the corresponding outdoor temperature. A steep curve indicates that supply temperature becomes higher at low outdoor air temperature in heating and it becomes lower at high outdoor air temperature in cooling.



The optimum slope depends on the climate conditions in your location, the type of heating device (radiators or under floor heating) and how well insulated the house is.

The curve is set when the heating installation is installed, but may need adjusting later. Normally, the curve will not need further adjustment.

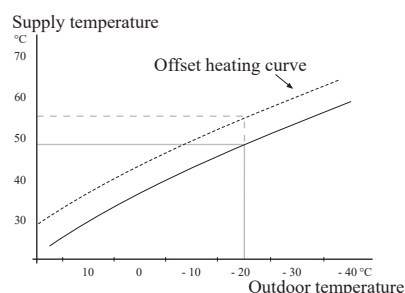
CAUTION

In the event of making fine adjustments of the indoor temperature, the curve must be offset up or down instead, this is done in menu 1.1 "temperature".

Curve offset

The target temperature can be offset in parallel over the entire outdoor temperature range by this function. This is offset by 5 °C by adjusting 2 steps.

The target temperature can be parallel offset in the entire outdoor temperature range with this function. It is offset by 5 °C by adjusting 2 steps.



Flow line temperature – maximum and minimum values

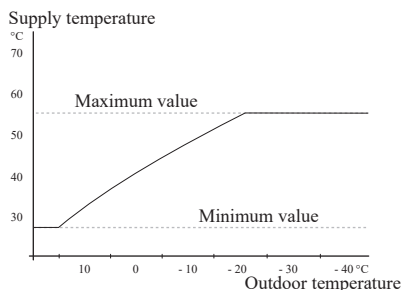
This function is used in order to limit max-min supply temperature. The heating / cooling curve becomes flat beyond max / min target temperature.

CAUTION

Underfloor heating systems are normally "max flow line temperature" set between 35 and 45°C. Take care not to cause low temperature burns in case it is set higher than 35°C.

Must be restricted with underfloor cooling min. flow line temp. to prevent condensation.

Check the max temperature for your floor with your installer/floor supplier.



The figure at the end of the curve indicates the curve number. The figure beside the thermometer icon gives the curve offset. Use the control knob to set a new value.

Confirm the new setting by pressing the OK button.

Curve 0 is an own curve created in menu 1.9.7.

To select another curve (slope):

1. Press OK button to access the setting mode.
2. Select a new curve. The curves are numbered from 0 to 15, and the bigger number curve has steeper slope. Curve 0 means that "own curve" (menu 1.9.7) is used.
3. Press OK button to exit the setting.

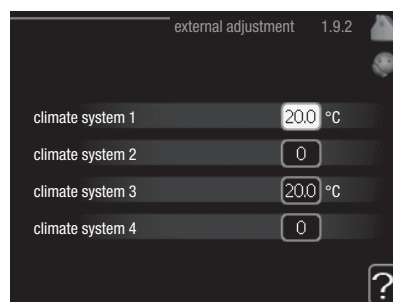
To read off a curve:

1. Turn the control knob so that the ring on the shaft with the outdoor temperature is marked.
2. Press OK button.
3. Follow the grey line up to the curve and out to the left to read off the value for the supply temperature at the selected outdoor temperature.
4. You can now select to take read outs for different outdoor temperatures by turning the control knob to the right or left and read off the corresponding flow temperature.
5. Press OK or Back button to exit read off mode.

TIP

- Wait 24 hours before making a new setting, so that the room temperature has time to stabilise.*
- If it is cold outdoors and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve slope by one increment.*
- If it is cold outdoors and the room temperature is too high, lower the curve slope by one increment.*
- If it is warm outdoors and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve offset by one increment.*
- If it is warm outdoors and the room temperature is too high, lower the curve offset by one increment.*

Menu 1.9.2 - external adjustment



*If there is one climate system, display shows "climate system 1" only.

climate system

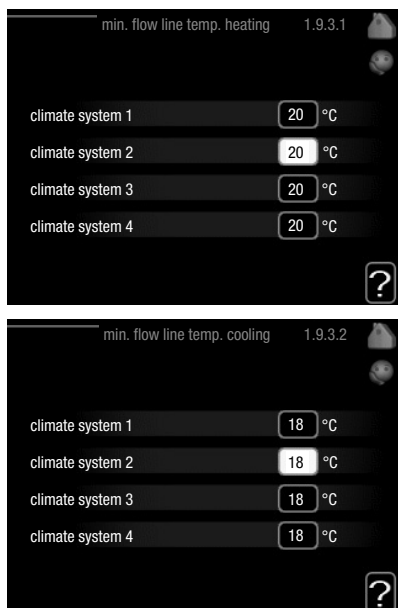
Setting range: -10 to +10 or desired room temperature if the room sensor is installed.

Default value: 0

Connecting an external contact, for example, a room thermostat or a timer allows you to temporarily or periodically increase or decrease the room temperature while heating. When the contact is on, the heating curve offset is changed by the number of steps selected in the menu. If a room sensor is installed and activated the desired room temperature (°C) is set.

If there is more than one climate system the setting can be made separately for each system.

Menu 1.9.3 - min. flow line temp.



*If there is one climate system, display shows "climate system 1" only.

heating

Setting range: 5 – 70 °C
Default value: 20 °C

cooling (heat pump with cooling function required)

Depending on which cooling function (2-pipe /4-pipe system) is used, the lower limit of the setting range can vary from 7 to 18 °C.

Setting range: 7 – 30 °C
Factory setting: 18 °C

In menu 1.9.3 you select heating or cooling, in the next menu (min. supply temp. heating/cooling) set the minimum temperature on the supply temperature to the climate system. This means that RC-HY20/40-W never calculates a temperature lower than that set here.

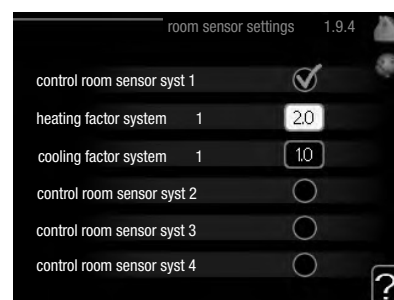
If there is more than one climate system the setting can be made separately for each system.

TIP

*The value can be increased if you have, for example, a cellar that you always want to heat, even in summer.
You may also need to increase the value in "stop heating" menu 4.9.2 "auto mode setting".*

Menu 1.9.4 - room sensor settings

factor system



*If there is one climate system, display shows "control room sensor system 1" only.

heating

Setting range: 0.0 – 6.0
Factory setting heating: 2.0

cooling (accessory required)

Setting range: 0.0 – 6.0
Factory setting cooling: 1.0

Room sensors to control the room temperature can be activated here.

CAUTION

A slow heat-releasing heating system, such as for example, underfloor heating, may not be suitable for control using the heat pump's room sensor.

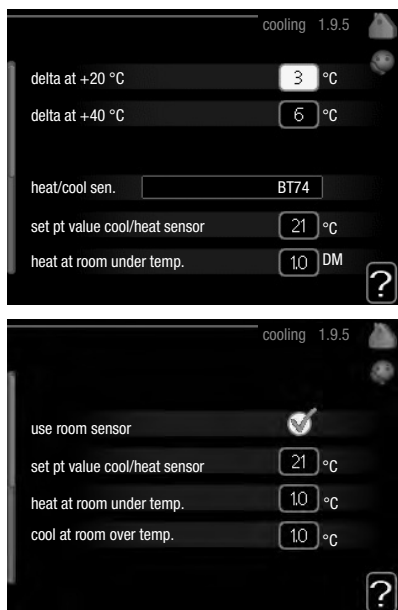
Here you can set a factor (a numerical value) that determines how much an over or sub normal temperature (the difference between the desired and actual room temperature) in the room is to affect the supply temperature to the climate system. A higher value gives a greater and faster change of the heating curve's set offset.

NOTE

Too high a set value for "factor system" can (depending on your climate system) produce an unstable room temperature.

If several climate systems are installed the above settings can be made for the relevant systems.

Menu 1.9.5 - cooling settings



delta at +20 °C

Setting range: 3 – 10 °C
Factory setting: 3

delta at +40 °C

Setting range: 3 – 20 °C
Factory setting: 6

heat/cool sen.

Setting range: BT74 (BT50, RMU-BT50) Factory setting: BT74

set pt value cool/heat sensor

Setting range: 5 – 40 °C
Factory setting: 21

heat at room under temp.

Setting range: 0.5 – 10.0 °C
Default value: 1.0

cool at room over temp.

Setting range: 0.5 – 10.0 °C
Default value: 3.0

start active cooling

Setting range: 10 – 300 DM
Factory setting: 30 DM

step difference compressors (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

Setting range: 10 – 150
Default value: 30

degree minutes cooling (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

Setting range: -3000 – 3000 cooling degree minutes Factory setting: -1

time betw. switch heat/cool

Setting range: 0 – 48 h
Factory setting: 2

You can use RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S to cool the house during hot periods of the year.

CAUTION

Certain setting options only appear if their function is installed and activated in RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S.

delta at +20 °C

Set the desired temperature difference between supply and return lines to the climate system during cooling operation when the outdoor temperature is +20 °C. RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S then attempts to get as close to the set temperature as possible.

delta at +40 °C

Set the desired temperature difference between supply and return lines to the climate system during cooling operation when the outdoor temperature is +40 °C. RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S then attempts to get as close to the set temperature as possible.

heat/cool sen.

If a particular room will determine how the whole installation will work, a room sensor (BT74) is used. If room sensor (BT74) is connected to RC-HY20/40-W room sensor (BT74) determines when it is time to switch between cooling and heating operation for the whole installation.

CAUTION

When the heating/cooling sensors (BT74) have been connected and activated in menu 5.4, no other sensor can be selected in menu 1.9.5.

set pt value cool/heat sensor

Here you can set at which indoor temperature RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S is to shift between heating respectively cooling operation.

heat at room under temp.

Here you can set how far the room temperature can drop below the desired temperature before RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S switches to heating operation.

cool at room over temp.

Here you can set how high the room temperature can increase above the desired temperature before RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S switches to cooling operation.

start active cooling

Here you can set when active cooling is to start.

Degree minutes are a measurement of the current heating demand in the house and determine when the compressor, cooling operation respectively additional heat will start/stop.

step difference compressors (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

CAUTION

This setting option only appears if cooling is activated in menu 5.2.4.

The degree minute difference for controlling when the next compressor is to start is set here.

degree minutes cooling (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

This selection is only available when the connected accessory itself counts cooling degree minutes.

After a min. or max. value has been set, the system will automatically set the real value in relation to the number of compressors that are running cooling.

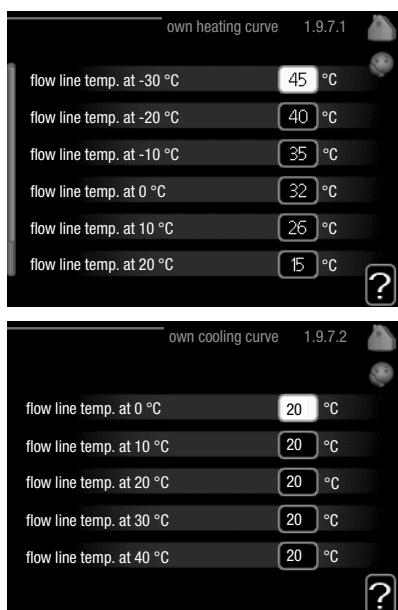
time betw. switch heat/cool

This selection is only available in cooling 2-pipe systems.

Here you can set how long RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S is to wait before it returns to heating mode when the cooling demand has ceased or vice versa.

Menu 1.9.7 - own curve

supply temperature



heating

Setting range: 5 – 70 °C

cooling (accessory required)

Depending on which accessory is used the setting range can vary.

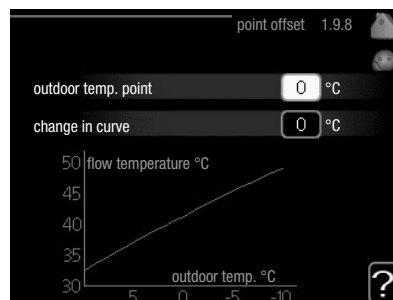
Setting range: -5 – 40 °C

Create your own heating or cooling curve here, by setting the desired supply temperatures for different outdoor temperatures.

CAUTION

Curve 0 in menu 1.9.1 must be selected for own curve to apply.

Menu 1.9.8 - point offset



outdoor temp. point

Setting range: -40 – 30 °C

Default value: 0 °C

change in curve

Setting range: -10 – 10 °C

Default value: 0 °C

Select a change in the heating curve at a certain outdoor temperature here. One step is usually enough to change the room temperature by one degree, but in some cases several steps may be required.

The heat curve is affected at ± 5 °C from set outdoor temp. point.

It is important that the correct heating curve is selected so that the room temperature is experienced as even.

TIP

If it is cold in the house, at, for example -2 °C, "outdoor temp. point" is set to "-2" and "change in curve" is increased until the desired room temperature is maintained.

CAUTION

Wait 24 hours before making a new setting, so that the room temperature has time to stabilise.

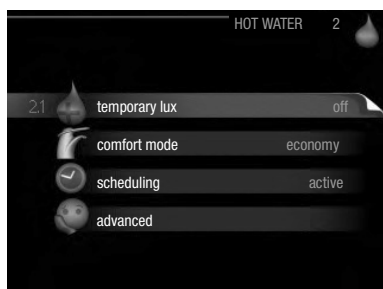
Set the hot water capacity

Overview

Sub-menus

This menu only appears if a water heater is docked to the heat pump.

For the menu "HOT WATER" there are several sub-menus. Status information for the relevant menu can be found on the display to the following menus.



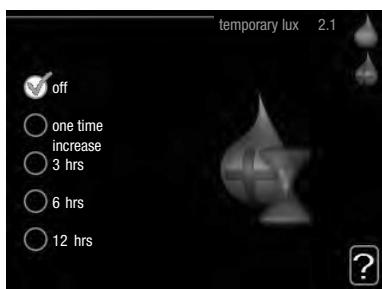
"temporary lux" Activation of temporary increase in the hot water temperature. Status information displays "off" or what length of time of the temporary temperature increase remains.

"comfort mode" Setting hot water comfort. The status information displays what mode is selected, "economy", "normal" or "luxury".

"scheduling" Scheduling hot water comfort. The status information "set" appears if you have set scheduling but it is not currently active, "holiday setting" appears if holiday setting is active at the same time as scheduling (when the holiday function is prioritised), "active" appears if any part of scheduling is active, otherwise "off" appears.

"advanced" Setting periodic increase in the hot water temperature.

Menu 2.1 - temporary lux



Setting range: 3, 6 and 12 hours
and mode "off" and "one time increase"
Default value: "off"

When hot water requirement has temporarily increased this menu can be used to select an increase in the hot water temperature to lux mode for a selectable time.

CAUTION

If comfort mode "luxury" is selected in menu 2.2 no further increase can be carried out.

The function is activated immediately when a time period is selected and confirmed using the OK button. The remaining time for the selected setting is shown to the right.

When the time has run out RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S returns to the mode set in menu 2.2. Select "off" to switch off temporary lux .

Menu 2.2- comfort mode



Setting range: economy, normal, luxury
Default value: normal

The difference between the selectable modes is the temperature of the hot tap water. Higher temperature means that the hot water lasts longer.

smart control: In this menu you activate the Smart Control function. The function learns the previous week's hot water consumption and adapts the temperature in the water heater for the coming week to ensure minimal energy consumption. If the hot water demand is greater, there is a certain additional amount of hot water available. When the Smart Control function is activated, the water heater delivers the reported performance according to the energy decal.

economy: This mode gives less hot water than the others, but is more economical. This mode can be used in smaller households with a small hot water requirement.

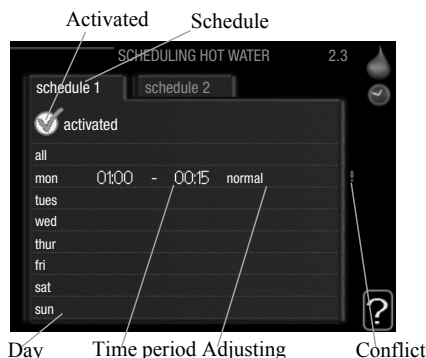
normal: Normal mode gives a larger amount of hot water than the economy mode and is suitable for most households.

luxury: Lux mode gives the greatest possible amount of hot water. In this mode, the immersion heater, as well as the compressor, is used to heat hot water, which may increase operating costs.

Menu 2.3 - scheduling

Two different periods of hot water comfort per day can be scheduled here.

Scheduling is activated/deactivated by ticking/unticking "activated". Set times are not affected at deactivation.



Schedule: The schedule to be changed is selected here.

Activated: Scheduling for the selected period is activated here. Set times are not affected at deactivation.

Day: Select which day or days of the week the schedule is to apply to here.

To remove the scheduling for a particular day, the time for that day must be reset by setting the start time to the same as the stop time. If the line "all" is used, all days in the period are set for these times.

Time period: The start and stop time for the selected day for scheduling are selected here.

Adjusting: Set the hot water comfort that is to apply during scheduling here.

Conflict: If two settings conflict with each other a red exclamation mark is displayed.

TIP

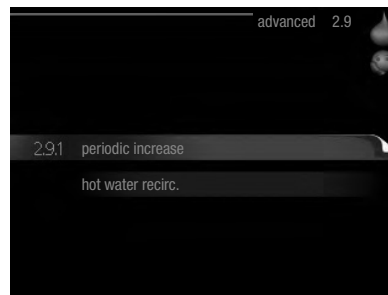
If you wish to set similar scheduling for every day of the week start by filling in "all" and then changing the desired days.

TIP

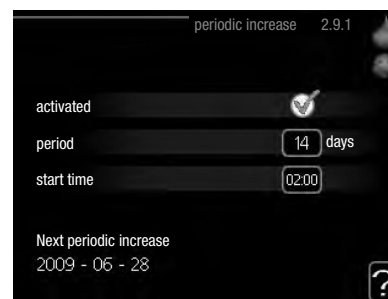
*Set the stop time earlier than the start time so that the period extends beyond midnight. Scheduling then stops at the set stop time the day after.
Scheduling always starts on the date that the start time is set for.*

Menu 2.9 - advanced

Menu "advanced" has orange text and is intended for the advanced user. This menu has several sub-menus.



Menu 2.9.1 - periodic increase



period

Setting range: 1 – 90 days

Default value: 14 days

start time

Setting range: 00:00 – 23:00

Default value: 00:00

To prevent bacterial growth in the water heater, the heat pump and any additional heater can increase the hot water temperature for a short time at regular intervals.

The length of time between increases can be selected here. The time can be set between 1 and 90 days. Factory setting is 14 days. Tick/untick "activated" to start/switch off the function.

Menu 2.9.2 - hot water recirc. (accessory required)



operating time

Setting range: 1 – 60 min

Default value: 60 min

downtime

Setting range: 0 – 60 min

Default value: 0 min

Set the hot water circulation for up to three periods per day here. During the set periods the hot water circulation pump will run according to the settings above.

"operating time" decide how long the hot water circulation pump must run per operating instance.

"downtime" decide how long the hot water circulation pump must be stationary during operating instances.

Hot water circulation is activated in menu 5.4 "soft inputs and outputs".

Get information

Overview

Sub-menus

For the menu "INFO" there are several sub-menus. No settings can be made in these menus, they just display information. Status information for the relevant menu can be found on the display to the following menus.



"**service info**" shows temperature levels and settings in the installation.

"**compressor info**" shows operating times, number of starts etc. for the compressor in the heat pump.

"**add. heat info**" displays information about the additional heat's operating times etc.

"**alarm log**" shows the latest alarms.

"**indoor temp. log**" the average temperature indoors week by week during the past year.

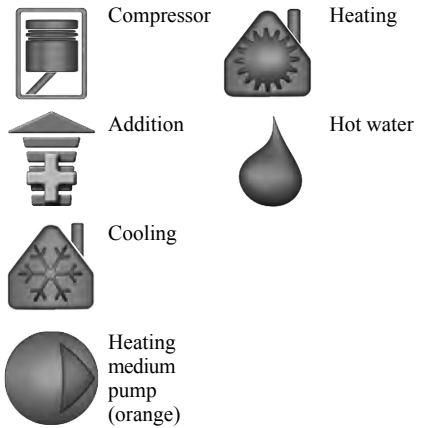
Menu 3.1 - service info

Information about the actual operating status of the installation (e.g. current temperatures etc.) can be obtained here. But no changes can be made.

The information is on several pages. Turn the control knob to scroll between the pages.



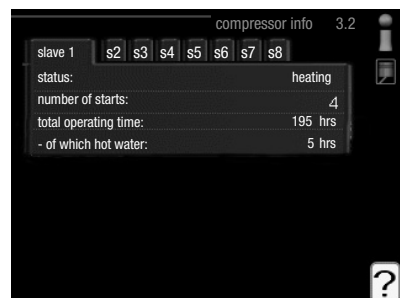
Symbols in this menu:



Menu 3.2 - compressor info

Information about the compressor's operating status and statistics can be obtained here. But no changes can be made.

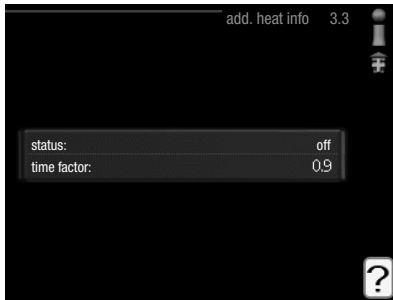
If there is more than one climate system the information is on several pages. Turn the control knob to scroll between the pages.



Menu 3.3 - add. heat info

Information about the additional heat's settings, operating status and statistics can be obtained here. But no changes can be made.

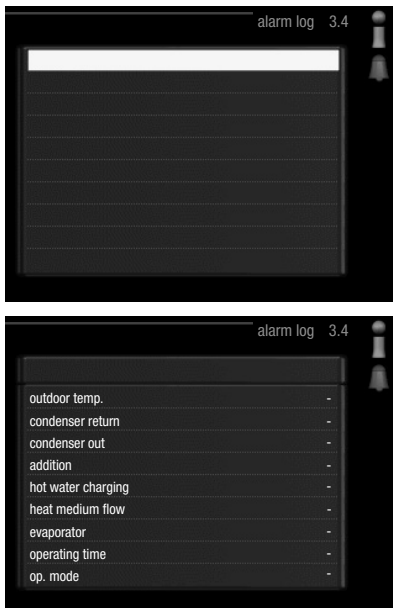
If there is more than one climate system the information is on several pages. Turn the control knob to scroll between the pages.



Menu 3.4 - alarm log

To facilitate fault-finding the installation's operating status at alarm alerts is stored here. You can see information for the 10 most recent alarms.

To view the run status in the event of an alarm, mark the alarm and press the OK button.



Information about an alarm.

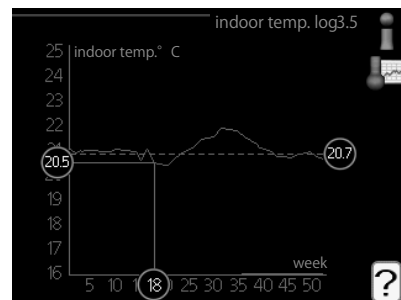
Menu 3.5 - indoor temp. log

Here you can see the average temperature indoors week by week during the past year. The dotted line indicates the annual average temperature.

The average outdoor temperature is only shown if a room temperature sensor/room unit is installed.

To read off an average temperature

1. Turn the control knob so that the ring on the shaft with the week number is marked.
2. Press the OK button.
3. Follow the grey line up to the graph and out to the left to read off the average indoor temperature at the selected week.
4. You can now select to take read outs for different weeks by turning the control knob to the right or left and read off the average temperature.
5. Press the OK or Back button to exit read off mode.



Adjust the heat pump

Overview

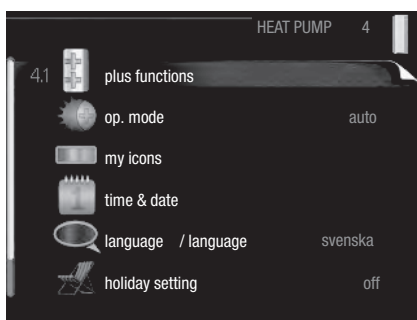
Sub-menus

For the menu "MY SYSTEM" there are several sub-menus. Status information for the relevant menu can be found on the display to the right of the menus.

"plus functions" Settings applying to any installed extra functions in the heating system.

"op. mode" Activation of manual or automatic operating mode. The status information shows the selected operating mode.

"my icons" Settings regarding which icons in the control module's user interface that are to appear on the hatch when the door is closed.



"time & date" Setting current time and date.

"language" Select the language for the display here. The status information shows the selected language.

"holiday setting" Vacation scheduling heating, hot water and ventilation. Status information "set" is displayed if you set a vacation schedule but it is not active at the moment, "active" is displayed if any part of the vacation schedule is active, otherwise it displays "off".

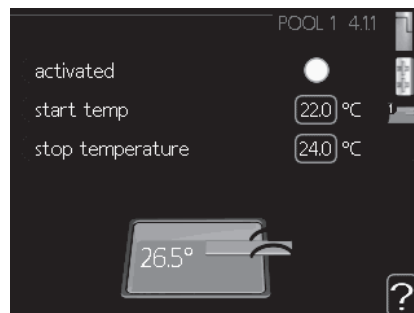
"advanced" Settings of control module work mode.

Menu 4.1 - plus functions

Settings for any additional functions installed in RC-HY20/40-W and HMA - Scan be made in the sub-menus.

Menu 4.1.1/4.1.2 - Pool 1/Pool 2

Here you can activate pool heating and set start and stop temperatures.



start temp

Setting range: 5 – 80 °C

Default value: 22 °C

stop temperature

Setting range: 5 – 80 °C

Default value: 24 °C

maximum number of compr. (Cascade only)

Setting range: 1 – 8

Default value: 8

Select whether the pool control is to be activated, within what temperatures (start and stop temperature) pool heating must occur and how many compressors may work again the pool at the same time.

Maximum number of compressors gives the possibility of restricting the number of compressors that are permitted to work with pool heating. The setting can be adjusted if requirements other than pool heating must be prioritised for example.

When the pool temperature drops below the set temperature and there is no hot water or heating requirement, RC-HY40-W starts pool heating.

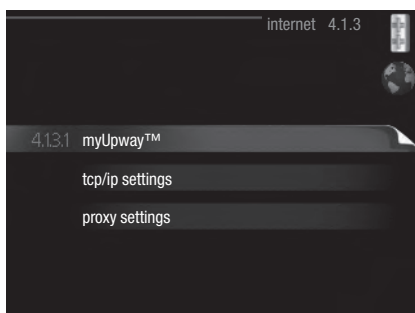
Untick "activated" to switch off the pool heating.

CAUTION

The start temperature cannot be set to a value that is higher than the stop temperature.

Menu 4.1.3 - internet

Here you make settings for connecting RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S to the internet.



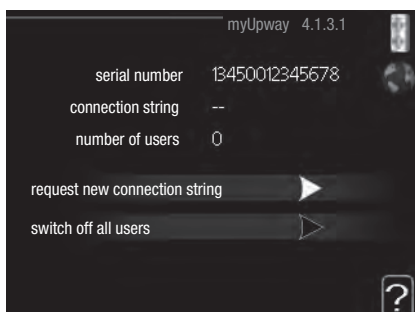
NOTE

For these functions to work the network cable must be connected.

Menu 4.1.3.1 - myUpway™

Here you can manage the installation's connection to myUpway™ (www.myUpway.com) and see the number of users connected to the installation via the internet.

A connected user has a user account in myUpway™, which has been given permission to control and/or monitor your installation.



Request new connection string

To connect a user account on myUpway™ to your installation, you must request a unique connection code.

1. Mark "request new connection string" and press the OK button.
2. The installation now communicates with myUpway™ to create a connection code.
3. When a connection string has been received, it is shown in this menu at "connection string" and is valid for 60 minutes.

Disconnect all users

1. Mark "switch off all users" and press the OK button.
2. The installation now communicates with myUpway™ to release your installation from all users connected via the internet.

NOTE

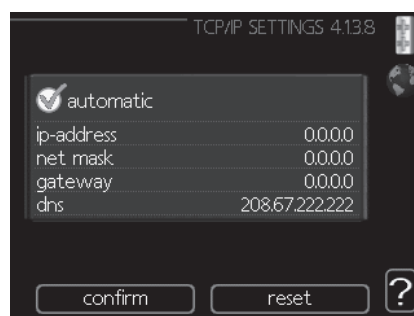
After disconnecting all users, none of them can monitor or control your installation via myUpway™ without requesting a new connection code

Menu 4.1.3.8 - tcp/ip settings

You can set TCP/IP settings for your installation here.

Automatic setting (DHCP)

1. Tick "automatic". The installation now receives the TCP/IP settings using DHCP.
2. Mark "confirm" and press the OK button.



Manual setting

1. Untick "automatic", you now have access to several setting options.
2. Mark "ip-address" and press the OK button.
3. Enter the correct details via the virtual keypad.
4. Mark "OK" and press the OK button.
5. Repeat 1 - 3 for "net mask", "gateway" and "dns".
6. Mark "confirm" and press the OK button.

CAUTION

The installation cannot connect to the internet without the correct TCP/IP settings. If unsure about applicable settings use the automatic mode or contact your network administrator (or similar) for further information.

TIP

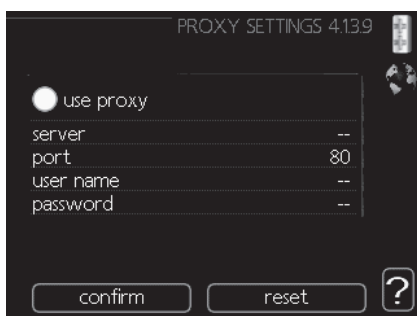
All settings made since opening the menu can be reset by marking "reset" and pressing the OK button.

Menu 4.1.3.9 - proxy settings

You can set proxy settings for your installation here.

Proxy settings are used to give connection information to a intermediate server (proxy server) between the installation and internet. These settings are primarily used when the installation connects to the internet via a company network. The installation supports proxy authentication of the HTTP Basic and HTTP Digest type.

If unsure about applicable settings, contact your network administrator (or similar) for further information.



Setting

1. Tick "use proxy" if you do not want to use a proxy.
2. Mark "server" and press the OK button.
3. Enter the correct details via the virtual keypad.
4. Mark "OK" and press the OK button.
5. Repeat 1 - 3 for "port", "user name" and "password".
6. Mark "confirm" and press the OK button.

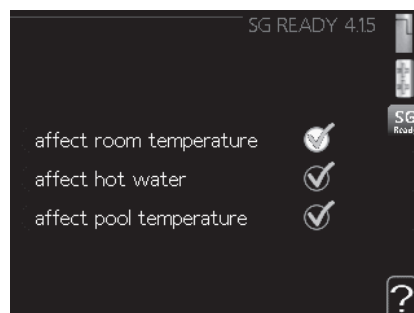
TIP

All settings made since opening the menu can be reset by marking "reset" and pressing the OK button.

Menu 4.1.5 - SG Ready

This function can only be used in SG Ready 4.1.5 mains networks that support the "SG Ready"-standard .

Make settings for the function "SG Ready" here.



affect room temperature

Here you set whether room temperature should be affected when activating "SG Ready".

With low price mode on "SG Ready" the parallel offset for the indoor temperature is increased by "+1". If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature is instead increased by 1 °C.

With over capacity mode on "SG Ready" the parallel offset for the indoor temperature is increased by "+2". If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature is instead increased by 2 °C.

affect hot water

Here you set whether the temperature of the hot water should be affected when activating "SG Ready".

With low price mode on "SG Ready" the stop temperature of the hot water is set as high as possible at only compressor operation (immersion heater not permitted).

With over capacity mode of "SG Ready" the hot water is set to "luxury" (immersion heater permitted).

affect cooling (accessory required)

Here you set whether room temperature during cooling operation should be affected when activating "SG Ready".

With low price mode of "SG Ready" and cooling operation the indoor temperature is not affected.

With over capacity mode on "SG Ready" and cooling operation, the parallel offset for the indoor temperature is reduced by "-1". If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature is instead reduced by 1 °C.

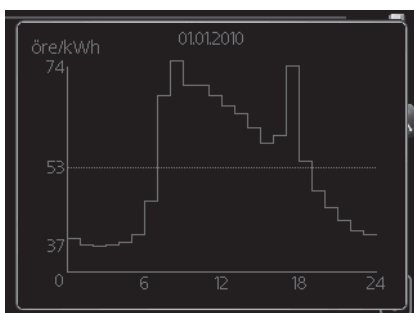
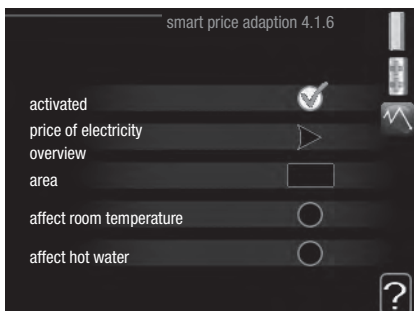
NOTE

The function must be connected and activated in your RC-HY20/40-W and HMA-S.

Menu 4.1.6 - Smart price adaption™

area

In this menu you state where the heat pump is located and how great a role the electricity price should play. The greater the value, the greater the effect the electricity price has and the possible savings are larger, but at the same time there is an increased risk of affecting comfort. Smart price adaption is available on selected markets, at present Austria, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, Norway and Sweden.



price of electricity overview

Here you can obtain information on how the electricity price varies over up to three days.

affect room temperature

Setting range: 1 – 10
Factory setting: 5

affect hot water

Setting range: 1 – 4
Factory setting: 2

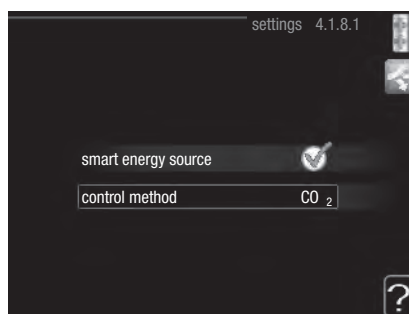
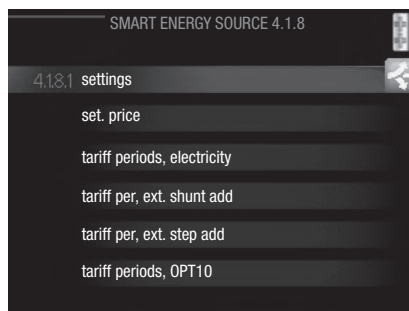
affect cooling

Setting range: 1 – 10
Factory setting: 3

Smart price adaption™ moves the heat pump's consumption over 24 hours to periods with the cheapest electricity tariff, which gives savings for hourly rate based electricity contracts. The function is based on hourly rates for the next 24 hours being retrieved via myUpway™ and therefore an internet

connection and an account for myUpway™ are required. Deselect "activated" to switch off Smart price adaption™.

Menu 4.1.8 - smart energy source™ (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

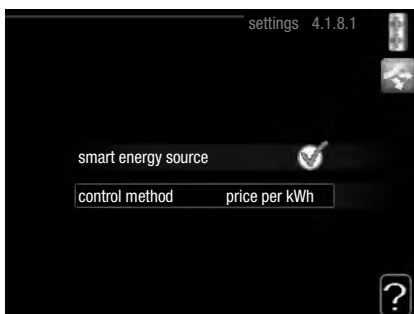


- settings**
- set. price**
- CO2 impact***
- tariff per, ext. shunt add**
- tariff per, ext. step add**

The function prioritises how / to what extent each docked energy source will be used. Here you can choose if the system is to use the energy source that is cheapest at the time. You can also choose if the system is to use the energy source that is most carbon neutral at the time.

*Select control method "CO₂" under settings to open this menu.

Menu 4.1.8.1 - settings



smart energy source™

Setting range: Off/On

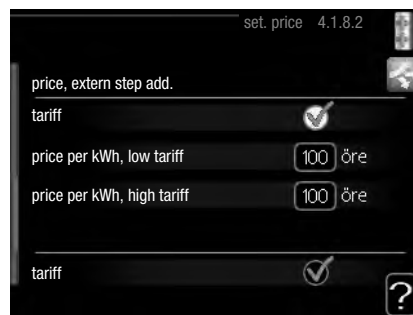
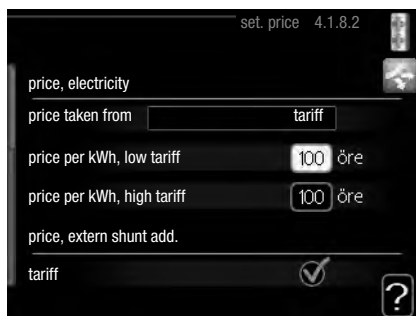
Factory setting: Off

control method

Setting range: Price /CO₂

Factory setting: Price

Menu 4.1.8.2 - set. price



price, electricity

Setting range: spot, tariff, fixed price

Factory setting: fixed price

Setting range fixed price: 0 – 100,000*

price, extern shunt add.

Setting range: tariff, fixed price

Factory setting: fixed price

Setting range fixed price: 0 – 100,000*

price, extern step add.

Setting range: tariff, fixed price

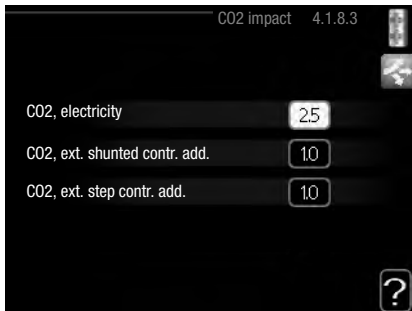
Factory setting: fixed price

Setting range fixed price: 0 – 100,000*

Here you can choose if the system is to exercise control based on the spot price, tariff control or a set price. The setting is made for each individual energy source. Spot price can only be used if you have an hourly tariff agreement with your electricity supplier.

*The currency varies depending on the country selected.

Menu 4.1.8.3 - CO2 impact



CO2, electricity

Setting range: 0 – 5

Default value: 2.5

CO2, ext. shunted contr. add.

Setting range: 0 – 5

Default value: 1

CO2, ext. step contr. add.

Setting range: 0 – 5

Default value: 1

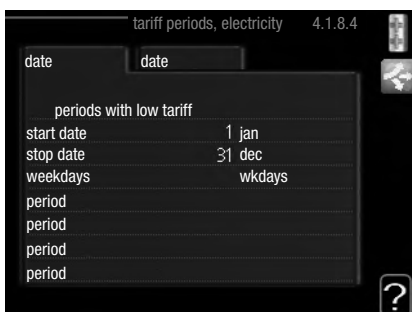
Here you set the size of the carbon footprint for each energy source.

The carbon footprint is different for different energy sources. For example, the energy from solar cells and wind turbines can be considered carbon dioxide neutral and, therefore, has a low CO2 impact. Energy from fossil fuels can be considered to have a higher carbon footprint and, therefore, has a higher CO2 impact.

Menu 4.1.8.4 - tariff periods, electricity

Here you can use tariff control for the electric additional heat.

Set the lower tariff periods. It is possible to set two different date periods per year. Within these periods, it is possible to set up to four different periods on weekdays (Monday to Friday) or four different periods on weekends (Saturdays and Sundays).



Menu 4.1.8.6 - tariff per, ext. shunt add

Here you can use tariff control for the external shunted additional heat.

Set the lower tariff periods. It is possible to set two different date periods per year. Within these periods, it is possible to set up to four different periods on weekdays (Monday to Friday) or four different periods on weekends (Saturdays and Sundays).



Menu 4.1.8.7 - tariff per, ext. step add

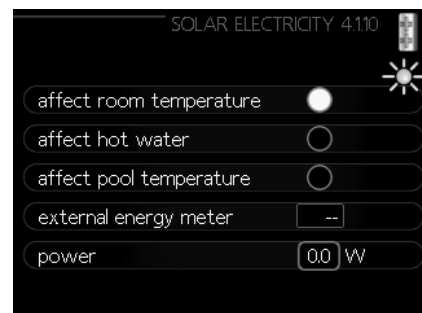
Here you can use tariff control for the external step controlled additional heat.

Set the lower tariff periods. It is possible to set two different date periods per year. Within these periods, it is possible to set up to four different periods on weekdays (Monday to Friday) or four different periods on weekends (Saturdays and Sundays).



Menu 4.1.10 - Solar electricity

Here you set whether you want EME20M to affect the room temperature and/or the hot water and/or pool.



affect room temperature

Setting range: on/off

Default value: off

affect hot water

Setting range: on/off
Default value: off

affect pool temperature

Setting range: on/off
Default value: off

Menu 4.2 - op. mode



op. mode

Setting range: auto, manual, add. heat only
Default value: auto

functions

Setting range: compressor, addition, heating, cooling

The control module operating mode is usually set to "auto". It is also possible to set the control module to "add. heat only", when only additional heat is used, or "manual" and then select what functions are to be permitted.

Change the operating mode by marking the desired mode and pressing the OK button. When an operating mode is selected it shows what in the control module is permitted (crossed out = not permitted) and selectable alternatives to the right. To select selectable functions that are permitted or not, mark the function using the control knob and press the OK button.

Operating mode auto

In this operating mode the control module automatically selects what functions are permitted.

Operating mode manual

In this operating mode you can select what functions are permitted. You cannot deselect "compressor" in manual mode.

Operating mode add. heat only

In this operating mode the compressor is not active, only additional heat is used.

CAUTION

If you choose mode "add. heat only" the compressor is deselected and there is a higher operating cost.

CAUTION

You cannot change from only additional heat if you do not have a heat pump connected.

Functions

"**compressor**" is that which produces heating and hot water for the accommodation. If "compressor" is deselected, a symbol is displayed in the main menu on the symbol for the control module. You cannot deselect "compressor" in manual mode.

"**addition**" is what helps the compressor to heat the accommodation and/or the hot water when it cannot manage the whole requirement alone.

"**heating**" means that you get heat in the accommodation. You can deselect the function when you do not wish to have heating running.

"**cooling**" means that you get cooling in the accommodation in hot weather. This alternative requires an accessory for cooling or that the heat pump has a built in function for cooling and is activated in the menu. You can deselect the function when you do not wish to have the cooling running.

Menu 4.4 - time & date

Set time and date, display mode and time zone here.



TIP

Time and date are set automatically if the heat pump is connected to myUpway™. To obtain the correct time, the time zone must be set.

Menu 4.6 - language

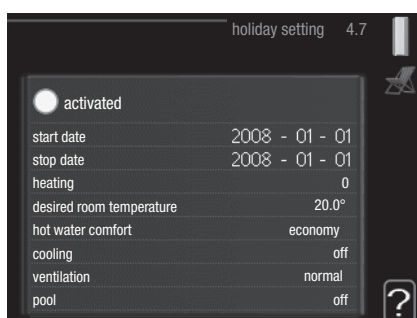
Choose the language that you want the information to be displayed in here.



Menu 4.7 - holiday setting

To reduce energy consumption during a holiday you can schedule a reduction in heating and hot water temperature. Cooling can also be scheduled if the functions are connected.

If a room sensor is installed and activated, the desired room temperature (°C) is set during the time period. This setting applies to all climate systems with room sensors.



If a room sensor is not activated, the desired offset of the heating curve is set. One step is usually enough to change the room temperature by one degree, but in some cases several steps may be required. This setting applies to all climate systems without room sensors.

Vacation scheduling starts at 00:00 on the start date and stops at 23:59 on the stop date.

TIP

Complete holiday setting about a day before your return so that room temperature and hot water have time to regain usual levels.

TIP

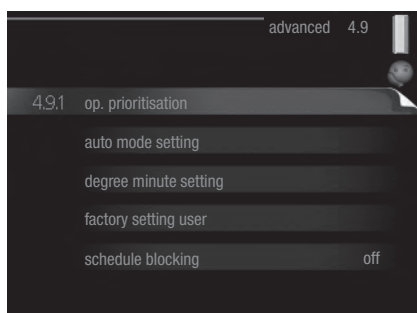
Set the vacation setting in advance and activate just before departure in order to maintain the comfort.

CAUTION

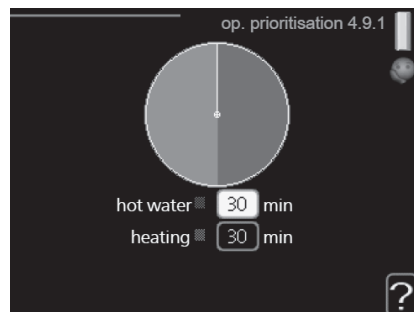
If you choose to switch off hot water production during the vacation "periodic increase" (preventing bacterial growth) are blocked during this time. "periodic increase" started in conjunction with the vacation setting being completed.

Menu 4.9 - advanced

Menu "advanced" has orange text and is intended for the advanced user. This menu has several sub-menus.



Menu 4.9.1 - op. prioritisation



op. prioritisation

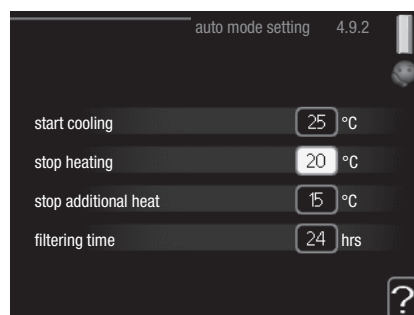
Setting range: 0 – 180 min
Default value: 30 min

Choose here how long the installation should work with each requirement if there are several requirements at the same time. If there is only one requirement the installation only works with that requirement.

The indicator marks where in the cycle the installation is.

If 0 minutes is selected it means that requirement is not prioritised, but will only be activated when there is no other requirement.

Menu 4.9.2 - auto mode setting



start cooling (accessory auto mode setting required)

Setting range: 15 – 40 °C
Factory setting: 25

stop heating

Setting range: -20 – 40 °C
Default values: 17

stop additional heat

Setting range: -25 – 40 °C
Factory setting: 5

filtering time

Setting range: 0 – 48 h
Default value: 24 h

When the operating mode is set to "auto", the control module selects when start and stop of additional heat and heat production is permitted, depending on the average outdoor

temperature. If the heat pump has the integrated cooling function and it is activated in the menu you can also select the start temperature for cooling.

Select the average outdoor temperatures in this menu.

You can also set the time over which (filtering time) the average temperature is calculated. If you select 0, the present outdoor temperature is used.

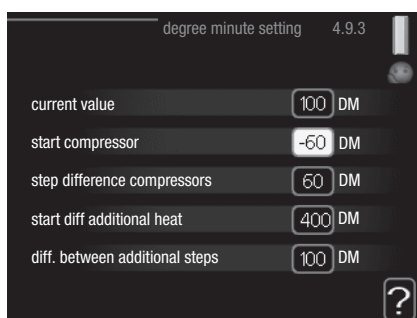
CAUTION

It cannot be set "stop additional heat" higher than "stop heating".

CAUTION

In systems where heating and cooling share the same pipes "stop heating" cannot be set higher than "start cooling" if there is not a cooling/heating sensor.

Menu 4.9.3 - degree minute setting



current value

Setting range: -3000 – 3000

start compressor

Setting range: -1000 – -30
Default value: -60

step difference compressors (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

Setting range: 10 – 2000
Default value: 60

start diff additional heat

Setting range: 100 – 2000
Factory setting: 400

diff. between additional steps

Setting range: 10 – 1000
Factory setting: 30

Degree minutes are a measurement of the current heating requirement in the house and determine when the compressor respectively additional heat will start/stop.

CAUTION

Higher value on "start compressor" gives more compressor starts, which increase wear on the compressor. Too low value can give uneven indoor temperatures.

Menu 4.9.4 - factory setting user

All settings that are available to the user (including advanced menus) can be reset to default values here.

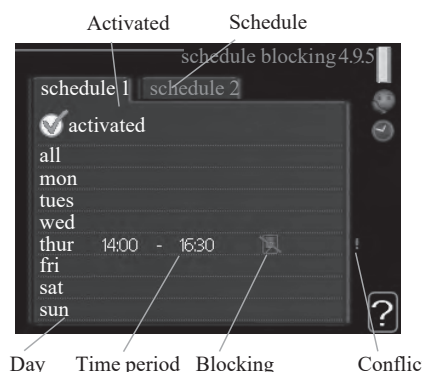


CAUTION

After factory setting, personal settings such as heating curves must be reset.

Menu 4.9.5 - schedule blocking

The additional heat can be scheduled to be blocked for up to two different time periods here.



When scheduling is active the relevant blocking symbol is shown in the main menu on the symbol for the control module.

Schedule: The period to be changed is selected here.

Activated: Scheduling for the selected period is activated here. Set times are not affected at deactivation.

Day: Select which day or days of the week the schedule is to apply to here. To remove the scheduling for a particular day, the time for that day must be reset by setting the start time to the same as the stop time. If the line "all" is used, all days in the period are set for these times.

Time period: The start and stop time for the selected day for scheduling are selected here.

Blocking: The desired blocking is selected here.

Conflict: If two settings conflict with each other a red exclamation mark is displayed.



Blocking the compressor in the outdoor unit.



Blocking additional heat.

TIP

If you wish to set similar scheduling for every day of the week start by filling in "all" and then changing the desired days.

TIP

Set the stop time earlier than the start time so that the period extends beyond midnight. Scheduling then stops at the set stop time the day after.

Scheduling always starts on the date that the start time is set for.

CAUTION

Long term blocking can cause reduced comfort and operating economy.

TIP

If you wish to set similar scheduling for every day of the week start by filling in "all" and then changing the desired days.

TIP

Set the stop time earlier than the start time so that the period extends beyond midnight. Scheduling then stops at the set stop time the day after.

Scheduling always starts on the date that the start time is set for.

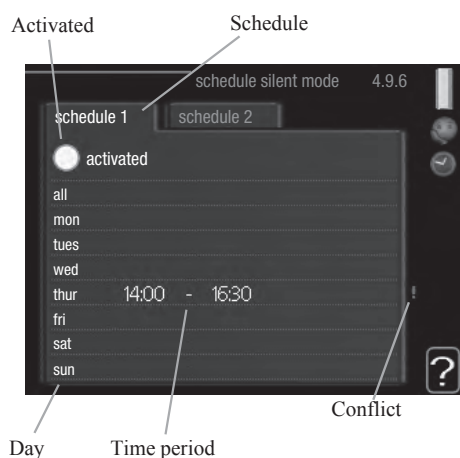
CAUTION

Long term scheduling of "silent mode" can cause reduced comfort and operating economy.

Menu 4.9.6 - schedule silent mode

The compressor can be scheduled to be set to "silent mode" (the heat pump must support this) for up to two different time periods here.

When scheduling is active the "silent mode" symbol is shown in the main menu on the symbol for the control module.



Schedule: The period to be changed is selected here.

Activated: Scheduling for the selected period is activated here. Set times are not affected at deactivation.

Day: Select which day or days of the week the schedule is to apply to here. To remove the scheduling for a particular day, the time for that day must be reset by setting the start time to the same as the stop time. If the line "all" is used, all days in the period are set for these times.

Time period: The start and stop time for the selected day for scheduling are selected here.

Conflict: If two settings conflict with each other a red exclamation mark is displayed.

Sub-menus

Menu SERVICE has orange text and is intended for the advanced user. This menu has several sub-menus.

Status information for the relevant menu can be found on the display to the right of the menus.

operating settings: Operating settings for the control module.

system settings: System settings for the control module, activating accessories etc.

soft in/outputs: Setting software controlled in and outputs on the input card (AA3) and terminal block (X2).

factory setting service: Total reset of all settings (including settings available to the user) to default values.

forced control: Forced control of the different components in the indoor module.

start guide: Manual start of the start guide which is run the first time when the control module is started.

quick start: Quick starting the compressor.

NOTE

Incorrect settings in the service menus can damage the installation.

Menu 5.1 - operating settings

Operating settings can be made for the control module in the sub-menus.

Menu 5.1.1 - hot water settings

economy

Setting range start temp. economy: 5 – 55 °C

Factory setting start temp. economy: 42 °C

Setting range stop temp. economy: 5 – 60 °C

Factory setting stop temp. economy: 48 °C

normal

Setting range start temp. normal: 5 – 60 °C

Factory setting start temp. normal: 46 °C

Setting range stop temp. normal: 5 – 65 °C

Factory setting stop temp. normal: 50 °C

luxury

Setting range start temp. lux: 5 – 70 °C

Factory setting start temp. lux: 49 °C

Setting range stop temp. lux: 5 – 70 °C

Factory setting stop temp. lux: 53 °C

stop temp. per. increase

Setting range: 55 – 70 °C

Factory setting: 55 °C

charge method

Setting range: target temp, delta temp

Default value: delta temp

Here you set the start and stop temperature of the hot water for the different comfort options in menu 2.2 as well as the stop temperature for periodic increase in menu 2.9.1.

The charge method for hot water mode is selected here. "delta temp" is recommended for heaters with charge coil, "target temp" for heaters with domestic coil.

Menu 5.1.2 - max flow line temperature

climate system

Setting range: 5 – 70 °C

Default value: 60 °C

Set the maximum supply temperature for the climate system here. If the installation has more than one climate system, individual maximum supply temperatures can be set for each system. Climate systems 2 – 8 cannot be set to a higher max supply temperature than climate system 1.

CAUTION

Underfloor heating systems are normally max flow line temperature set between 35 and 45°C.

Be careful not to cause low temperature burn if it is set at 35°C or higher.

Check the max floor temperature with your floor supplier.

Menu 5.1.3 - max diff flow line temp.**max diff compressor**

Setting range: 1 – 25 °C

Default value: 10 °C

max diff addition

Setting range: 1 – 24 °C

Default value: 7 °C

Here you set the maximum permitted difference between the calculated and actual supply temperature during compressor mode and add. heat mode. Max diff. additional heat can never exceed max diff. compressor

max diff compressor

When the current supply temperature **deviates** from the set value compared to that calculated, the heat pump is forced to stop irrespective of the degree minute value.

If the current supply temperature exceeds the calculated flow temperature plus the set value, the degree minute value is set to 0. The compressor in the heat pump stops when there is only a heating demand.

max diff addition

If "addition" is selected and activated in menu 4.2 and the present supply temp **exceeds** the calculated temperature plus the set value, the additional heat is forced to stop.

Menu 5.1.4 - alarm actions

Select how to control the heat pump in the event of an alarm. You can choose to stop producing hot water and/or reduce the room temperature.

CAUTION

If no alarm action is selected, it can result in higher energy consumption in the event of an alarm.

Menu 5.1.12 - addition

add type: step controlled

max step

Setting range (binary stepping deactivated): 0 – 3

Setting range (binary stepping activated): 0 – 7

Default value: 3

fuse size

Setting range: 1 – 200 A

Factory setting: 16 A

You can set the maximum number of permitted additional heat steps, if there is internal additional heat in the tank (only accessible if the additional heat is positioned after QN10), whether binary stepping is to be used and the size of the fuse.

<HMA-S series with software version 9542R2 or earlier only>**Menu 5.1.12 - internal electrical addition****3 x 400V income power**

Setting range: on/off

Factory setting: on

Set max electrical add.

Setting range: 0 – 9 kW (3 x 400V income power – on), 0 – 4.5 kW (3 x 400V income power – off)

Factory setting: 9 kW

fuse size

Setting range: 1 – 200 A

Factory setting: 20 A

Transformation ratio

Setting range: 1 – 3000

Factory setting: 300

Here you can set the max. electrical output of the internal electrical addition in HMA-S series and the fuse size for the installation.

You can also check which current sensor is installed on which incoming phase to the property (this requires current sensors to be installed).

Check by selecting "detect phase order" and pressing OK button.

The result of these checks appear just below the menu selection "detect phase order".

<Add. Type: shunt controlled (RC-HY40-W only)>

prioritised additional heat

Setting range: on/off
Factory setting: off

minimum running time

Setting range: 0 – 48 h
Default value: 12 h

min temp.

Setting range: 5 – 90 °C
Default value: 55 °C

mixing valve amplifier

Setting range: 0.1 – 10.0
Default value: 1.0

mixing valve step delay

Setting range: 10 – 300 s
Default values: 30 s

fuse size

Setting range: 1 – 200 A
Factory setting: 16 A

transformation ratio

Setting range: 300 – 3000
Factory setting: 300

Select this option if shunt controlled additional heat is connected.

Set when the addition is to start, the minimum run time and the minimum temperature for external addition with shunt here. External addition with shunt is for example a wood/oil/gas/ pellet boiler.

You can set shunt valve amplification and shunt valve waiting time.

Selecting "prioritised additional heat" uses the heat from the external additional heat instead of the heat pump.

The shunt valve is regulated as long as heat is available, otherwise the shunt valve is closed.

TIP

See the accessory installation instructions for function description.

Menu 5.1.14 - flow set. climate system

presettings

Setting range: radiator, floor heat., rad. + floor heat.
Default value: radiator
Setting range DOT: -40.0 – 20.0 °C

The factory setting of DOT value depends on the country that has been given for the product's location. The example below refers to Sweden.

Factory setting DOT: -20.0 °C

own setting

Setting range dT at DOT: 0.0 – 25.0

Factory setting dT at DOT: 10.0
Setting range DOT: -40.0 – 20.0 °C
Factory setting DOT: -20.0 °C

Select the type of heating distribution system.

dT at DOT is the difference in degrees between flow and return temperatures at dimensioned outdoor temperature.

Menu 5.1.22 - heat pump testing

NOTE

*This menu is intended for testing heat pump according to different standards.
Use of this menu for other reasons may result in your installation not functioning as intended.*

This menu contains several sub-menus, one for each standard.

Menu 5.1.23 - compressor curve

Set whether the compressor in the heat pump should work to a particular curve under specific requirements or if it should work to predefined curves.

You can set a curve for each operation mode (heat, hot water, cooling etc.) by unticking "auto", turning the control knob until a temperature is marked and pressing OK. You can set at what temperature max- min frequencies will occur.

This menu consists of several windows (one for each operation mode). Use the navigation arrow in the top left corner to change between the windows.

Menu 5.2 - system settings

Make different system settings for your installation here, e.g. activate the connected heat pump and which accessories are installed.

Menu 5.2.2 - installed heat pump

If a heat pump is connected to the master installation, set it here.

For RC-HY40-W you can set slave unit to be connected.

There are two ways of activating connected slaves. You can either mark the alternative in the list or use the automatic function "search installed slaves".

search installed slaves

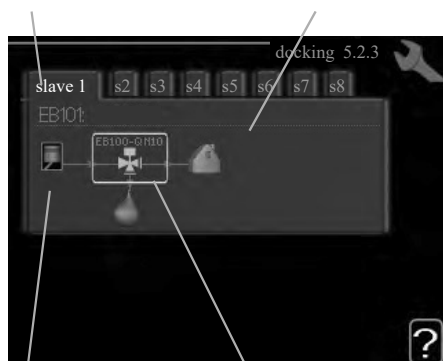
Mark "search installed slaves" and press the OK button to automatically find connected slaves for the master heat pump.

Menu 5.2.3 – docking (RC-HY40-W/HMA-S only)

Enter how your system is docked regarding pipes, for example to hot water heating and heating the building.

This menu has a docking memory which means that the control system remembers how a particular reversing valve is docked and automatically enters the correct docking the next time you use the same reversing valve.

Slave (heat pump) Workspace for docking



Compressor Marking frame

Slave: Here you select for which heat pump the docking setting is to be made.

Compressor: Select if the compressor in the heat pump is blocked (factory setting), or standard (docked for example to pool heating, hot water charging and heating the building).

Marking frame: Move around the marking frame using the control knob. Use the OK button to select what you want to change and to confirm setting in the options box that appears to the right.

Workspace for docking: The system docking is drawn here.

Symbol	Description
	Compressor (blocked)
	Compressor (standard)
	Reversing valves for hot water, cooling. The designations above the reversing valve indicate where it is electrically connected (EB101 = Slave 1, etc.).
	Hot water charging
	Heating (heating the building, includes any extra climate system)
	Cooling

Menu 5.2.4 - accessories

Set which accessories are installed on the installation here.

If the water heater is connected, hot water charging must be activated here.

Menu 5.3 - accessory settings

The operating settings for accessories that are installed and activated are made in the sub-menus for this.

Menu 5.3.2 - shunt controlled add. Heat

prioritised additional heat

Setting range: on/off

Factory setting: off

start diff additional heat

Setting range: 0 – 2000 DM

Default values: 400 DM

minimum running time

Setting range: 0 – 48 h

Default value: 12 h

min temp.

Setting range: 5 – 90 °C

Default value: 55 °C

mixing valve amplifier

Setting range: 0.1 – 10.0

Default value: 1.0

mixing valve step delay

Setting range: 10 – 300 s

Default values: 30 s

Set when the addition is to start, the minimum run time and the minimum temperature for external addition with shunt here. External addition with shunt is for example a wood/oil/gas/pellet boiler.

You can set shunt valve amplification and shunt valve waiting time.

Selecting "prioritised additional heat" uses the heat from the external additional heat instead of the heat pump.

The shunt valve is regulated as long as heat is available, otherwise the shunt valve is closed.

See the accessory installation instructions for function description.

Menu 5.3.3 - extra climate system

use in heating mode

Setting range: on/off

Factory setting: on

use in cooling mode

Setting range: on/off

Factory setting: off

mixing valve amplifier

Setting range: 0.1 – 10.0

Default value: 1.0

mixing valve step delay

Setting range: 10 – 300 s

Default values: 30 s

Here you select which climate system (2 - 8) you wish to set. In the next menu you can make settings for the climate system

that you have selected. If this function is activated, you can set "cooling flow temp. at +20°C" and "cooling flow temp. at +40°C" for each climate system where the function is activated.

CAUTION

This setting option only appears if "cooling permitted" is activated in menu 5.11.1.1.

The shunt amplification and shunt waiting time for the different extra climate systems that are installed are also set here.

See the accessory installation instructions for function description.

Menu 5.3.4 - solar heating

Use this menu to set solar heating settings

start delta-T GP4

Setting range: 1 – 40 °C

Default values: 8°C

start delta-T GP4

Setting range: 0 – 40 °C

Default values: 4°C

max. tank temperature

Setting range: 5 – 110 °C

Default values: 95°C

max. solar collector temp.

Setting range: 80 – 200 °C

Default values: 125°C

freeze protection

Setting range :on/off

Factory setting: off

solar panel cooling

Setting range: on/off

Factory setting: off

Menu 5.3.6 - step controlled add. heat

start addition

Setting range: 0 – 2000 DM
Default values: 400 DM

diff. between additional steps

Setting range: 0 – 1000 DM
Default values: 30 DM

max step

Setting range
(binary stepping deactivated): 0 – 3
Setting range
(binary stepping activated): 0 – 7
Default value: 3

binary stepping

Setting range: on/off
Factory setting: off

Make settings for step controlled addition here. Step controlled addition is for example an external electric boiler.

It is possible, for example, to select when the additional heat is to start, to set the maximum number of permitted steps and whether binary stepping is to be used.

When binary stepping is deactivated (off), the settings refer to linear stepping.

See the accessory installation instructions for function description.

Menu 5.3.8 - hot water comfort

activating imm heater

Setting range: on/off
Factory setting: off

activ. imm heat in heat mode

Setting range: on/off
Factory setting: off

activating the mixing valve

Setting range: on/off
Factory setting: off

outgoing hot water

Setting range: 40 – 65 °C
Default value: 55 °C

mixing valve amplifier

Setting range: 0.1 – 10.0
Default value: 1.0

mixing valve step delay

Setting range: 10 – 300 s
Default values: 30 s

Make settings for the hot water comfort here.

See the accessory installation instructions for function description.

activating imm heater: The immersion heater is activated here if installed in the water heater.

activ. imm heat in heat mode: Activate here whether the immersion heater in the tank (required if the alternative above is activated) will be permitted to charge hot water, if the compressors in the heat pump prioritise heating.

activating the mixing valve: Activate here whether a mixer valve for limiting the temperature of hot water from the water heater is installed.

If this alternative has been activated, you can set the outgoing hot water temperature, shunt amplification and shunt waiting time for the mixer valve.

outgoing hot water: Set the temperature at which the mixing valve is to restrict hot water from the water heater.

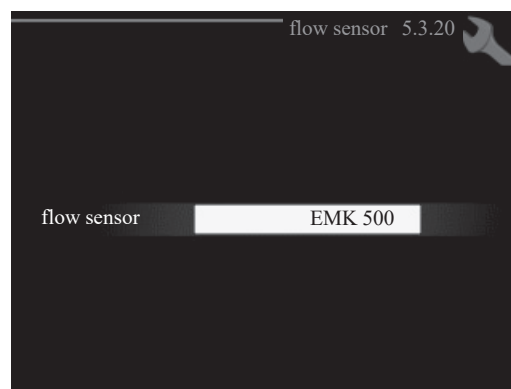
See the accessory installation instructions for function description.

Menu 5.3.11 - modbus

word swap

Setting range: on/off
Factory setting: off

Menu 5.3.20 - flow sensor



flow sensor

Setting option: EMK 500, EMK 310 / 300, EMK 150
Factory setting: EMK 500

Here you select which flow sensor is used for the energy measurement.

Menu 5.4 – soft in/outputs

You can set the function of in/output for each terminal (AUX1-6 and output).

Position of the terminal depends on the type of controller.

RC-HY20-W: port 11-18 on X2 terminal (AUX1-6), X4 terminal on AA2 board (output)

RC-HY40-W/HMA-S: port 9-14 on terminal X6 and port 1-4 on X2 terminal on AA3 board (AUX1-6), X7 terminal on AA3 board (output)

Menu 5.5 - factory setting service

All settings can be reset (including settings available to the user) to default values here.

NOTE

When resetting, the start guide is displayed the next time the control module is restarted.

Menu 5.6 - forced control

You can force control the different components in the control module and any connected accessories here.

Menu 5.7 - start guide

When the control module is started for the first time the start guide starts automatically. Start it manually here.

See page 116 for more information about the start guide.

Menu 5.8 - quick start

It is possible to start the compressor from here.

CAUTION

There must be a heating or hot water demand to start the compressor.

CAUTION

Do not quick start the compressor too many times over a short period of time as this may damage the compressor and its surrounding equipment.

Menu 5.9 - floor drying function

length of period 1 – 7

Setting range: 0 – 30 days

Factory setting, period 1 – 3, 5 – 7: 2 days

Factory setting, period 4: 3 days

temp. period 1 – 7

Setting range: 15 – 70 °C

Default value:

temp. period 1	20 °C
temp. period 2	30 °C
temp. period 3	40 °C
temp. period 4	45 C
temp. period 5	40 °C
temp. period 6	30 °C
temp. period 7	20 °C

Set the function for under floor drying here.

You can set up to seven period times with different calculated flow temperatures. If less than seven periods

are to be used, set the remaining period times to 0 days.

Mark the active window to activate the underfloor drying function. A counter at the bottom shows the number of days the function has been active.

TIP

If operating mode "add. heat only" is to be used, select it in menu 4.2.

Menu 5.10 - change log

Read off any previous changes to the control system here.

The date, time and ID No. (unique to certain settings) and the new set value is shown for every change.

NOTE

The change log is saved at restart and remains unchanged after factory setting.

Menu 5.11 - heat pump settings

Settings for installed heat pump can be made in the submenus.

Menu 5.11.1 - EB101 - EB108

Make settings specifically for the installed heat pump and charge pump here.

For RC-HY40-W, it is possible to connect up to 8 heat pumps.

Menu 5.11.1.1 - heat pump

Make settings for the installed heat pump here. To see what settings you can make, see installation manual for the heat pump.

Cooling permitted

Here you can set whether the cooling function is to be activated for the heat pump.

Silent mode permitted

Set whether silent mode is to be activated for the heat pump

Current limit

Set whether the current limiting function is to be activated for the heat pump here.

During active function you can limit the value of the maximum current.

Setting range: 6 – 32 A

Factory setting: 32 A

Stop temperature compressor

Here you can limit the value for the set outdoor temperature down to the value the heat pump is to work

Setting range: -20°C – -2°C

Factory setting: -20°C

blockFreq 1

Select a frequency range within the heat pump may work here

blockFreq 2

Select a frequency range within the heat pump may work here

Menu 5.11.1.2 - charge pump (GP12)

op. mode

Heating/cooling

Setting range: auto / intermittent

Default value: auto

Set the operating mode for the charge pump here

auto: The charge pump runs according to the current operating mode for RC-HY20-W / RC-HY40-W.

intermittent: The charge pump starts and stops 20 seconds before and after the compressor in the heat pump.

<HMA-S series with software version 9542R2 or earlier only>

GP10 off, 2-pipe cooling

Setting range: on/off

Default value: off

Set the GP10 operation (climate system 1) in case of 2-pipe cooling mode

speed during operation heating, hot water, cooling

Setting range: auto / manual

Default value: auto

Manual setting

Setting range: 1 – 100 %

Default values: 70 %

speed in wait mode

Setting range: 1 – 100 %

Default values: 30 %

max. allowed speed

Setting range: 80 – 100 %

Default values: 100 %

Set the speed at which the charge pump is to operate in the present operating mode. Select "auto" if the speed of the charge pump is to be regulated automatically (factory setting) for optimal operation.

If "auto" is activated for heating operation, you can also make the setting "max. allowed speed" which restricts the charge pump and does not allow it to run at a higher speed than the set value. For manual operation of the charge pump deactivate "auto" for the current operating mode and set the value to between 1 and 100 % (the previously set value for "max. allowed speed" no

longer applies). Speed in standby mode (only used if "auto" has been selected for "Operating mode") means the charge pump operates at the set speed during the time when there is neither a need for

compressor operation nor additional heat.

Setting range: on/off

Factory setting: on

5.12 - country

Select here where the product was installed. This allows access to country specific settings in your product.

Language settings can be made regardless of this selection.

NOTE

This option locks after 24 hours, restart of display or program updating.

Service

Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Operation mode

General

The modes mentioned below can be chosen from the control panel.

Mode	Function
(1) Auto	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The mode is automatically switched over between (3) Heating mode and (4) Cooling mode. Automatic switching rule is mentioned below.
(2) Manual	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In this operating mode, you can select what functions are permitted. ● You can't deselect "compressor" in manual mode.
(3) Heating	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hot water is supplied for heating. ● Hot water operation will be made when the tank water temperature lowers. ● When the outdoor unit can not cover the heat load, electric heater use is allowed and water in the tank is supplied for heating to fulfill the required heat load.
(4) Cooling (Super Cooling)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cold water is supplied for cooling. ● Hot water operation will be made when the tank water temperature lowers;
(5) Add. Heat only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Outdoor unit is not allowed to operate. ● Only electric heater is exclusively used for Heating and Hot water operation.

Note 1 : The measured value of outdoor air temperature (BT1) which is used for control, is averaged in accordance with the prescribed formula.

Note 2 : Heating/Cooling demand is calculated as numeric DM (Degree Minutes) from the supply water temperature (BT12) and its target temperature in accordance with the prescribed formula.

Note 3 : Electric heater can be replaced with external heat source of the docking feature. See Menu 5.1.12 and 5.3.6 for setting.

Note 4 : Two sets of climate system can be controlled with different heating curve. See Menu 1.9.1 for setting.

Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Actuator operation according to the operation mode

State	Function	Run status	Outdoor unit side			Indoor unit side			
			Compressor CM	Outdoor fan FMo1	4-way valve 20S	Electric heater EB1	Circulation pump GP12	Reversing valve QN10	Cooling shift valve QN12
Heating Alternating mode	Switching between heating and hot water	Heating	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	ON	OFF	ON	Closed	Closed
		Hot water				Active			
Heating Combined mode	Outdoor unit produces heating and electric heater supports lack of capacity	Heating	ON	ON	ON	ON	Active	Closed	
Cooling	Switching between cooling and hot water	Cooling	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	OFF	OFF	Closed	Open	
		Hot water			ON		Active		Closed
Add. Heat only	Producing heating and hot water with electric heater	Heating	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF	ON	Closed	Closed	
		Hot water					Active		
Defrost	Defrosting outdoor unit heat exchanger	Defrost	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	Closed	Closed	
		Tank defrost					ON		
Shutdown	Only in the event of serious alarms	Stop	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF	OFF	Closed	Closed	

Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Mode transition in Auto mode

Change-over of Heating/Cooling operation is controlled by detection with outdoor air temperature sensor (BT1) of the indoor unit. Threshold value depends on setting on Menu 4.9.2.

Start cooling

- If outdoor air temperature is above setting value on Menu 4.9.2, cooling mode is chosen.
- If outdoor air temperature is below setting value on Menu 4.9.2 it switches to heating mode.
- Default of setting value is 25°C .

Stop heating

- If outdoor air temperature is below setting value on Menu 4.9.2, heating mode is chosen.
- If outdoor air temperature is above setting value on Menu 4.9.2, it switches to cooling mode.
- Default of setting value is 17°C .

Mode transition in Auto/manual mode to hot water operation

Change-over of Heating or Cooling/Hot water operation is controlled by detection with temperature sensor (BT6) of the tank unit. Threshold value depends on setting on Menu 5.1.1.

Setting range start temp. economy/normal/luxury

- If tank temperature is below setting value on Menu 5.1.1, hot water mode is chosen.
- Default of setting value is the following table.

Hot operation mode	Default value
Economy	42°C
Normal	46°C
Luxury	49°C

Setting range stop temp. economy/normal/luxury

- If tank temperature is above setting value on Menu 5.1.1, it swiches to heating or cooling mode.
- Default of setting value is the following table.

Hot operation mode	Default value
Economy	48°C
Normal	50°C
Luxury	53°C

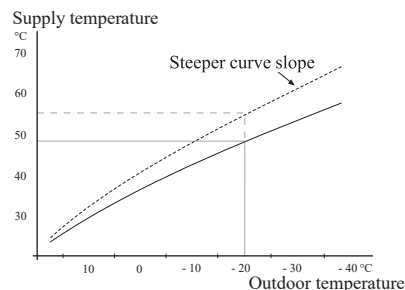
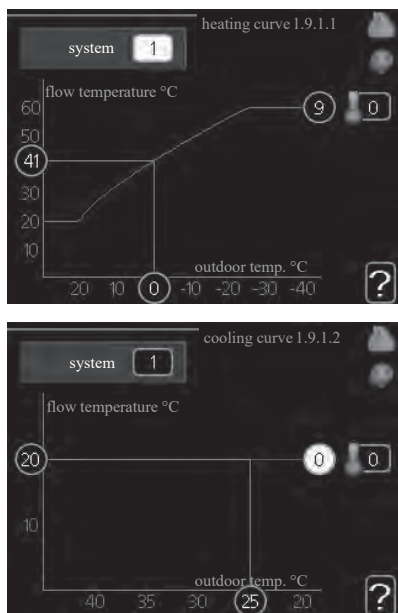
Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Supply water temperature control in heating

Target supply water temperature can be seen in Menu 1.1.

Heating curve

Heating/cooling curve setting



The optimum slope depends on the climate conditions in your location, the type of heating device (radiators or under floor heating) and how well insulated the house is.

The curve is set when the heating installation is installed, but may need adjusting later. Normally, the curve will not need further adjustment.

CAUTION

In the event of making fine adjustments of the indoor temperature, the curve must be offset up or down instead, this is done in menu 1.1 "temperature".

heating curve

Setting range: 0 – 15
Default value: 9

cooling curve (accessory required)

Setting range: 0 – 9
Default value: 0

The prescribed heating curve for your house can be viewed in the menu "heating curve". The task of the heating curve is to give an even indoor temperature, regardless of the outdoor temperature, and thereby energy efficient operation. From this heating curve, the control module determines the temperature of the water to the heating system, supply temperature, and therefore the indoor temperature. Select the heating curve and read off how the supply temperature changes at different outdoor temperatures here. If there is cooling function, the same settings can be made for the cooling curve.

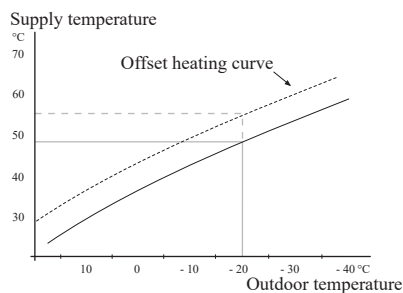
Curve coefficient

The heating/cooling curve shows the relation between the target supply temperature and the corresponding outdoor temperature. A steep curve indicates that supply temperature becomes higher at low outdoor air temperature in heating and it becomes lower at high outdoor air temperature in cooling.

Curve offset

The target temperature can be offset in parallel over the entire outdoor temperature range by this function. This is offset by 5 °C by adjusting 2 steps.

The target temperature can be parallel offset in the entire outdoor temperature range with this function. It is offset by 5 °C by adjusting 2 steps.



Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Flow line temperature – maximum and minimum values

This function is used in order to limit max-min supply temperature. The heating / cooling curve becomes flat beyond max / min target temperature.

CAUTION

Underfloor heating systems are normally "max flow line temperature" set between 35 and 45°C. Take care not to cause low temperature burns in case it is set higher than 35°C.

Must be restricted with underfloor cooling min. flow line temp. to prevent condensation.

Check the max temperature for your floor with your installer/floor supplier.

TIP

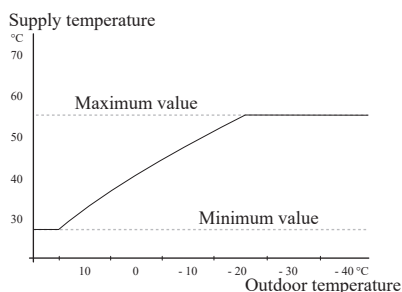
Wait 24 hours before making a new setting, so that the room temperature has time to stabilise.

If it is cold outdoors and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve slope by one increment.

If it is cold outdoors and the room temperature is too high, lower the curve slope by one increment.

If it is warm outdoors and the room temperature is too low, increase the curve offset by one increment.

If it is warm outdoors and the room temperature is too high, lower the curve offset by one increment.



The figure at the end of the curve indicates the curve number. The figure beside the thermometer icon gives the curve offset. Use the control knob to set a new value.

Confirm the new setting by pressing the OK button.

Curve 0 is an own curve created in menu 1.9.7.

To select another curve (slope):

1. Press OK button to access the setting mode
2. Select a new curve. The curves are numbered from 0 to 15, and the bigger number curve has steeper slope. Curve 0 means that "own curve" (menu 1.9.7) is used.
3. Press OK button to exit the setting.

To read off a curve:

1. Turn the control knob so that the ring on the shaft with the outdoor temperature is marked.
2. Press OK button.
3. Follow the grey line up to the curve and out to the left to read off the value for the supply temperature at the selected outdoor temperature.
4. You can now select to take read outs for different outdoor temperatures by turning the control knob to the right or left and read off the corresponding flow temperature.
5. Press OK or Back button to exit read off mode.

Water temperature control when deviated from the target

When the DM value is significantly small, supply water temperature must be controlled higher than target temperature to reduce the deficit of DM value. However, too big overshoot of the supply temperature will affect comfort.

In order to control the supply water temperature to avoid fluctuation of room temperature, overshoot limit is set in Menu 5.1.3 (Max diff flow-line temp.). When the current supply temperature deviates from the set value compared to that calculated, the heat pump is forced to stop irrespective of the degree minute value.

If the current supply temperature exceeds the calculated flow temperature plus the set value, the degree minute value is set to 0. The compressor in the heat pump stops when there is only a heating demand.

Heating thermo-ON / OFF control

The control by DM value is the basic principle to operate/stop the outdoor unit operation.

DM (Degree-Minutes) value

DM value is integrated value of the gap between the target and actual supply water temperature.

Compressor required speed and electric heater ON/OFF are controlled by the DM value.

Operation state transition according to DM value

According to the DM value, operating state is changed.

Default of DM start heating value (Menu 4.9.3) is -60.

Default of DM start add. heat value (Menu 4.9.3) is 400.

Supply water temperature control in cooling

Principle such as cooling curve, cooling curve offset and upper/lower limit is the same as heating operation.

Target supply water temperature can be checked in Menu 1.9.

Cooling curve can be chosen in Menu 1.9.1.2.

Cooling curve

Cooling curve is the basic principle to decide the target supply water temperature for cooling.

The higher the outdoor air temperature (BT1) becomes, the lower the target supply water temperature becomes, and the characteristics can be adjusted in Menu 1.9.1.2.

Upper/Lower limit of the supply water temperature

Regardless of the cooling curve setting and the outdoor air temperature, target supply water temperature can not exceed the min/max supply water temperature set in Menu 1.9.3.2 and 5.1.2.

Upper and lower limit is set after various offset correction.

Water temperature control when deviated from the target

When the DM value is significantly big, supply water temperature must be controlled lower than target temperature to reduce the surplus of DM value. However, too big overshoot of the supply temperature will affect comfort.

In order to control the supply water temperature to avoid fluctuation of room temperature, overshoot limit is set in Menu 9.6.7 (Max diff flow-line temp.). When the current supply temperature deviates from the set value compared to that calculated, the heat pump is forced to stop irrespective of the degree minute value.

If the current supply temperature exceeds the calculated flow temperature plus the set value, the degree minute value is set to 0. The compressor in the heat pump stops when there is only a heating demand.

Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Cooling thermo-ON / OFF control

Principle of the control such as DM value is the same as heating operation.

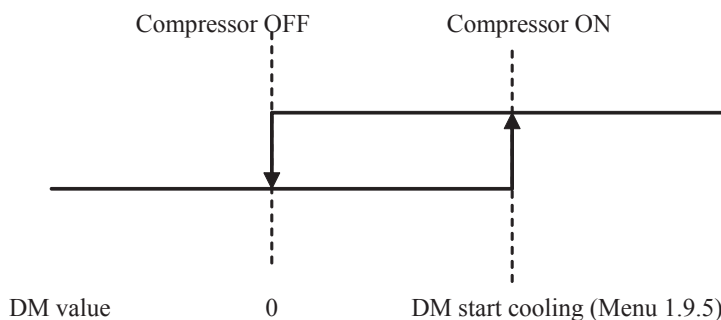
DM (Degree-Minutes) value

DM value is limited in Menu 1.9.5 and does not exceed the limit.

Operation state transition according to DM value

According to the DM value, operating state is changed.

Default of DM start cooling value (Menu 1.9.5) is +30.



Exceptional processing of DM value

Forced outdoor unit operation

In cooling mode, there is no exceptional DM value processing to operate the outdoor unit according to the gap between target and actual supply water temperature.

Forced outdoor unit stop

In case the actual supply water temperature is lower than the target temperature and the gap is bigger than the value set in Menu 5.1.3 when the outdoor unit is operating, the DM value is overwritten to 0, which results in stopping the outdoor unit operation immediately.

Operation control function by the indoor unit control

Hot water operation control

ON/OFF control

Regardless of the DM value, hot water operation when tank water temperature (BT6) lowers below Start temp HW in Menu 5.1.1. It finishes when the tank water temperature reaches Stop temp HW in Menu 5.1.1.

Compressor speed control

During the hot water operation, compressor speed is controlled according to the map linked with the outdoor air temperature. There are two maps. One is high cap map. The other is low cap. These map automatically changed depending on the tank temperature.

Charge method

There are two kinds of hot water storage methods. The 2 methods are dt and target temperature charging. They can be chosen in Menu 5.1.1. Dt uses high capacity curve when BT12, BT3 and BT6 allow it and finish the charging with low capacity curve. Target temperature method uses high capacity curve only.

Defrost operation

When frost accumulates on the surface of the outdoor heat exchange, defrost operation starts to remove it. For detailed operation condition, see outdoor unit control

During defrost operation, indoor unit operates as follows in order to extract heat from the heating system:

- Reversing valve QN10 and QN12 are towards heating system.
- Circulation pump GP12 keeps operation based on general rule.

When at least one of the following conditions is fulfilled, Reversing valve QN12 switches towards hot water to extract heat from the tank.

- Water return temperature < tank defrost temperature level
- Water outlet temperature < 10°C
- Water return temperature – Water outlet temperature > Min Flow Threshold
- Operation of the climate system has been blocked

Protection control

Current protection

Maximum current limit control for the outdoor unit (by indoor unit control)

When the operation current of the outdoor unit comes close to the limit, request compressor speed is retained in order to keep the current.

Freeze protection of water heat exchanger

The freeze protection function shall avoid water to freeze inside the heat exchanger during defrost and cooling operation.

(1) In cooling mode

Compressor speed is kept when the low pressure (BP4) reaches 0.75MPa, and stopped when it reaches 0.65MPa for 20 seconds. Operation is automatically restarted when it reaches 0.83MPa and the supply water temperature becomes 14°C or higher, but it will permanently stop if the protection is activated for 10 repeated.

(2) In defrosting mode

Compressor stops when the low pressure (BP4) reaches threshold value for 10 seconds depending on water temperature. After stopping, the system automatically restarts with heating mode.

When the above action is repeated for 10 times, the system stops and error code is displayed.

Low condenser out

Compressor stops when the supply temperature (BT12) becomes below 5°C and it automatically restarts when the supply temperature (BT12) becomes above 14°C.

High water out

Compressor stops when the supply temperature (BT12) becomes above 60°C and it automatically restarts when the supply temperature (BT12) becomes below 58°C.

High water in

Compressor stops when the return temperature (BT3) becomes above 55°C and it automatically restarts when the return temperature (BT3) becomes below 53°C.

High pressure

Compressor stops when the high pressure (BP4) reaches 4.15MPa and it automatically restarts when the high pressure (BP4) becomes below 3.15MPa.

When the above action is repeated for 5 times within an hour, the system will permanently stop.

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

Determination of compressor speed (frequency)

- 1) Maximum and minimum frequency under normal operating conditions

(rps)

Model	FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A		FDCW140VNX-A	
	Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating
Maximum frequency	106	110	86	118	80	85	77	120
Minimum frequency	12	12	20	20	20	25	20	20

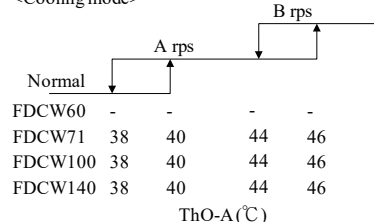
- 2) Maximum required frequency under high outdoor air temperature condition

Maximum required frequency is limited according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A)

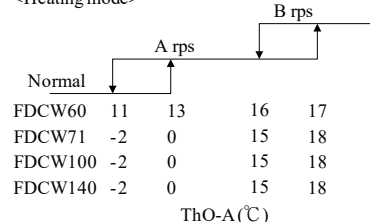
(rps)

Model	FDCW60VNX-A		FDCW71VNX-A		FDCW100VNX-A		FDCW140VNX-A	
	Cooling mode	Heating mode	Cooling mode	Heating mode	Cooling mode	Heating mode	Cooling mode	Heating mode
Cooling mode	A rps	-	67	-	75	-	75	-
	B rps	-	60	-	75	-	70	-
Heating mode	A rps	90	81	85	85	85	85	85
	B rps	75	74	60	60	60	85	85

<Cooling mode>



<Heating mode>



※ In case of the FDCW60VNX, Maximum required frequency is not limited according to the outdoor air temperature.

- 3) Maximum frequency under high condensing saturated temperature (CST or Thi-I whichever higher) in heating mode.

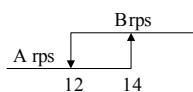
Maximum frequency is limited according to the condensing saturated temperature.

< FDCW60VNX-A >

(rps)

Model	FDCW60VNX-A	
Cooling mode	Outdoor air temperature	27°C <Tho-A ≤ 40°C
	A rps	95
	B rps	-

<Cooling mode>

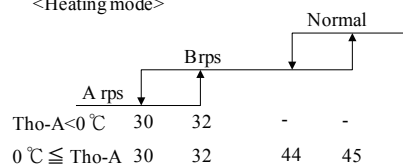


CST or Thi-L whichever

(rps)

Model	FDCW60VNX-A		
Heating mode	Outdoor air temperature	Tho-A < 0°C	0°C ≤ Tho-A
	A rps	95	90
	B rps	Normal	100

<Heating mode>

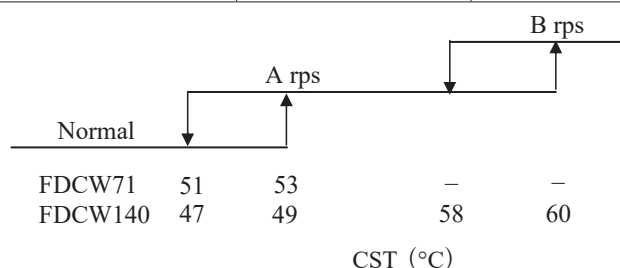


CST or Thi-L whichever higher

< FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >

(rps)

Model	FDCW71VNX-A	FDCW100VNX-A	FDCW140VNX-A
Heating mode	A rps	100	-
	B rps	-	95



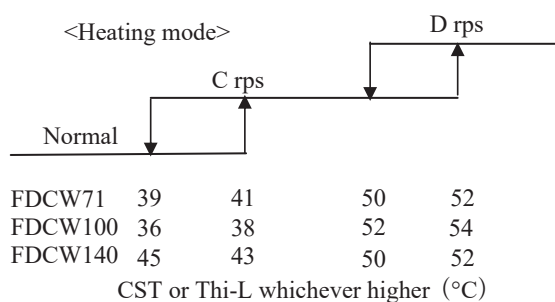
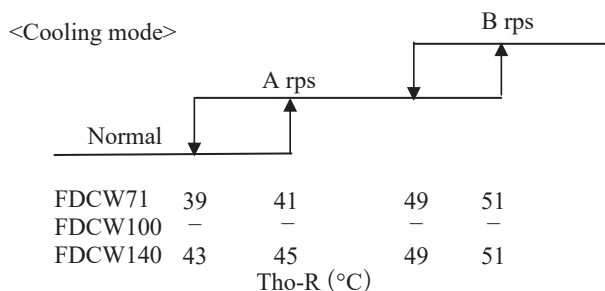
Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

- 4) Minimum required frequency under high condensing saturated temperature condition.
According to the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) , minimum required frequency in cooling mode is changed as per A or B in below table.

And according to the condensing saturated temperature (CST) detected by indoor unit pressure sensor (BP4) or liquid pipe temperature (Thi-L) detected by indoor unit temperature sensor (BT15), whichever is higher, minimum required frequency in heating mode is changed as per C or D in below table.

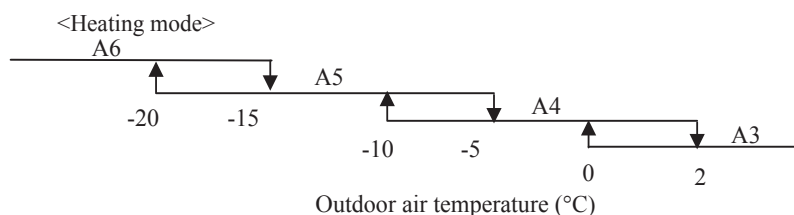
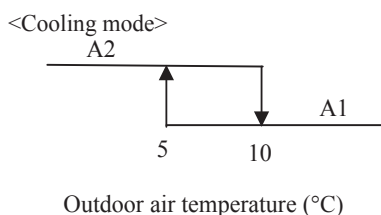
(rps)

Model		FDCW71VNX-A	FDCW100VNX-A	FDCW140VNX-A
Cooling mode	A rps	30	—	30
	B rps	40	—	40
Heating mode	C rps	30	25	30
	D rps	40	35	40



- 5) Minimum required frequency adjustment under outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) condition
According to the outdoor air temperature, minimum required frequency is offset by as per below table.

Model		FDCW71VNX-A	FDCW100VNX-A	FDCW140VNX-A
Cooling mode	A1	0		
	A2	+15		
Heating mode	A3	0	0	0
	A4	0	+10	+5
	A5	+10	+20	+15
	A6	+20	+30	+25



- 6) When any of the controls from 1) - 5) above may duplicate, whichever the smallest value among duplicated controls is taken as the maximum required frequency, and whichever the biggest value is taken as the minimum required frequency.

Compressor start control

- 1) Compressor starts upon receipt of the thermostat ON signal from the indoor unit
- 2) However, at initial start-up after turning the power circuit breaker on, the compressor may enter the standby state for maximum 30 minutes in order to prevent from dry-up of oil in the compressor.

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

Compressor soft start control

< FDCW60VNX-A >

1) The pattern 1

Normally, the outdoor unit starts a compressor with this control except the condition mentioned in (2) pattern 2.

- Firstly, compressor starts at 10rps up to the target speed "30rps", and it is accelerated by 5rps/s.
- Compressor acceleration
- The compressor upper limit speed is limited at "A", "B", and "C" rps for "T minutes after compressor starts" respectively.

		Duration from the starting compressor T (min)				
		T ≤ 3min	T ≤ 7min	T ≤ 9min	T > 9min	
		A rps	B rps	C rps		
FDCW60VNX-A	Cooling mode	120	120	120	-	
	Heating mode	Tho-A ≥ 0°C	120	120	120	-
		Tho-A < 0°C	48	56	75	-

“When the value in this table is higher than the global highest (Nmaxo) value, it follows the global highest value.”

In case the pattern 1 condition and the pattern 3 condition are fulfilled at the same time, pattern 3 start-up will be done.

2) The pattern 2

① Control condition

Operation mode is “Heating” and all below condition a) and b) are fulfilled. but any of 1) ~3) conditions is fulfilled, pattern 1 start-up will be done.

- 1) Operation mode is changed from “stop” to “Heating”
 - 2) Restarting compressor after Defrost operation.
 - 3) Restart from “Forced-Stop”
- a) “Compressor Command” is turned from “OFF” to “ON”
 - b) When “Compressor commnad” is turned “ON”, Tho-A is less than 10 degree C.

		Duration from the starting compressor T (min)		
		T ≤ 1min	T ≤ 5min	T ≤ 5min
		A rps	B rps	C rps
FDCW60VNX-A	Heating mode	40	32	-

3) The pattern 3

① Control condition

In case all of the following conditions are fulfilled when the operation mode is not "Stop"

- i) Inverter command changes from "STOP" to "RUN".
- ii) Taqrget compressor speed is less than A rps.

② Control contents

Compressor lower speed limit is limited at A rps for "a" minites.

	Mode	A rps	a min
FDCW60VNX-A	Cooling	40	3
	Heating	40	3

If the operation is duplicate the pattern 2 and the pattern 3, the pattern 2 execution is priority.

Compressor soft start control

< FDCW71,100,140VNX-A >

1) The pattern 1

[Control condition] Normally, the compressor operation frequency is raised in following start pattern.

[Control contents]

- a) It starts the compressor at 55rps as target frequency.
- b) Compressor speed acceleration finishes when the pressure difference becomes bigger than 0.34MPa in heating or when the low pressure reaches 0.8MPa in cooling.
- c) At 30 seconds after starting compressor, the target frequency changes to **A** rps and compressor is kept operation at **A** rps as fixed frequency for **B** minutes.

Model	Operation mode	A rps	B min
FDCW71VNX-A	Cooling	20	4
	Heating	40	4
FDCW100VNX-A	Cooling	20	4
	Heating	55	2
FDCW140VNX-A	Cooling	20	4
	Heating	40	4

2) The pattern 2

[Control condition] The initial start-up of compressor after turning the power source ON

[Control contents] According to the operation mode and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A), the outdoor unit starts the compressor with the following control.

- a) It starts the compressor at 55rps as target frequency.
- b) Compressor acceleration finishes, when pressure difference becomes bigger than 0.34MPa in heating or the low pressure becomes 0.8MPa in cooling.
- c) At 30 seconds after starting compressor, the target frequency changes to **A** rps and the compressor is kept operation at **A** rps as fixed frequency for **B** minutes.

Model	Operation mode	A rps	B min
FDCW71VNX-A	Cooling	20	10
FDCW100VNX-A	Cooling	30	10
FDCW140VNX-A	Cooling	20	10

3) The pattern 3

[Control condition] In case all of the following conditions are fulfilled

- a) Restarting the compressor in heating mode after 2 hours or longer stop of compressor.
- b) The outdoor air temperature at restart is lower than 0°C.

[Control contents]

- a) It starts the compressor at 55rps as target frequency.
- b) Compressor acceleration finishes, when pressure difference becomes bigger than 0.34MPa.
- c) At 30 seconds after starting compressor, the target frequency changes to **A** rps and the compressor is kept operation at **A** rps as fixed frequency for **B** minutes.

Model	Operation mode	A rps	B min
FDCW71VNX-A	Heating	40	15
FDCW100VNX-A	Heating	40	15
FDCW140VNX-A	Heating	40	15

Outdoor fan control

< FDCW60VNX-A >

1) Relations between Fan speeds and revolutions

			Fan speed (rpm)							
			1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th
FDCW60VNX-A	Revolutions	Cooling	150	225	485	520	570	685	740	850
		Heating	150	225	485	520	570	685	800	850

2) Control of fan motor speed

(a) Starting fanmotor speed is fixed by the fanmotor speed excepted below case (i)

(i) Operation mode is “cooling” and Tho-A < 22°C

	Fan speed	Control duration
11°C ≤ Tho-A < 22°C	2nd	30second after “Compressor ON”
Tho-A < 11°C	1st	30second after “Compressor ON”

If Tho-A changed the condition during 30second, Fan speed does not change.

(ii) Other than case (i)

Follow the table (2).(b)

(b) Control of the fan motor speed in normal mode

		Fan speed (rpm)								
		OFF	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th
Compressor speed (rps)	Cooling	0	-	-	-	0-22	22-30	30-58	58-80	80-
	Heating	0	-	-	-	0-30	30-38	38-78	78-90	90-

※ Fan motor speed down actually delays 60 second from the time that the each change command occurs.

Once the increase command is active even if it is within the above 60 seconds,the fan speed is increased promptly.

※※ When fan motor speed command “OFF” is active, fan motor speed is controlled 0 rpm promptly without delay.

3) Stop fanspeed control.

Fan stop control shows as follows.

① Fan motor stops after fan 6th speed is operated T minutes.

	T (minutes)
Cooling	1min
Heating	1min

4) Fan speed control during cooling operation

a) Ambient air temperature (Tho-A) is below 25°C .

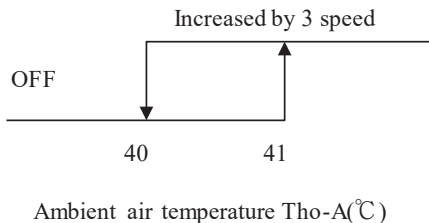
Fan motor speed operates the Up-Down control according to heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R).

Tho-R	Fan speed
Tho-R ≤ 21°C	Decreased by 1 speed
21°C < Tho-R ≤ 38°C	Retained
38°C < Tho-R	Increased by 1speed

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

b) Ambient air temperature (Tho-A) is above 41°C .

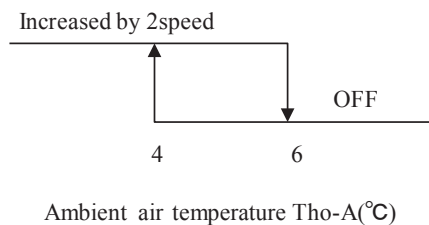
Fan motor speed operates the Up control according to ambient air temperature (Tho-A).



5) Fan speed control during heating operation

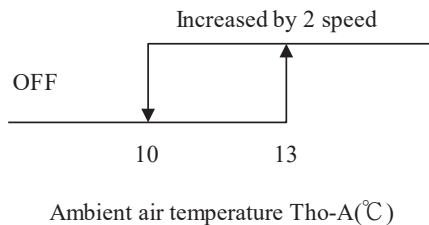
a) Ambient air temperature (Tho-A) is below 4°C .

Fan motor speed operates the Up control according to ambient air temperature (Tho-A).



b) Heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) is above 13°C .

Fan motor speed operates the Down control according to heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R).



Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

< FDCW71,100,140VNX-A >

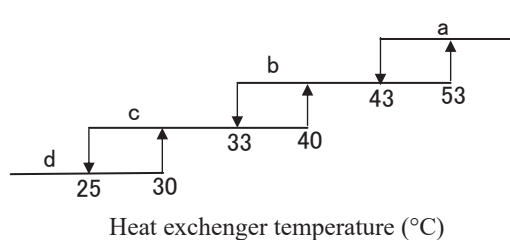
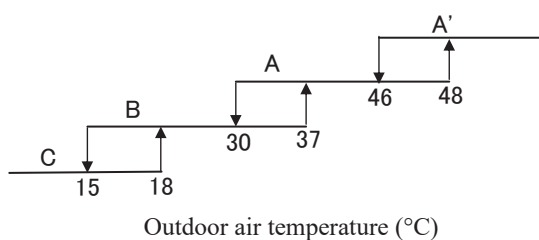
1) Outdoor fan speed

a) Upper limit

According to the relation between the heat exchanger temperature and outdoor air temperature, maximum fan speed is limited as follows.

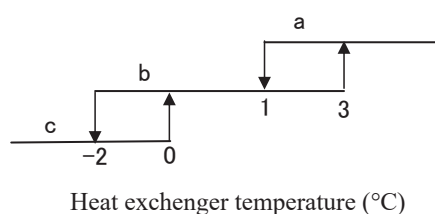
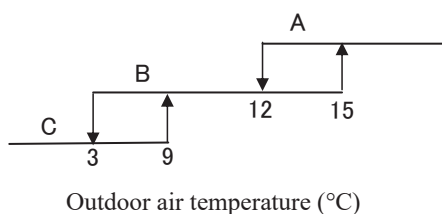
i) Cooling

FDCW71VNX-A (rpm)					FDCW100VNX-A (rpm)					FDCW140VNX-A (rpm)				
Tho-A \ Tho-R	A'	A	B	C	Tho-A \ Tho-R	A'	A	B	C	Tho-A \ Tho-R	A'	A	B	C
a	850	850	850	710	a	820	820	820	740	a	745	745	745	640
b	850	850	710	600	b	820	820	740	600	b	745	745	640	560
c	710	710	600	400	c	740	740	600	350	c	640	640	560	370
d	600	600	400	200	d	600	600	350	200	d	560	560	370	200



ii) Heating

FDCW71VNX-A (rpm)				FDCW100VNX-A (rpm)				FDCW140VNX-A (rpm)			
Tho-A \ Tho-R	A'	A	B	Tho-A \ Tho-R	A'	A	B	Tho-A \ Tho-R	A'	A	B
a	850	850	850	a	600	600	740	a	850	850	850
b	850	850	710	b	600	740	820	b	850	850	710
c	710	710	600	c	740	820	870	c	710	710	600



b) Lower limit

Model	Operation mode	Min. rpm
FDCW71VNX-A	Cooling	130
	Heating	390
FDCW100VNX-A	Cooling	130
	Heating	390
FDCW140VNX-A	Cooling	130
	Heating	370

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

- 2) Fan speed control during cooling operation
 Fan speed is controlled every 15 seconds according to the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1,-R2), whichever the higher.

Tho-R	Fan speed
Less than 30°C	Reduced by 10 rpm
30°C or higher but 45°C or lower	Retained
Higher than 45°C	Increased by 10 rpm

- 3) Fan speed control during heating operation
 According to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A), fan speed control is switched between A and B.



[Control A]

Fan speed is controlled every 15 seconds according to the difference between the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1,-R2), whichever the higher.

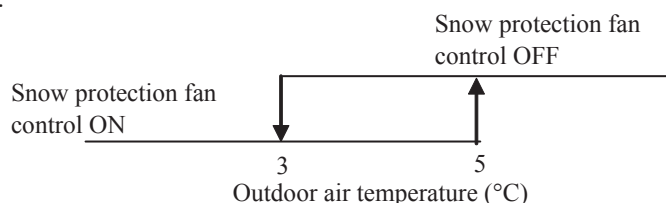
(Tho-A)-(Tho-R)	Fan speed
Less than 3degC	Reduced by 10 rpm
3degC or more but 6degC or less	Retained
More than 6degC	Increased by 10 rpm

[Control B]

Fan speed is controlled every 15 seconds according to the low pressure (LPT).

LPT	Fan speed
More than 1.1MPa	Reduced by 10 rpm
1.0MPa or more but 1.1MPa or less	Retained
Less than 1.0MPa	Increased by 10 rpm

- 4) Snow protection fan control
 If the DIP switch (SW3-2) on the outdoor control PCB is turned ON, the outdoor fan is operated for 30 seconds at 740 rpm once in every 10 minutes according to outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) shown in below figure in the stop mode or anomalous stop mode.



Silent mode

When outdoor unit receives silent mode signal from indoor unit, silent mode operation starts.

[Control contents]

- a) Fan speed upper limits are restricted according to the following table.

Model	Operation mode	Max. speed (rpm)
FDCW60VNX-A	Heating / Cooling	570
FDCW71VNX-A	Heating	600
FDCW100VNX-A	Heating	600
FDCW140VNX-A	Heating	560

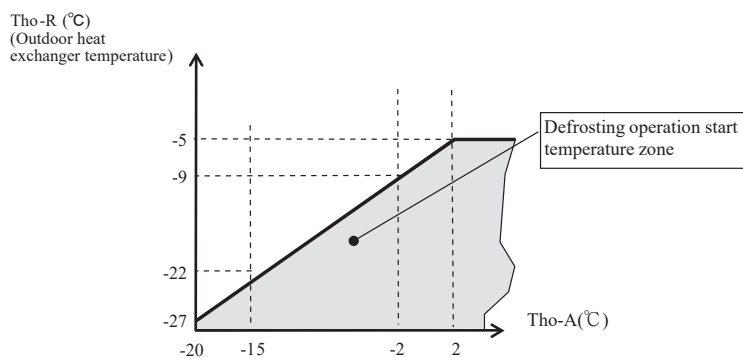
* Compressor speed limits are also restricted by indoor unit control command.

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

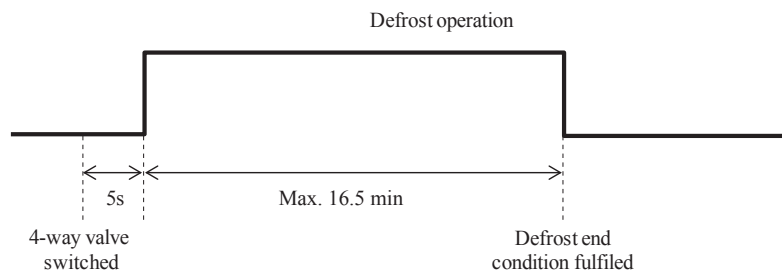
Defrosting

< FDCW60VNX-A >

- 1) Defrosting start conditions
 Defrosting operation can be started only when all of the following condition are met.
 - a) After start of heat operation
 When it elapsed 35 minutes.(Accumulated compressor operating time)
 - b) After end of defrosting operation
 When it elapsed 35 minutes.(Accumulated compressor operation time)
 - c) Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (Tho-R) temperature
 When the temperature has been below -5 °C for 3 minutes continuously.
 - d) The difference between the outdoor air sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature (Tho-A - Tho-R) fulfils the following condition.
 - Tho-A - Tho-R ≥ 7°C



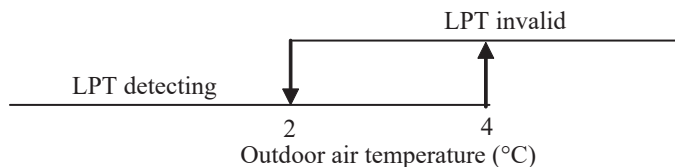
- 2) Defrosting end conditions
 Defrosting end condition is fulfilled when either one of the following is met.
 - a) Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (Tho-R) temperature: 10°C or higher
 - b) Control operation time of defrosting → When 16min 35sec has passed since 4-way valve is switched.



< FDCW71,100,140VNX-A >

- 1) Defrosting start conditions
If all of the following defrosting condition A or condition B are met, the defrosting operation starts.
For model 140, SV1 is open when 4-way valve switches, and closed when low pressure keeps 0.55MPa or higher for 5 seconds or longer.

- a) Defrosting conditions A
 - i) Cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrosting has elapsed 37 [45] minutes (15 minutes in case the previous defrost operation is forcibly finished by indoor unit protection control) and the cumulative compressor operation time after the start of heating operation has elapsed 30 minutes
 - ii) After 5 minutes from the compressor ON.
 - iii) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor fan.
 - iv) After satisfying all above conditions, if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, Tho-R2, whichever the lower) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) become lower than the defrosting start temperature as shown in Fig 4-1 for 15 seconds continuously. Or suction gas saturated temperature (SST), which is detected by the low pressure sensor (LPT), and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) stay for 3 minutes within the temperature range lower than the defrosting operation start temperature as shown Fig 4-2. However it is not effective during 10 minutes after the start of compressor and if the outdoor air temperature is within the range of LPT invalid as shown in below figure.



Note: Figure in [] is for model 71.

- b) Defrosting conditions B
 - i) If the previous defrosting was ended compulsorily due to the time out of defrosting operation period and cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrosting has elapsed 30 minutes and operation mode is kept heating.
 - ii) After 5 minutes from the compressor ON.
 - iii) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor fan.
- 2) Defrosting end conditions
When any of following conditions is satisfied, the defrosting operation is ended.
 - a) When it has elapsed 8 minutes and 20 seconds after the start of defrosting. (After 10 minutes and 20 seconds for model 71)
 - b) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperatures (Tho-R1, Tho-R2) , whichever the lower, becomes 12°C or higher continuously for 10 seconds.
- 3) Switching of defrosting control with SW3-1
 - a) If the DIP switch SW3-1 on the outdoor control PCB is turned ON, it makes earlier to enter the defrosting operation. Use this function, if installing the unit in snowing region.
 - b) Control contents
 - i) It allows entering defrosting operation under the defrosting condition A when the cumulative heating operation time has elapsed 30 minutes. It is 37 [45] minutes at SW3-1 OFF (factory default)
 - ii) It allows entering defrosting operation under the defrosting condition B when the cumulative heating operation time has elapsed 20 minutes. It is 30 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (factory default)
 - iii) It allows entering defrosting operation when the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) and the suction pressure saturated temperature (SST) are higher than normal.

Note (1) Figure in [] is for model 71.

Model 71-140

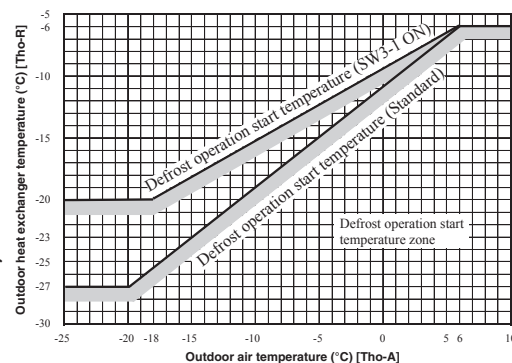


Fig 4-1

Model 71-140

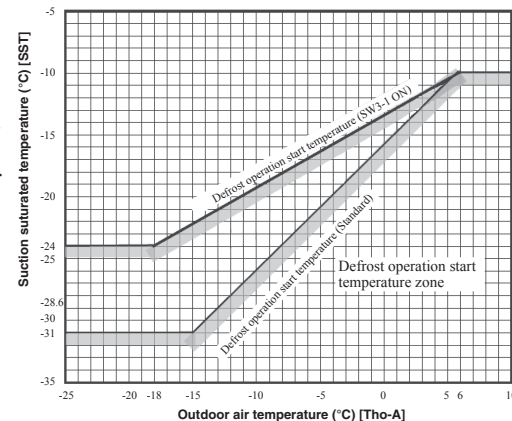


Fig 4-2

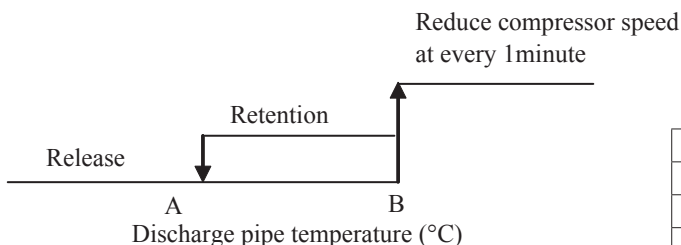
Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

Protective control/ anomalous stop control by compressor speed (frequency)

1) Compressor discharge pipe temperature protection

a) Protective control

If the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceed the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled in order to suppress the rise of discharge pipe temperature.

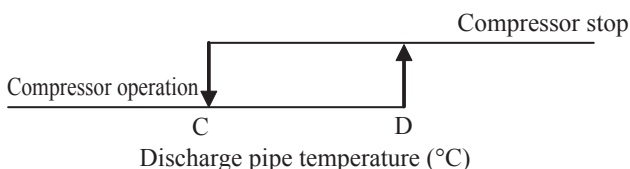


Model	A°C	B°C
FDCW60VNX-A	95	105
FDCW71, 100VNX-A	100	105
FDCW140VNX-A	95	100

Note (1) Figures in [] are for model 140.

b) Anomalous stop control

- i) If the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceed the setting value, the compressor stops.
- ii) When the discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or 60 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping, discharge pipe temperature error is displayed and E36 is recorded in Error Log and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



Model	C°C	D°C
FDCW60VNX-A	95	115
FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A	85	115

c) Reset of anomalous stop mode

When the discharge pipe temperature drops to the reset value of E°C or lower for F minutes continuously, it becomes possible to restart from control.

Model	FDCW60VNX-A	FDCW71VNX-A	FDCW100VNX-A	FDCW140VNX-A
E °C	95	85	85	85
F minutes	Immediately	45	45	45

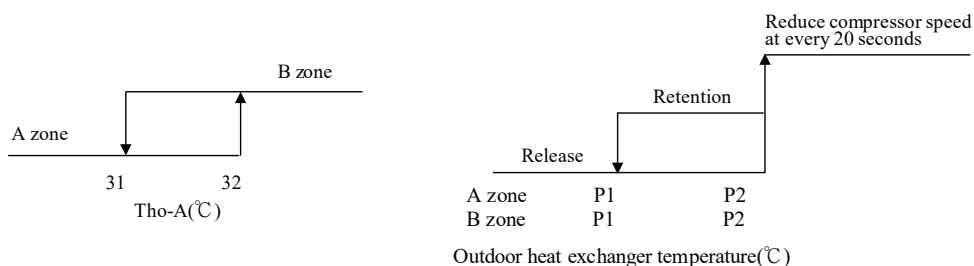
2) Cooling high pressure protection

< FDCW60VNX-A >

a) Protective control

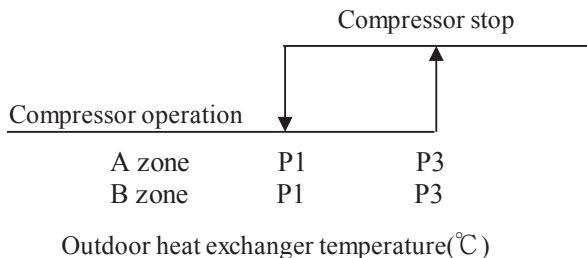
- i) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds setting value that be changed by outdoor air temperature, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled in order to suppress the rise of high pressure.

Model		FDCW60VNX-A	
		A zone	B zone
Cooling mode	P1	51	53
	P2	53	58
	P3	56	63



Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

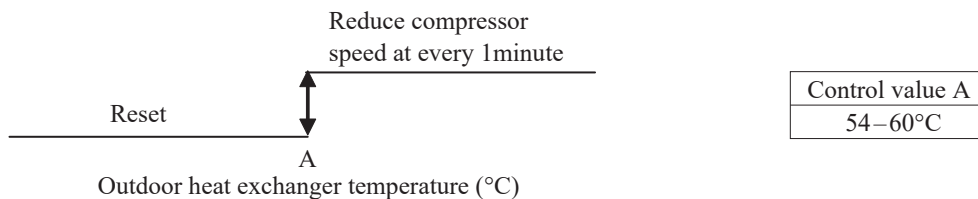
- b) Anomalous stop control
 - i) If the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stop.
 - ii) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature anomaly is detected 5 times within 60 minutes, or 60 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping, cooling overload error is displayed and E35 is recorded in the Error Log and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



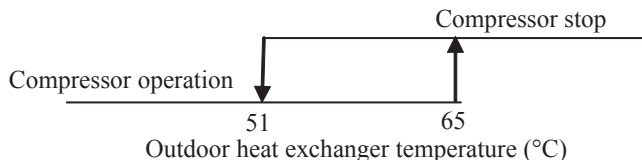
- c) Reset of anomalous stop mode
When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature drops to the reset value P3 °C or lower, it becomes possible to restart from the control.

< FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >

- a) Protective control
 - i) When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 40°C or higher and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled in order to suppress the rise of high pressure.
 - ii) The control value A is updated to an optimum value automatically according to the operating conditions.



- b) Anomalous stop control
 - i) If the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
 - ii) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature anomaly is detected 5 times within 60 minutes, or 60 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping, cooling overload error is displayed and E35 is recorded in the Error Log and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



- c) Reset of anomalous stop mode
When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature drops to the reset value of 51°C or lower, it becomes possible to restart from the control.

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

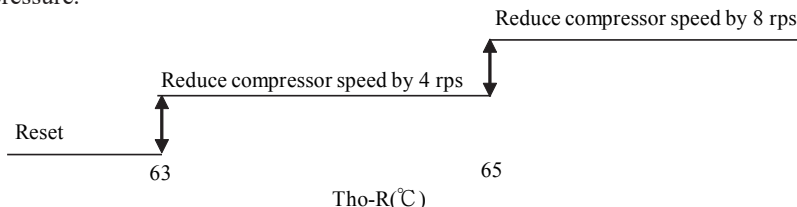
3) Heating high pressure protection

< FDCW60VNX-A >

a) Protective control

If the liquid line temperature of water heat exchanger (BT15=Thi-L) or the condensing saturated temperature (CST), whichever the higher.

Exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled at every 10 seconds to suppress the rise of high pressure.

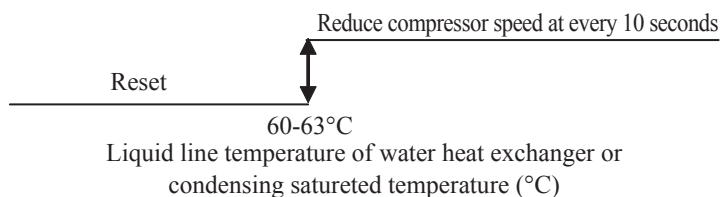


< FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >

a) Protective control

i) If the liquid line temperature of water heat exchanger (BT15=Thi-L) or the condensing saturated temperature (CST), whichever the higher, exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of high pressure.

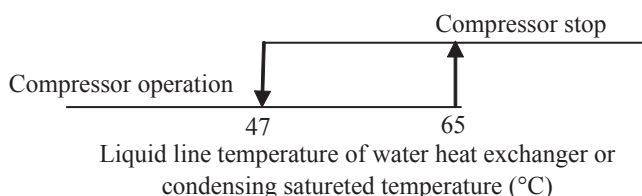
ii) Control value A is updated to an optimum value automatically according to the operating conditions.



b) Anomalous stop control

If the liquid line temperature of water heat exchanger (BT15=Thi-L) or the condensing saturated temperature (CST), whichever the higher, exceeds the setting value for 2 seconds, compressor stops.

The compressor automatically restarts when the temperature gets 47°C or lower.



4) Anomaly detection control by the high pressure switch (63H1)

i) If the high pressure rises and activates the high pressure switch (opens at 4.15MPa/close at 3.15MPa), the compressor stops.

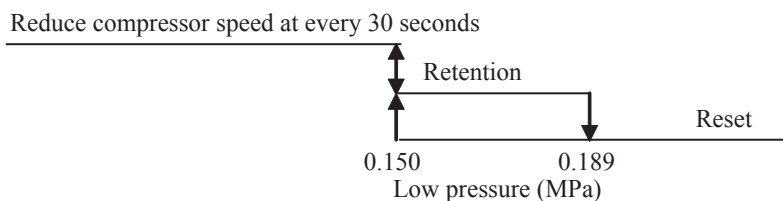
ii) Under any of following conditions, HP alarm is displayed and E40 is recorded in the Error Log, and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

- ① When high pressure exceeds the setting value and the compressor is stopped by 63H1 5 times. within 60 minutes.
- ② When 63H1 has been in the open state for 60 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping.

5) Low pressure control

a) Protective control

If the value detected by the low pressure sensor (LTP) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to restrain the drop of pressure.



Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

- b) Anomalous stop control
 - i) When a value detected by the low pressure sensor (LPT) satisfies any of the following conditions, compressor stops.
 - ① When the low pressure drops to 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously.
 - ii) Under any of the following conditions, LP alarm is displayed and E49 is recorded in Error Log, and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
 - ① When the low pressure drops and the compressor stops under any of above conditions 3 times within 60 minutes.
 - ② When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa for 5 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping
 - ③ However, when the control condition ① is established during the control of the compressor protection start III, LP alarm is displayed and E49 is recorded in Error Log at the first stop of compressor and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

6) Overcurrent protection

< FDCW60VNX-A >

When the inverter primary current (CT current) reaches following value, the compressor speed is reduced until it gets to the cancellation value.

Operation mode	Current (A)
Cooling	11.5
Heating	13.5

< FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >

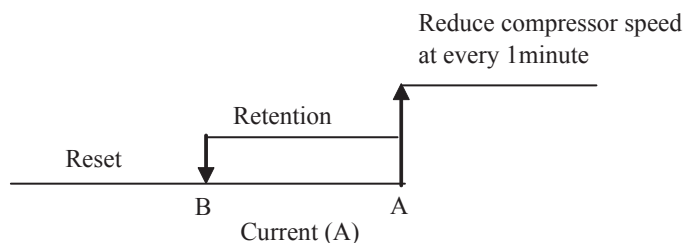
a) Current safe control I

When the inverter primary current (CT current) reaches following value, the compressor speed is reduced until it gets to the cancellation value.

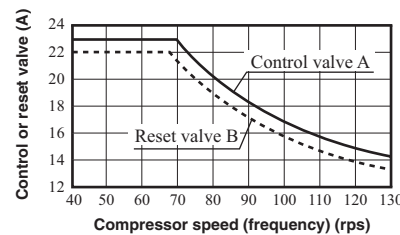
Model	Operation mode	Current (A)
FDCW71VNX-A	Cooling	15
	Heating	16
FDCW100VNX-A	Cooling	17
	Heating	23
FDCW140VNX-A	Cooling	23
	Heating	25

b) Current safe control II

Detecting the outdoor inverter output (secondary side) current, if the current values exceed setting values, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled in order to protect the inverter.



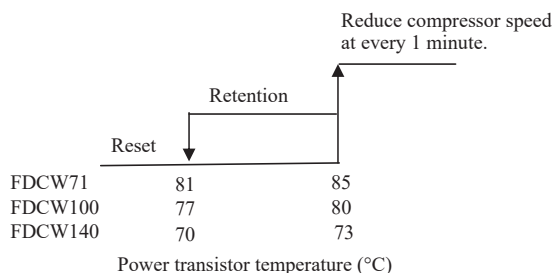
(Fig. C) The control value "A" and the reset value vary depending on the compressor speed.



Model	Cooling		Heating	
	Control value A	Reset value B	Control value A	Reset value B
FDCW71VNX-A	13	12	13	12
FDCW100VNX-A	Fig. C	Fig. C	Fig. C	Fig. C
FDCW140VNX-A				

7) Power transistor temperature control

This control monitors the power transistor temperature (TIP) from the start operation of compressor, and when the following condition is established, compressor speed (frequency) is controlled.



Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

- 8) Anomalous power transistor current
 - a) If the current value of power transistor exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops in order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter.
 - b) When the current value of power transistor exceeds the specified value and compressor stops 4 times within 30 minutes, Inverter error is displayed and E42 is recorded in the Error Log. And it enters the anomalous stop mode.
- 9) Anomalous inverter PCB

If the power transistor detects any anomaly for 15 minutes including the time of compressor stopping, Inverter error is displayed and E51 is recorded in the Error Log, and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
- 10) Anti-freeze control by the compressor frequency control

It depends on the command from indoor unit

- 11) Refrigerant amount shortage protection

Under the control of compressor protection start III during cooling operation, the following control is performed by detecting the liquid line temperature of indoor unit (BT15=Thi-L) and inlet water temperature (BT3=Twin).

[Control condition] When the state that the temperature of indoor unit water heat exchanger (Thi-R=Thi-L) does not become lower than the inlet water temperature (BT3=Twin) by 4°C or more for 1 minute continuously.

[Control contents] It judges that the flowing of refrigerant into the indoor unit is insufficient so that the compressor is stopped and insufficient refrigerant amount error is displayed and E57 is recorded in the Error Log.

- 12) Broken wire detection on temperature sensor and low pressure sensor
 - a) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, outdoor air temperature sensor and low pressure sensor, which be not included in FDCW60VNX-A.

If the following is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, the compressor restarts but if the same anomaly is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop mode.

 - Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Tho-R1, R2): -50°C or lower
 - Outdoor air temperature sensor (Tho-A): -30°C or lower
 - Low pressure sensor (LPT): 0 Volt or lower, or 3.49 Volt or higher

Note : During defrosting operation and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting operation, this control is not performed.
 - b) Discharge pipe temperature sensor, suction pipe temperature sensor, which be not included in FDCW60VNX-A.

If the following is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, the compressor restarts but if the same anomaly is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop mode.

 - Discharge pipe temperature sensor (Tho-D): -10°C or lower
 - Suction pipe temperature sensor (Tho-S): -50°C or lower

Note : During defrosting operation and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting operation, this control is not performed.

- 13) Fan motor error
 - a) If the outdoor fan speed is detected A rpm or lower for 30 seconds continuously under the outdoor fan control mode (with the operation command of fan speed 390 rpm or higher), the compressor stops.
 - b) When the outdoor fan speed drops to A rpm or lower 5 times within 60 minutes and the compressor stops, Fan alarm is displayed and E48 is recorded in the Error Log and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

Model	FDCW60VNX-A	FDCW71VNX-A	FDCW100VNX-A	FDCW140VNX-A
A rpm	75	100	100	100

- 14) Anomalous stop by the compressor start/stop
 - < FDCW60VNX-A >
 - a) When it fails to shift to the rotor position detection operation of compressor DC motor during 5 seconds after establishing the compressor start condition, the compressor stops temporarily and restarts 3 minutes later.
 - < FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >
 - a) When it fails to shift to the rotor position detection operation of compressor DC motor during 5 seconds after establishing the compressor start condition, the compressor stops temporarily and restarts 3 minutes later.
 - b) If it fails to shift to the rotor position detection operation again at second time, it judged the anomalous compressor start and the compressor stops. Compressor startup failure is displayed and E59 is recorded in the Error Log and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

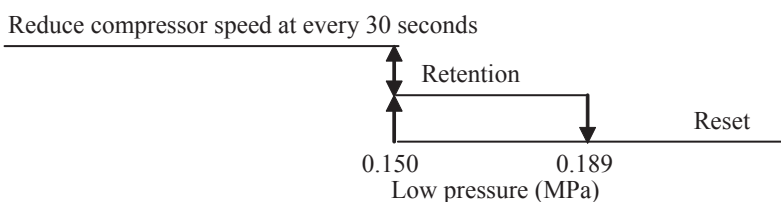
< FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >

- 1) Anomaly detection control by the high pressure switch (63H1)
 - i) If the high pressure rises and activates the high pressure switch (opens at 4.15MPa/close at 3.15MPa), the compressor stops.
 - ii) Under any of following conditions, HP alarm is displayed and E40 is recorded in the Error Log, and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
 - ① When high pressure exceeds the setting value and the compressor is stopped by 63H1 5 times. within 60 minutes.
 - ② When 63H1 has been in the open state for 60 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping.

2) Low pressure control

a) Protective control

If the value detected by the low pressure sensor (LTP) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed is controlled to restrain the drop of pressure.

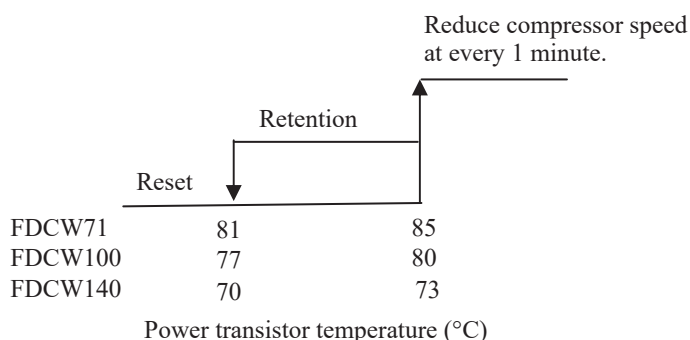


b) Anomalous stop control

- i) When a value detected by the low pressure sensor (LPT) satisfies any of the following conditions, compressor stops.
 - ① When the low pressure drops to 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously.
- ii) Under any of the following conditions, LP alarm is displayed and E49 is recorded in Error Log, and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
 - ① When the low pressure drops and the compressor stops under any of above conditions 3 times within 60 minutes.
 - ② When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa for 5 minutes continuously including the time of compressor stopping
 - ③ However, when the control condition ① is established during the control of the compressor protection start III, LP alarm is displayed and E49 is recorded in Error Log at the first stop of compressor and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

3) Power transistor temperature control

This control monitors the power transistor temperature (TIP) from the start operation of compressor, and when the following condition is established, compressor speed is controlled.



4) Refrigerant amount shortage protection

Under the control of compressor protection start III during cooling operation, the following control is performed by detecting the liquid line temperature of indoor unit (BT15=Thi-L) and inlet water temperature (BT3=Twin).

[Control condition] When the state that the temperature of indoor unit water heat exchanger (Thi-R=Thi-L) does not become lower than the inlet water temperature (BT3=Twin) by 4°C or more for 1 minute continuously.

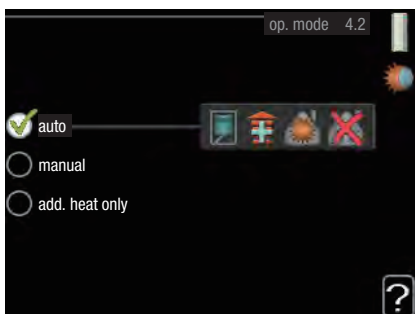
[Control contents] It judges that the flowing of refrigerant into the indoor unit is insufficient so that the compressor is stopped and insufficient refrigerant amount error is displayed and E57 is recorded in the Error Log.

Operation control function by the outdoor unit control

Pump down control

< FDCW60VNX-A >

This function can only be started when operation mode is set to addition heat only on menu 4.2. :



When this operating mode is activated pump down is available on service menu 5.11.

Menu number	Setting	Alternatives	Default	Other
5.11.X.1	Pump down	Yes/No	No	Menu only displayed in "Addition heat only" mode
5.11.X.2	Start pump down	Yes/No	No	Activates compressor operation. Above menu has to set "Yes" to display this menu.

Once the function has been activated:

- Compressor starts cooling operation with 2 minutes delay time
- Target compressor speed will be 56 rps
- Circulation pump runs at 100% when compressor starts

Pump down stops automatically when one of the following conditions is fulfilled:

- Pressure at BP4 gets lower more than 0.087 MPa for more than 5 seconds
- More than 5 minutes have passed
- An alarm stops the compressor operation

When pump down is stopped:

- Circulation pump runs at it normal operation
- Pump down changes to "No"
- Start pump down changes to "No"

CAUTION

Make sure to close the service valves according to service manual for recovery of refrigerant unit!

< FDCW71, 100, 140VNX-A >

It is possible to recover the refrigerant on the piping into the outdoor unit by this function.

Pump-down operation starts when the following conditions are fulfilled.

- a) Within ten minutes since the operation mode is changed to Add heat. only mode.
- b) SW1 [SW9] on the outdoor unit PCB is pressed for 2 seconds.

[Note]

Pump-down operation doesn't start even though SW1 [SW9] is pressed for 2 seconds, if more than 10 minutes has elapsed since the mode is changed to Add heat. only.

In that case, change the mode other than Add heat. only and set again.

Note (1) Figure in [] is for model 71.

1) Control contents

- a) Close the service valve at the liquid side, (the service valve at gas side should be left open.)
- b) The compressor is started with the target speed (frequency) at **A rps** in cooling mode.

Model	A rps
FDCW71VNX-A	62
FDCW100VNX-A	55
FDCW140VNX-A	45

- c) Red and green lamps (LED) flash continuously on the outdoor control PCB.
- d) Each of protection and error detection controls, excluding the low pressure control, is effective.
- e) Outdoor fan is controlled as usual.
- f) Electronic expansion valve is fully opened.

2) Control ending conditions

Stop control is initiated depending on any of following conditions

- a) Low pressure of 0.087MPa or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously.
 - i) Red LED: stays lighting, Green LED: keeps flashing
 - ii) It is possible to restart when the low pressure is 0.087MPa or higher.
 - iii) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.
- b) Stop by the error detection control
 - i) Red LED: keeps flashing, Green LED: keeps flashing
 - ii) Restarting is prohibited. To return to normal operation, reset the power source.
 - iii) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.
- c) When cumulative operation time of compressor under the pump-down control is elapsed 5 minutes.
 - i) Red LED: stays OFF, Green LED: keeps flashing
 - ii) It is possible to pump-down again.
 - iii) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.

Note : After the stop of compressor, close the service valve at the gas side.

Alarm list

In event of an alarm, the red lamp on the remote controller lights up (changes from green to red).

First go through the suggested actions shown in the display.

The alarms shown on this list apply to all range.

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
1	Sensor fault: BT1 outdoor sensor	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, outdoor)	Calculated supply temperature is set to min. supply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
6	Sensor fault: BT6 hot water load	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, hot water charging)	Hot water charging is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
25	Sensor fault: BT25 external supply	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, heat medium supply, external)	Additional heat is blocked. New actual value = BT71 + 10K	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
28	Sensor fault: BT71 external return sensor	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, return line, external)	No action but heating is blocked if alarm 25 occurs at the same time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
31	Sensor error: BT63 flow sensor	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, external supply line after heater)	Additional heat is blocked if the additional heat is before the reversing valve.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
33	Sensor fct: BT53 solar panel	Sensor not connected/defective (solar panel)	Switches off solar function.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
34	Sensor fct: BT54 solar	Sensor not connected/defective (solar coil)	Switches off solar function.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
35	Sensor fct: BT52 boiler sensor	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, boiler)	Shunt closes. Burner (boiler) is stopped.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
36	Sensor fct: EP21 BT2 flow line sensor	Sensor not connected/defective (supply temperature sensor extra climate system 2)	Controls the return line sensor (EP21-BT3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
37	Sensor fct: EP22 BT2 flow line sensor	Sensor not connected/defective (supply temperature sensor extra climate system 3)	Controls the return line sensor (EP22-BT3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
38	Sensor fct: EP23 BT2 flow line sensor	Sensor not connected/defective (supply temperature sensor extra climate system 4)	Controls the return line sensor (EP23-BT3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
39	Sensor error: EQ1-BT64 cooling supply	No contact with the sensor (Temperature sensor, cooling supply line)	Cooling is blocked. Cooling shunt closes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
48	Sens fct: room sens cooling operation	No contact with the sensor, (cooling)	Cooling operation is blocked. Manual reset when the sensor has contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input • Defective sensor
56	Erroneous serial no	The heat pump has a serial number that does not exist	Compressors are stopped and relay is deactivated	Incorrectly entered serial number.
57	Erroneous software	The heat pump's program and serial number do not match each other	Compressors are stopped and relay is deactivated	Incorrect software installed.

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
70	Communication fault with PCA input	Communication with the input board (AA3) is missing	Calculated supply temperature is set to min. supply temperature	Defective communication cables
71	Communication fault with PCA base	Communication with PCB (AA2) is missing	Compressor is blocked.	Defective communication cables
73-91	Com. err. PCA Accessory	Communication with the accessory board is missing.	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable. • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board
96-99	Com. err. RMU	Communication with the room unit is missing.	The room unit is blocked.	Defective communication cables
130-135	Com. flt PCA accessory	The communication with the accessory board for climate systems 5-8 has been missing for 15 seconds.	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable. • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board
156	Low lp cool	5 repeated alarms for low-pressure within 4 hours	Compressor is blocked. Manual reset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor flow • Significant wind effect
193	Com. flt PCA accessory	Communication fault to EME20M has occurred 3 times in a row.	Accessory is blocked. Automatic reset once there has been communication for 60 seconds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable. • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board
206	Com. flt PCA accessory	Communication with the accessory board for HW comfort has been missing for 15 seconds.	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable. • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
208	Com. flt PCA accessory	Communication with the accessory board for external additional heat has been missing for 15 seconds	Switches off step-controlled additional heat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board
212	Cmpr has not been running for a week	Compressor has not been running for a week	According to selected measure in the menu	Check settings
218	The compressor's rotor is blocked.		Compressor is blocked.	Defective compressor
220	High pressure alarm	The high pressure switch (63H1) has deployed 5 times within 60 minutes or has been deployed for 60 minutes continuously.	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insufficient air circulation of blocked heat exchanger • Open circuit or short circuit on input for high pressure switch (63H1) • Defective high pressure switch • The expansion valve is not connected correctly • Service valve closed • Defective control board in outdoor unit • Low or no flow during heating operation • Defective circulation pump • Defective fuse F(4A)
221	Low pressure alarm	To low value on the low pressure sensor 3 times within 60 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open circuit or short circuit on input for low pressure sensor • Defective low pressure sensor • Defective control board in outdoor unit • Open circuit or short circuit on input for suction gas sensor (Tho-S)
223	Motor protection alarm	Communication between the control board and the communication board is interrupted. There must be 22 VDC at the switch CNW2 on the control board (PWB1)	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any circuit breakers for the outdoor unit are in the off position • Incorrect cable routing
224	Fan alarm from heat pump	Deviations in the fan speed in the outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fan blocked or not connected • Defective fan motor • Fuse blown
225	Mixing up sensor flow/return	The return is hotter than the supply.	Compressor is blocked.	The connection for the supply and the return is mixed up.
227	Sensor fault from heat pump	Sensor not connected/defective	Compressor is blocked.	Open circuit or short circuit on sensor input

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
228	Failed defrosting	Failed 10 consecutive defrost operations	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● System temperature too low and/or poor flow ● Insufficient available system volume ● Significant wind effect ● Clogged particle filter
229	Short operating times for compr.	Operation was stopped from the indoor unit section after less than 5 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Poor flow or poor heat transfer ● Incorrect settings for heating and/or hot water
230	Hot gas alarm	Temperature deviations on the discharge sensor. Alarm 2 times within 60 minutes or continuous alarm for 60 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disruption in the refrigerant circuit ● Lack of refrigerant
232	Low evaporation temp	5 repeated alarms for low evaporation temperature within 4 hours	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Lack of refrigerant ● Blocked expansion valve ● Significant wind effect
251	Com. err. MODBUS	Communication error with the accessory (MODBUS40M) has been missing for 15 seconds	The accessory is blocked. Manual reset	Check the communication.
261	High HWX temp	Temperature deviation on the heat exchanger sensor (ThoR1/R2) 5 times within 60 minutes or continuously for 60 minutes.	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective sensor ● Insufficient air circulation or blocked heat exchanger ● Defective control board in FDCW ● Too much refrigerant
262	Inv. err.	Power transistor too hot. When IPM (Intelligent Power Module) show FO (Fault output) signal 5 times for 60 minutes.	Compressor is blocked.	The 15V supply to the inverter is unstable
263	Inv. err.	Voltage from the inverter outside the parameters 4 times within 30 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Incoming power supply interference ● Service valve closed ● Insufficient amount of refrigerant ● Compressor fault ● Defective inverter board in FDCW
264	Communication error with inverter	Communication between inverter board and control board/PCB interrupted	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Poor connection between control board/PCB and inverter ● Inverter de-energised or defective ● Defective control board in FDCW
265	Inv. err.	Continuous deviation on power transistor for 15 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective fan motor ● Defective circuit board in FDCW
266	Low refig.	Insufficient refrigerant has been detected at start-up in cooling operation. 1 minute after start-up, BT15 must have decreased 15K compared to BT3.	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Service valve closed ● Loose connection on sensor (BT15, BT3) ● Defective sensor (BT15, BT3)

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
267	Inv. err	Failed start for compressor	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective circuit board for inverter in FDCW Defective control board in FDCW Compressor fault
268	Inv. err.	Overcurrent, inverter A/F module	Compressor is blocked.	Sudden power failure
277	Sensor fault from heat pump	The input for the sensor Tho-R (evaporator sensor) has received an unreasonably high or low value 3 times within 40 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input Defective sensor
278	Sensor fault from heat pump	The input for the sensor Tho-A (outdoor sensor) has received an unreasonably high or low value 3 times within 40 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input Defective sensor
279	Sensor fault from heat pump	The input for the sensor Tho-D (discharge sensor) has received an unreasonably high or low value 3 times within 40 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input Defective sensor
280	Sensor fault from heat pump	The input for the sensor Tho-S (suction gas sensor) has received an unreasonably high or low value 3 times within 40 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input Defective sensor
281	Sensor fault from heat pump	The input for the sensor LPT (low pressure sensor) has received an unreasonably high or low value 3 times within 40 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input Defective sensor
282	Com. flt PCA accessory	Temporary comm. fault 4 pipe active cooling	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective communication cables Incorrectly set DIP switch The accessory is activated in the display, but is not connected with a communication cable Incorrectly connected communication cable No electrical supply to the accessory board
292	Sen flt: BT74 cool/heat sensor	Sensor BT74 on the AUX input is not connected/defective	According to selected measure in the menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input Defective sensor
294	Incompatible heat pump	The outdoor air heat pump is not compatible	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade of outdoor unit failed No software in outdoor unit
301	Slave heat pump #1 comm. err.	Communication with slave heat pump 1 has been missing for 15 seconds	Blocking compressor in heat pump 1	Check communication cables.
302-308	Comm. err. slave 2-8	Communication with slave heat pump 2-8 has been missing for 15 seconds	Blocking compressor in heat pump 2-8	Check communication cables.

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
319	Comm. flt. with EB103/4 -GP12	Communication with the accessory board for GP12 has been missing for 15 seconds	Blocking relevant compressor and stopping relevant GP12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective communication cables ● Incorrectly set DIP switch ● The accessory is activated in the display, but is not connected with a communication cable ● Incorrectly connected communication cable ● No electrical supply to the accessory board
320	Comm. flt. with EB105/6 -GP12	Communication with the accessory board for GP12 has been missing for 15 seconds	Blocking relevant compressor and stopping relevant GP12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective communication cables ● Incorrectly set DIP switch ● The accessory is activated in the display, but is not connected with a communication cable ● Incorrectly connected communication cable ● No electrical supply to the accessory board
321	Comm. flt. with EB107/8 -GP12	Communication with the accessory board for GP12 has been missing for 15 seconds	Blocking relevant compressor and stopping relevant GP12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective communication cables ● Incorrectly set DIP switch ● The accessory is activated in the display, but is not connected with a communication cable ● Incorrectly connected communication cable ● No electrical supply to the accessory board
336	Sen flt: EP44 BT2 supply temp sens.	Sensor not connected/defective	The sensor signal is replaced by EP44-BT3 - 10K during shunt control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input ● Defective sensor
337	Sen flt: EP45 BT2 supply temp sens.	Sensor not connected/defective	The sensor signal is replaced by EP45-BT3 - 10K during shunt control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input ● Defective sensor
338	Sen flt: EP46 BT2 supply temp sens.	Sensor not connected/defective	The sensor signal is replaced by EP46-BT3 - 10K during shunt control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input ● Defective sensor
339	Sen flt: EP47 BT2 supply temp sens.	Sensor not connected/defective	The sensor signal is replaced by EP47-BT3 - 10K during shunt control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Open circuit or short-circuit on sensor input ● Defective sensor
341	Recurring safety defr.	Alarm from outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	Check whether the outdoor unit has iced up and check the sensor.
344	Recurring low pressure	Alarm from outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	
346	Recurring high pressure	Alarm from outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	
372	Perm. com. error pool 2	Communication with Pool 2 has been missing for 15 seconds	Accessory is blocked.	Defective communication cables

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
400	Unspecified fault	Unspecified faults	Master is blocking relevant compressor and frost protection is safeguarded	The outdoor unit software could be more recent than the indoor unit's alarm.
403	Sensor fault from PCA 154	Sensor fault in the outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	Check the temperature sensors and its connections
404	Sensor fault from PCA 154	Sensor fault in the outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	Check the temperature sensors and its connections
412	Sensor fault from PCA 154	Sensor fault in the outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	Check the temperature sensors and its connections
415	Sensor fault from PCA 154	Sensor fault in the outdoor unit	Compressor is blocked.	Check the temperature sensors and its connections
421	Com. fault w. inverter	A temporary communication alarm has occurred 3 times within 2 hours or has been active for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked. Manual reset	
425	Triggered pressure switch	Permanent pressure switch alarm	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the heating medium flow • Lack of refrigerant
427	Safety stop inverter	A temporary fault in the inverter has occurred 2 times within 60 minutes	Compressor is blocked.	Main and group fuses and their cable connections
429	Safety stop inverter	A temporary internal fault in the inverter has occurred 3 times within 2 hours	Compressor is blocked.	Main and group fuses and their cable connections
431	High mains voltage	The phase voltage in the inverter has been too high 3 times within 3 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	Main and group fuses and their cable connections
433	Inverter alarm type I	The phase voltage in the inverter has been too low 3 times within 3 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Low supply voltage • Phase loss
437	Mains disturbance	A temporary fault has occurred 3 times within 2 hours or has been continuous for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Incorrect connection in the inverter terminal block X5
439	Overheated inverter	The inverter has temporarily reached max working temperature due to poor cooling 3 times within 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor position of inverter - check screws and paste • Defective inverter
441	Inverter alarm type II	Max current in has been temporarily too high 3 times within 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Too high current to inverter • Low supply voltage
443	Overheated inverter	The inverter has temporarily reached max working temperature due to poor cooling 3 times within 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor position of inverter - check screws and paste • Defective inverter

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
445	Inverter protection	The inveter detected a temporary fault within 10 seconds after compressor start, 5 times in a row	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Defective compressor
447	Phase drop	Compressor phase has been missing 3 times withing 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Incorrectly connected compressor cable
449	Failed compressor starts	The compressor has not started when required 3 times within 2 hours	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective inverter • Defective compressor
453	High curr load cmpr	The output current from the inverter to the compressor has been temporarily too high 3 times within 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their connections • Internal compressor wiring - if compressor is running slowly. If not replace inverter
455	High power load compressor	The power output from the inverter has been too high 3 times within 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Internal compressor wiring, inverter • Compressor
461	Inverter alarm type II	The current to the inverter has been to high 3 times within 2 hours or continuously for 1 hour	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses and their cable connections • Low incoming voltage that is lower than 198 VAC
503	Compressor speed too low	The compressor speed is below the lowest permitted speed	Stops compressor	The inverter's safety function reduces the speed outside of the compressor's working range
505	Inverter has earth fault	Inverter has earth fault	Automatic reset, once no active earth fault has been sent for 60 seconds	Check connections.
510	The inverter has high DC voltage	The inverter has high DC voltage	Automatic reset, when no active fault has been sent for 60 seconds	Check incoming voltage from the panels.

Information messages

In event of an information message, the green light lights up on the front and symbol with a service technician is displayed in the information window, until the message is reset.

All information messages are automatically reset, if the cause is rectified. These messages are not registered in the alarm log.

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
59	Incompatible setting	Additional heat before QN10 without hot water being selected		Check the setting in menu 5.1.12.
107	Sensor fit: BT7 HW sens top	The input for the sensor receives an unreasonably high or low value for longer than 2 seconds		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
151	Sen fit: CL11-BT51	The input for the sensor receives an unreasonably high or low value for longer than 5 seconds	Pool pump stops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
152	Sen fit: CL12-BT51	The input for the sensor receives an unreasonably high or low value for longer than 5 seconds	Pool pump stops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
157	Low lp cool	The low pressure transmitter in the outdoor unit is showing a value too low	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor flow • Significant wind effect
162	High condenser out temperature	Condenser out has reached max permitted temperature	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incorrectly set heating curve • Low heating medium flow • Undersized heating system
163	High condenser in temperature	Condenser in has reached max permitted temperature	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incorrectly set heating curve • Low heating medium flow • Undersized heating system
170	Communication fault with PCA input	Communication fault has occurred to the input board AA3	None	Check the communication cables and their connections
171	Communication fault with PCA base	A temporary communication fault has occurred to PCB AA2	Compressor is blocked.	Check the communication cables and their connections
173-178	Com. err. acc.	Communication fault has occurred to the accessory board	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
180	Anti-freeze	Frost protection active. Occurs when the outdoor temperature is below 3°C and no heating is permitted, and when the supply temperature sensor has an actual value that is below the calculated supply temperature (usually min. supply temperature)	Heating is permitted and compressor is permitted if there is no alarm blocking the compressor. Additional heat is permitted if there is no alarm blocking the additional heat. Calculated supply temperature is set to min. supply temperature	Incorrect settings
181	Problems at periodic increasing	Periodic hot water increase did not reach the stop temperature in 5 hours	Only information	Incorrect settings
182	Load monitor active	Measured power consumption for at least one phase exceeds the fuse size that has been specified in menu 5.1.12	The heat pump disconnects the power steps for the electric additional heat step by step	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Phase loading ● A larger main fuse may be needed
183	Defrosting	Defrosting in progress	Information only, no action	
187	Com. err. acc.	Communication fault has occurred Step controlled additional heat	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective communication cables ● The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable ● Incorrectly connected communication cable ● Incorrectly set DIP switch ● No electrical supply to the accessory board
188	Com. err. PCA accessory	Communication fault has occurred Solar heating	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective communication cables ● The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable ● Incorrectly connected communication cable ● Incorrectly set DIP switch ● No electrical supply to the accessory board
191	Com. err. PCA accessory	Communication fault has occurred Hot water comfort	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective communication cables ● The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable ● Incorrectly connected communication cable ● Incorrectly set DIP switch ● No electrical supply to the accessory board

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
209	Com. flt PCA accessory	Communication fault has occurred Step controlled additional heat	Shuts down step controlled additional heat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board
211	Cpr not running	The compressor has not been running for 36 hours even if needed		Check settings
226	Stove monitor activated	Stove monitor activated	Only information	
270	Compr. preheat in progress	Preheating of compressor in progress	Compressor is blocked.	Start-up in cold weather
271	Cold outd air, heating mode	The outside temperature is outside the outdoor unit's working range	Compressor is blocked.	See technical specifications in the relevant manual
272	Warm outd air, heat. mode	The outdoor temperature is outside the outdoor unit's working range	Compressor is blocked.	See technical specifications in the relevant manual
273	Short run times twice in a row	Set hot water levels cannot be reached	HW-start and HW-stop for economy and normal are set to factory default	Incorrectly set values
274	Compressor limited by load monitor	The load monitor prevents the compressor from running at desired power	None	Main fuse too small
275	Compressor long term. restr. by load monitor	The load monitor prevents the compressor from running at desired power	None	Main fuse too small
282	Com. flt PCA Accessory	Communication fault has occurred Active cooling 4 pipe	Accessory is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective communication cables • The accessory is activated in the display while not connected to the communication cable • Incorrectly connected communication cable • Incorrectly set DIP switch • No electrical supply to the accessory board
334	Max. incoming temp. exceeded	The maximum temperature through the unit exceeded. BT3 is higher than 65°C in heating mode	Heating prioritisation is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Undersized heating system • Incorrect heating curve • Flow related • Additional heat incorrectly connected
342	Low water temperature in	Low temperature in during cooling operation	Temporarily stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flow related • Incorrect settings
343	Low temp water out	Low temperature out during cooling operation	Temporarily stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flow related • Incorrect settings

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
349	Sens flt: EQ1-BT50	The cooling accessory room sensor has no contact with the control module	Parallel displacement with room sensor BT50 is set to 0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
350	Sensor fault on BT50 room sensor	Sensor not connected/defective	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
354	Failed sensor calibration	Delta BT3-BT12 is greater than 2K after calibration	Changes from auto to manual pump speed	Flow related
355	Failed sensor calibration	Delta BT3-BT12 is larger than 2K after calibration	Changes from auto to manual pump speed	Flow related
361-368	Sensor fault EPxx, BT3 return line sensor	Sensor BT3 (return) is not connected/defective in one of the climate systems		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
418	Low temp water out	Flow protection defrost operation	Defrost operation is stopped.	Flow related
419	Freeze prot. exch. defr.	Frost protection exchanger defrost operation	Defrost operation is stopped.	Flow related
420	Temp. com. fault w. inverter	A temporary communication fault in the inverter has occurred	The compressor is stopped. The compressor makes a new attempt to start 60 seconds after inverter fault has been reset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main and group fuses, as well as cable to the inverter and its connections • Check the communication cable between PCB and inverter
422	Inverter alarm type II	Compressor stop due to protection mode	Stops the compressor and makes a new start attempt soon	
424	Triggered pressure switch	Temporarily triggered pressure switch	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor heating medium flow • Lack of refrigerant
426	Temp. safety stop inv.	A temporary internal fault in the inverter has occurred.	Stops the compressor	Disruption in supply voltage
428	Temp. safety stop inv.	A temporary internal fault in the inverter has occurred	Stops the compressor	Disruption in supply voltage
430	Temp. high mains voltage	Phase voltage to the inverter too high	Stops the compressor	Disruption in supply voltage
432	Inverter alarm type I	Phase voltage to inverter too low	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low supply voltage • Phase failure
436	Temp. mains disturb.	A temporary inverter fault has occurred	Stops the compressor	Disruption in voltage
438	Temp. overheated inverter	The inverter has temporarily reached max working temperature due to poor cooling	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor cooling of inverter • Defective inverter
440	Inverter alarm type II	Max. current in has been temporarily too high	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor cooling of inverter • Defective inverter
442	Temp. overheated inverter	Temporarily overheated inverter	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor cooling of inverter • Low supply voltage
444	Temp. inverter protection	The inverter detects a temporary fault	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disruption in supply voltage • Defective compressor

Alarm list

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
446	Temp. phase drop	Compressor phase missing	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disruption in supply voltage • Poor heating medium flow • Defective compressor
448	Failed compressor start	Compressor does not start when required	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective inverter • Defective compressor
452	Temp. high curr load cmpr	The current out from the inverter to the compressor has been too high	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disruption in supply voltage • Poor heating medium flow • Defective compressor
454	Temp high pow load cmpr	Power from inverter too high	Stops the compressor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disruption in supply voltage • Poor heating medium flow • Defective compressor
460	Inverter alarm type II	Current into the inverter temporarily too high	Stops the compressor	Low incoming voltage that is lower than 198 VAC
502	Compressor speed too low	Compressor speed below the lowest permitted speed	Stops the compressor	The inverter's safety function reduces the speed outside of the compressor's working range
506	Mains voltage outside inv. work. range	The mains frequency has been outside of the inverter's working range	Only information	Check the mains network.
507	Mains voltage outside inv. work. range	The mains frequency has lost contact with the mains network	Only information	Check the mains network.
508	Inv. lost contact with the mains	The inverter has lost contact with the mains network.	Only information	Check the connection and fuses.
509	High ambient temp. at inverter	Ambient temperature at the inverter is too high	Only information	Check the location and ventilation of the inverter.
523	Low flow defrosting	Low flow during defrost operation	Defrost operation stops	Check particle filter and circulation pump.
572-575	Sensor fault in BT50 room sensor	Sensor fault BT50 in RMU 1-4	Parallel displacement with room sensor BT50 is set to 0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor not connected • Open circuit or defective sensor
580	Cold outd air, cooling mode	The outdoor temperature at the outdoor unit is outside its working range	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Outdoor temperature too low • Defective sensor BT28 (Tho-A)
581	Warm outd air, cool. mode	The outdoor temperature at the outdoor unit is outside its working range	Compressor is blocked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Outdoor temperature too low • Defective sensor BT28 (Tho-A)
582-588	Low flow defrosting	Low flow during defrost operation in one of EB102-EB108	Defrost operation stops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flow related • Clogged particle filter • Defective circulation pump
900	Country not selected	Country not defined		Select country in menu 5.12 or in the start guide
995	External alarm	An alarm has occurred according to selected function on AUX input	None	External equipment connected to AUX gives an alarm
996	Blocked	Additional heat external blocked	Additional heat is blocked.	External equipment connected to AUX input gives an alarm
997	Blocked	The compressor is externally blocked	Compressor is blocked.	External equipment connected to AUX input gives an alarm

Alarm No.	Alarm text on the display	Cause	Indoor module/heat pump measures	May be due to
998	Starts	Display/installation has restarted		Disruption in supply voltage

Outdoor unit alarm

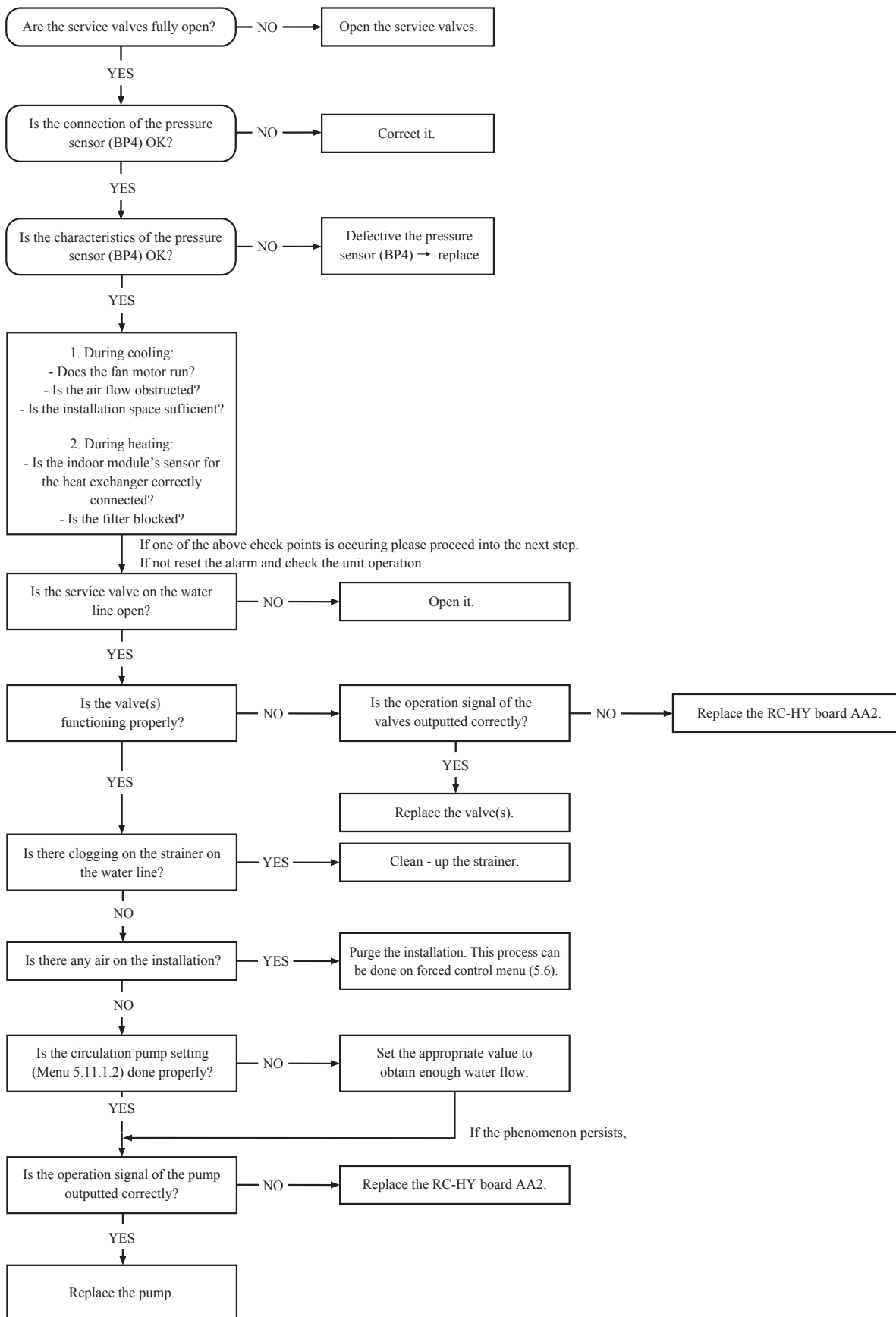
Alarm No.	Outdoor unit control PCB (FDCW71, 100, 140)		Outdoor unit INV PCB (FDCW71,100,140)	Alarm text on the display	Description	May be due to	FDCW 60	FDCW 71	FDCW 100,140
	Red LED	Green LED(1)	Yellow LED						
E5	2-time flash or Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	-	Com. flt from the heat pump	When 35 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly	-Any circuit breakers for FDCW off -Anomalous power source voltage -Incorrect power source cables and signal line cables -Defective PCB in outdoor unit or indoor unit	✓	✓	✓
E35	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	High HWX temp	Temperature deviation on the heat exchanger sensor five times within 60 minutes or for 60 minutes continuously.	-Sensor does not work -Insufficient air circulation or blocked heat exchanger -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Too much refrigerant	✓	✓	✓
E36	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Hot gas alarm	Temperature deviation on the discharge pipe temperature sensor(Tho-D) twice within within 60 minutes or for 60 minutes continuously.	-Sensor does not work -Insufficient air circulation or blocked heat exchanger -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Too much refrigerant	✓	✓	✓
E37	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Sensor fault from heat pump	Sensor fault, heat exchanger sensor in FDCW(Tho-R)	-Open circuit or short circuit on sensor input -Sensor does not work -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Fault in the refrigerant circuit	✓	✓	✓
E38	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Sensor fault from heat pump	Sensor fault, outdoor air temperature sensor in FDCW(Tho-A)	-Open circuit or short circuit on sensor input -Sensor does not work -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Fault in the refrigerant circuit	✓	✓	✓
E39	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Sensor fault from heat pump	Sensor fault, hot gas sensor in FDCW(Tho-D)	-Open circuit or short circuit on sensor input -Sensor does not work -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Fault in the refrigerant circuit	✓	✓	✓
E40	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	High pressure alarm	The high pressure switch(63H1) deployed 5 times within 60 minutes	-Insufficient air circulation or blocked heat exchanger -Expansion valve not correctly connected -Service valve closed -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Defective high pressure switch -Low or no flow during heating operation -Defective circulation pump -Defective fuse	-	✓	✓
E41	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	6-time flash	Inv. err	When IPM(Intelligent power module) displays FO-signal(Fault Output) 5 times within 60 minutes	-Can occur when DC 15V power source to the INV PCB is unstable.	-	✓	✓
E42	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Current cut	Voltage from the inverter outside the parameters 4 times within 30 minutes.	-Anomalous power source voltage -Service valve closed -Insufficient amount of refrigerant -Defective compressor -Defective PCB in outdoor unit	✓	✓	✓

Alarm list

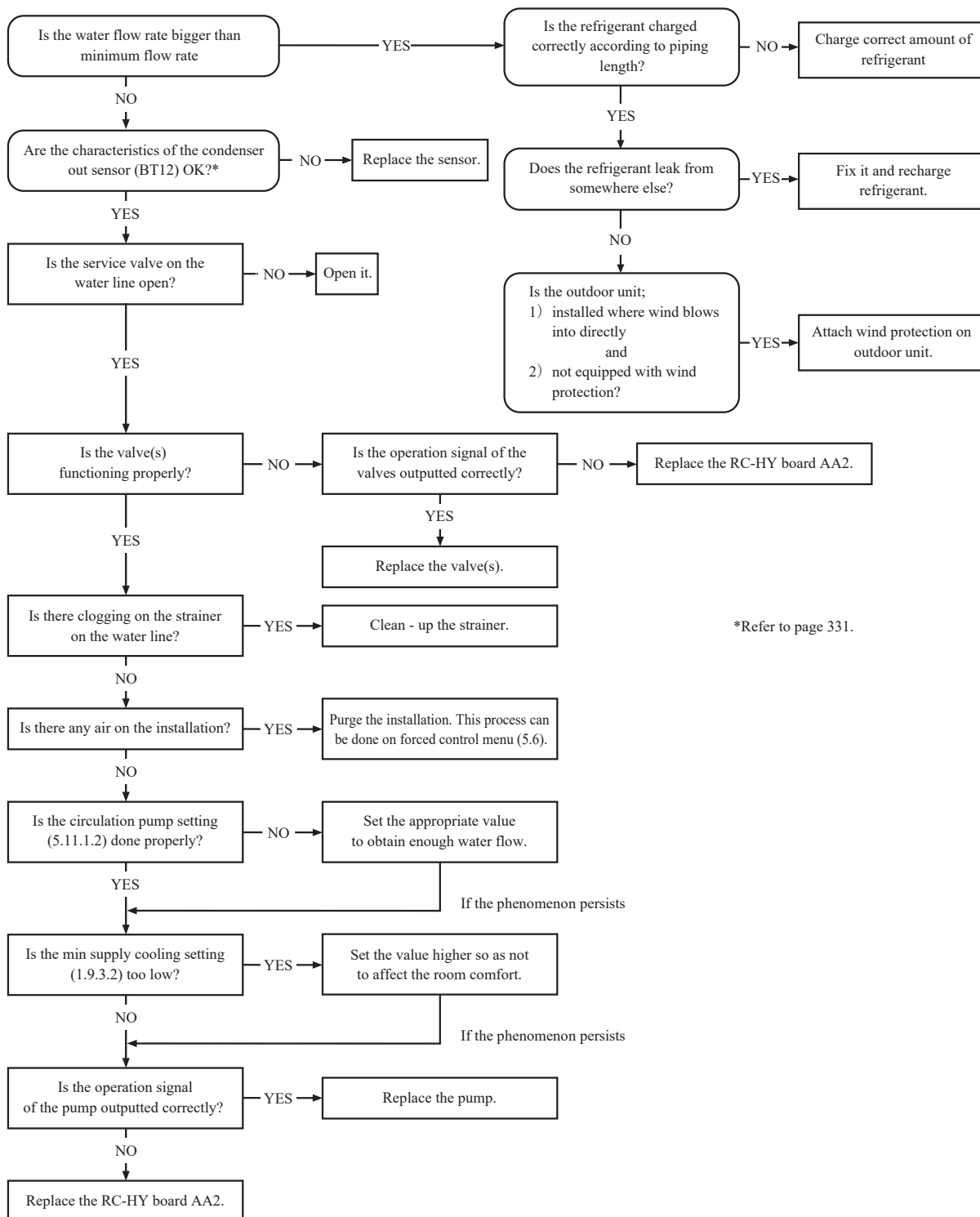
Alarm No.	Outdoor unit control PCB (FDCW71, 100, 140)		Outdoor unit INV PCB (FDCW71,100,140)	Alarm text on the display	Description	May be due to	FDCW 60	FDCW 71	FDCW 100,140
	Red LED	Green LED(1)	Yellow LED						
E45	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Communication error with Inverter	Communication between circuit board for inverter and control board broken.	-Open circuit in connection between boards -Defective INV PCB in outdoor unit -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Defective fan motor	-	✓	✓
E47	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	7-time flash	Inv. err	Output current of A/F exceeds the specifications	-The wrong voltage connected for the power source. -Defective PCB in outdoor unit	✓	✓	-
E48	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Fan alarm from heat pump	Deviations in the fan speed in FDCW	-Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller -The fan cannot rotate freely -Fuse blown -Defective fan motor -Dust on control PCB in outdoor unit -External noise, surge	✓	✓	✓
E49	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Low pressure alarm	Too low value on the low pressure sensor 3 times within 60 minutes.	-Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Defective low pressure sensor connector -Defective low pressure sensor -Defectivesuction pipe temperature sensor connector -Defective suction pipe temperature sensor	-	✓	✓
E51	-	-	-	Power transistor error	Continuous deviation on power transistor	-Defective control PCB in outdoor unit	✓	-	-
E51	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	6-time flash	Inverter and fan motor anomaly	Power transistor anomaly is detected for 15 minutes continuously.	-Defective fan motor -Defective INV PCB -Defective control PCB	-	✓	✓
E53	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Sensor fault from heat pump	Sensor fault, suction pipe temperature sensor in FDCW(Tho-S)	-Open circuit or short circuit on sensor input -Sensor does not work -Defectove control PCB in outdoor unit	-	✓	✓
E54	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Sensor fault from heat pump	Sensor fault, low pressure sensor in FDCW(PSL)	-Open circuit or short circuit on sensor input -Sensor does not work -Defectove control PCB in outdoor unit -Fault in the refrigerant circuit	-	✓	✓
E57	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Low refrigerant	Too low refrigerant	-Shortage in refrigerant quantity -Service valve closing operation	-	-	✓
E58	-	-	-	Current safe stop	When there is a current safe stop during operation	-Refrigerant is overcharge -Compressor lock -Overload operation	✓	-	-
E59	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Inv. err	Failed start for compressor	-Defective fan motor -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Defective INV PCB in outdoor unit -Anomalous power source voltage -Defective compressor	✓	✓	✓
E60	-	-	-	Rotor lock	If the compressor motor's magnetic pole positions cannot be correctly detected when the compressor starts	-Open phase compressor -Defective control PCB in outdoor unit -Defective compressor	✓	-	-

Troubleshooting guide

220 - High pressure alarm

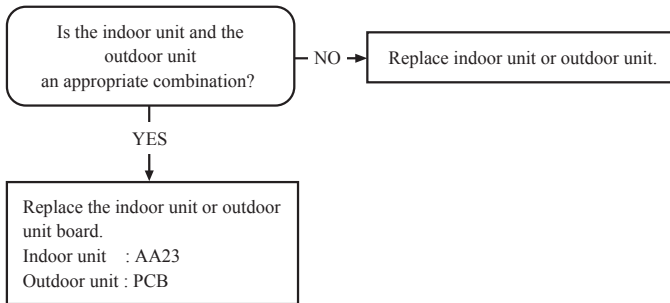


228 - Failed defrosting

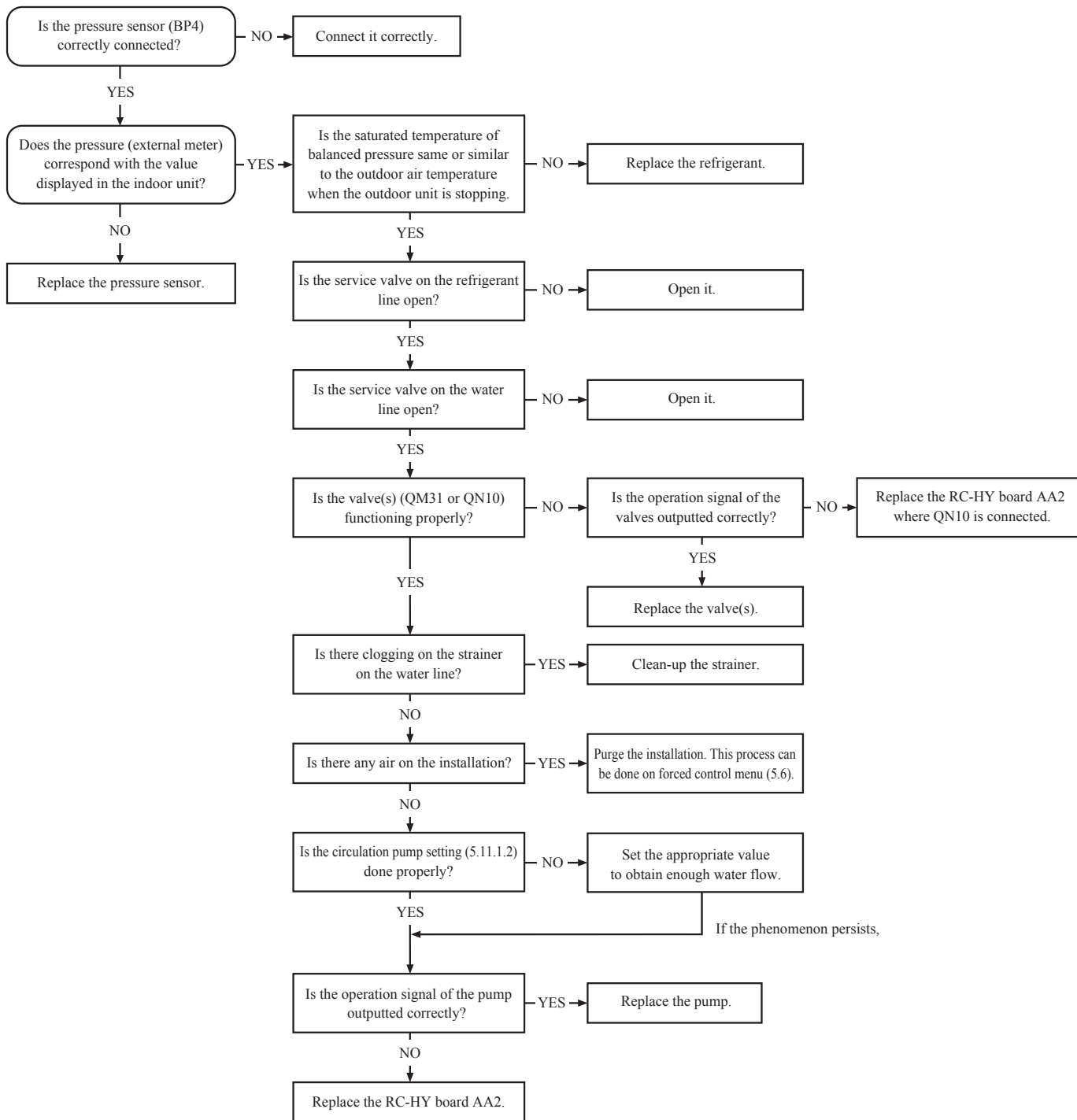


*Refer to page 331.

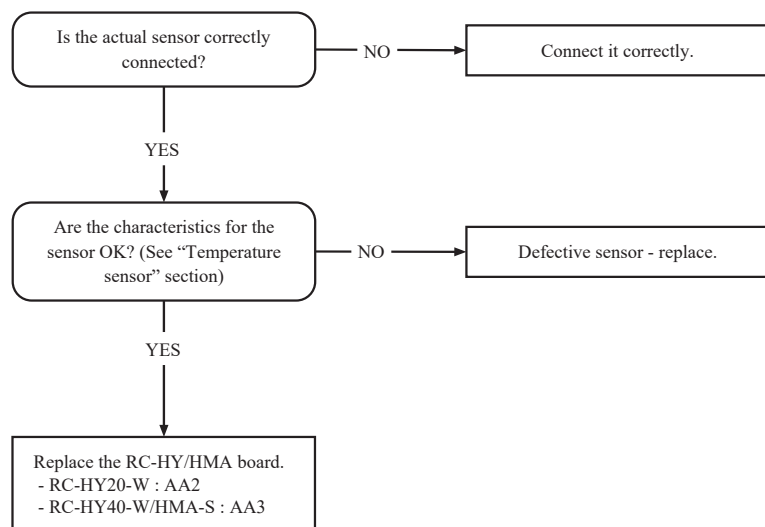
294 - Incompatible heat pump



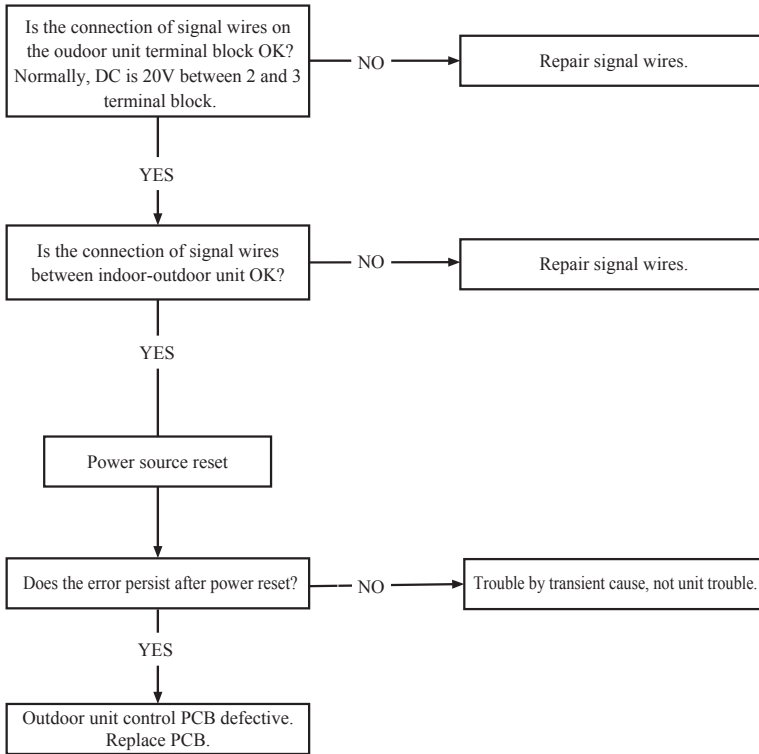
404 - S. fault HP



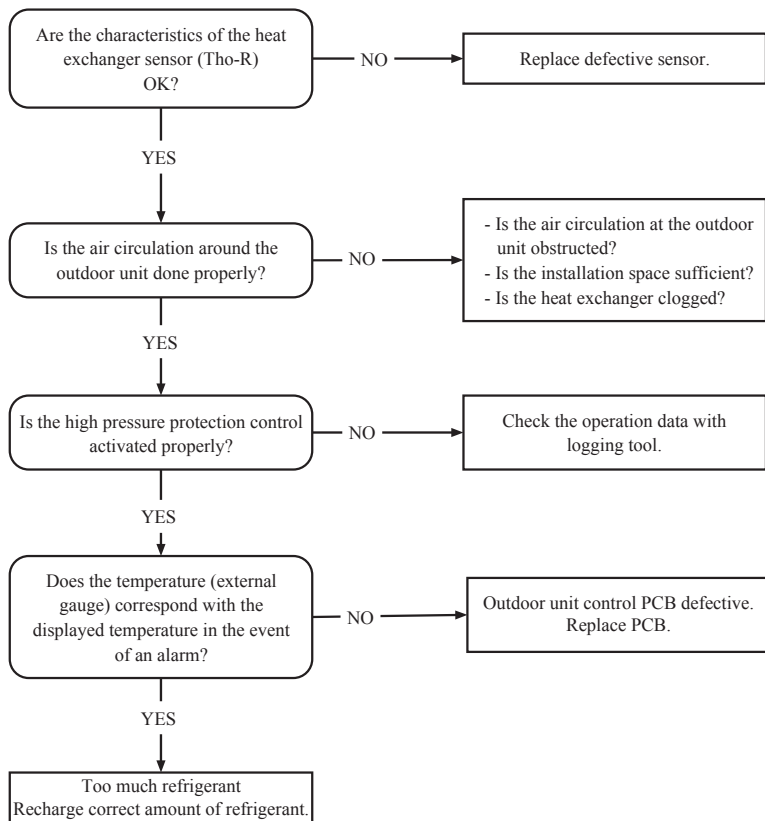
403, 412, 415, - Sensor fault from PCA154



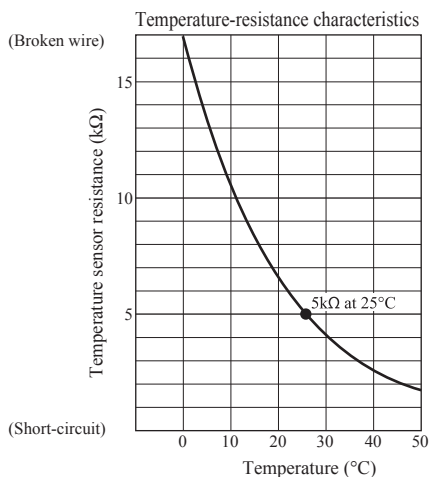
E5 - Communication error during operation



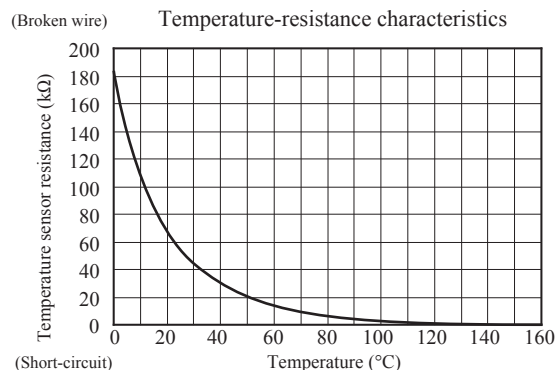
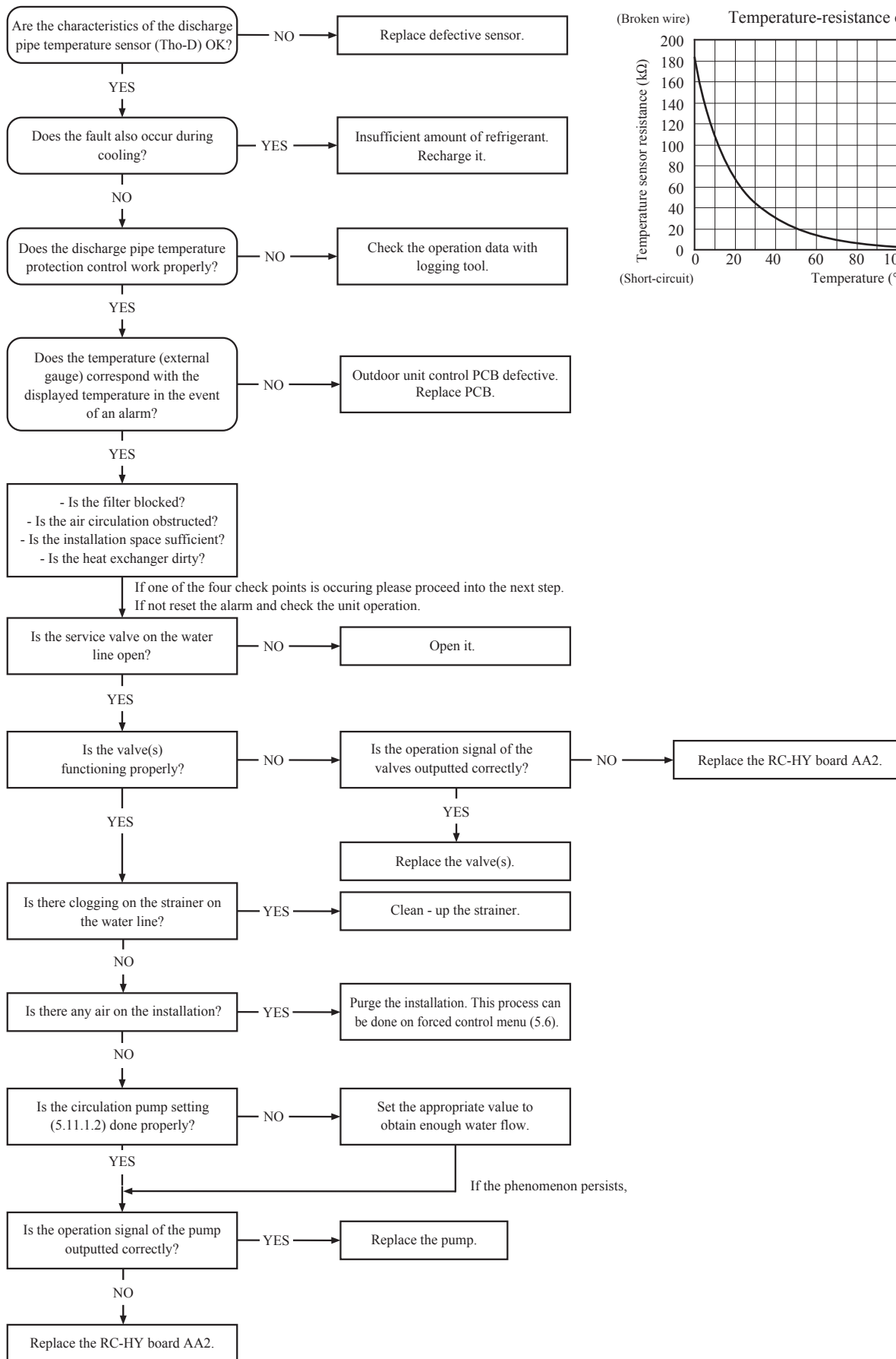
E35 - High HX temp



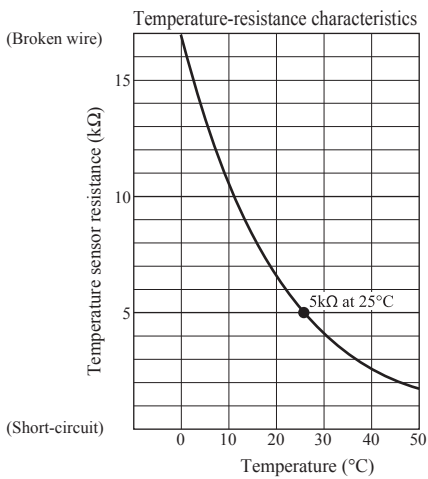
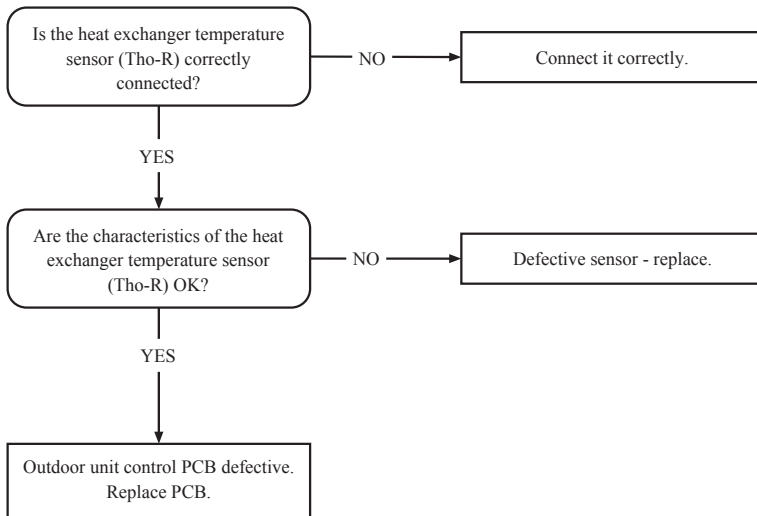
If one of the checks is occurring please fix. Then, reset the unit and check the unit operation.



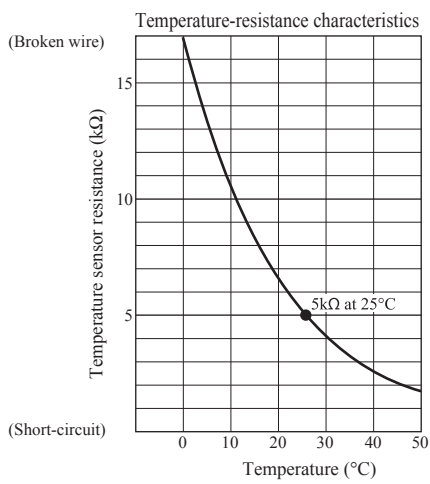
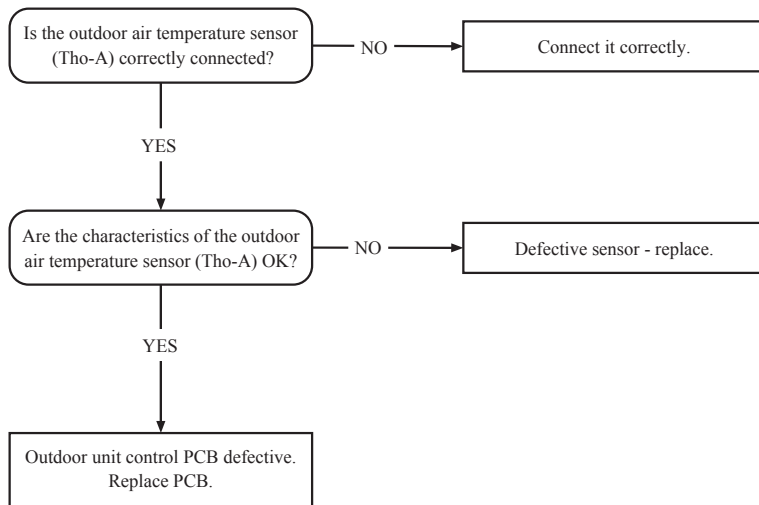
E36 - Hot gas alarm



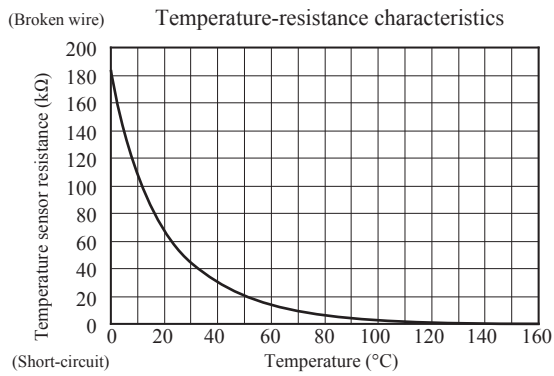
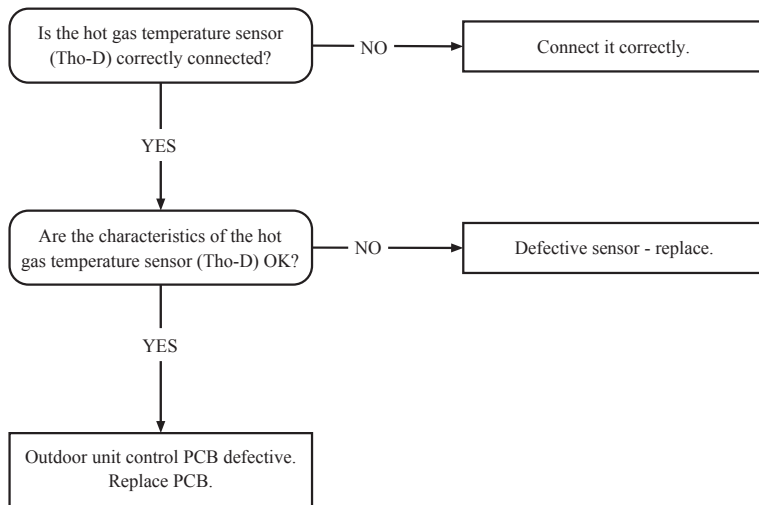
E37 - S. fault Tho-R



E38 - S. fault Tho-A

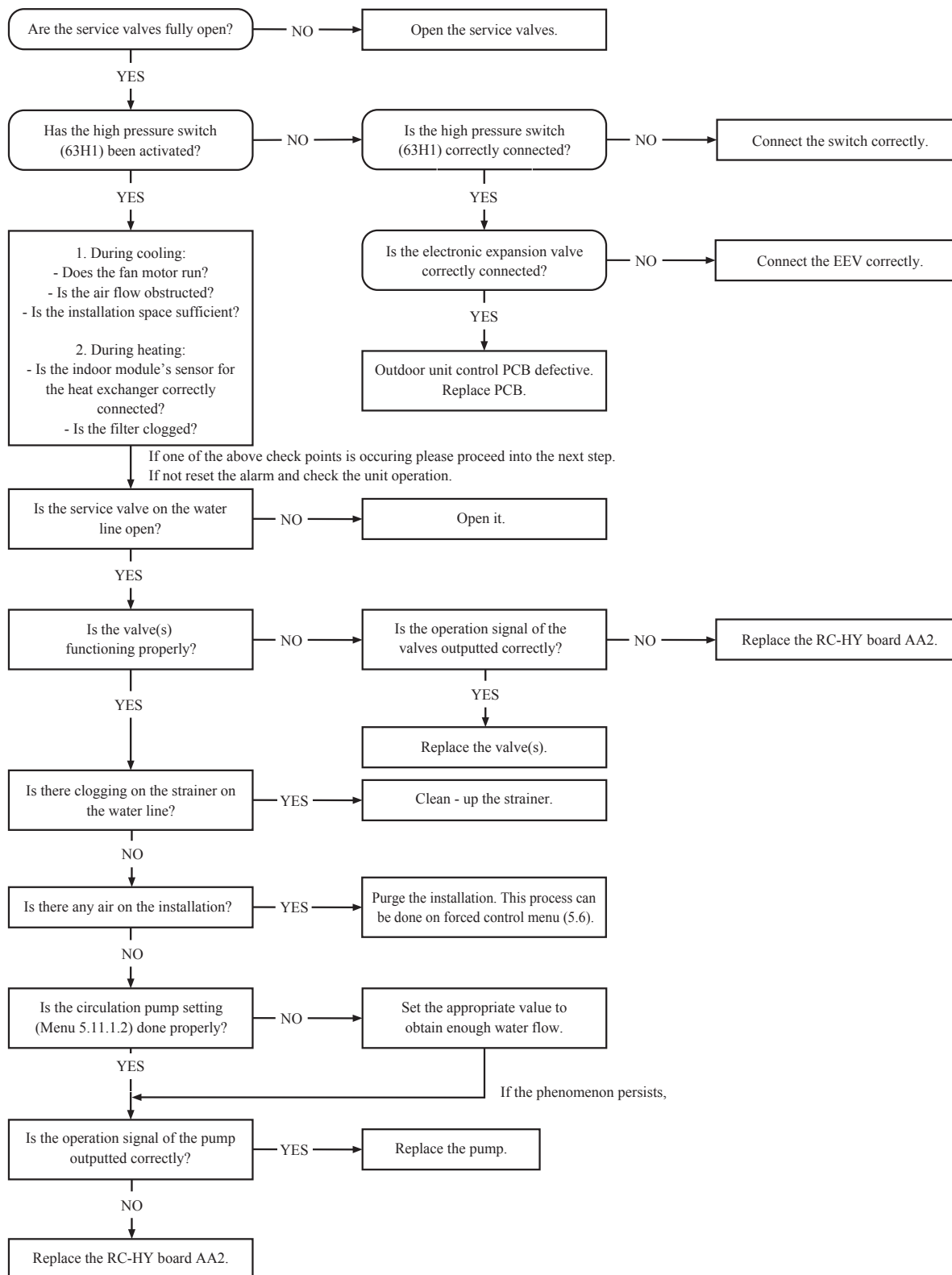


E39 - S. fault Tho-D

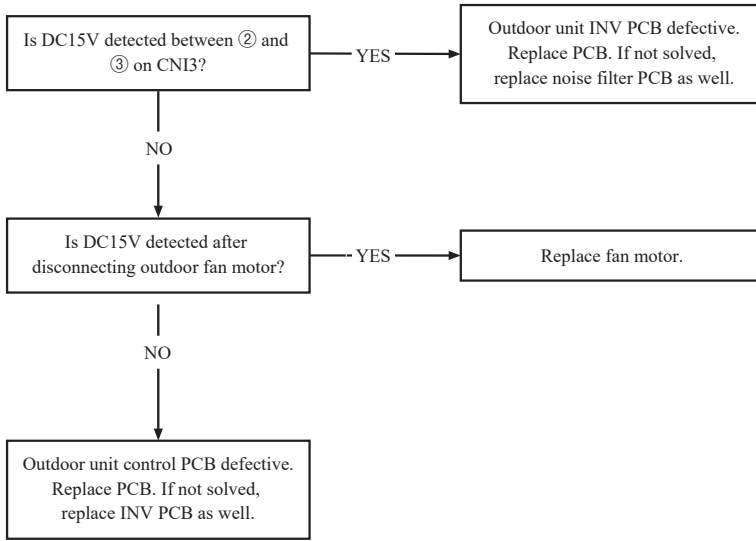


E40 - High pressure alarm

If the power source voltage to the outdoor unit is switched off and on too quickly, E40 may be displayed. This is normal.

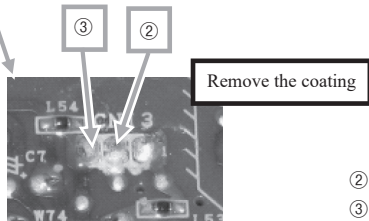
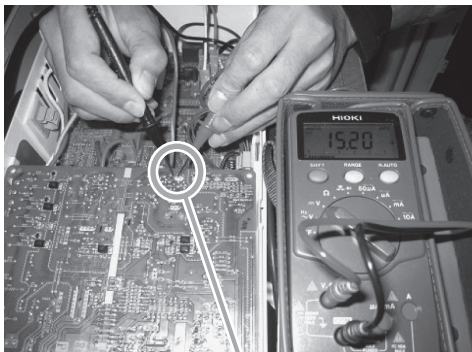


E41 - Power transistor overheat



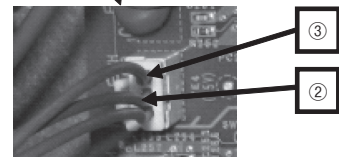
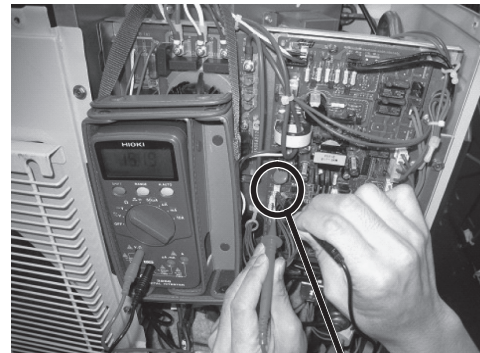
* How to check the voltage between ② and ③ of CNI3

For FDCW71

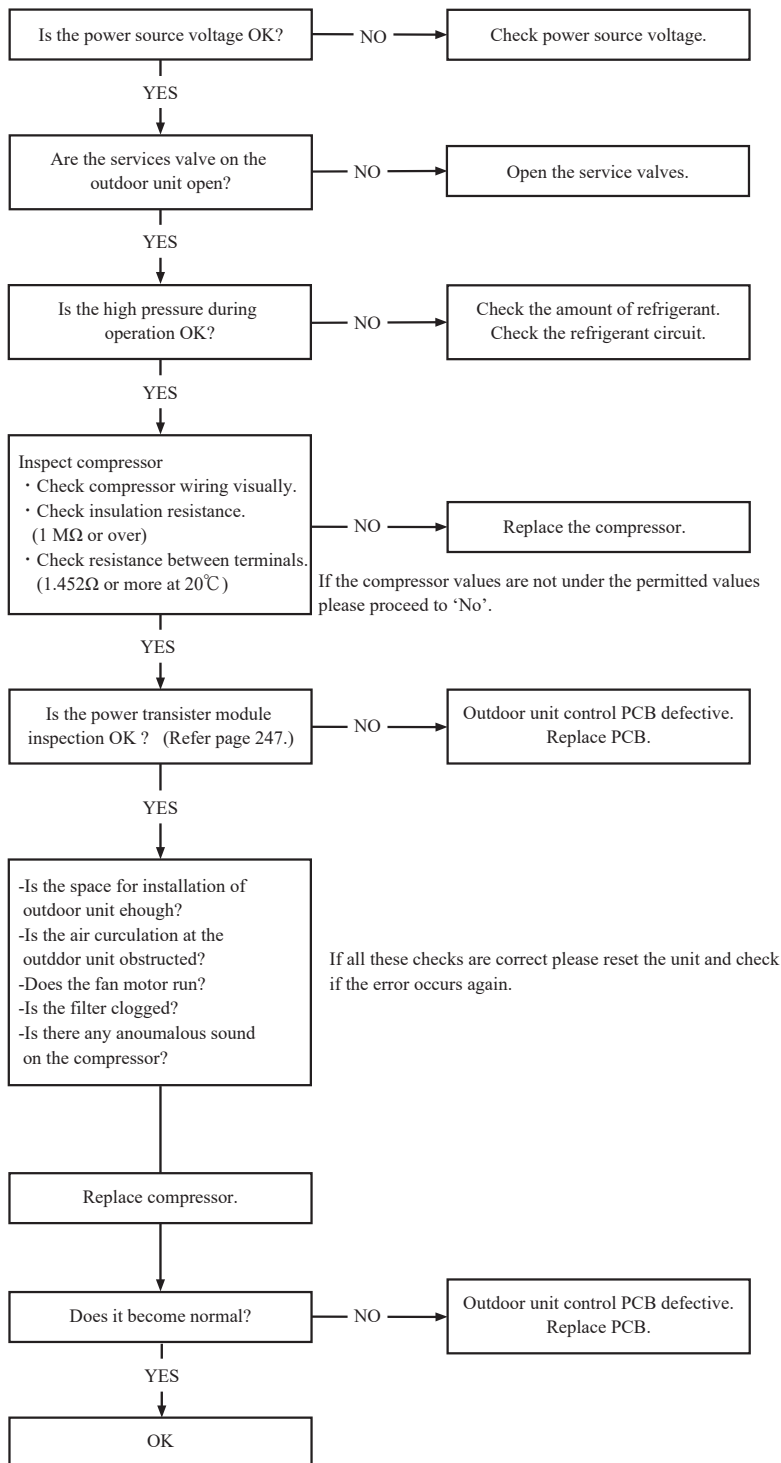


② : 15V (+)
③ : GND (-)

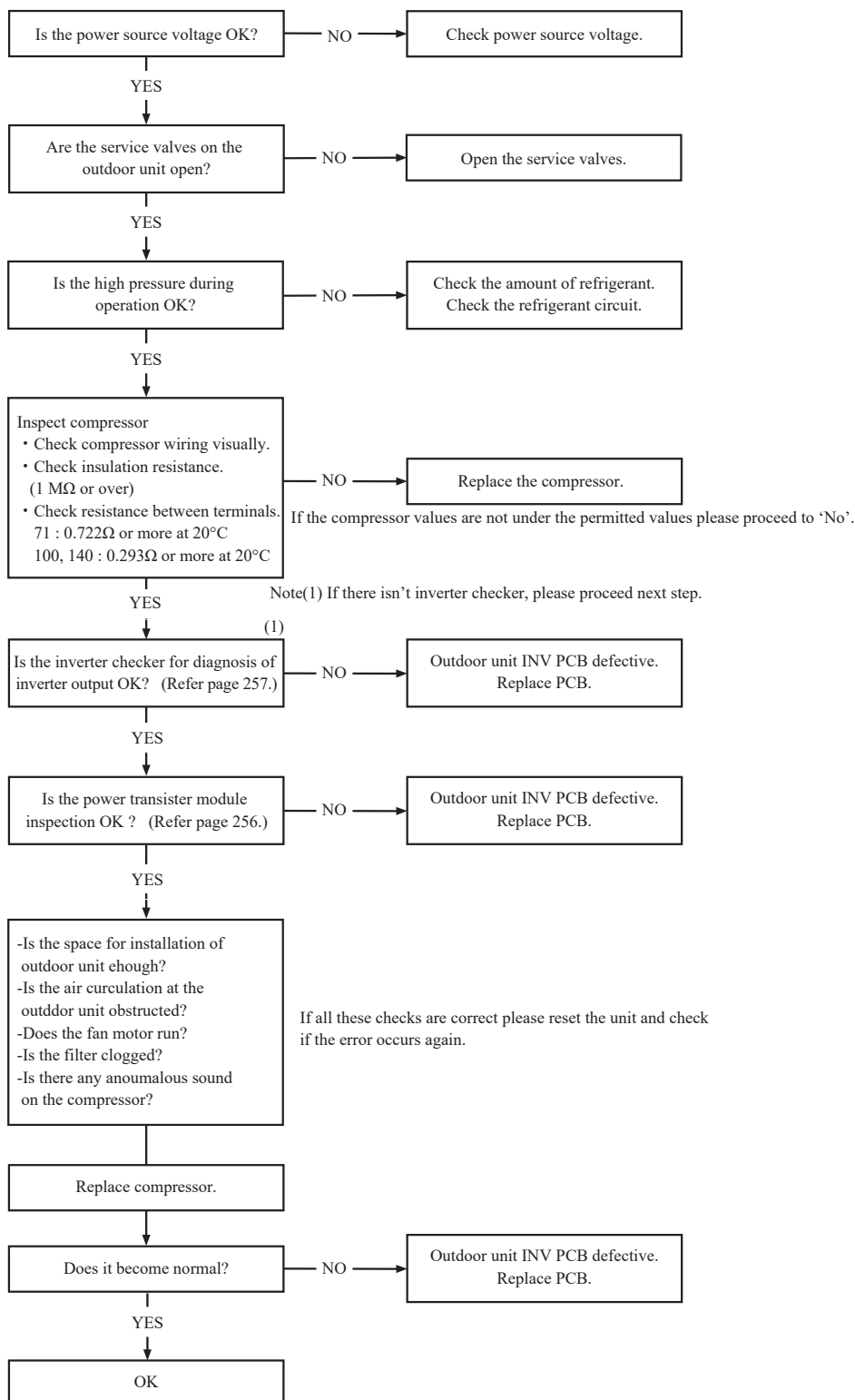
For FDCW100, 140



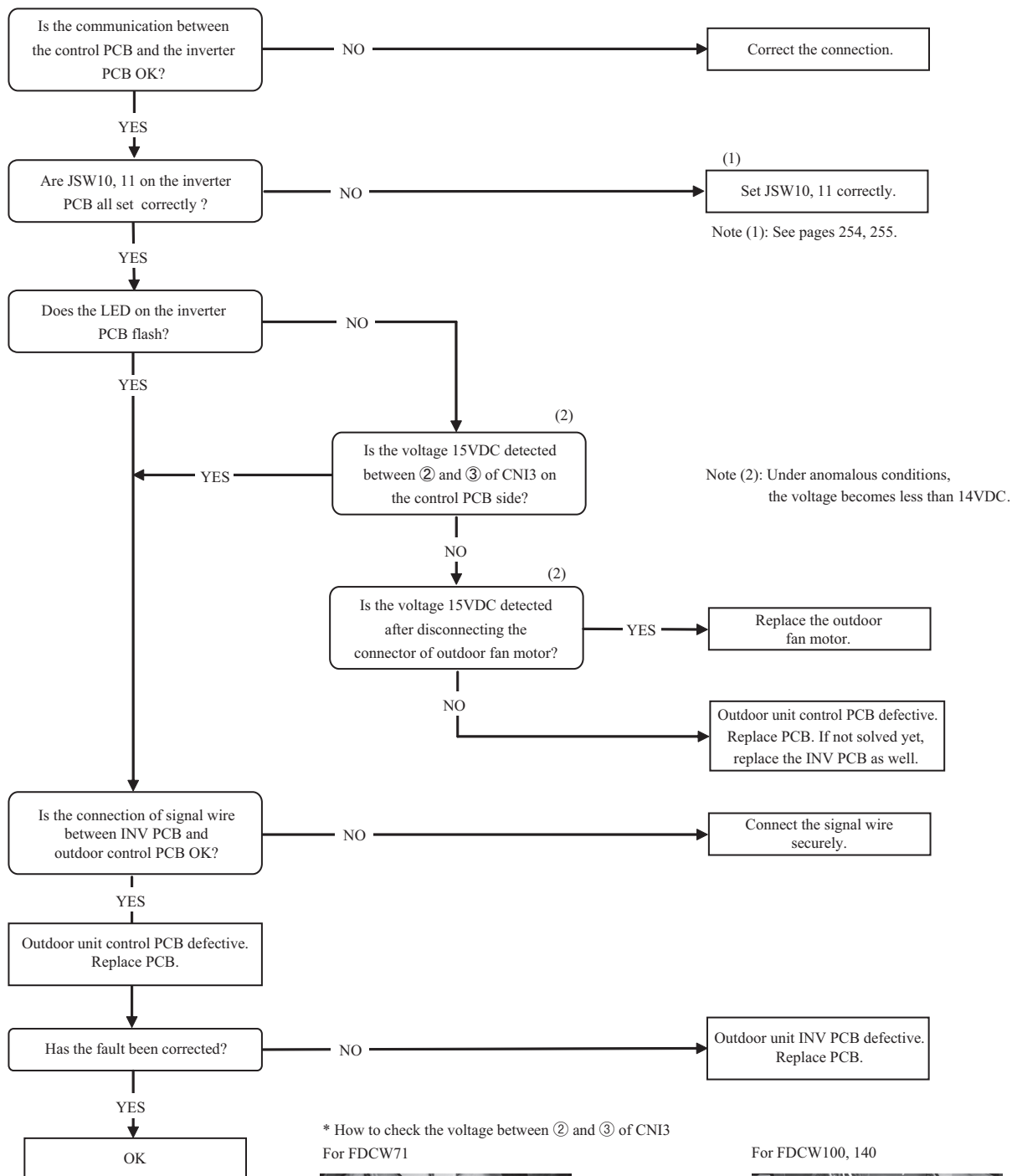
E42 - Current cut <FDCW60>



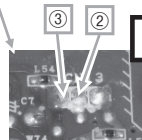
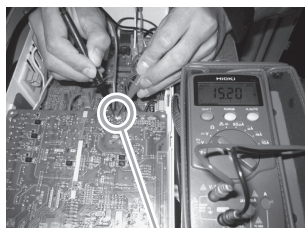
E42 - Current cut <FDCW71, 100, 140>



E45 - Inverter communication error



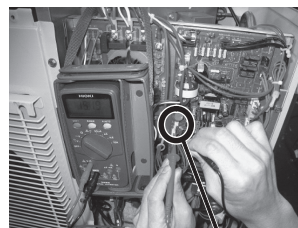
* How to check the voltage between ② and ③ of CNI3
For FDCW71



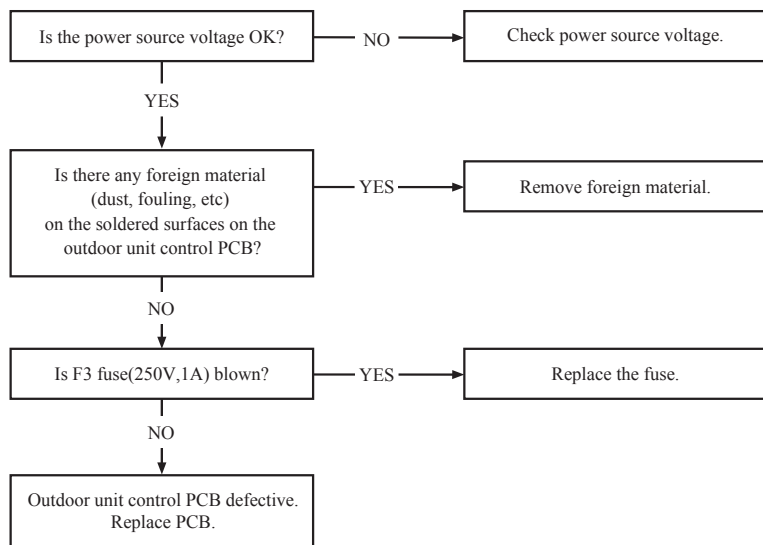
Remove the coating

② : 15V (+)
③ : GND (-)

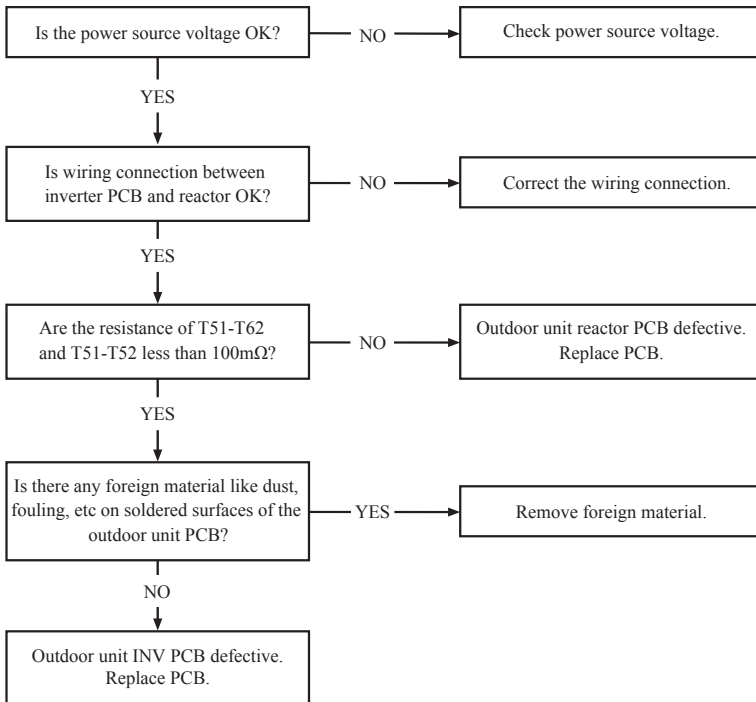
For FDCW100, 140



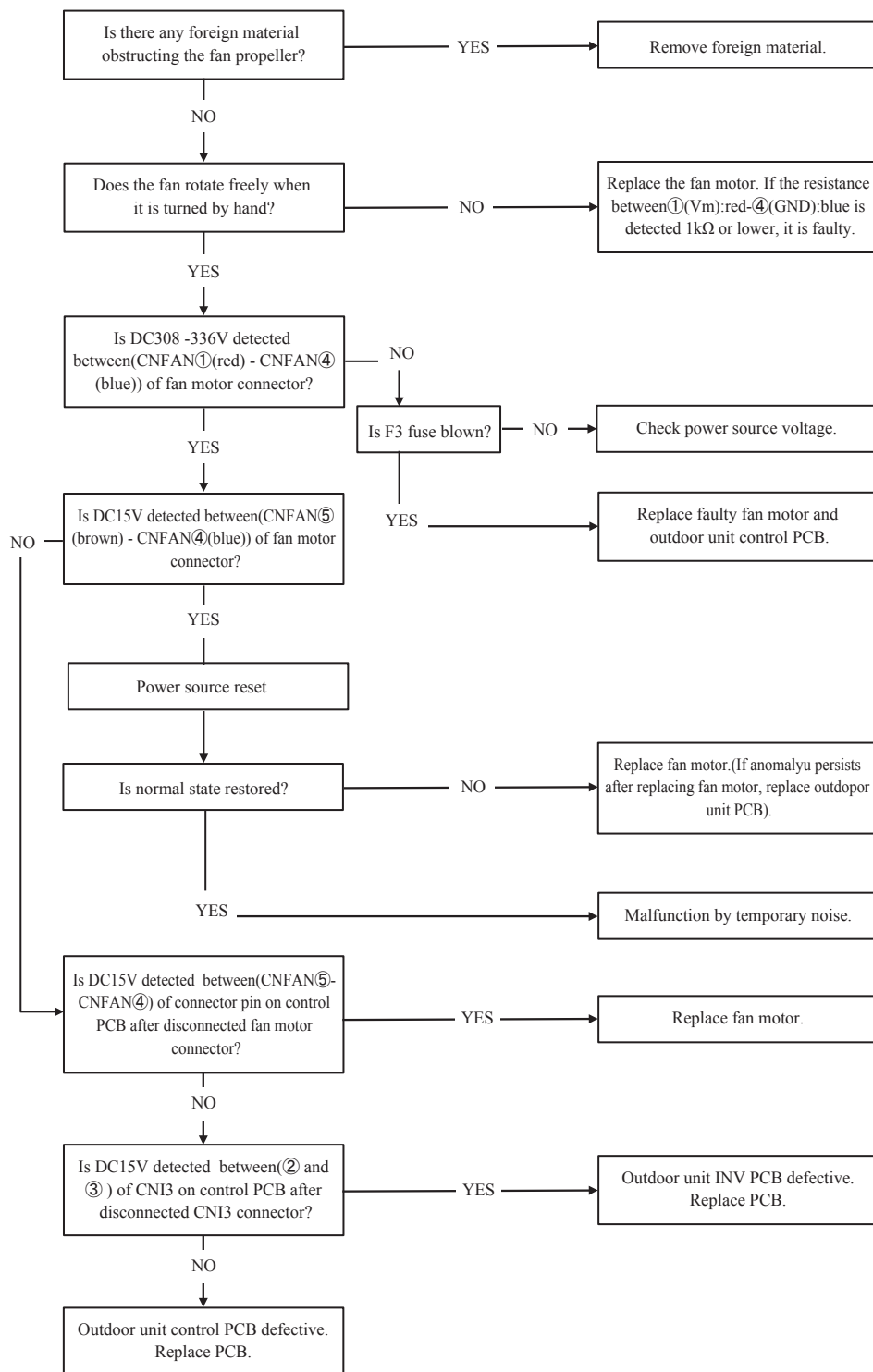
E47 - Inverter A/F module over current <FDCW60>



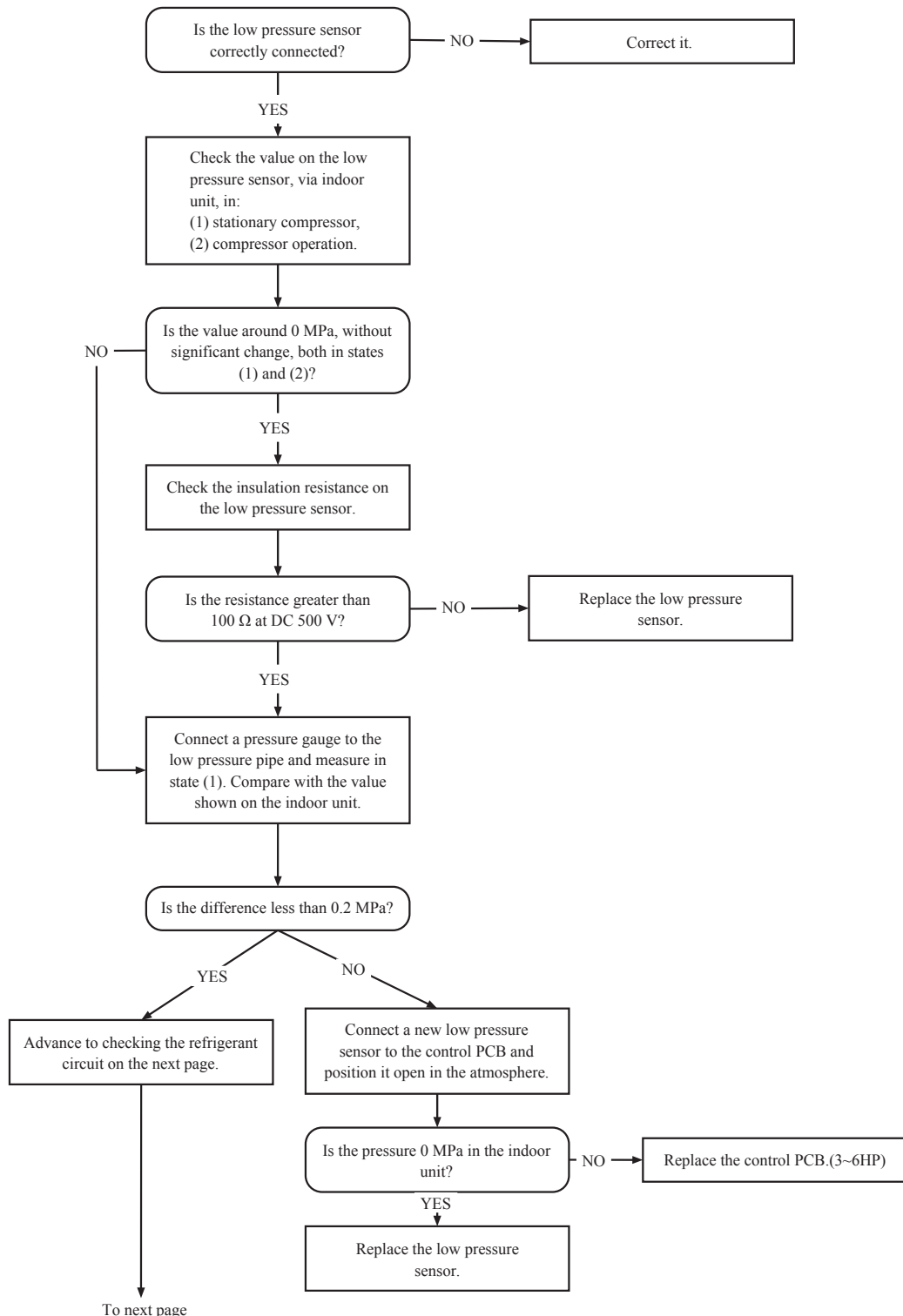
E47 - Inverter A/F module over current <FDCW71>

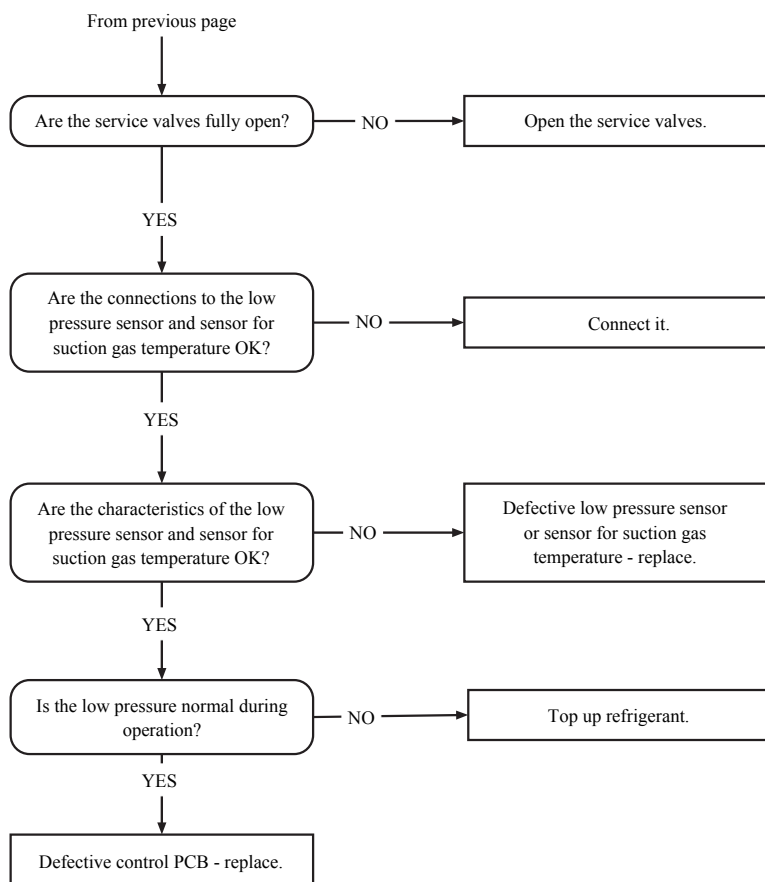


E48 - Fan alarm <FDCW71, 100, 140>

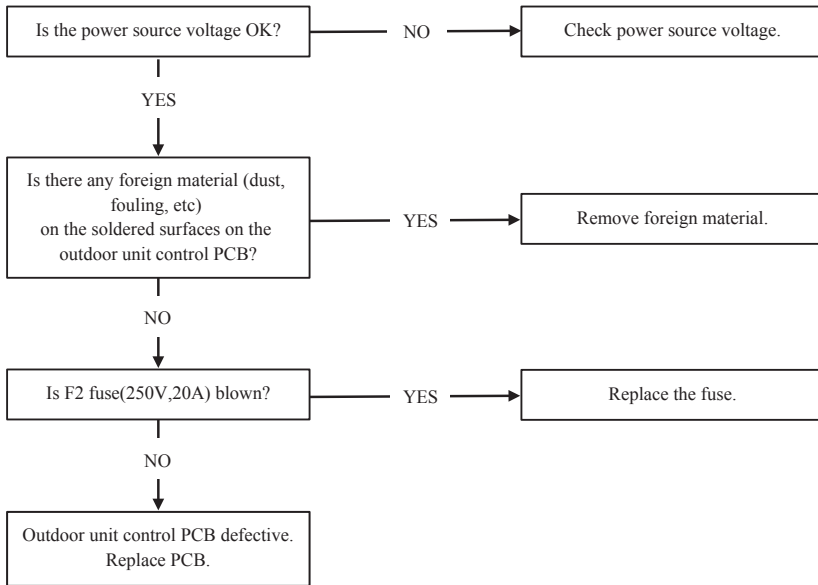


E49 - LP alarm

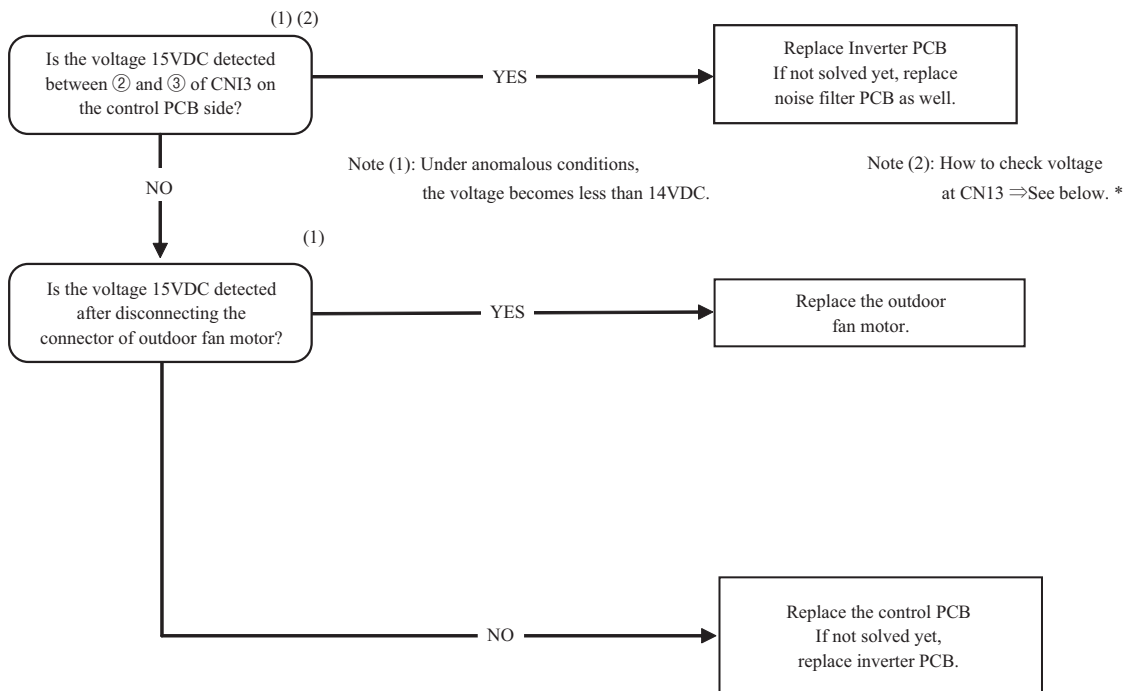




E51 - Power transistor error <FDCW60>

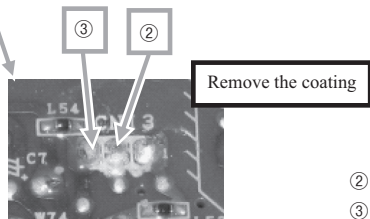
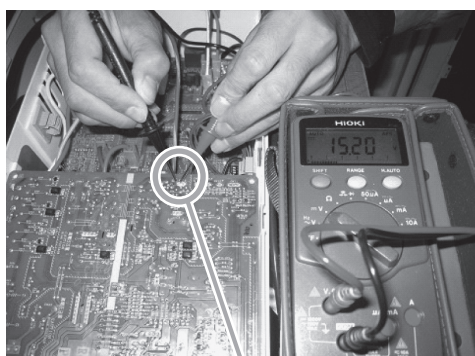


E51(E41) - Inverter and fan motor error (for FDCW71, 100, 140)



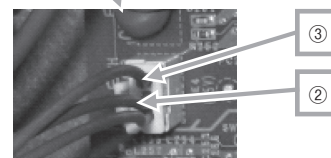
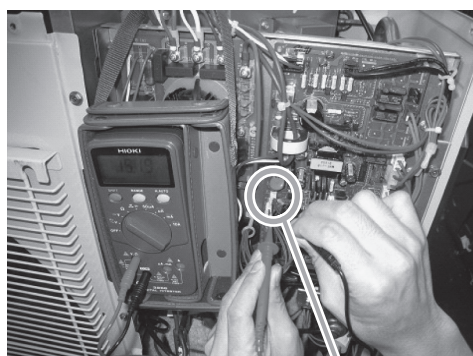
* How to check the voltage between ② and ③ of CN13

For FDCW71

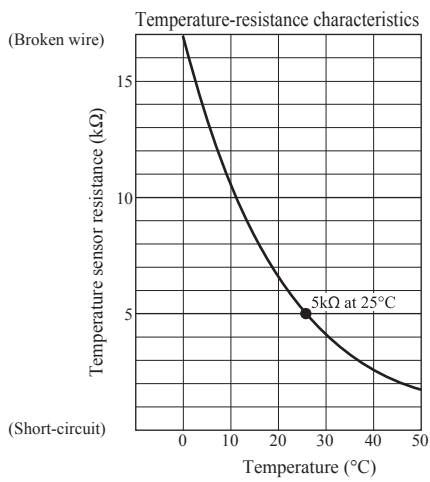
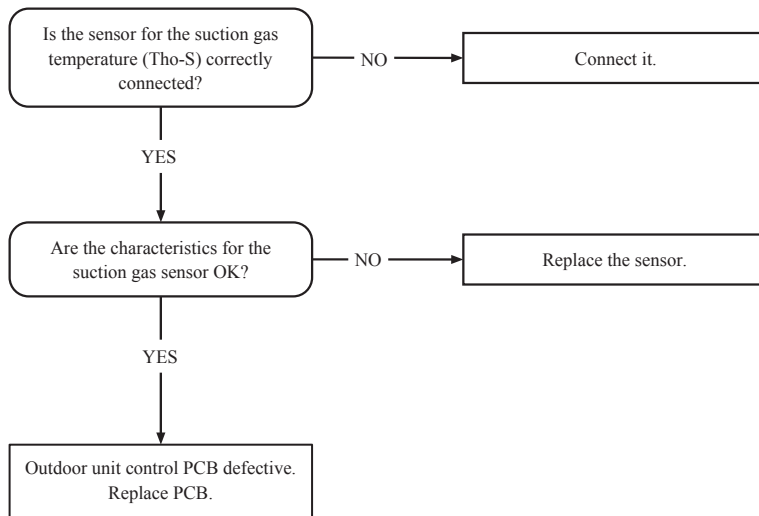


②: 15V (+)
③: GND (-)

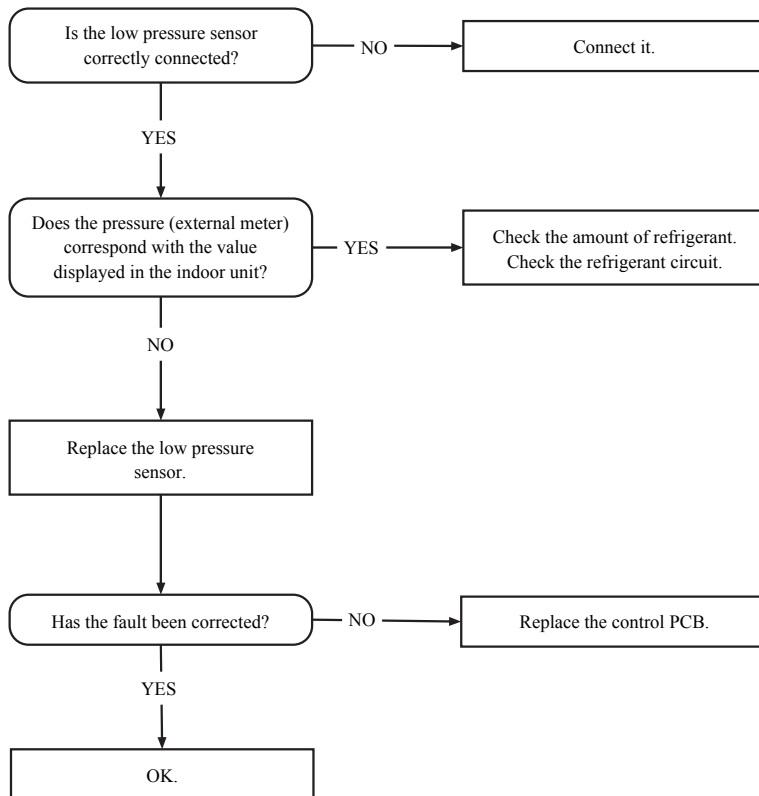
For FDCW100, 140



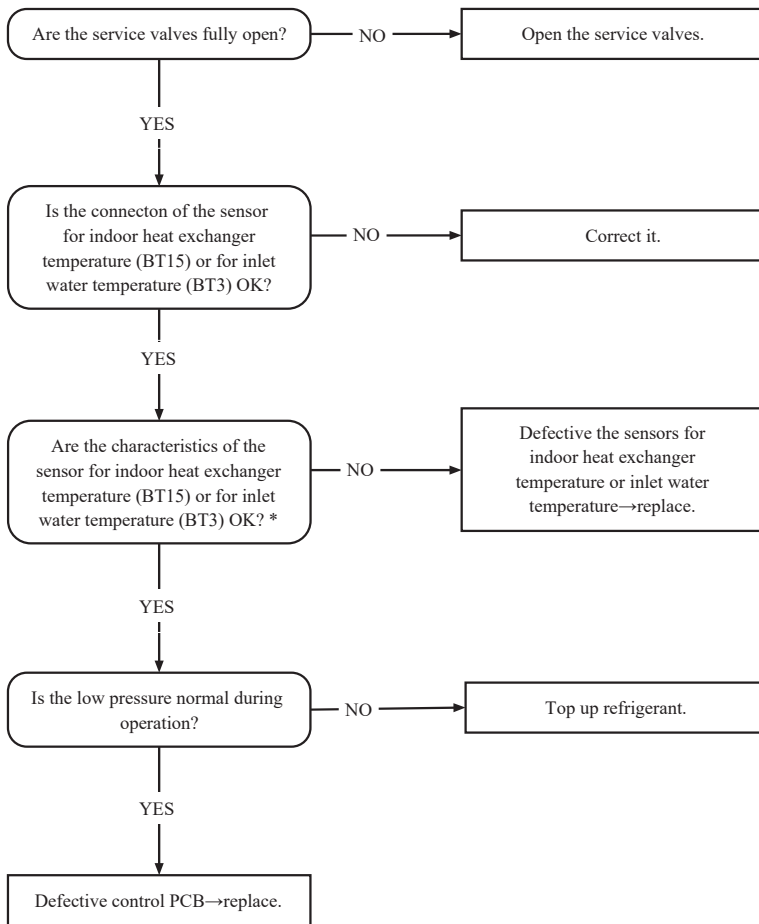
E53 - S. fault Tho-S



E54 - S. fault LPT (for FDCW71, 100, 140)

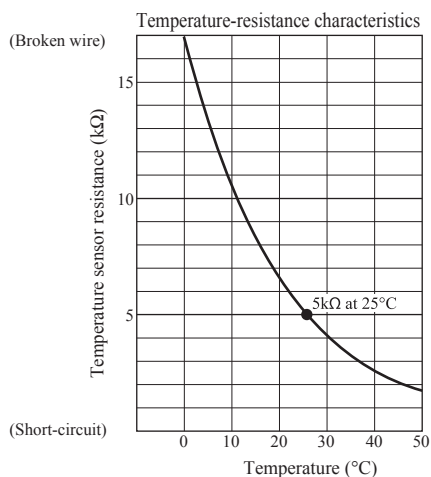
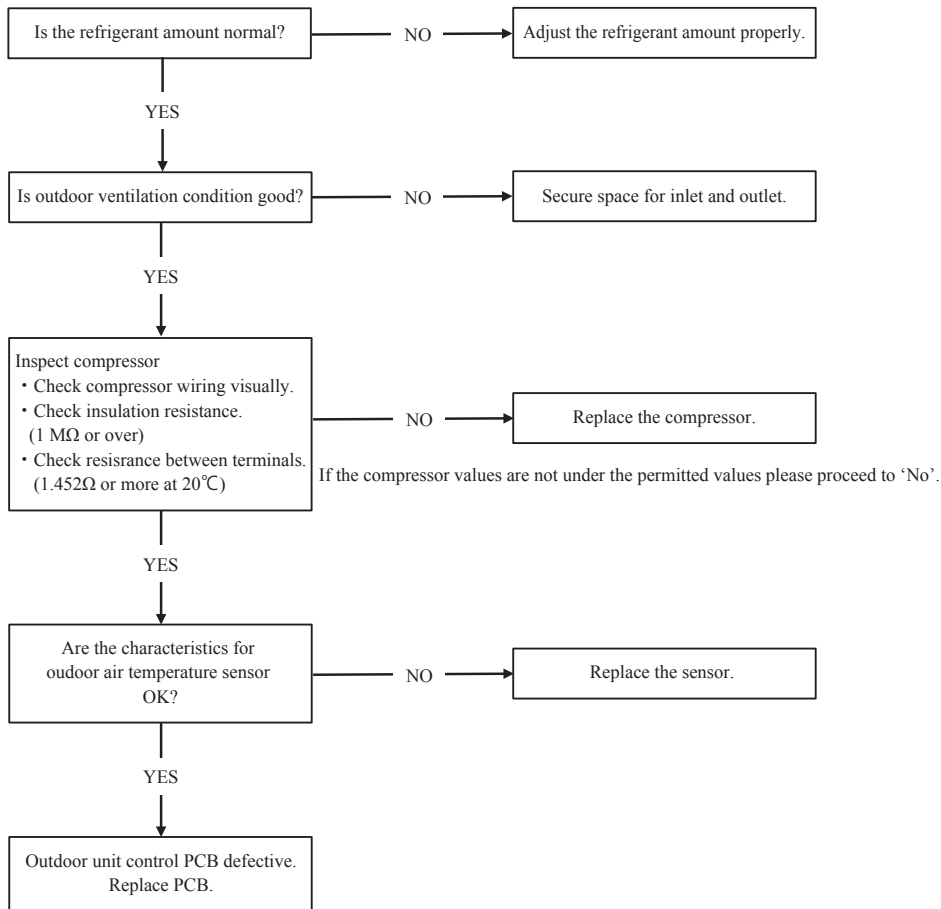


E57 - Low refrigerant

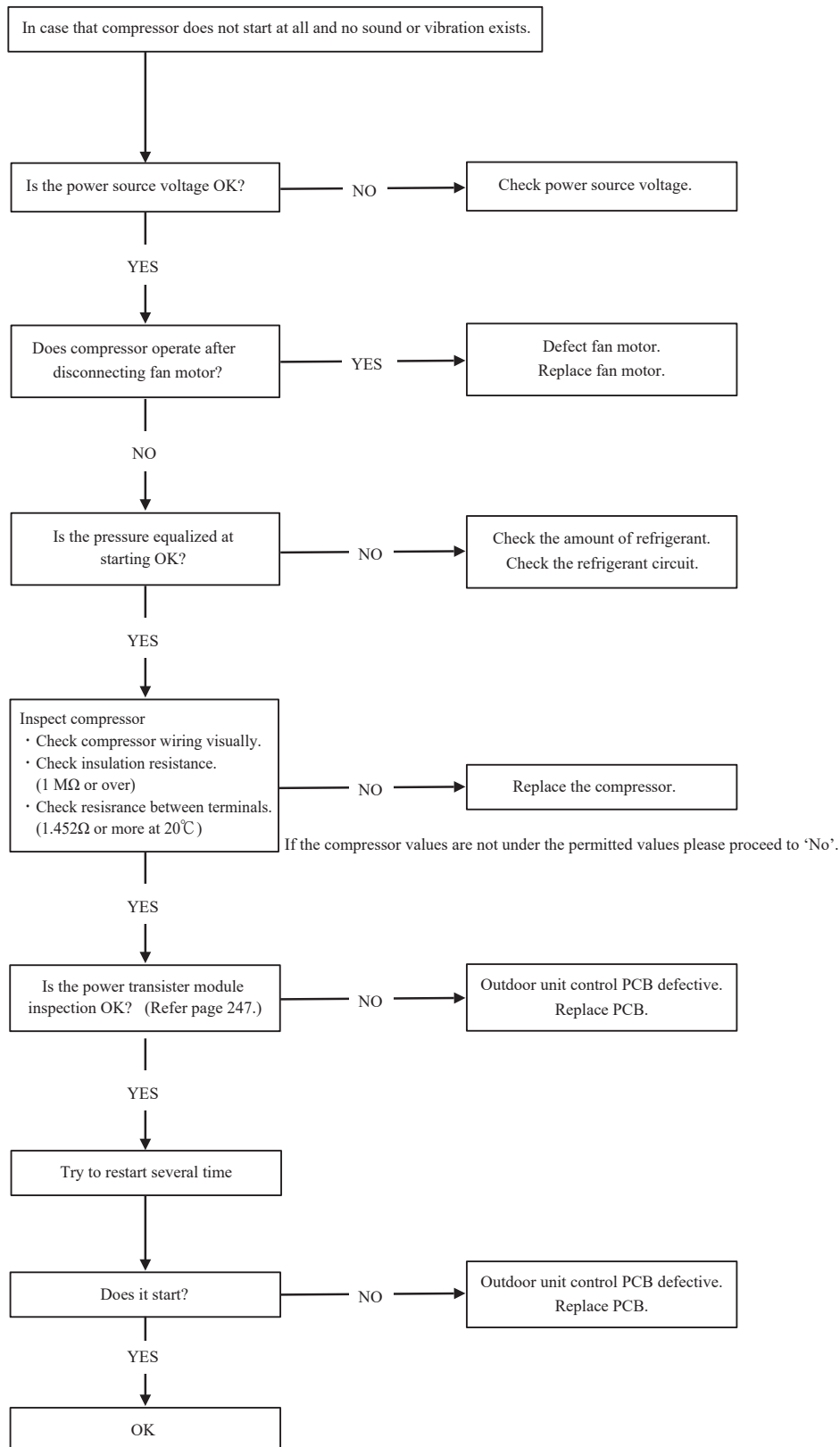


* Refer to page 331.

E58 - Current safe stop

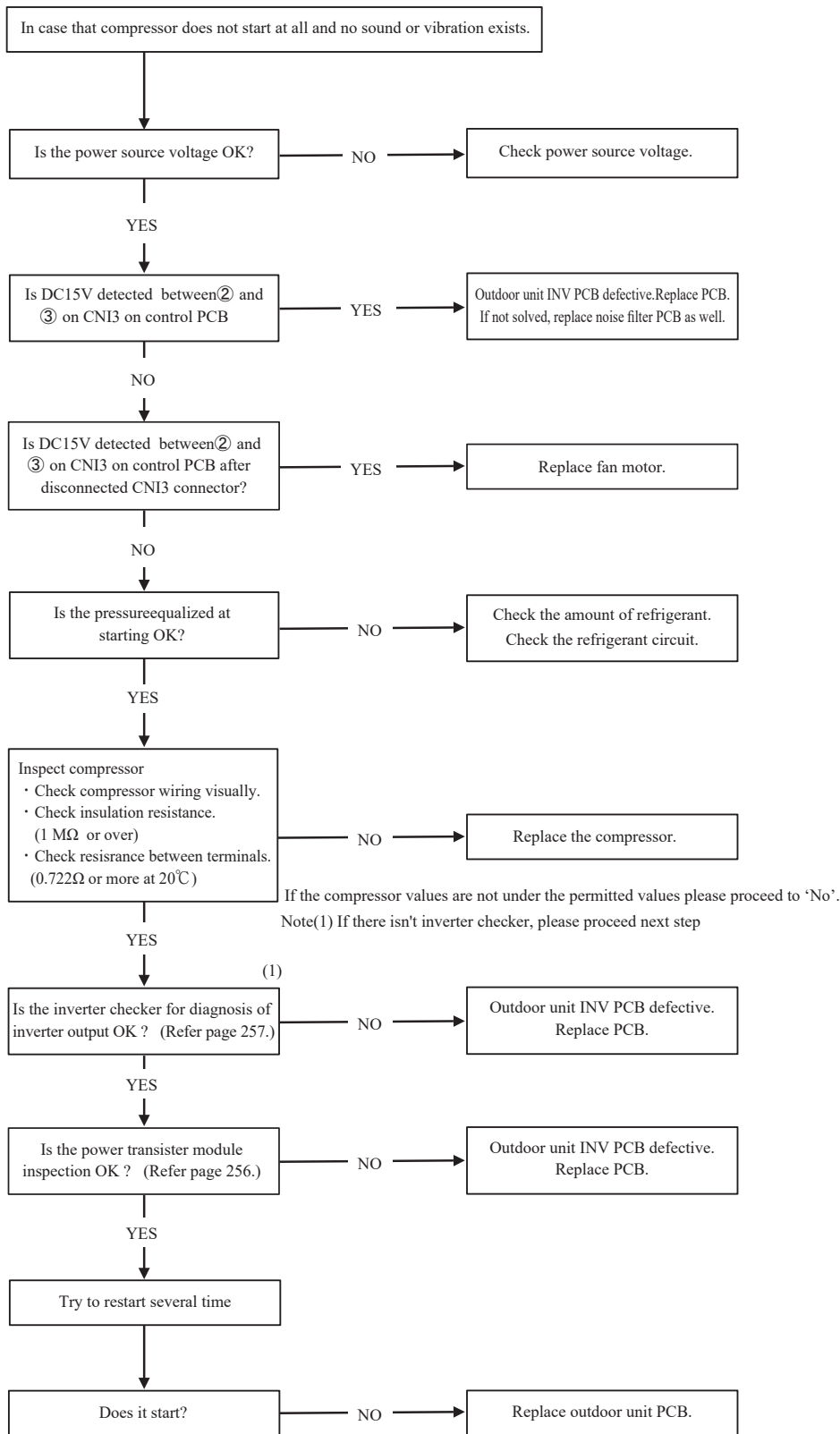


E59 - Inverter error <FDCW60>



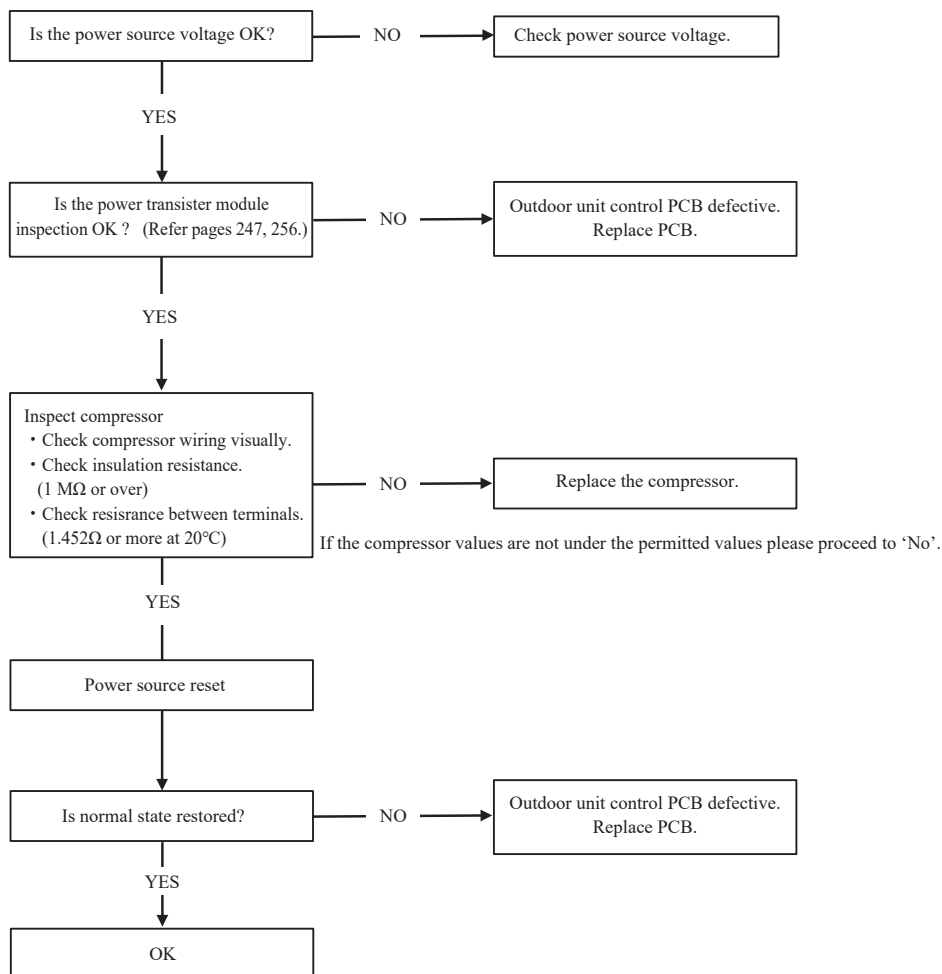
Note: Several times restarting trial may make a recovery from startup failure, because liquid refrigerant migrated in the compressor could be discharged during several trial

E59 - Inverter error <FDCW71, 100, 140>



Note: Several times restarting trial may make a recovery from startup failure, because liquid refrigerant migrated in the compressor could be discharged during several trial

E60 - Rotor lock



Model FDCW60

◆ Check point of outdoor unit

⚠ CAUTION – HIGH VOLTAGE
 High voltage is produced in the control box. Don't touch electrical parts in the control box for 5 minutes after the unit is stopped.

Color symbol

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
Y/G	Yellow/Green

◆ Voltage check in PCB

The normal range is as follows.

Display	Voltage range
① DC280V	DC230V – DC310V
② DC 20V	DC 18V – DC 22V
③ DC 13V	DC 12V – DC 14V
④ DC 15V	DC 14V – DC 16V
⑤ DC 5V	DC 4V – DC 6V
⑥ DC 2.5V	DC 2.3V – DC 2.5V

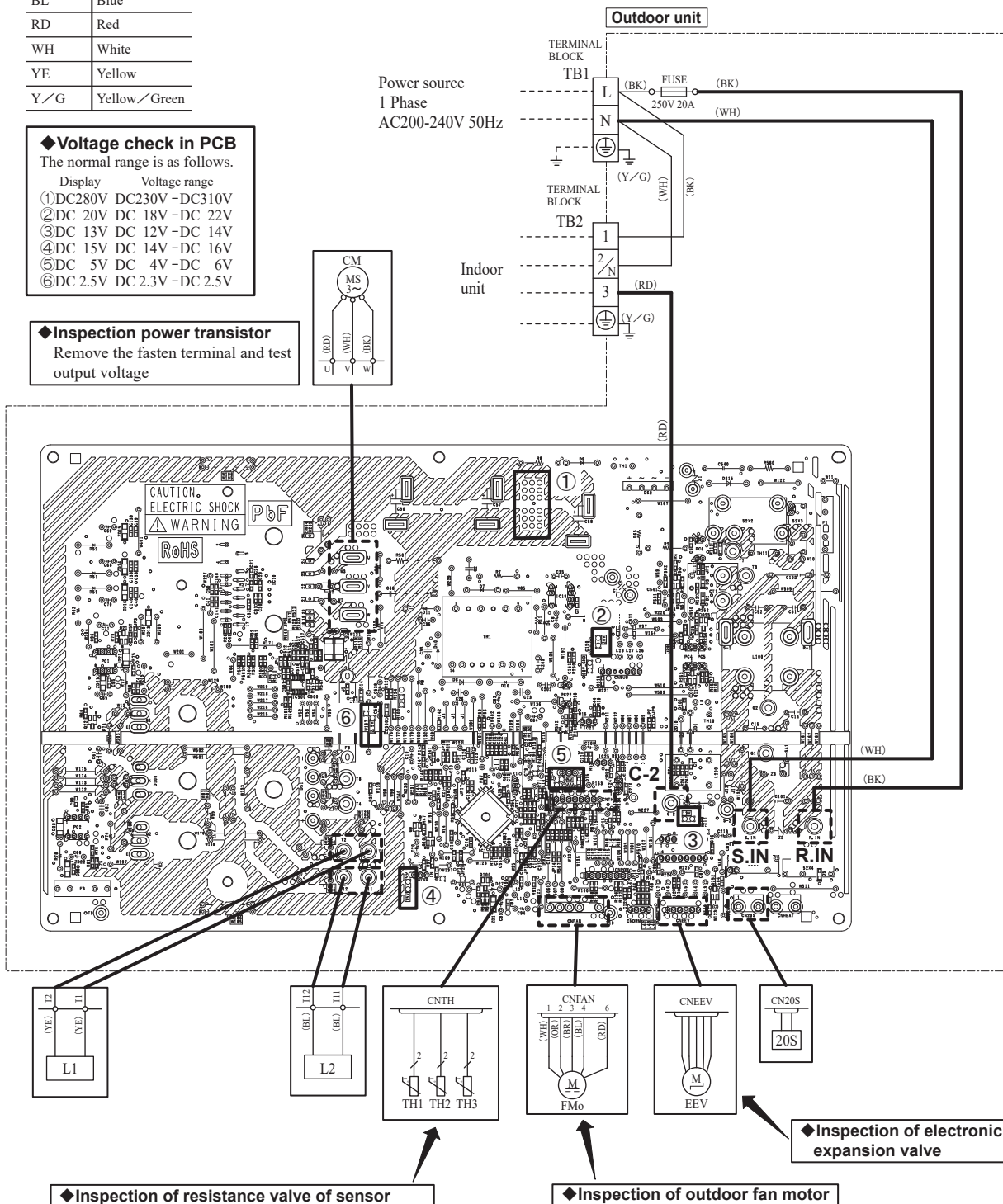
◆ Inspection power transistor

Remove the fasten terminal and test output voltage



◆ Power source and serial signal inspection

- Ⓛ to Ⓝ : AC220/230/240V
- ① to ②/N : AC220/230/240V
- ②/N to ③ : Normal if the voltage oscillates between DC0 and approx. 20V



◆ Inspection of resistance valve of sensor

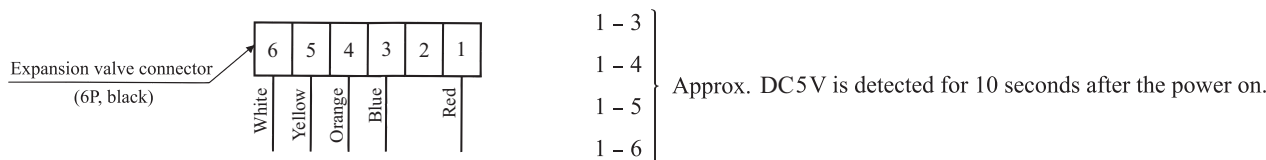
◆ Inspection of outdoor fan motor

◆ Inspection of electronic expansion valve

(a) Inspection of electronic expansion valve

Electronic expansion valve operates for approx. 10 seconds after the power on, in order to determine its aperture. Check the operating sound and voltage during the period of time. (Voltage cannot be checked during operation in which only the aperture change occurs.)

- (i) If it is heard the sound of operating electronic expansion valve, it is almost normal.
- (ii) If the operating sound is not heard, check the output voltage.



- (iii) If voltage is detected, the outdoor PCB is normal.
- (iv) If the expansion valve does not operate (no operating sound) while voltage is detected, the expansion valve is defective.

• Inspection of electronic expansion valve as a separate unit

Measure the resistance between terminals with an analog tester.

Measuring point	Resistance when normal
1-6	46 ± 4Ω (at 20°C)
1-5	
1-4	
1-3	

(b) Outdoor unit fan motor check procedure

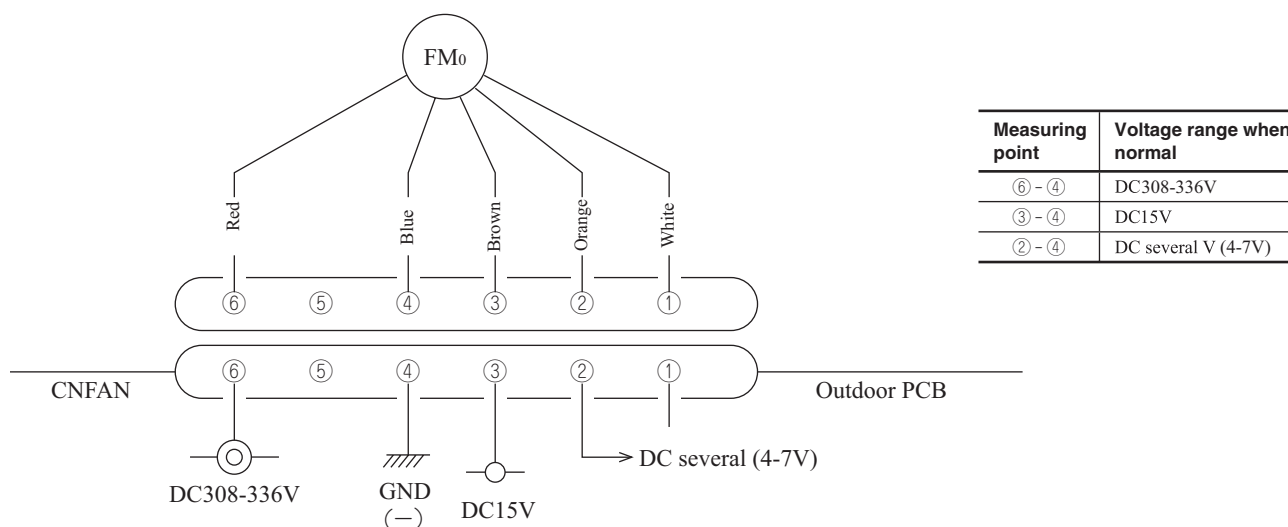
- When the outdoor unit fan motor error is detected, diagnose which of the outdoor unit fan motor or outdoor PCB is defective.
- Diagnose this only after confirming that the indoor unit is normal.

(i) Outdoor PCB output check

- 1) Turn off the power.
- 2) Disconnect the outdoor unit fan motor connector CNFAN.
- 3) When the indoor unit is operated by inserting the power source plug and pressing (ON) the backup switch for more than 5 seconds, if the voltage of pin No. ② in the following figure is output for 30 seconds at 20 seconds after turning “ON” the backup switch, the outdoor PCB is normal but the fan motor is defective.

If the voltage is not detected, the outdoor PCB is defective but the fan motor is normal.

Note (1) The voltage is output 3 times repeatedly. If it is not detected, the indoor unit displays the error message.

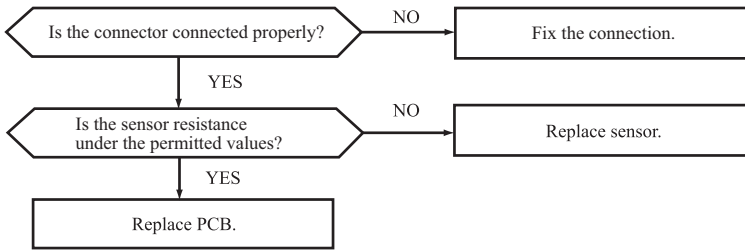


(ii) Fan motor resistance check

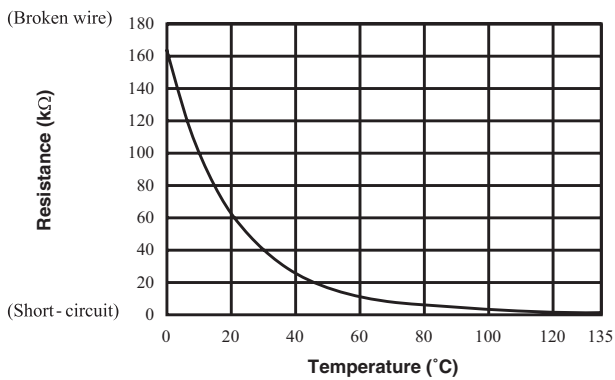
Measuring point	Resistance when normal
⑥ - ④ (Red - Blue)	20 MΩ or higher
③ - ④ (Brown - Blue)	20 kΩ or higher

- Notes (1) Remove the fan motor and measure it without power connected to it.
- (2) If the measured value is below the value when the motor is normal, it means that the fan motor is faulty.

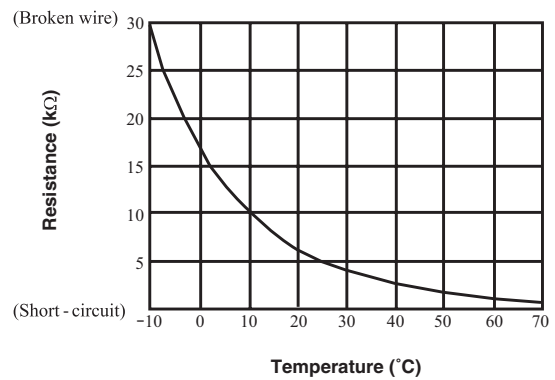
(c) Inspection of resistance valve of temperature sensor



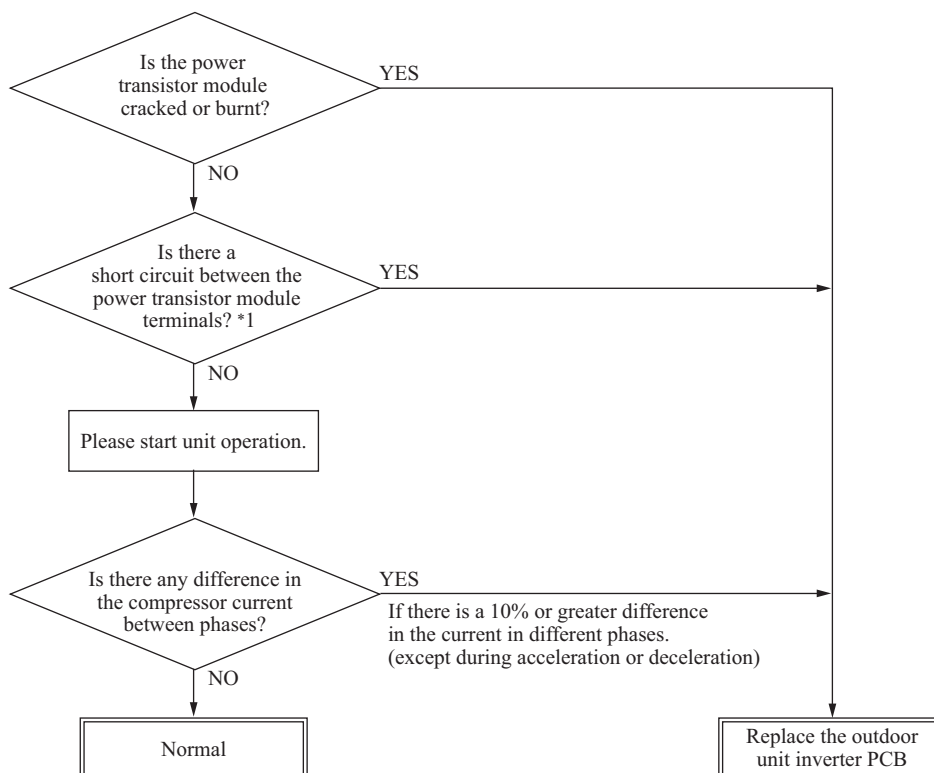
◆ Discharge pipe temperature sensor characteristics



◆ Temperature sensor characteristics [Outdoor heat exchanger temperature, outdoor air temperature]



(d) Power transistor module (Including the driver PCB) inspection procedure



***1 Power transistor module terminal short circuit check procedure**

Disconnect the compressor wiring, then conduct a short circuit check.

P-U, P-V, P-W

N-U, N-V, N-W

Check between the P-N terminals.

Bring the tester probes in contact with the following places on each terminal.

P: Power transistor P terminal,

N: Power transistor N terminal,

U: End of red harness to compressor

V: End of white harness to compressor

W: End of black or blue harness to compressor

Check for a power transistor short-circuit.

- When you do not have a diagnostic checker for judging if the inverter is defective, measure between the terminals of the power transistor parts, judge whether the power transistor is defective or not.
- Disconnect the compressor, then measure with the control incorporated.

Model FDCW60

Tester		Normal value (Ω)
Terminal (+)	Terminal (-)	Model FDCW60
P	N	0 - (Numerical value rises.)
N	P	
P	U	Several M (Numerical value rises.)
P	V	
P	W	
N	U	Approx. 180 k
N	V	
N	W	
U	P	Approx. 160 k
V	P	Approx. 160 k
W	P	Approx. 160 k
U	N	Approx. 240 k
V	N	Approx. 240 k
W	N	Approx. 240 k

If the measured values range from 0 - several kΩ, there is a possibility that the elements are damaged, so replace the power transistor parts.

◆ Check point of outdoor unit

(1) Troubleshooting at the outdoor unit

When troubleshooting the outdoor unit, firstly assess the overview of malfunction and try to presume the cause and the faulty part by checking the error code displayed on the remote control and flashing pattern of indicator lamps (Red LED and Green LED), and then proceed further inspection and remedy it.

Self-diagnosis system by microcomputer on indoor unit and outdoor unit PCB can assist to find the cause of malfunction smoothly by making a diagnosis of not only the anomaly of microcomputer, but also the anomaly in power source system, installation space, overload resulting from improper charging amount of refrigerant and etc.

Unless the power is reset, the error log is saved in memory and the inspection indicator lamps on outdoor unit PCB keep flashing after automatical recovering from malfunction.

After automatical recovering from malfunction, if any another error mode which has a higher priority than the previous error saved in memory occurs, it is overwritten in memory and is displayed.

[Reset of power source]





Be sure to avoid electrical shock, when replacing or checking the outdoor unit control PCB, because some voltage is still retained in the electrolytic capacitor on the PCB even after shutting down the power source to the outdoor unit.

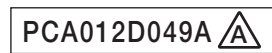
Be sure to start repairing work, after confirming that the red LED or green LED on the PCB has been extinguished for more than 10 seconds after more than 3 minutes had been passed since power shut down, and reconfirming that voltage has been discharged sufficiently by measuring the voltage (DC) between both terminals of electrolytic capacitor (C58) (Measurement of voltage may be disturbed by the moisture-proof coating. In such case, remove the coating and measure it by taking care of avoiding electrical shock.)

(a) Module of part to be replaced for outdoor unit control

Outdoor unit control PCB, Inverter PCB, Temperature sensor (of outdoor heat exchanger, discharge pipe, outdoor air, IPM, suction pipe and under dome), Fuses (for power source and control PCB), Noise filter, Capacitor and Reactor.

(b) Replacement procedure of outdoor unit control PCB

Precautions for Safety	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows: 	
 WARNING	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.
 WARNING	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire. Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire. After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire. 	
 CAUTION	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock. 	



(i) Model FDCW71

- 1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.**
(Be sure to measure voltage (DC) between T26 and T27 on inverter PCB, and check that the voltage is discharged sufficiently(10V or less).(Refer to Fig.2))
- 2) Disconnect the connectors from the control PCB.
- 3) Match the switches setting (SW4) with the former PCB.
- 4) Connect the connectors to the control PCB.(Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted.**)

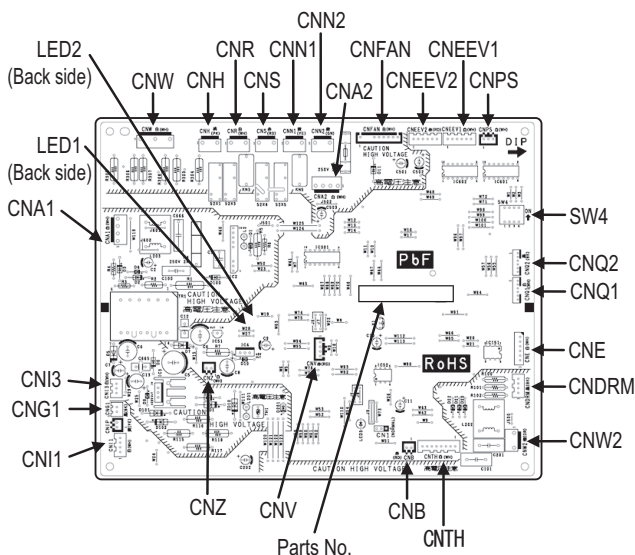


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view

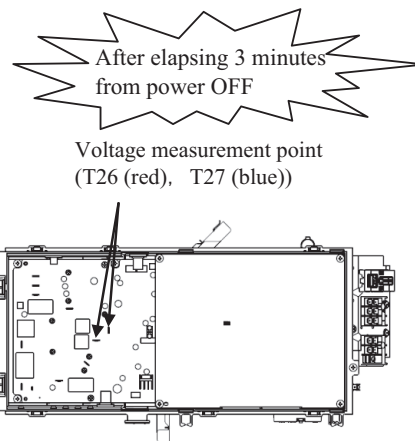
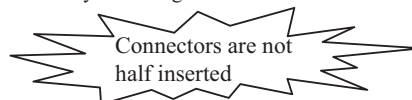
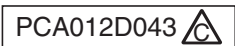


Fig.2 Position of terminal

*Presence and shape of electric component may vary according to model.





(ii) Models FDCW100, 140

- 1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.**
(Be sure to measure voltage (DC) on both capacitor terminals located in control back, and **check that the voltage is discharged sufficiently.)**
- 2) Disconnect the connectors from the control PCB.
- 3) Disconnect the white wiring passing through CT1 on the PCB before replacing the PCB.
- 4) Match the setting switches (SW3-5, JSW) with the former PCB.
- 5) Tighten up a screw after passing white wiring through CT1 of the changed.
- 6) Connect the connectors with the control PCB referring to the parts arrangement of Fig.1.
 (Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted.**)

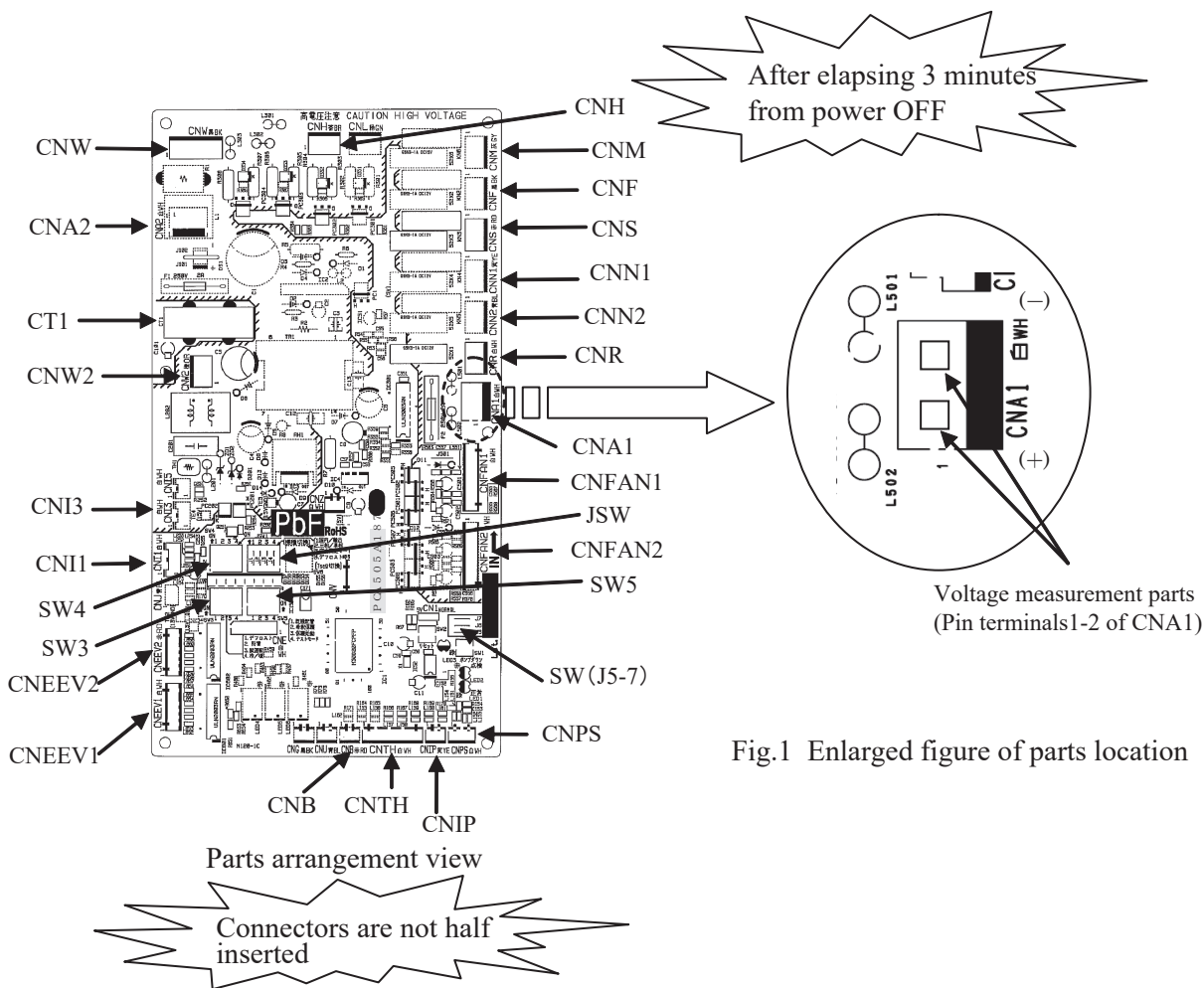


Fig.1 Enlarged figure of parts location

(c) Outdoor inverter PCB replacement procedure

Precautions for Safety	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows: 	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> WARNING </div>	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> CAUTION </div>	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.
! WARNING	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire. • Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire. • After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire. 	
! CAUTION	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock. 	

Replace the inverter PCB according to the following procedure.

(i) Model FDCW71

PCA012D067B

- 1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
(High voltage is retained on the capacitor after turning the power off. It is very dangerous to touch the PCB in this condition.)
In the situation that harnesses are connected to inverter PCB **be sure to measure voltage (DC)** between T26 and T27 on inverter PCB, and **check that the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig. 1).
- 2) Disconnect the connectors and faston terminals from the inverter PCB as shown in Fig. 1.
- 3) Match the setting of switches (JSW10, 11) of new PCB with former PCB.
- 4) Remove the harness bands (3 places) from the control unit, then remove the fixing screws (4places) from the radiator. (Refer to Fig.3)
- 5) Remove the inverter PCB with radiator from the control unit, and exchange the inverter PCB with radiator. Be careful not to pinch the wiring at the time of exchanging.
- 6) Fix the radiator to the control unit by screws. After exchanging the inverter PCB, reconnect the connectors, faston terminals and the harnesses as before. (Confirm that the **connectors are not half inserted**.)
- 7) Attach the harness bands (3 places), then reconnect the harnesses as before.
- 8) Install the harness clip on the inverter PCB as shown in Fig.4, and fix the harness.

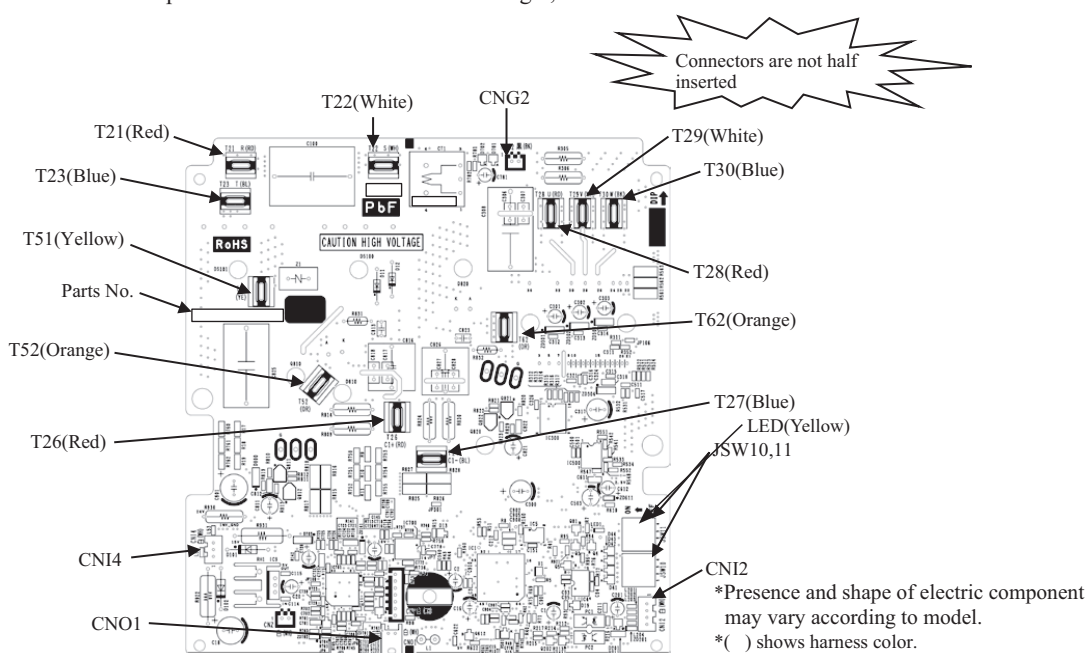


Fig.1Parts arrangement view of inverter PCB

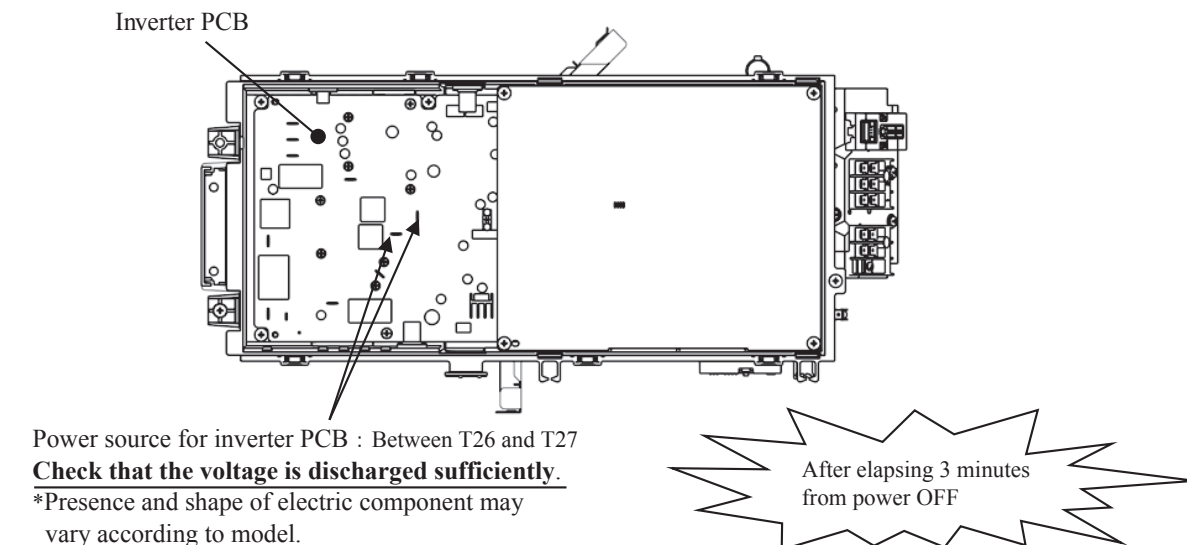


Fig.2 Voltage measurement points

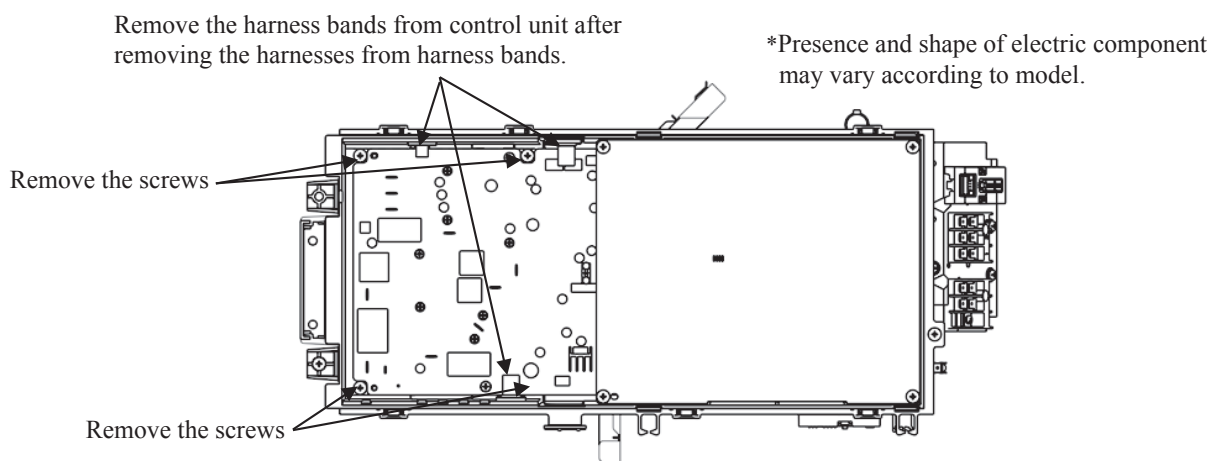


Fig.3 Target places where harness bands and screws are removed

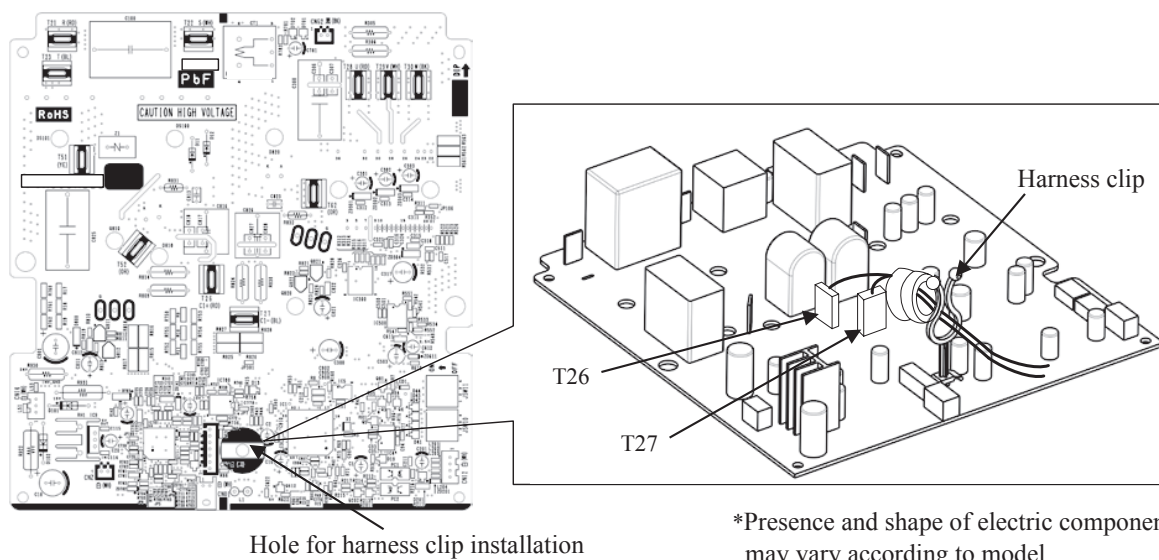
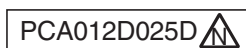


Fig.4 Fix the harness on the harness clip

(ii) Models FDCW100, 140



- 1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.**
(Be sure to measure voltage (DC) on both capacitor terminals located in control back, and check that the voltage is discharged sufficiently.(Refer to Fig.1))
- 2) Take off the connection of inverter PCB terminal block connector and remove the screw of power transistor then remove the PCB. Wipe off the silicon grease neatly on the control's radiation heat fins.
- 3) Match the setting switches (JSW10,11) of new PCB with the former PCB.
- 4) Before installing the power transistor on the new PCB,Apply uniformly a bundled of silicon grease first on the surface of power transistor.Make sure it is applied to prevent damage on power transistor.
- 5) Tighten the screw of power transistor on inverter PCB and connect the terminal block.Confirm the connection and don't use soldering in the connection.Tighten properly the power transistor with a screw and make sure there is no slack.Power transistor can be damage if not properly tighten.(Recommended power transistor tightening torque:0.98~1.47N·m)

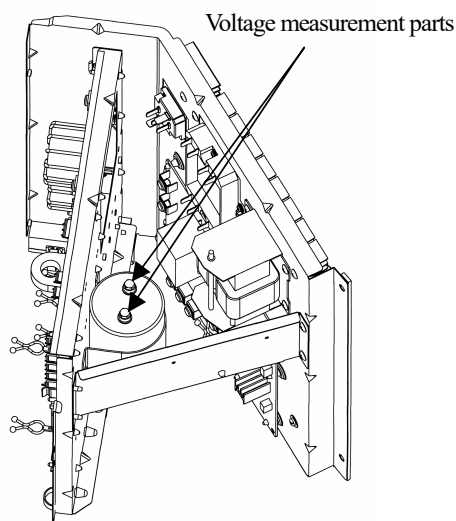
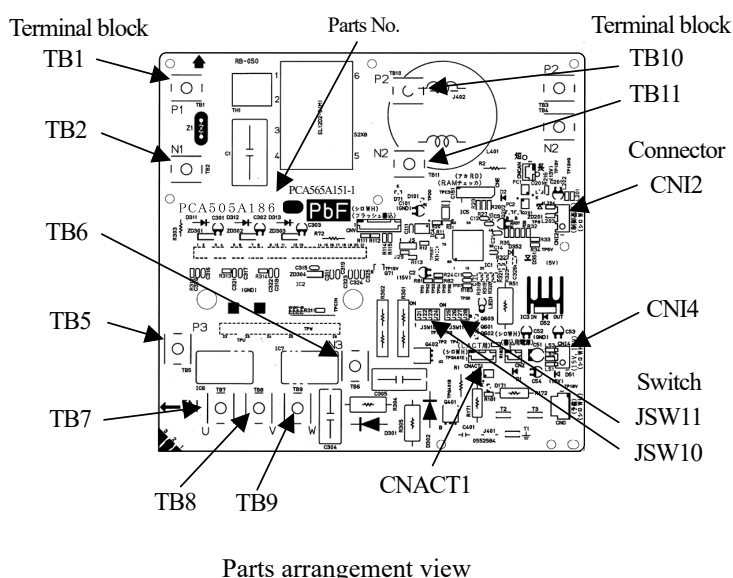


Table. 1 Switch setting

Model FDCW100					
JSW10	-1	OFF	JSW11	-1	ON
	-2	OFF		-2	OFF
	-3	OFF		-3	OFF
	-4	OFF		-4	ON

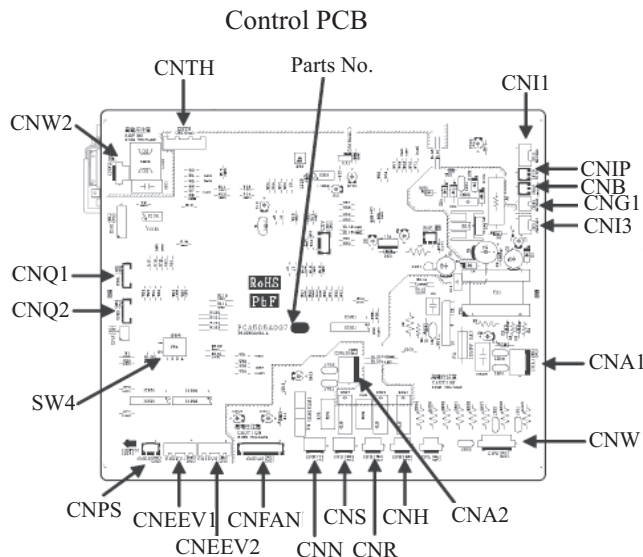
Model FDCW140					
JSW10	-1	OFF	JSW11	-1	OFF
	-2	OFF		-2	OFF
	-3	OFF		-3	ON
	-4	OFF		-4	ON

DIP switch setting

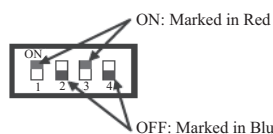
FDCW71VNX-A

(1) Control PCB

Switch	Factory setting	Remark
SW3-1*	OFF	* See below table
SW3-2*	OFF	* See below table
SW3-3	OFF	Keep OFF
SW3-4	ON	Keep ON
SW4-1	ON	Keep ON
SW4-2	ON	Keep ON
SW4-3	OFF	Keep OFF
SW4-4	OFF	Keep OFF
SW5-1	OFF	Keep OFF
SW5-2	OFF	Keep OFF
SW5-3	OFF	Keep OFF
SW5-4	OFF	Keep OFF
SW7-1	OFF	Keep OFF
SW7-2	OFF	Keep OFF
SW7-3	OFF	Keep OFF
SW8-1	OFF	Keep OFF
SW8-2	OFF	Keep OFF
SW8-3	OFF	Keep OFF
SW9	OFF	Tactile switch



Note: Meaning of marking on the DIP switch

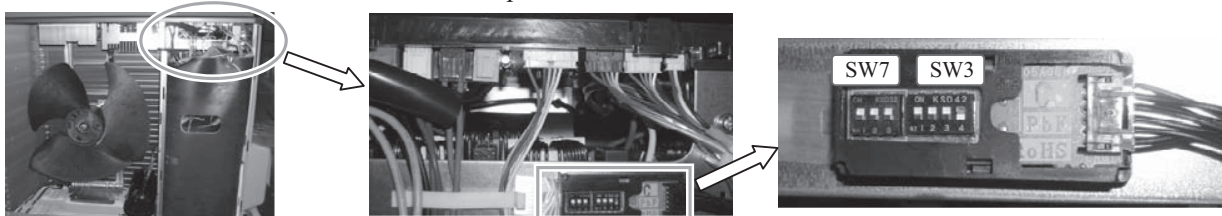


When replacing PCB, set up the DIP switch according to the previous setting with the meaning of marking in mind or with reference to this factory setting list.

* Function of DIP switch

Switch	Function	Setting	
		OFF	ON
SW3-1	Defrost setting	Normal	Cold region
SW3-2	Snow protection control	Normal	Snow protection

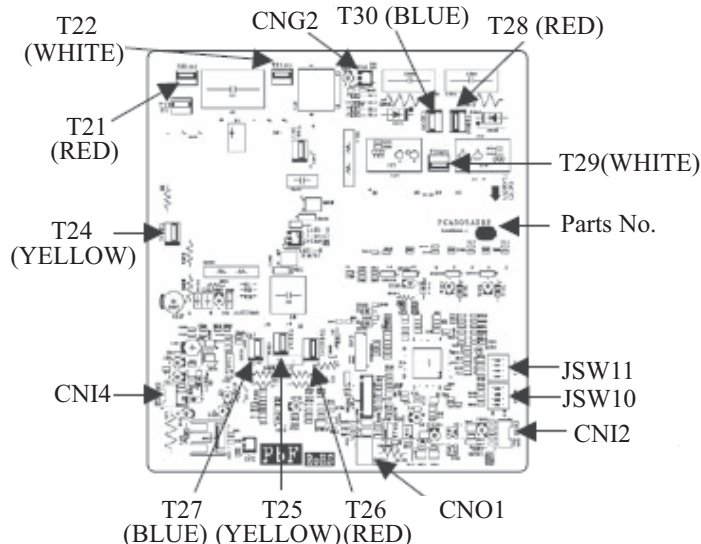
Note: DIP switch SW3 is located as shown in the photo.



(2) Inverter PCB

Switch	Factory setting	Remark
JSW10-1	OFF	Keep OFF
JSW10-2	OFF	Keep OFF
JSW10-3	OFF	Keep OFF
JSW10-4	OFF	Keep OFF
JSW11-1	ON	Keep as factory setting
JSW11-2	ON	Keep as factory setting
JSW11-3	ON	Keep as factory setting
JSW11-4	ON	Keep as factory setting

Inverter PCB



FDCW100, 140VNX-A

(1) Control PCB

Switch	Factory setting		Remark
	100VNX	140VNX	
JSW1-1	OFF	OFF	Keep as factory setting
JSW1-2	OFF	ON	Keep as factory setting
JSW1-3	OFF	OFF	Keep as factory setting
JSW1-4	OFF	OFF	Keep as factory setting
SW4-1	ON	ON	Keep as factory setting
SW4-2	ON	ON	Keep as factory setting
SW4-3	OFF		Keep OFF
SW4-4	ON		Keep ON
SW3-1*	OFF		Keep OFF
SW3-2*	OFF		Keep OFF
SW3-3	OFF		Keep OFF
SW3-4	OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-1	OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-2	ON		Keep OFF
SW5-3	OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-4	OFF		Keep OFF
J5**	With/ON		Keep With/ON
J6**	With/ON		Keep With/ON
J7**	With/ON		Keep With/ON
SW1	OFF		Tactile switch
SW2-1	ON		Keep ON
SW2-2	ON		Keep ON
SW2-3	ON		Keep ON

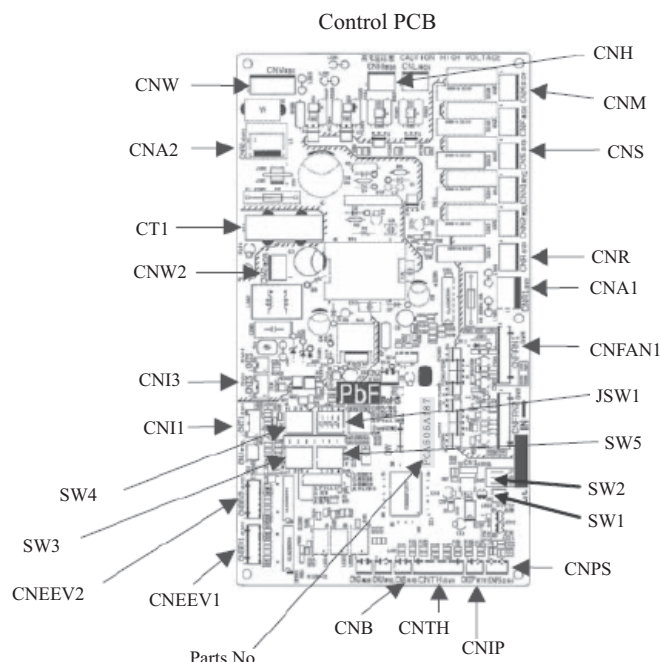
* Function of DIP switch

Switch	Function	Setting	
		OFF	ON
SW3-1	Defrost setting	Normal	Cold region
SW3-2	Snow protection control	Normal	Snow protection

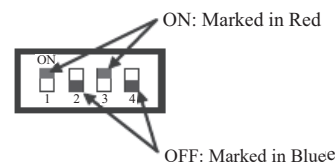
** Control PCB on the unit: Jumper,
Control PCB of the spare part: DIP switch

(2) Inverter PCB

Switch	Factory setting		Remark
	100VNX	140VNX	
JSW10-1	OFF		Keep OFF
JSW10-2	OFF		Keep OFF
JSW10-3	OFF		Keep OFF
JSW10-4	OFF		Keep OFF
JSW11-1	ON	OFF	Keep as factory setting
JSW11-2	OFF	OFF	Keep as factory setting
JSW11-3	OFF	ON	Keep as factory setting
JSW11-4	ON	ON	Keep as factory setting

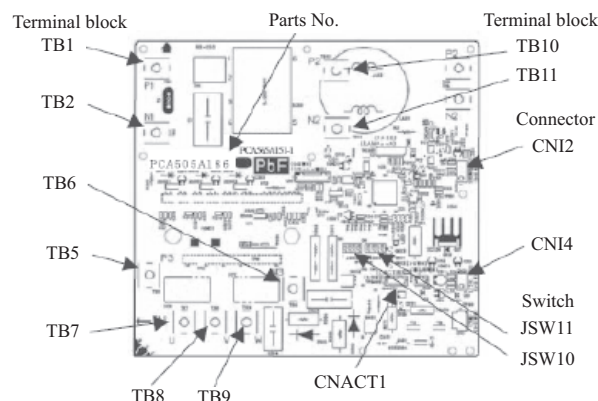


Note: Meaning of marking on the DIP switch

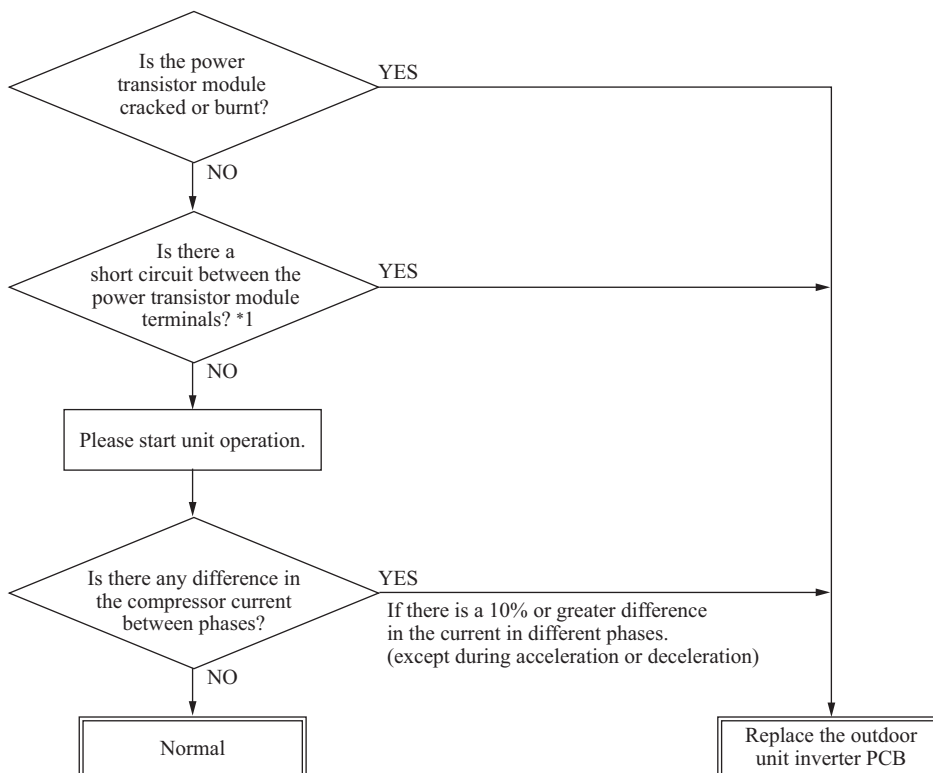


When replacing PCB, set up the DIP switch according to the previous setting with the meaning of marking in mind or with reference to this factory setting list.

Inverter PCB



(3) Power transistor module (including the driver PCB) inspection procedure



*1 Power transistor module terminal short circuit check procedure

Disconnect the compressor wiring, then conduct a short circuit check.

P-U, P-V, P-W

N-U, N-V, N-W

Check between the P-N terminals.

Bring the tester probes in contact with the following places on each terminal.

P: Power transistor P terminal,

N: Power transistor N terminal,

U: End of red harness to compressor

V: End of white harness to compressor

W: End of black or blue harness to compressor

Check for a power transistor short circuit.

- When you do not have a diagnostic checker for judging if the inverter is defective, measure between the terminals of the power transistor parts, judge whether the power transistor is defective or not.
- Disconnect the compressor, then measure with the control incorporated.

Models FDCW71, 100, 140

Tester		Normal values (Ω)	
Terminal (+)	Terminal (-)	Model FDCW71	Model FDCW100, 140
P	N	0 - (Numerical value rises.)	Approx. 1 M Approx. 300-400
N	P		
P	U	Several M (Numerical value rises.)	0
P	V		
P	W		
N	U	Approx. 650 k	Approx. 1.2 M
N	V		
N	W		
U	P	Approx. 670 k	Approx. 1.3 M
V	P	Approx. 4.4 M	
W	P	Approx. 4.4 M	
U	N	Approx. 650 k	0
V	N	Approx. 4.8 M	
W	N	Approx. 4.9 M	

If the measured values range from 0 - several kΩ, there is a possibility that the elements are damaged, so replace the power transistor parts.

(4) Inverter checker for diagnosis of inverter output

Model FDCW71, 100, 140

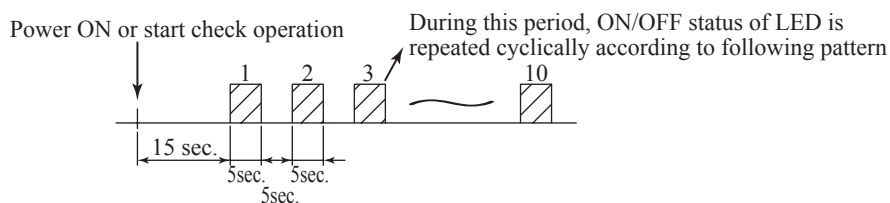
(i) Setup procedure of checker.

- 1) Power OFF (Turn off the breaker).
- 2) Remove the terminal cover of compressor and disconnect the wires (U, V, W) from compressor.
- 3) Connect the wires U (Red), V (White) and W (Black) of checker to the terminal of disconnected wires (U, V, W) from compressor respectively.

(ii) Operation for judgment.

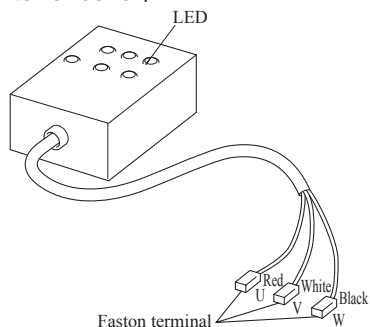
- 1) Power ON after JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB was turned ON.
- 2) After 15 seconds since power has turned ON, LED start ON/OFF for 5 seconds cyclically and it repeats 10 times.
- 3) Check ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.
- 4) Judge the PCB by ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

ON/OFF status of LED	If all of LED are ON/OFF according to following pattern	If all of LED stay OFF or some of LED are ON/OFF
Inverter PCB	Normal	Anomalous

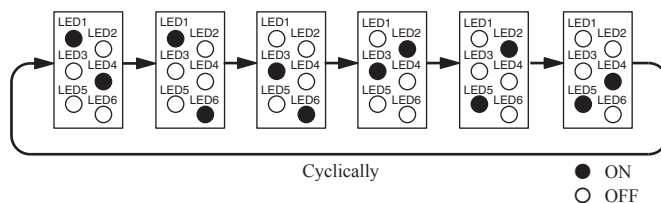


5) Be sure to turn off JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB, after finishing the check operation.

<Inverter checker>



LED ON/OFF pattern

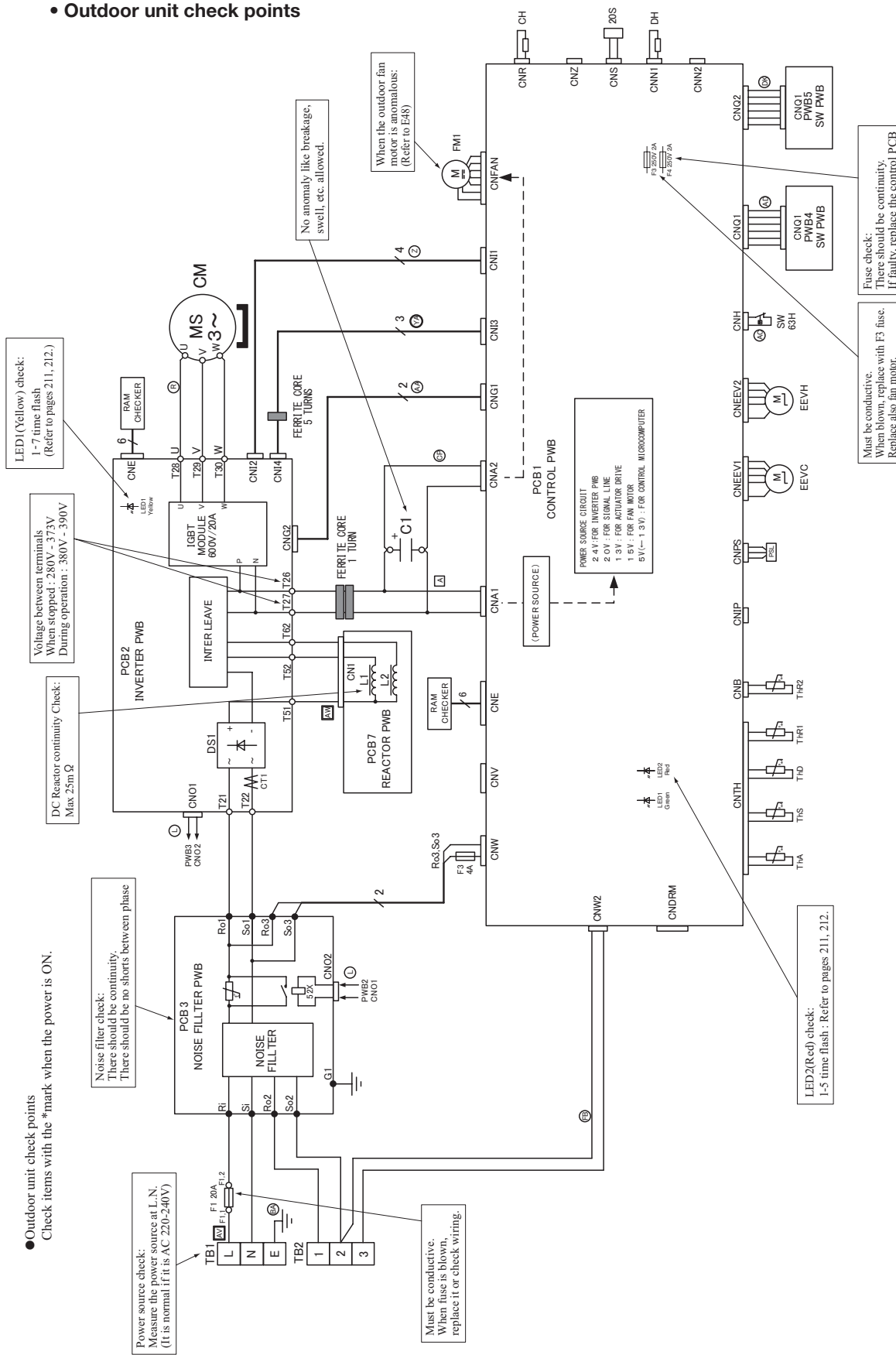


Cyclically ● ON ○ OFF
Connect to the terminal of the wires which are disconnected from compressor.

(5) Outdoor unit control failure diagnosis circuit diagram

Model FDCW71

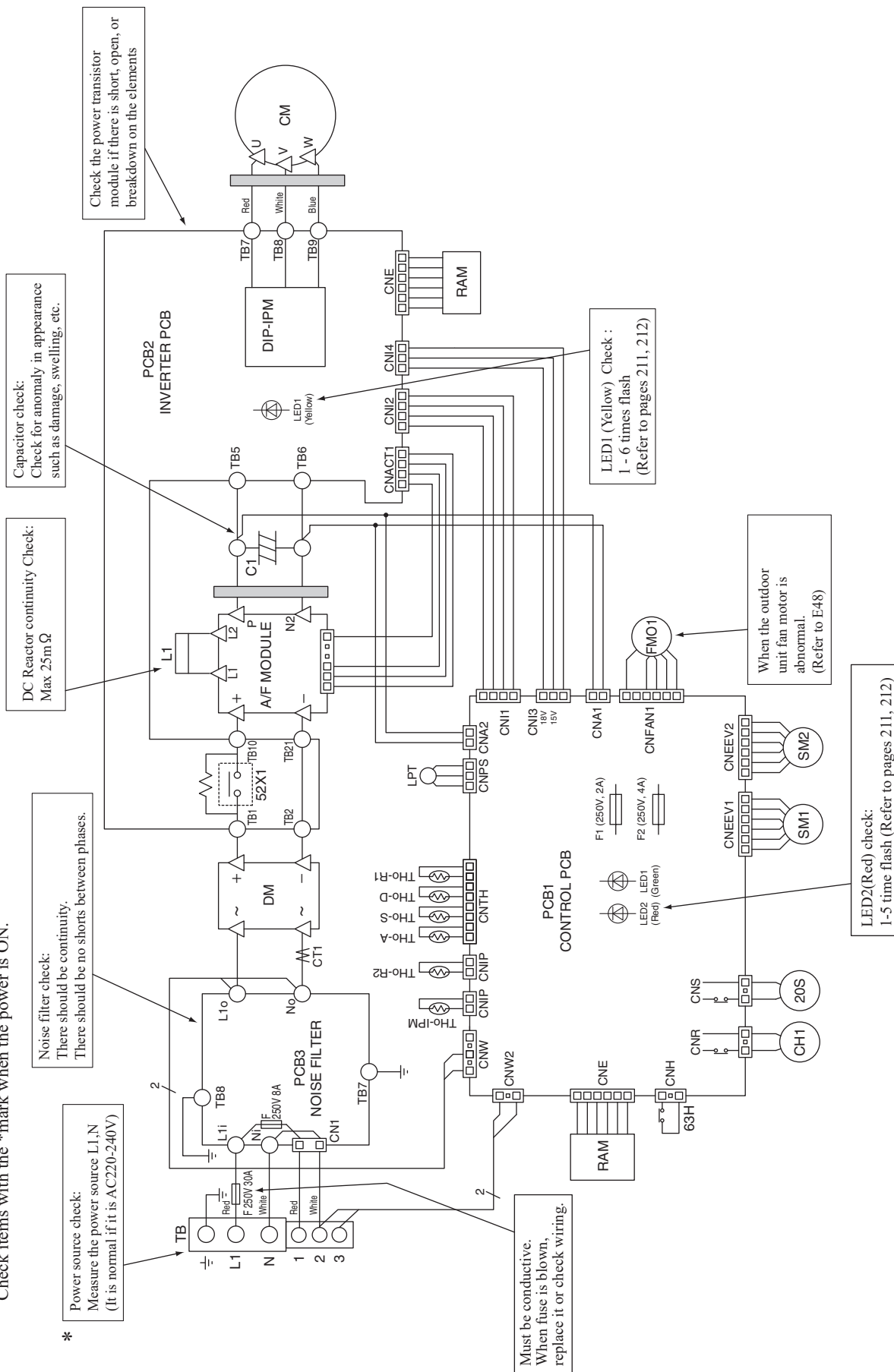
• Outdoor unit check points



Model FDCW100

●Outdoor unit check points

Check items with the *mark when the power is ON.



Model FDCW140

● Outdoor unit check points

Check items with the *mark when the power is ON.

*

Power source check:

Measure the power source L1,N (It is normal if it is AC220-240V)

Noise filter check:

There should be continuity. There should be no shorts between phases.

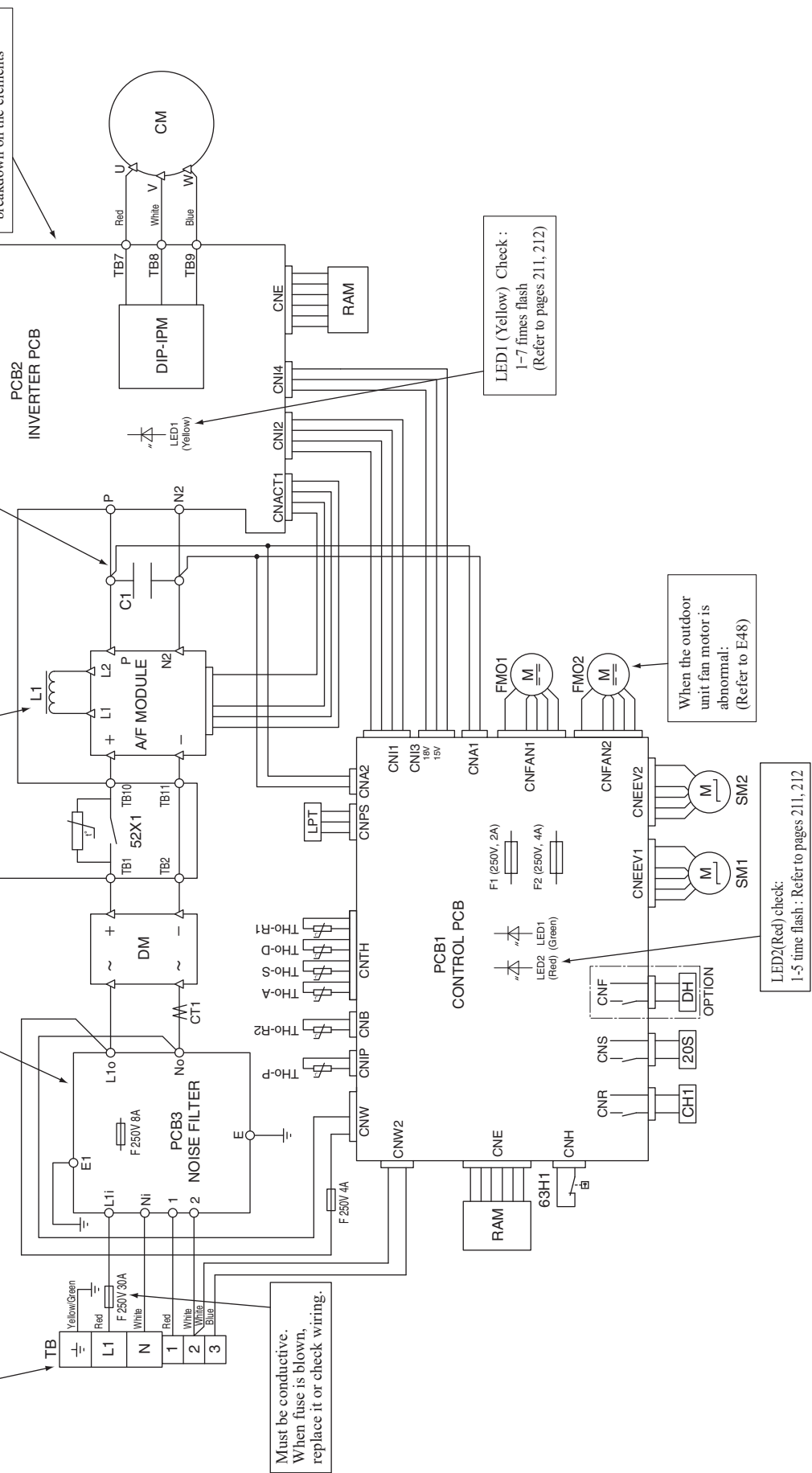
DC Reactor continuity Check:

Max 25mΩ

Capacitor check:

Check for anomaly in appearance such as damage, swelling, etc.

Check the power transistor module if there is short, open, or breakdown on the elements



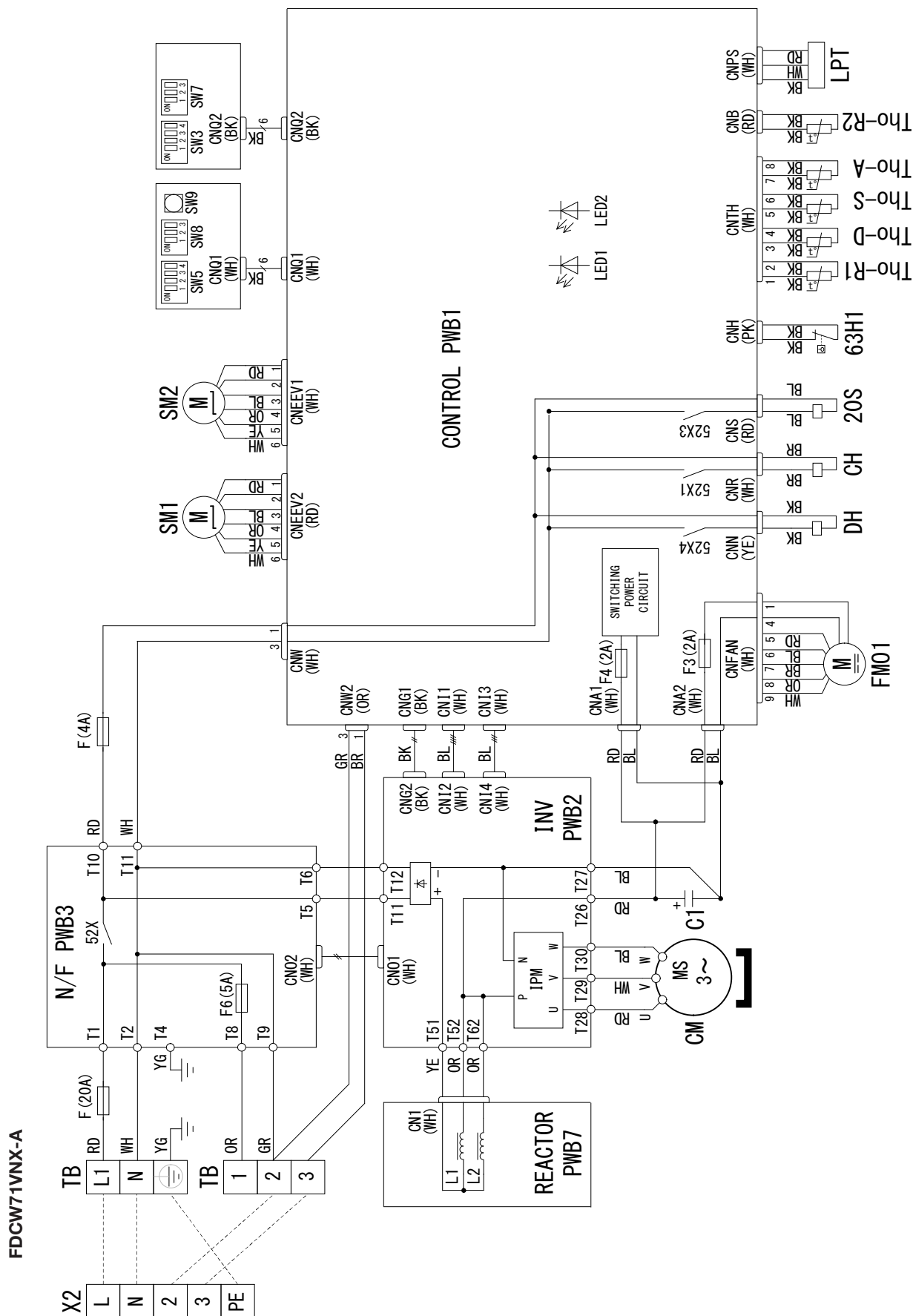
Must be conductive. When fuse is blown, replace it or check wiring.

LED1 (Yellow) Check : 1-7 times flash (Refer to pages 211, 212)

When the outdoor unit fan motor is abnormal: (Refer to E48)

LED2(Red) check: 1-5 time flash : Refer to pages 211, 212

(6) Electrical wiring diagram



Component replacement

Indoor unit

HMA60-S/HMA100-S

Open HMA

1. Remove 2 screws from the bottom part of the HMA.



Screws

2. Remove front cover. When front cover is pulled an earth cable is connected to it so it needs to be disconnected.



Earth cable



Unit without front cover

Replace display

1. Unlock display on the top part.



Display



2. While unlocking it pull it up and remove it.



3. Remove communication cable (X1) and Ethernet cable (X9) from the connectors.

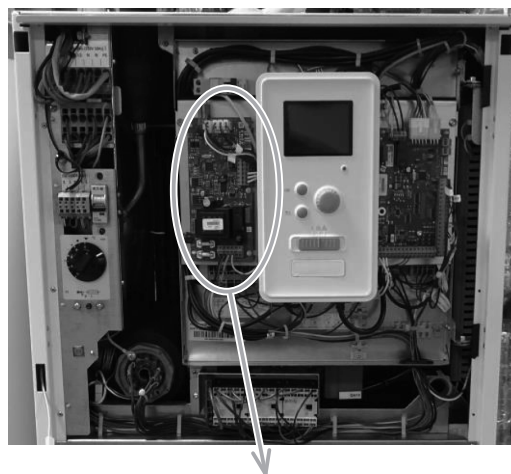


Ethernet cable (X1)

Communication cable (X9)

Replace AA23 communication card

1. Disconnect all wiring and remove AA23 card by unlocking plastic PCB holders.



AA23 communication card

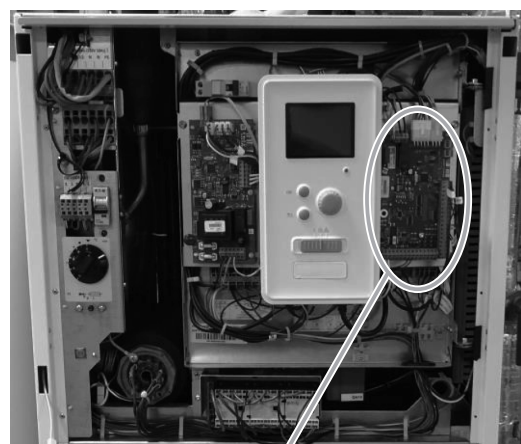


Plastic holders

2. Place the new AA23 communication card, lock in on plastic holders, connect all cabling and close unit.

Replace AA3 Card

1. Remove all cabling and screw to replace AA3 card.



AA3 card



Screw

2. Place the new AA3 card, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace AA2 Card

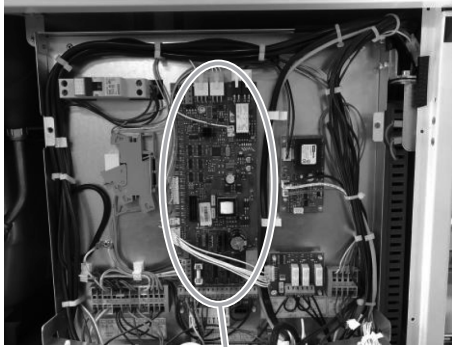
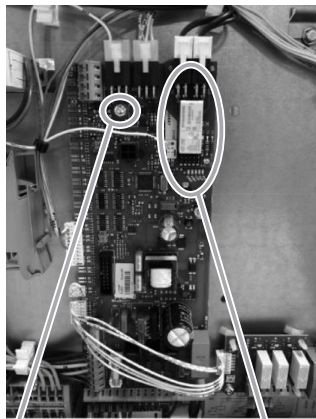
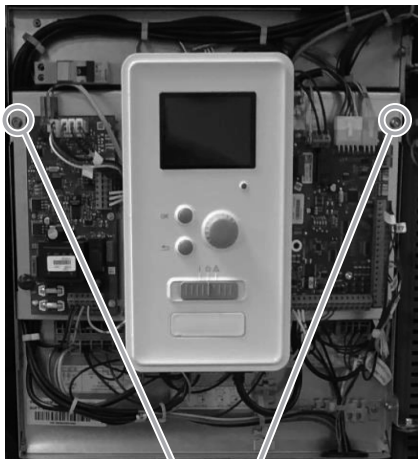
1. Disconnect circulation pump(s) and valve(s) cabling placed on AA2-X4.

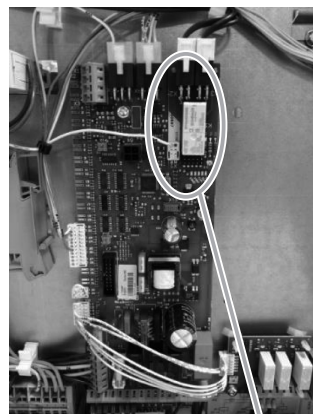


2. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA2 card.



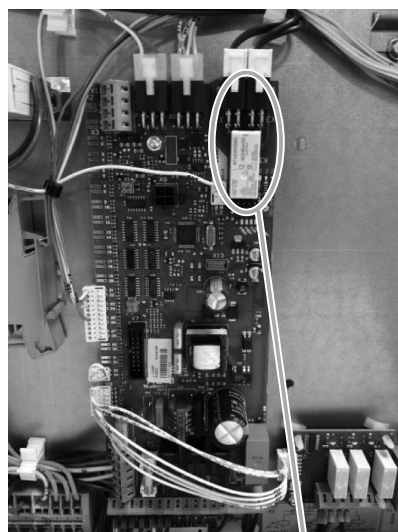
Screws

	 <p style="text-align: center;">AA2 card</p>
<p>3. Disconnect all cabling, remove AA27 card relay card from AA2 and remove AA2 card by removing screw.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Screw AA27 Relay card</p>
<p>4. Place the new AA2 card, connect AA27 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.</p>	
<p>Replace AA27 Card</p>	
<p>1. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA27 card.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Screws</p>



AA27 Relay card

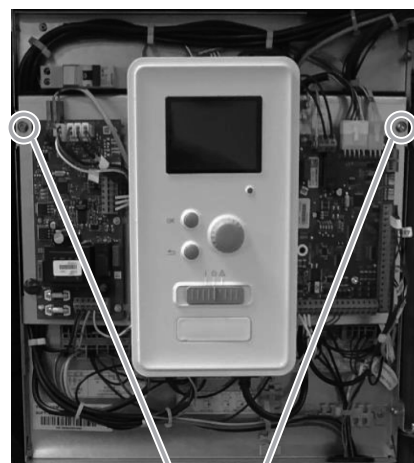
2. Disconnect cabling from AA27, remove it, place new AA27 relay card, connect all cabling and close controller.



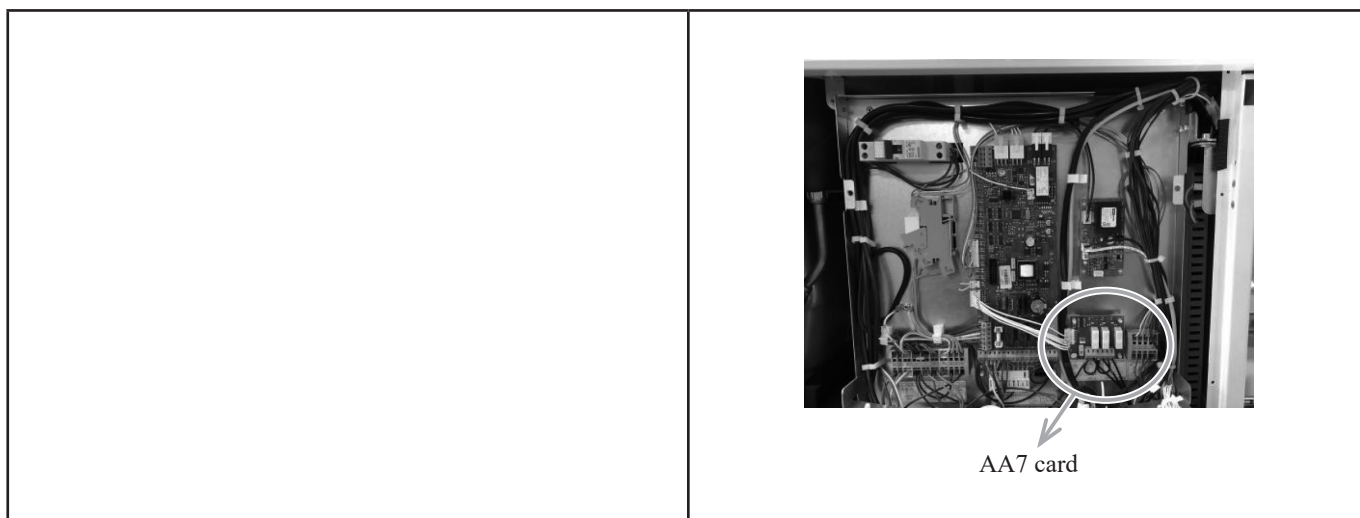
AA27 Relay card

Replace AA7 Card

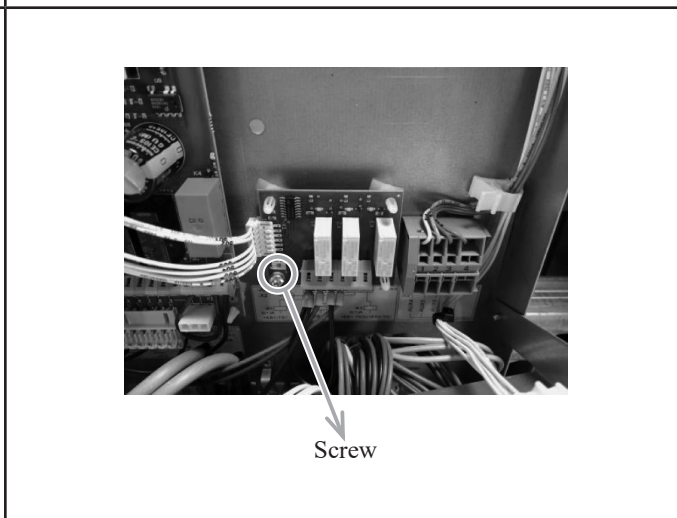
1. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA7 card.



Screws



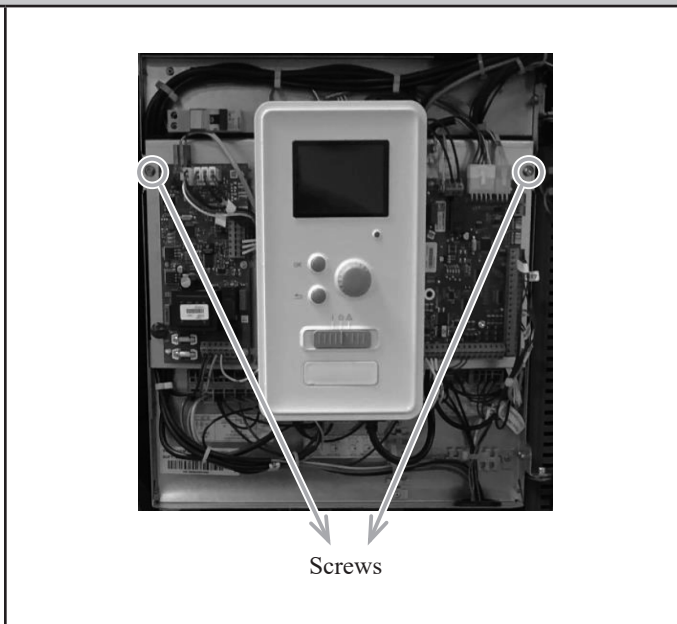
2. Disconnect cabling from AA7, and remove screw release it.



3. Place the new AA7 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace AA8 Card

1. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA8 card.





AA8 card




2. Disconnect cabling from AA8, remove it, place new AA8 relay card, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace T1 thermostat or F3 Limiter

1. Remove screws in order to access back part of T1 or F3.

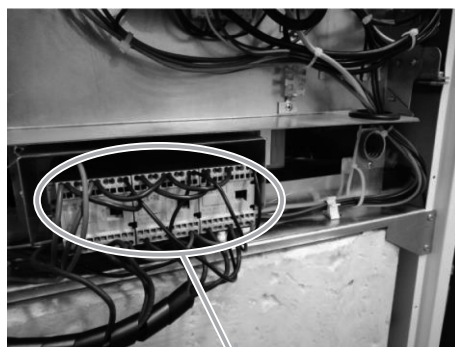


T1 thermostat
or
F3 Limiter

	 <p>Screws</p>
<p>2. Disconnect all wiring from T1 or F3 and capillary from electrical heater and remove it.</p>	 <p>T1 or F3 Cabling</p>  <p>T1 or F3 Capillary</p>
<p>3. Place the new T1 or F3, connect all cabling and capillary on the electrical heater and close unit.</p>	

Replace K1-K3 subm. heater contact

1. Disconnect all wiring from K1 or K2 or K3 and remove it.



K1-K3 submersible heater contact

2. Place the new K1 or K2 or K3 submersible heater contact, connect all the wiring and close unit.

Access service parts of HMA

1. Remove screw from top part of the control box holder.



Screw

2. Open the control box to access service parts.



Service parts

Release pressure of heating circuit

1. Close valves of heating circuit and release pressure from the system, opening safety valve until pressure reaches zero bar.
This must be done when an hydraulic part needs to be replaced.

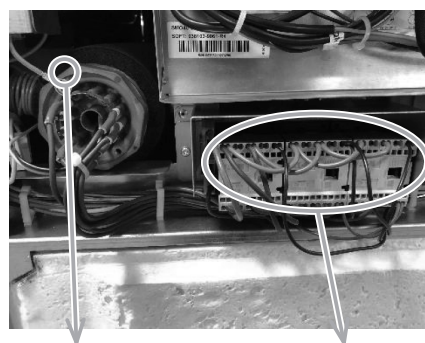


Replace EB1 submersible heater

1. Remove cabling from electrical heater and k1- k3 contactor and then remove submersible heater.
Before untie the heater please see **“Release pressure of heating circuit”**.



Submersible heater



Ground cable

K1-K3 contactor

2. Place new submersible heater, connect cabling, fill heating system, check if there are no leaks and close the unit.

Replace CM1 expansion vessel

1. Remove expansion vessel.
Before remove it see “**Release pressure of heating circuit**” chapter.



Expansion vessel



Untie it from here

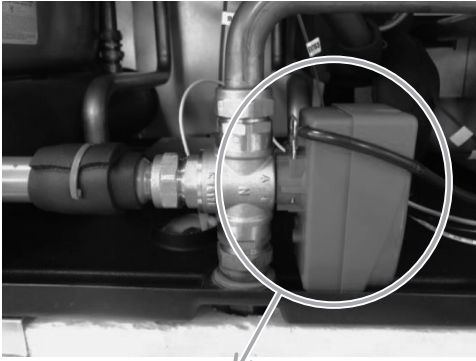
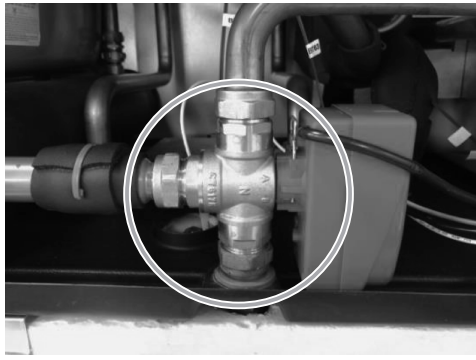
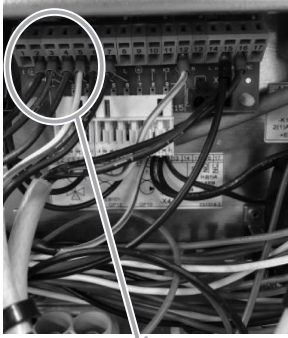
2. Place new expansion vessel, fill the heating system, check if there are no leaks and close the unit.

Replace QN10 valve

1. Release header from QN10 by pulling up bracer and then pushing header to the right.



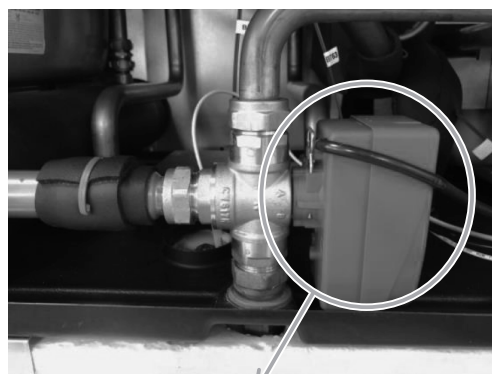
QN 10 valve

	 <p>Header from QN10</p>
<p>2. Remove valve from QN10. Before remove it see “Release pressure of heating circuit”.</p>	 <p>Valve from QN10</p>
<p>3. Place new valve from QN10, fill the heating system, check if there are no leaks, place QN10 header and close the unit.</p>	
<p>Replace QN10 header</p>	
<p>1. Disconnect QN10 cabling from AA2 card, terminal X4.</p>	 <p>X4: 2,3,4</p>

2. Release header from QN10 by pulling up bracer and then pushing header to the right.



QN 10 valve

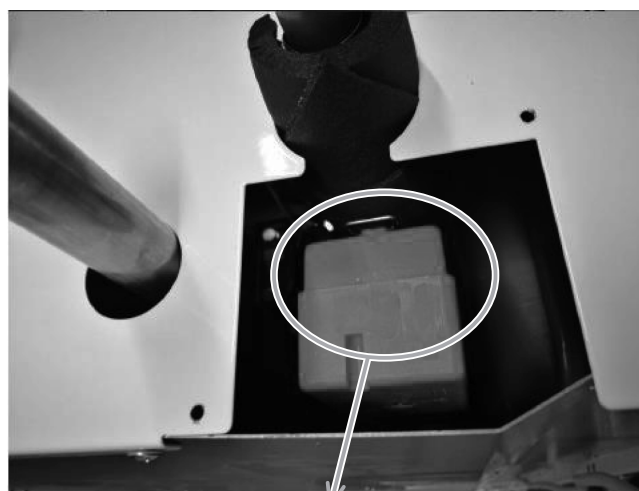


Header from QN10

3. Place QN10 header, connect cabling again to AA2 card, terminal X4. (see 1st step.)

Replace QN12 valve

1. Release header from QN12 by pulling up bracer and then pushing header to the back and up. It is possible to access it from the top of the unit.



QN 12 valve

2. Remove valve from QN12.
Before remove it see **“Release pressure of heating circuit”** chapter and remove insulation.

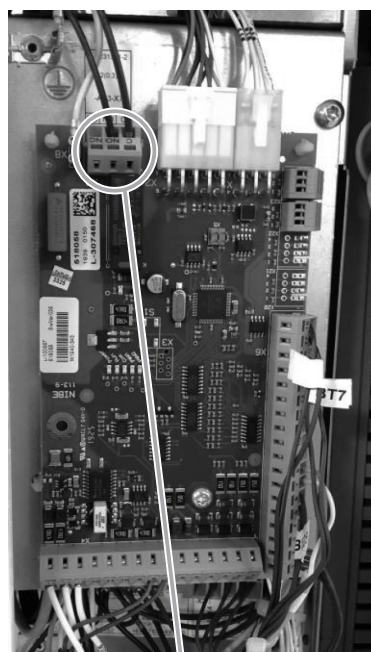


Insulation and valve from QN12

3. Place new valve from QN12, fill the heating system, check if there are no leaks, place again insulation, place QN12 header, and close the unit.

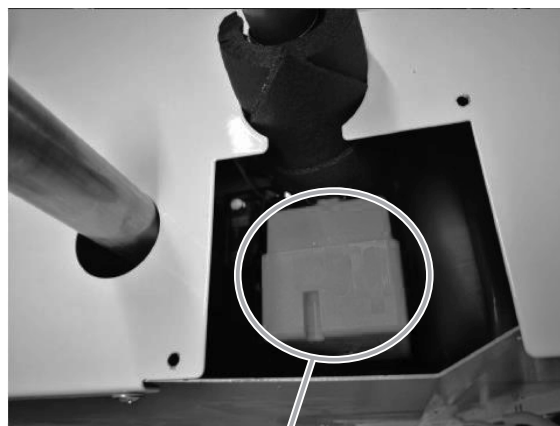
Replace QN12 header

1. Disconnect QN12 cabling from AA3 card, terminal X7.



AA3-X7: 2,3,4

2. Release header from QN12 by pulling up bracer and then pushing header to the back and up. It is possible to access it from the top of the unit.



QN 12 valve

3. Place QN12 header, connect cabling again to AA2 card, terminal X4. (see 1st step.)

Replace GP12 charge pump

1. Disconnect GP12 connector.




GP12 connector

2. Remove circulation pump.
 Before remove it see **“Release pressure of heating circuit”** chapter and remove insulation.
 It is possible to remove circulation pump by two ways:
 - Remove screws placed on the rotor (screws are behind the insulation).
 - Remove all GP 12 module.



GP12 charge pump

<p>3. Place new circulation pump, fill the heating system, check if there are no leaks, place again insulation and close the unit.</p>	
<p>Replace safety valve</p>	
<p>1. Remove safety valve. Before remove it see “Releasing pressure of heating circuit”.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Safety valve</p>
<p>2. Place new safety valve, fill the heating system and check if there are no leaks.</p>	

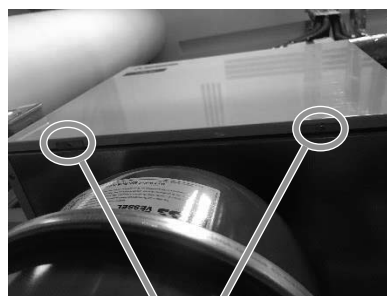
HSB60-W/100-W/140

Unit of HSB series

1. Remove 2 screws from the bottom part of the unit



Screws are located here (bottom)



Screws

2. Remove the lid by pulling it and pushing it up



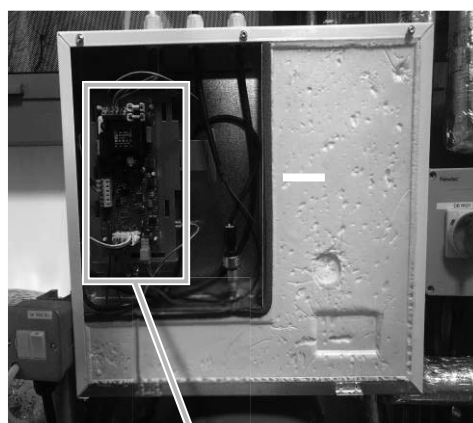
On HSB60/100-W component position might be different but method is the same

Unit of HSB series



Replace AA23 communication card

1. Disconnect all wiring and remove AA23 card by unlocking plastic PCB holders

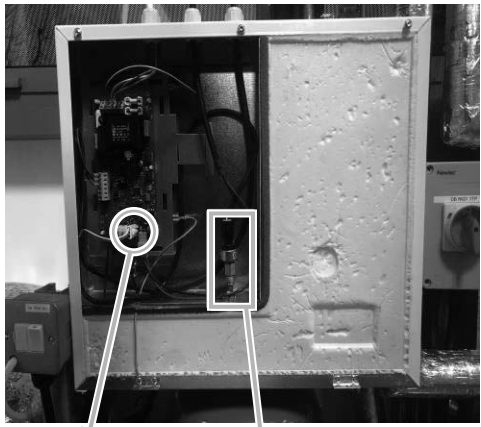
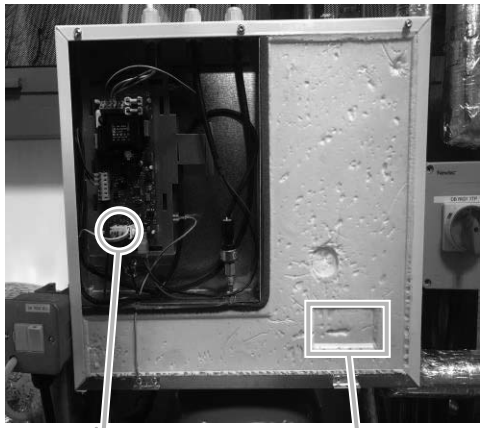


AA23 communication card

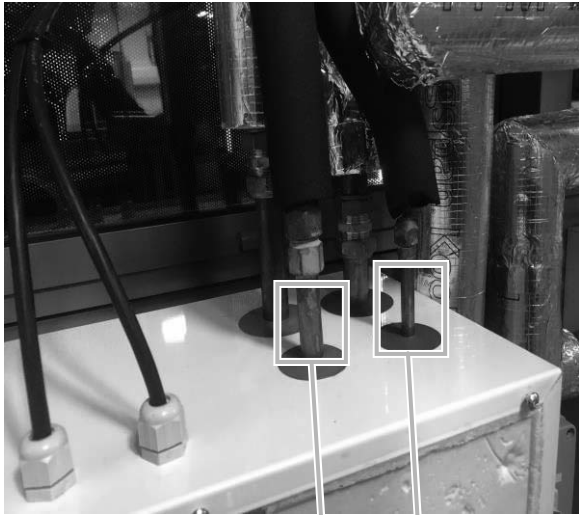
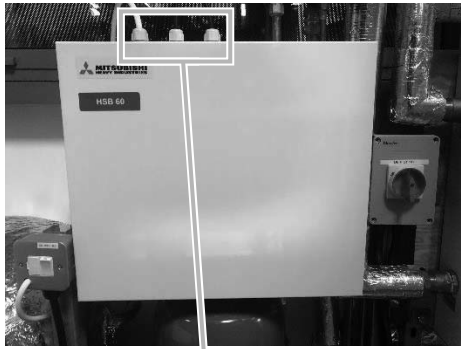
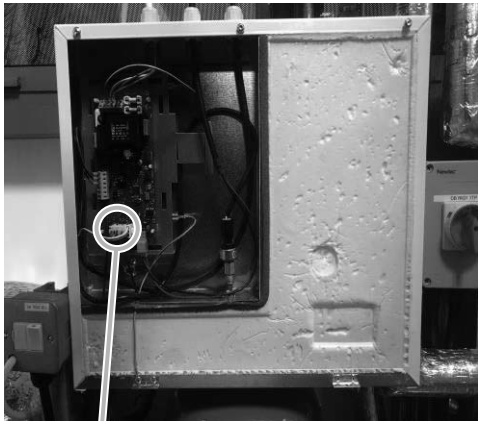


Plastic holders

On HSB60/100-W component position might be different but method is the same

Unit of HSB series	
<p>2. Place the new AA23 communication card, lock in on plastic holders, connect all cabling and close unit</p>	
Replace pressure sensor BP4	
<p>Before removing pressure the pressure sensor make sure that you pump down the unit and that outdoor unit valves are closed!</p> <p>1. Unscrew BP4 pressure sensor, remove cabling from AA23 communication card.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">BP4 connector Pressure sensor (BP4)</p>
<p>2. Install the new pressure sensor, connect all the cables, pressure test the circuit for leak check and then open the outdoor unit valves.</p>	
Replace temperature sensor BT15	
<p>1. Cut the insulation material in the square box that is on the bottom right part of the HSB unit.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">BT15 connector Insulation BT15 is in the back.</p>
<p>2. Remove the damaged sensor and its cabling.</p>	
<p>3. Install the new sensor and guide the sensor cable to AA23 communication card.</p>	

On HSB60/100-W component position might be different but method is the same

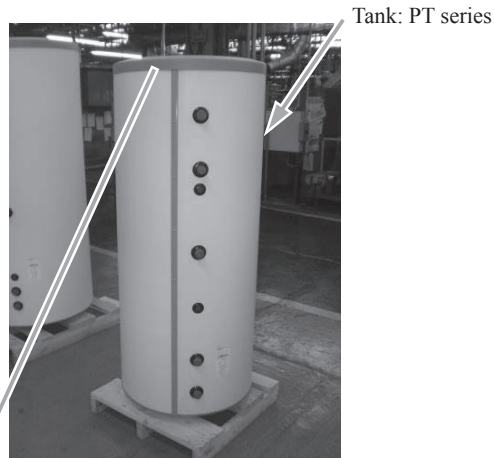
Unit of HSB series	
Replace temperature sensor BT12 and BT3	
<p>As temperature sensors BT12 (heating medium flow) and BT3 (heating medium return) are installed on the water pipes (back of the unit) and covered with insulation there is limitation to access, so it is not possible to remove damaged sensors. Solution is leave the sensors on the unit and install the new ones in a different position.</p> <p>1. Install the new sensor (BT12 or BT3) on the external water pipes from the unit. Make sure that there is contact between the sensor and the pipe and that the sensor is insulated along the pipe.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">BT12 BT3</p>
<p>2. Guide the new sensor cable to AA23 communication board using one of the available cable glands</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Cable glands</p>
<p>3. Remove cabling from the damaged temperature sensor and connect the new one.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">BT12/BT3 connector</p>

On HSB60-W component position might be different but method is the same

PT300/500

Tank of PT series

1. Remove the top panel of the tank.



2. Remove the styrofoam.

2.



3.



4.



5.

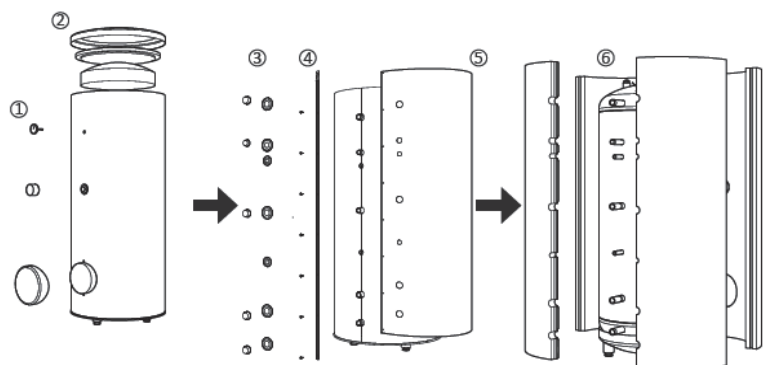


3. See the tank.



4. (Details)

- (1) Remove the temperature gauge, plug of the heating element connector pipe and blanking plate of the inspection opening.
- (2) Remove the upper cover of the housing together with thermal insulation.
- (3) Remove the plugs from the connector pipes and black bushings.
- (4) Remove the fixing screws and the strip connecting the housing jacket.
- (5) Remove the jacket surrounding the tank (housing jacket.)
- (6) Remove the four-piece thermal insulation.



RC-HY20-W

Opening controller

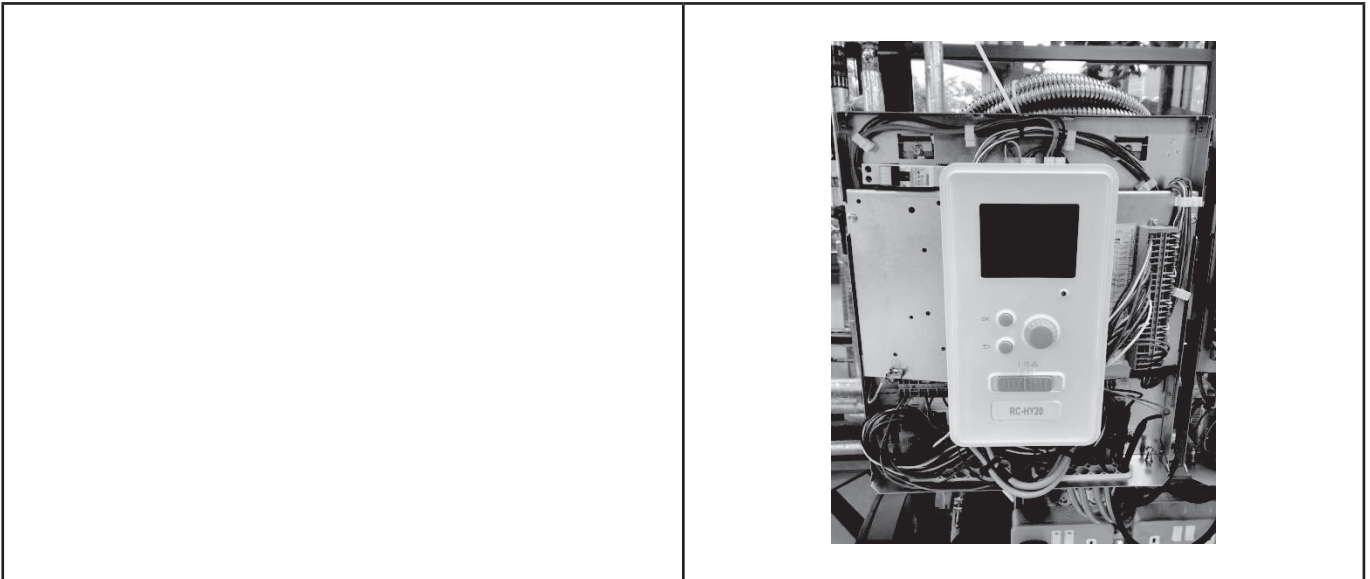
1. Remove 2 screws from the bottom part of the controller.



Screws

2. Remove the lid.






Replacing display

1. Unlock display on the top part.



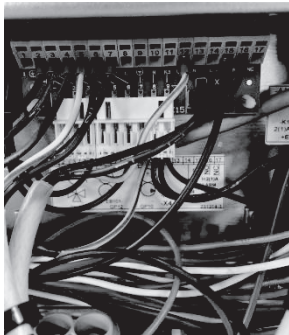
2. While unlocking it pull it up and remove it.

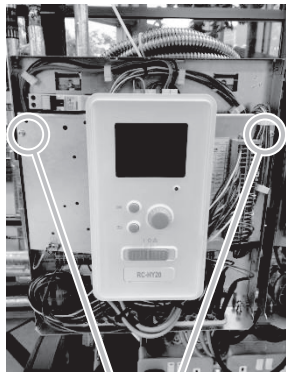


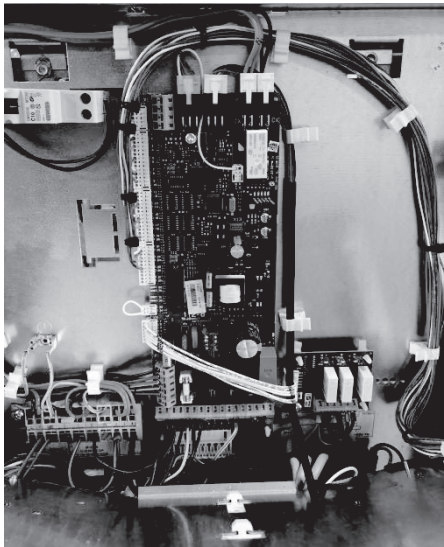
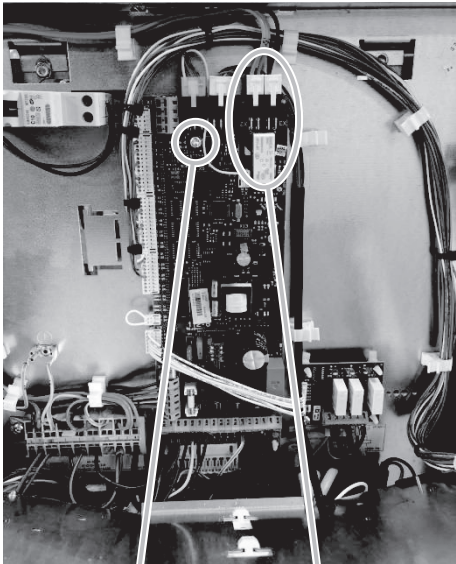
<p>3. Remove communication cable (X1) and Ethernet cable (X9) from the connectors.</p>	 <p>Ethernet cable (X1) Communication cable (X9)</p>
---	---

<p>4. Connect cabling on the new display and place in on the controller and close it.</p>	
--	--

Replace AA2 Card

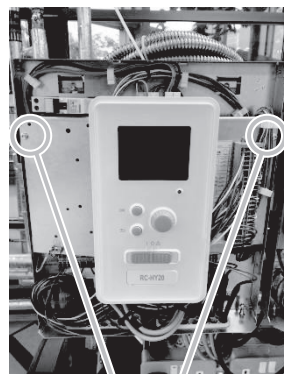
<p>1. Disconnect circulation pump(s) and valve(s) cabling placed on AA2-X4.</p>	
--	---

<p>2. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA2 card.</p>	 <p>Screws</p>
--	--

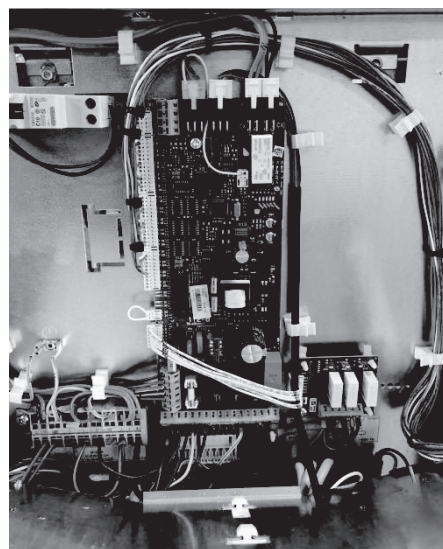
	
<p>3. Disconnect all wiring, remove AA27 card relay card from AA2 and remove AA2 card by removing screw.</p>	 <p>Screw AA27 Relay card</p>
<p>4. Place the new AA2 card, connect AA27 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.</p>	

Replace AA27 Card

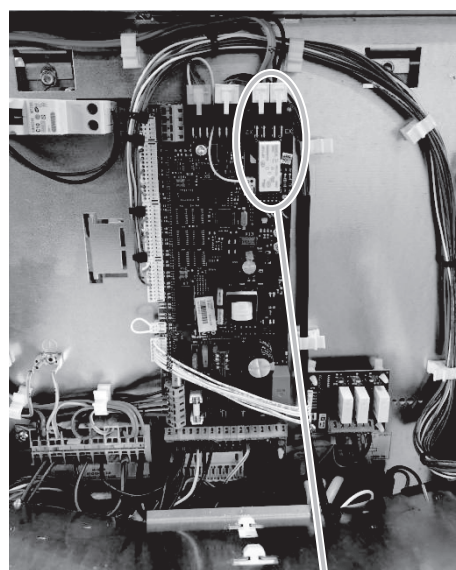
1. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA27 card.



Screws



5. Disconnect cabling from AA27, and remove it.

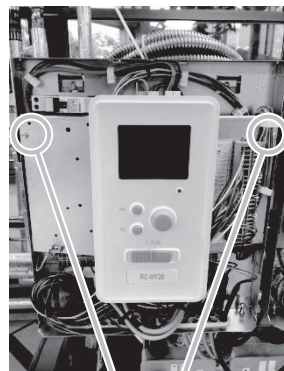


AA27 Relay card

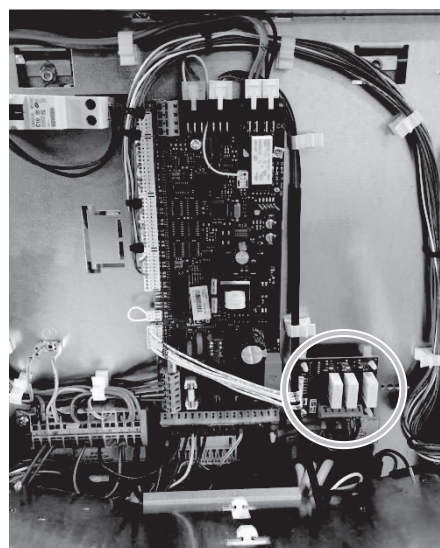
6. Place the new AA27 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace AA7 Card

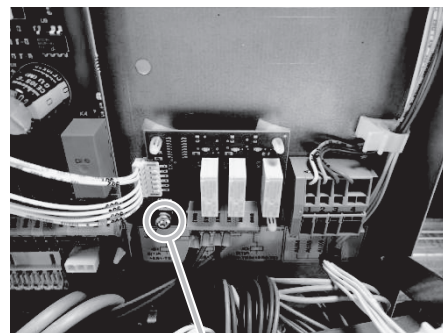
2. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA7 card.



Screws



7. Disconnect wiring from AA7, and remove screw release it.



Screw

8. Place the new AA7 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.

RC-HY40-W

Opening controller

1. Remove 2 screws from the bottom part of the controller.



Screws

2. Remove the lid.





Replacing display


1. Unlock display on the top part.



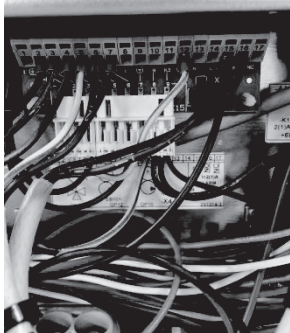
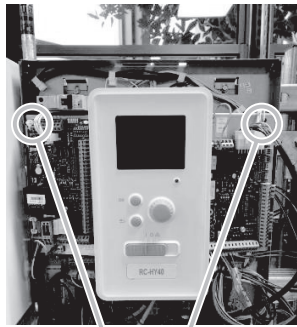
2. While unlocking it pull it up and remove it.

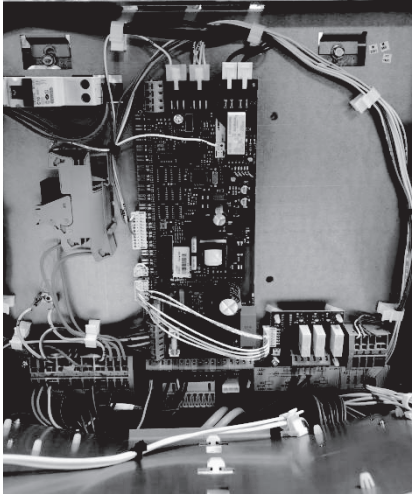
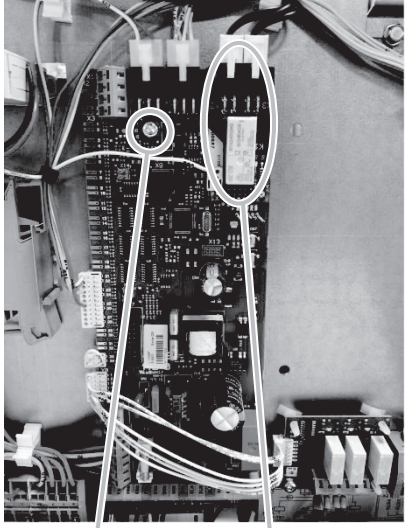


3. Remove communication cable (X1) and Ethernet cable (X9) from the connectors.

	 <p>Ethernet cable (X1) Communication cable (X9)</p>
<p>4. Connect cabling on the new display and place in on the controller and close it.</p>	

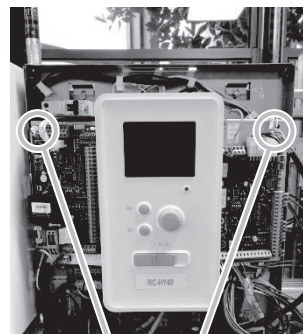
Replace AA2 Card

<p>1. Disconnect circulation pump(s) and valve(s) cabling placed on AA2-X4.</p>	
<p>2. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA2 card.</p>	 <p>Screws</p>

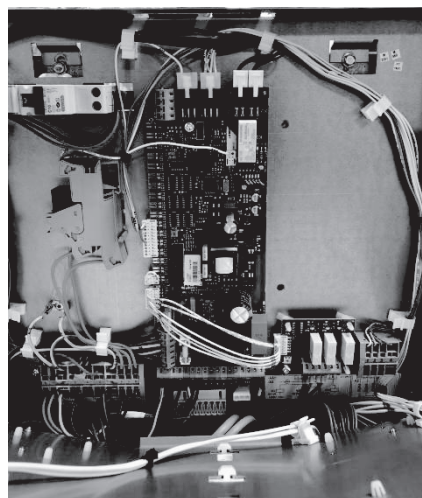
	
<p>3. Disconnect all cabling, remove AA27 card relay card from AA2 and remove AA2 card by removing screw.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Screw AA27 Relay card</p>
<p>4. Place the new AA2 card, connect AA27 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.</p>	

Replace AA27 Card

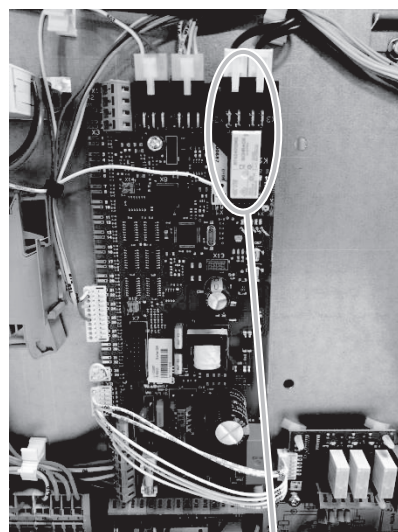
1. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA27 card.



Screws



5. Disconnect cabling from AA27, and remove it.

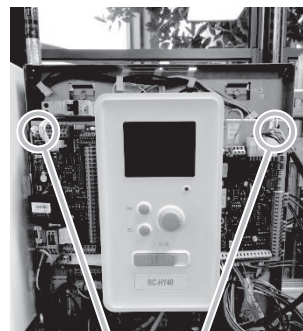


AA27 Relay card

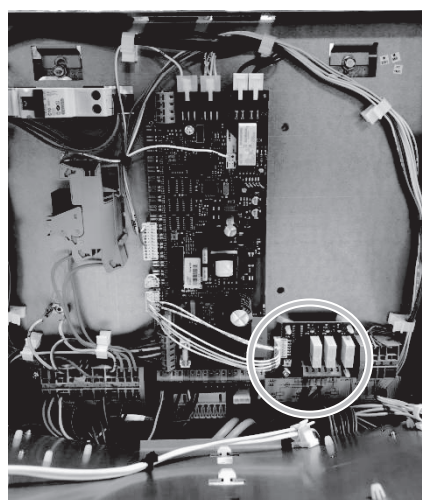
6. Place the new AA27 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace AA7 Card

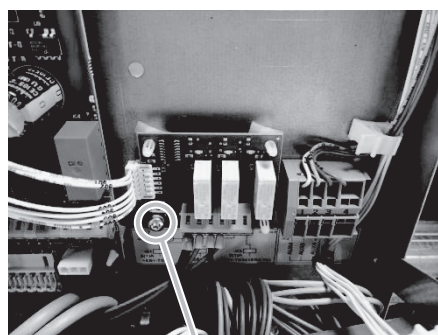
2. Open front part by removing two screws in order to access AA7 card.



Screws



7. Disconnect cabling from AA7, and remove screw release it.



Screw

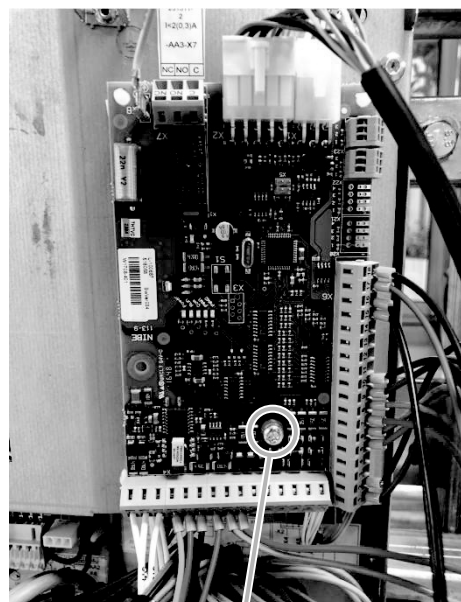
8. Place the new AA7 relay card again, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace AA3 Card (only RC-HY40-W)

1. Remove all cabling and screw to replace AA3 card.



AA3 card



Screw

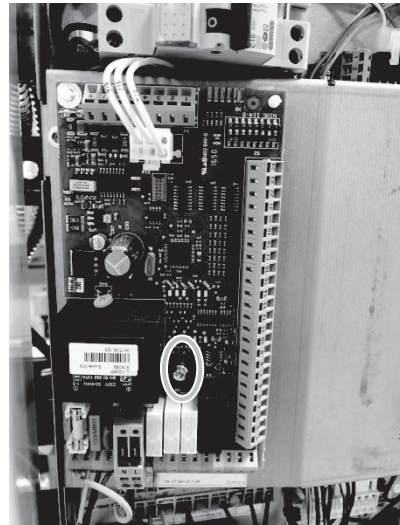
2. Place the new AA3 card, connect all cabling and close controller.

Replace AA5 accessory card (only RC-HY40-W)

1. Remove all cabling and screw to replace AA5 card.

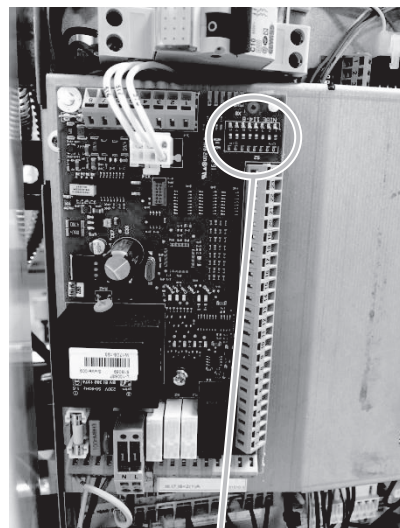


AA5card



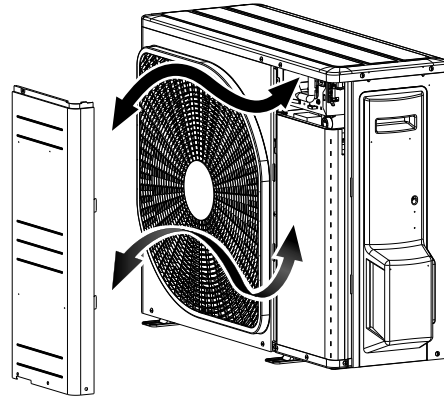
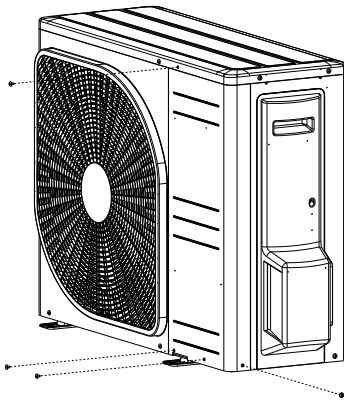
Screw

2. Place the new AA5 card, connect all cabling, configure dip switch and close controller.

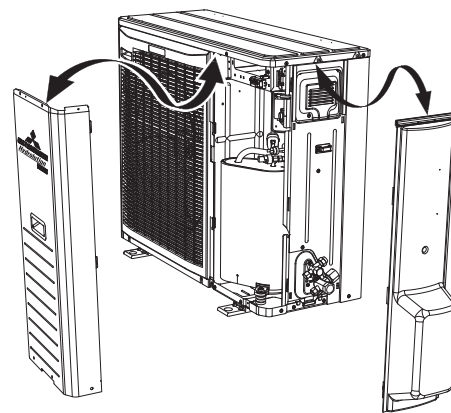
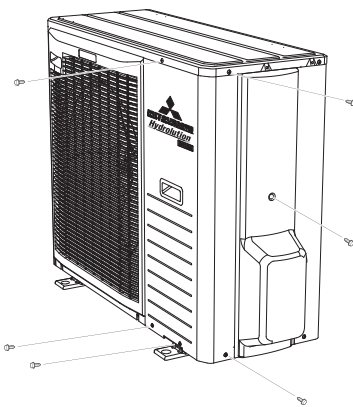


DIP switch

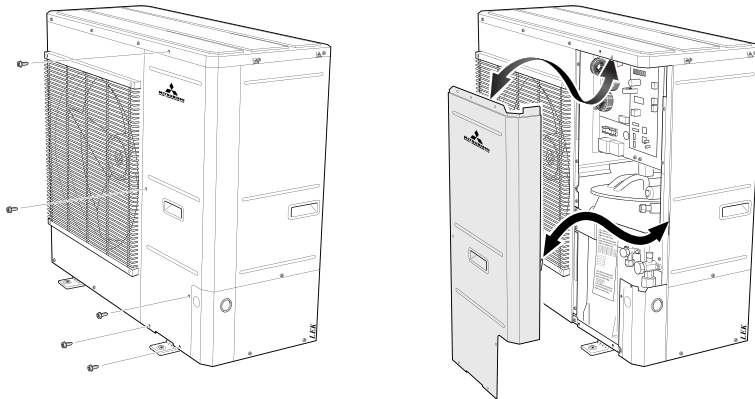
**Outdoor unit
FDCW60VNX-A**



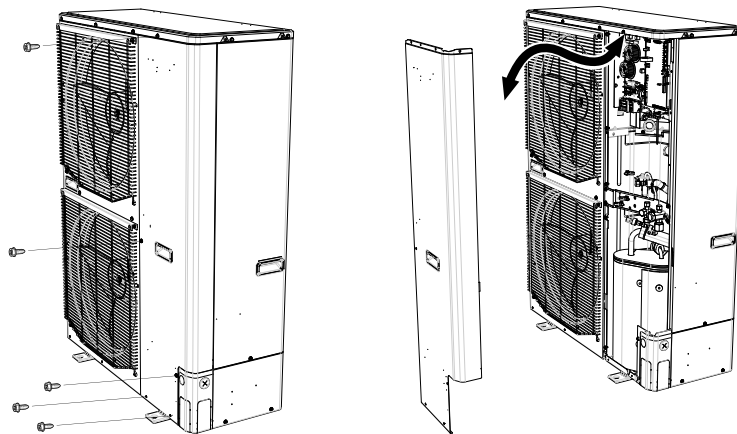
FDCW71VNX-A



FDCW100VNX-A



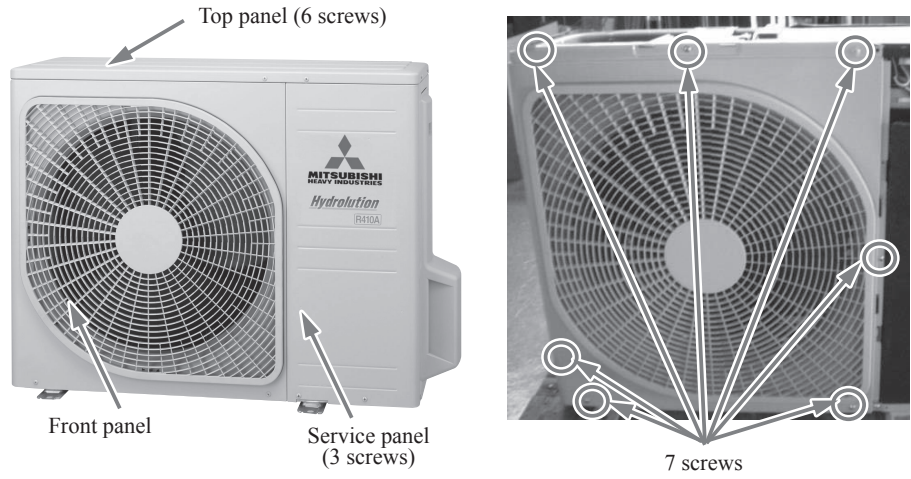
FDCW140VNX-A



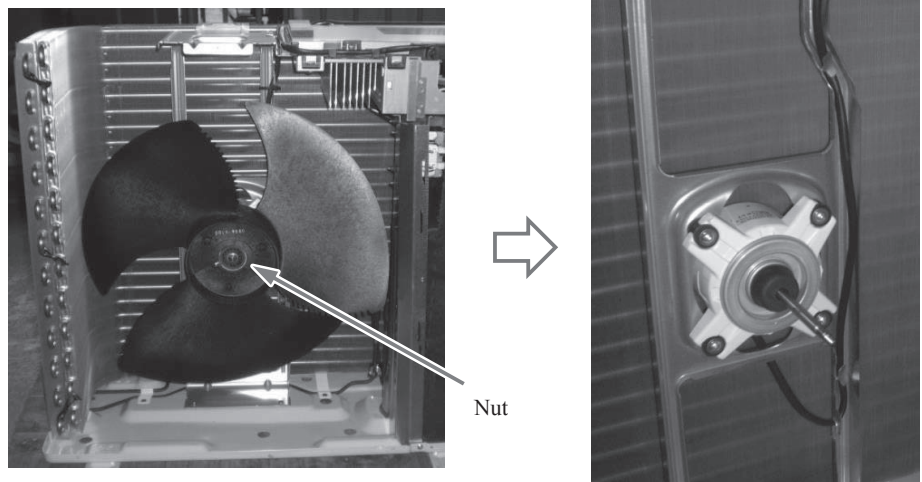
FDCW60VNX-A

Fan and fan motor (FMo1)

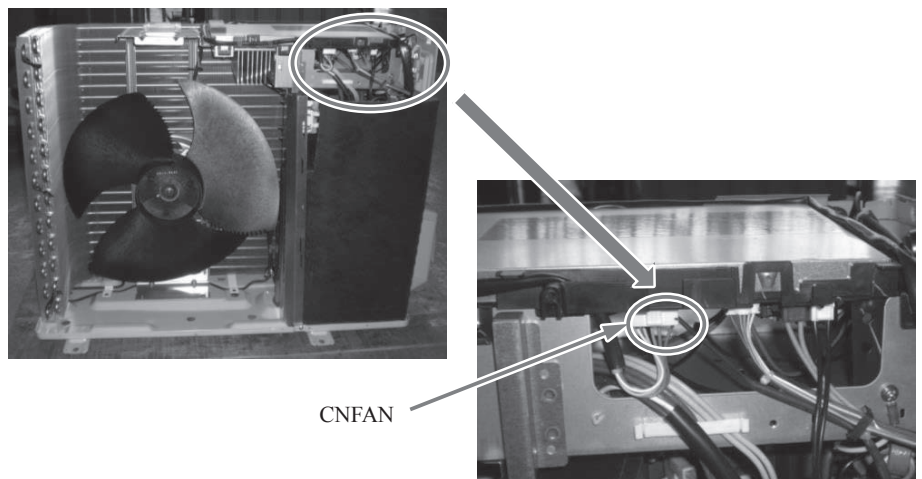
1. Loosen the screw and remove the top panel and service panel first.
2. Loosen 7 screws and remove the panel including fan grills.



3. Loosen the nut and remove the fan propeller.

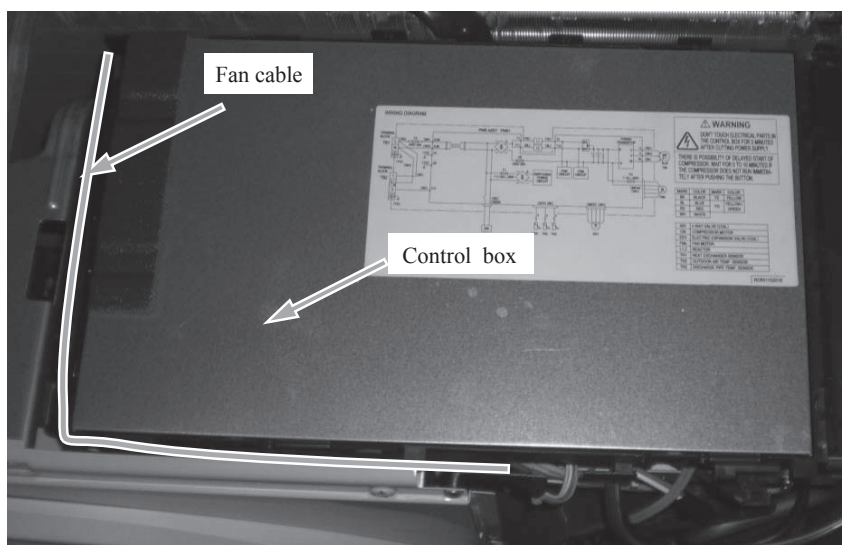


4. Disconnect the connector of CNFAN.



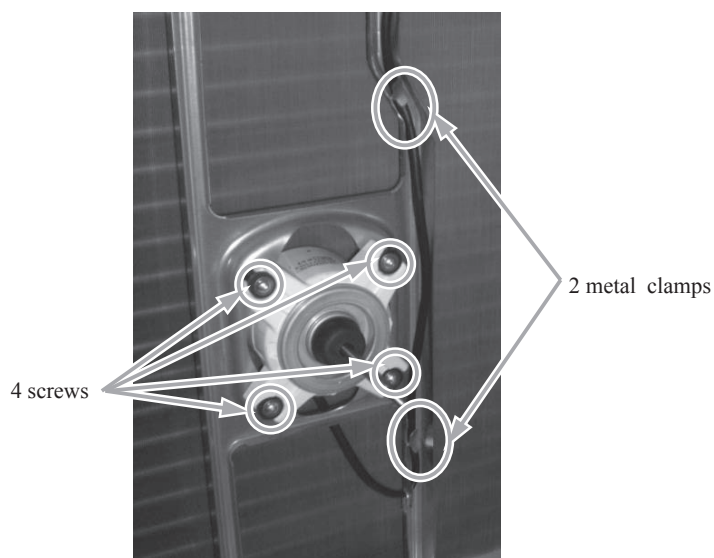
Fan and fan motor (FMo1)

5. Remove band and fan cable.



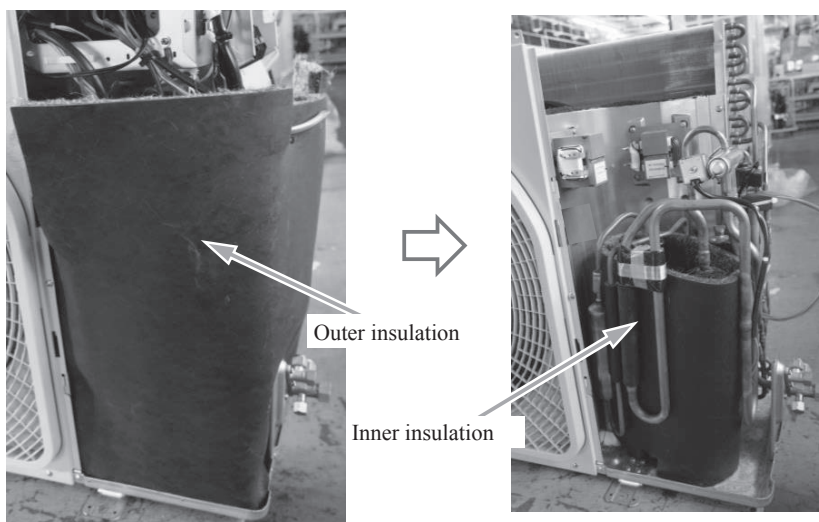
6. Release 2 metal clamps.

7. Loosen 4 screws and remove fan motor.



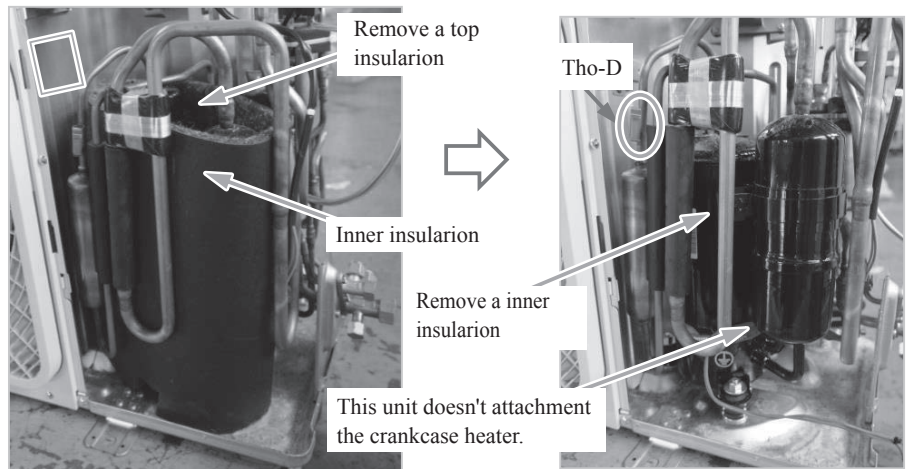
Compressor (CM)

1. Unit the strings and remove the outer insulation.

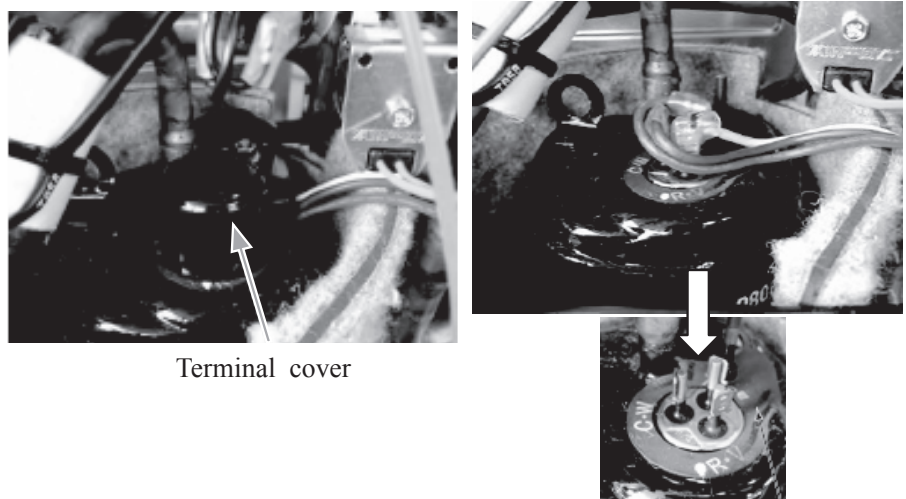


Compressor (CM)

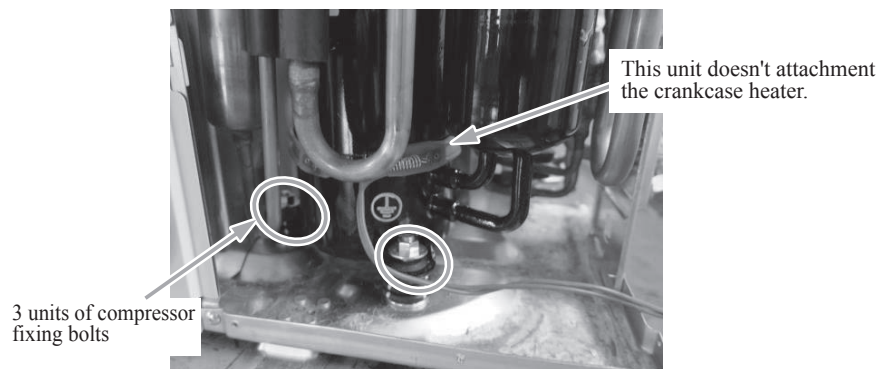
- 2. Remove the top and inner insulations.
- 3. Take off sprig leaf and pull out sensor (Tho-D).



- 4. Remove the terminal cover.
 - 5. Disconnect the faston terminal connectors from compressor.
- U : Red cable
 V : White cable
 W : Blue cable



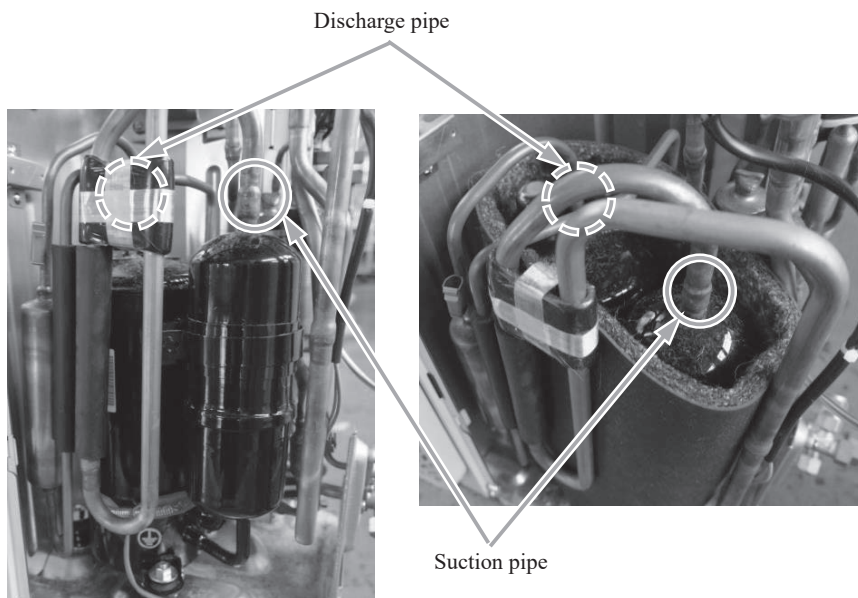
- 6. Loosen 3 units of compressor fixing bolts.



Compressor (CM)

7. Disconnect the pipes for suction and discharge.

8. Remove the compressor.



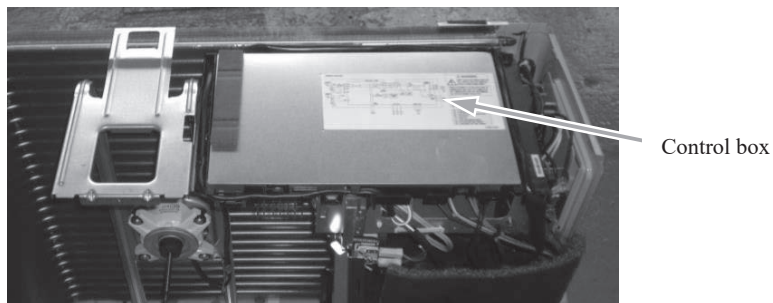
Control PCB (PWB)

1. Open the top panel.

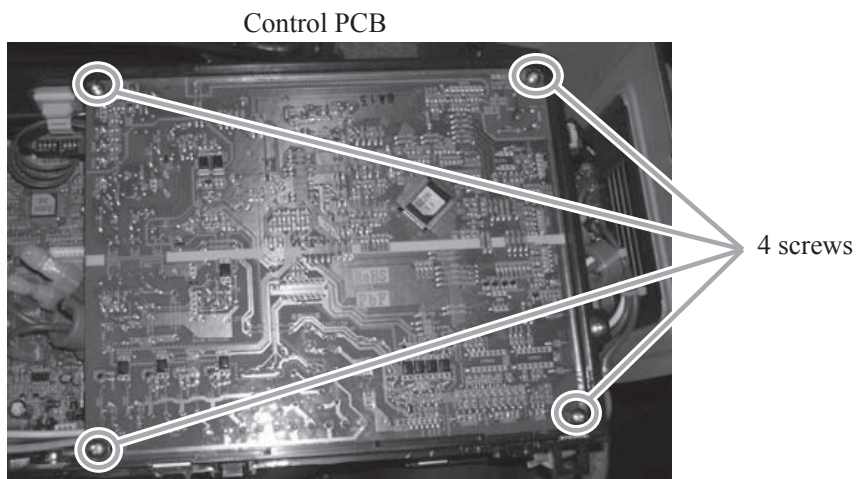
2. Open the control box cover.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from OFF.

3. Loosen 4 screws.



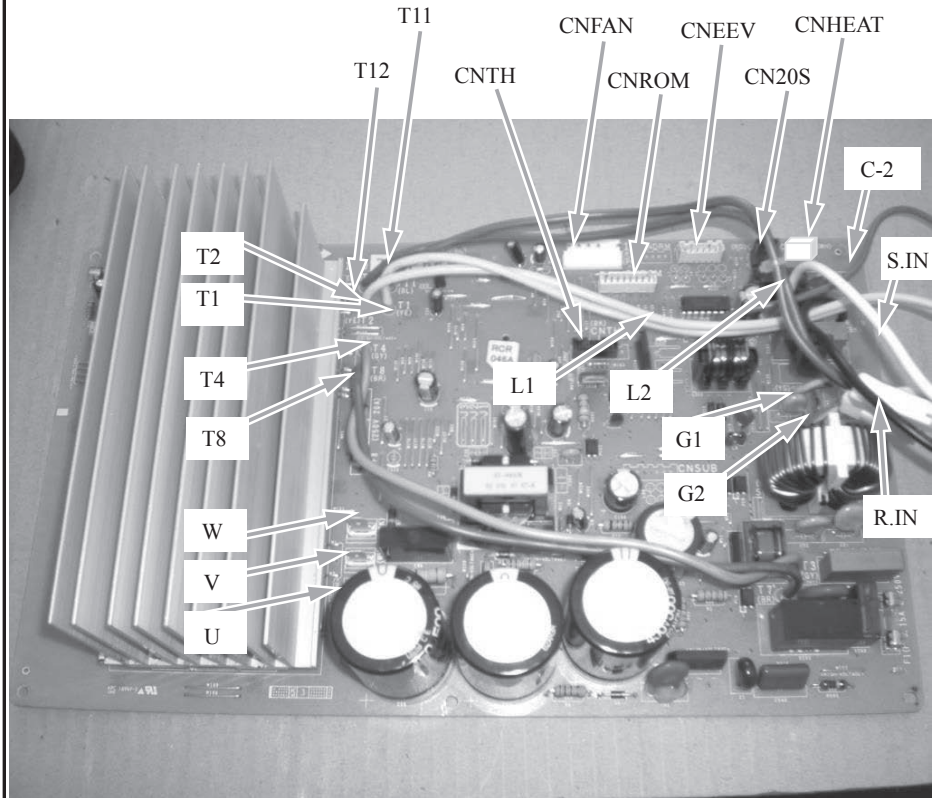
Open the control box cover.



Control PCB (PWB)

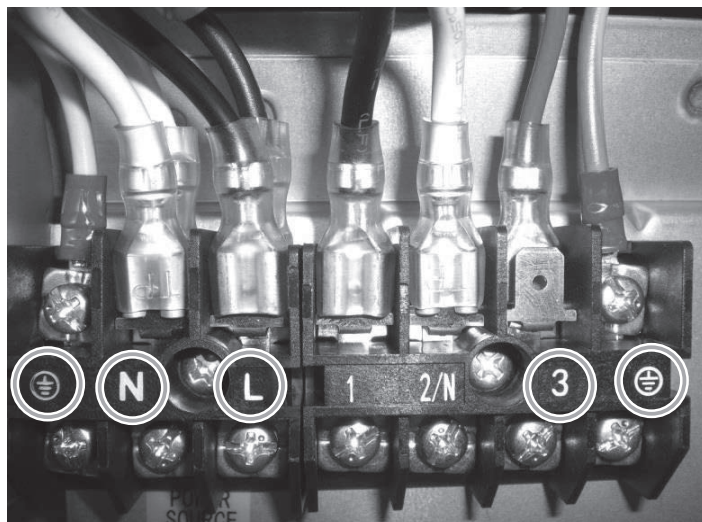
1. Disconnect all connectors and remove the control PCB.

- (Connector)
 CNHEAT
 CN20S
 CNEEV
 CNROM
 CNFAN
 CNTH
 L1
 L2



2. Disconnect all terminals on the terminal block.

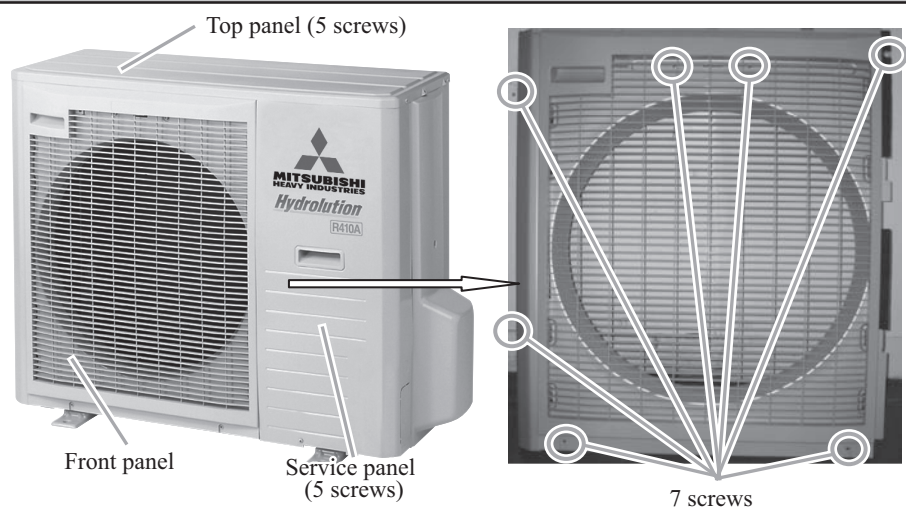
- (Terminal block)
 C-2(Harness color:RED)
 S.IN(Harness color:WHITE)
 R.IN(Harness color:BLACK)
 G1 (Harness color:YELLOW/GREEN)
 G2 (Harness color:YELLOW/GREEN)



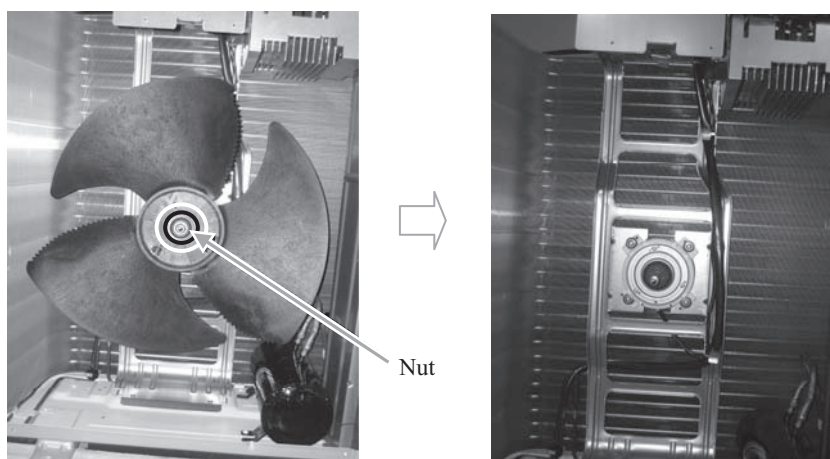
FDCW71VNX-A

Fan and fan motor (FMo1)

1. Loosen the screws and remove the top panel and service panel first.
2. Loosen 5 screws and remove the front grille including fan grille.

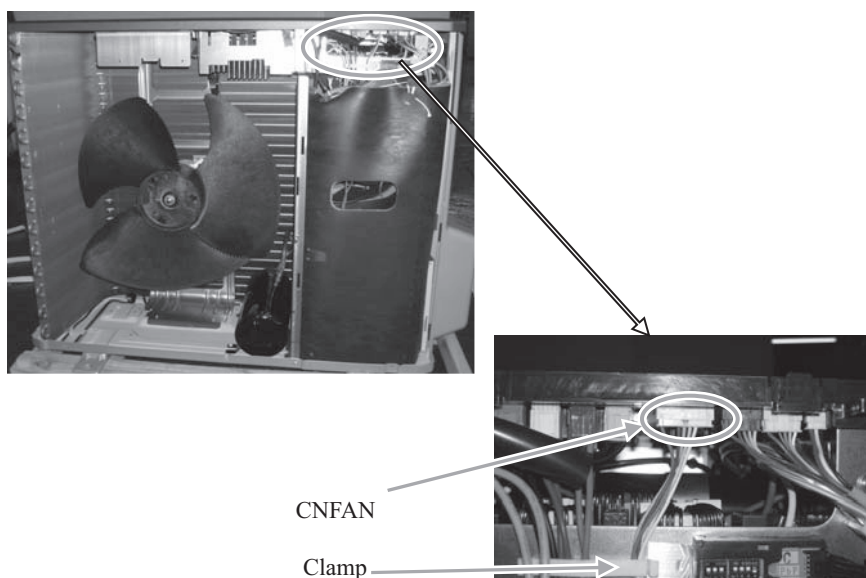


3. Loosen the nut and remove the fan propeller.



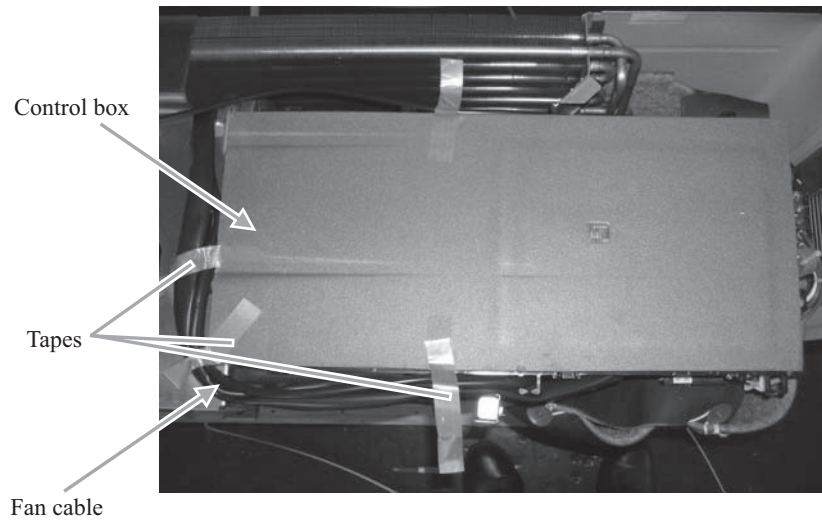
4. Disconnect the connector of CNFAN.

5. Detach the clamp.



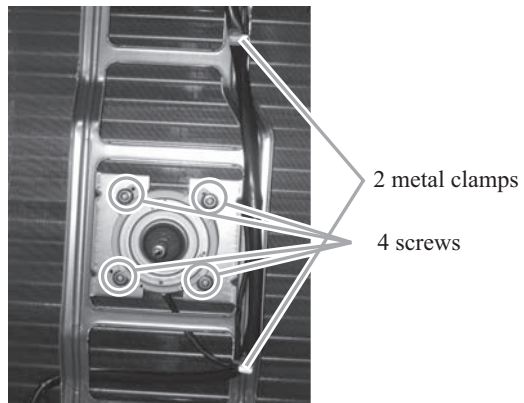
Fan and fan motor (FMo1)

6. Remove tapes and fan cable.



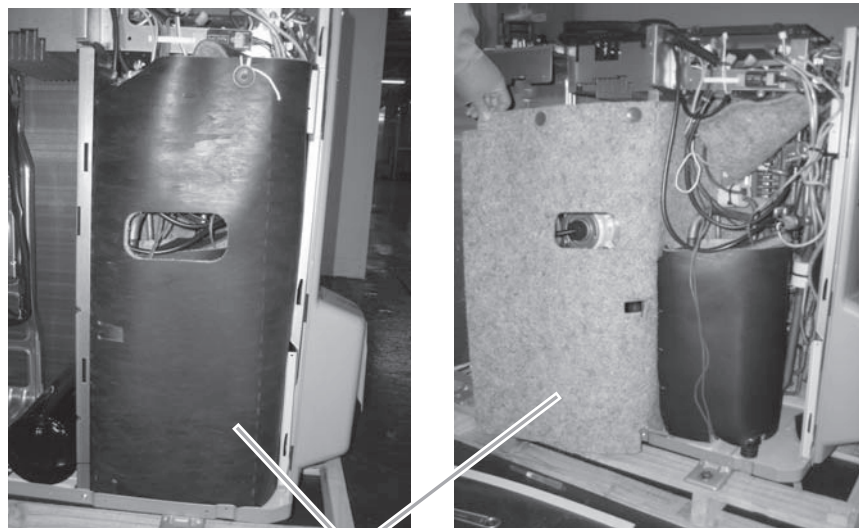
7. Release 2 metal clamps.

8. Loosen 4 screws and remove fan motor.



Compressor (CM)

1. Untie the strings and remove the outer insulation.

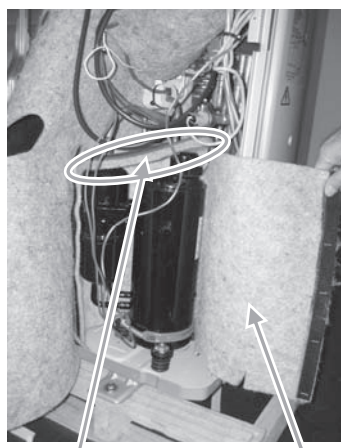


Outer insulation

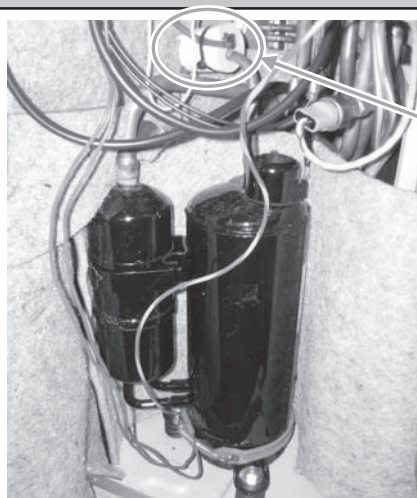
Compressor (CM)

2. Remove the top and inner insulations.

3 Cut off the strap and pull out the sensor (Tho-D).



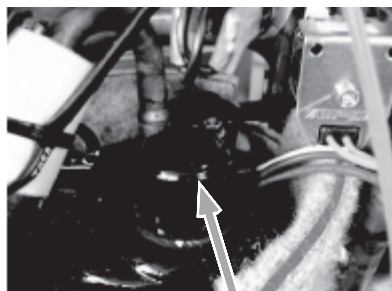
Top insulation Inner insulation



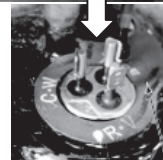
Tho-D

4. Remove the terminal cover.

5. Disconnect the fasten terminal connectors from compressor.
 U: Red cable
 V: White cable
 W: Blue cable



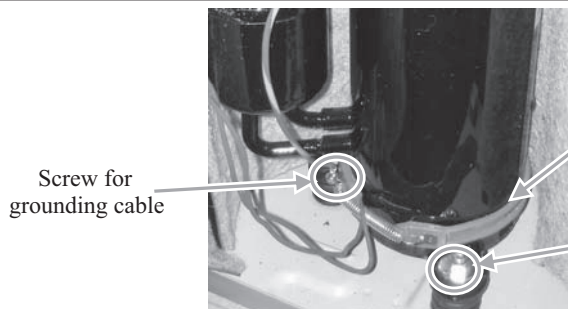
Terminal cover



6. Remove the crankcase heater.

7. Unscrew and disconnect the grounding cable.

8. Loosen 3 nuts of compressor fixing bolts.



Screw for grounding cable

Crankcase heater

3 nuts of compressor fixing bolts

9. Disconnect the pipes for suction and discharge.

10. Remove the compressor.



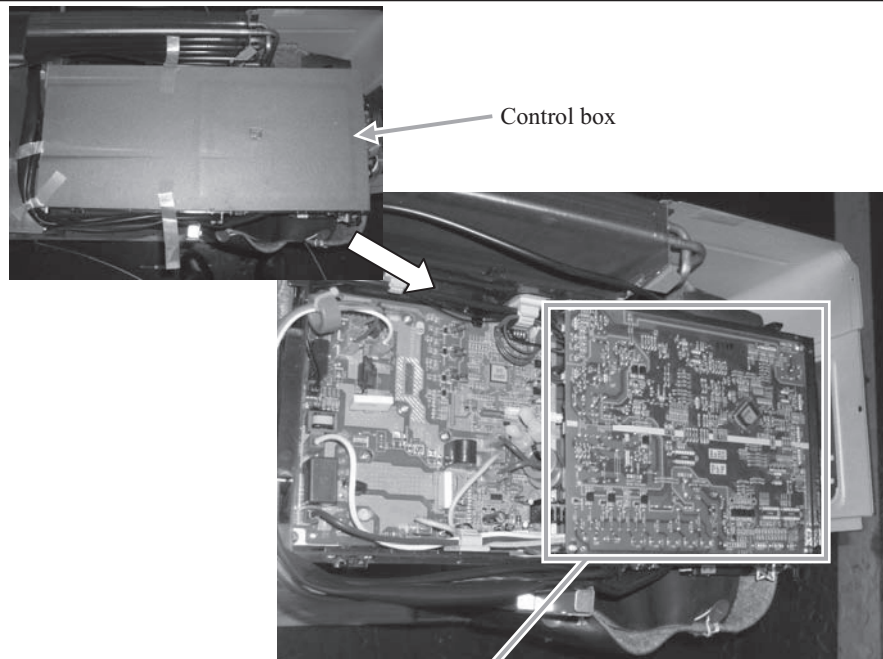
Suction pipe

Discharge pipe

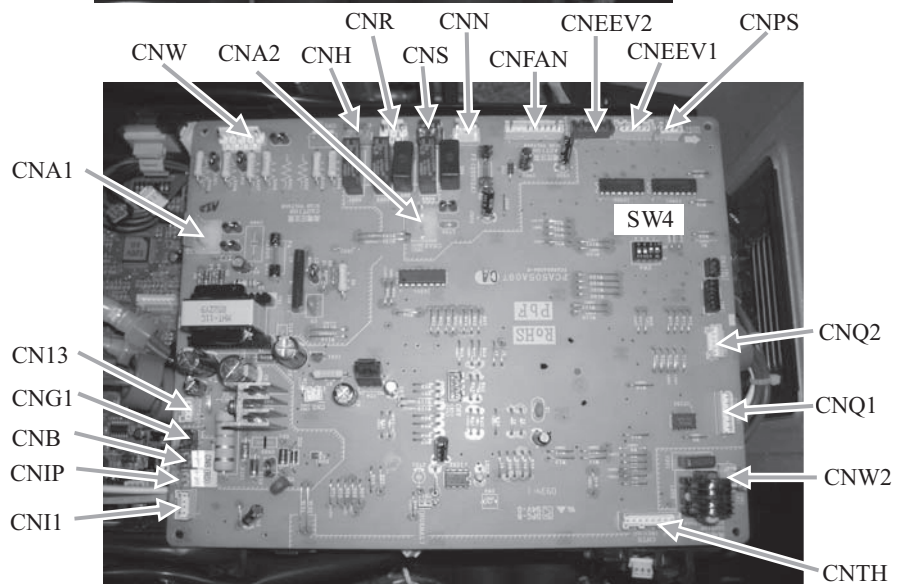
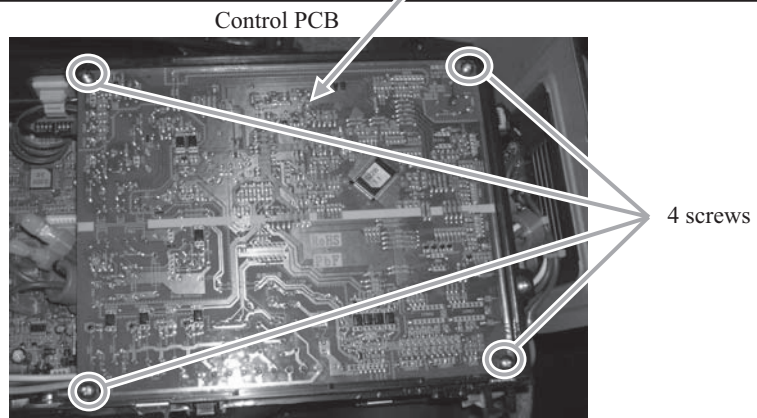
Control PCB (PWB1)

1. Open the top panel.
2. Open the control box cover.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



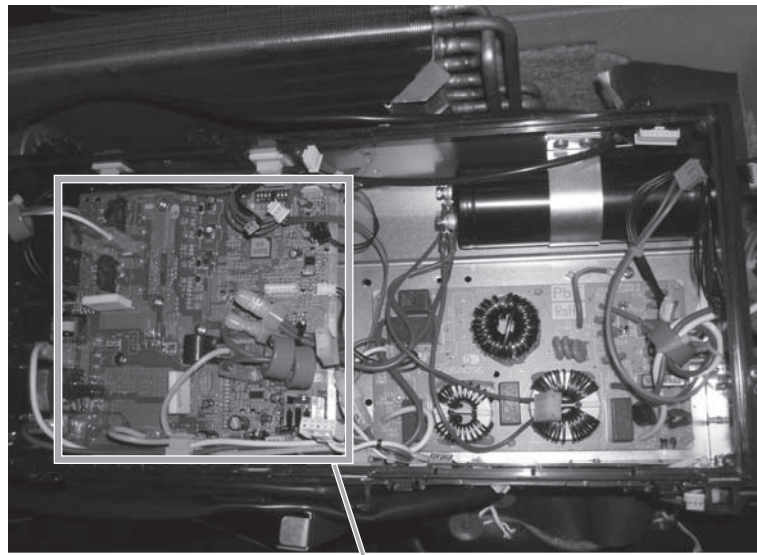
3. Loosen 4 screws.
4. Disconnect all connectors and remove the control PCB.



Inverter PCB (PWB2)

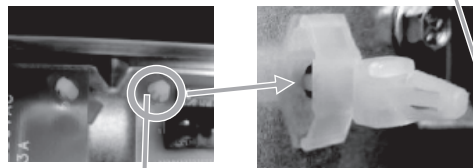
1. Remove control PCB first.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.

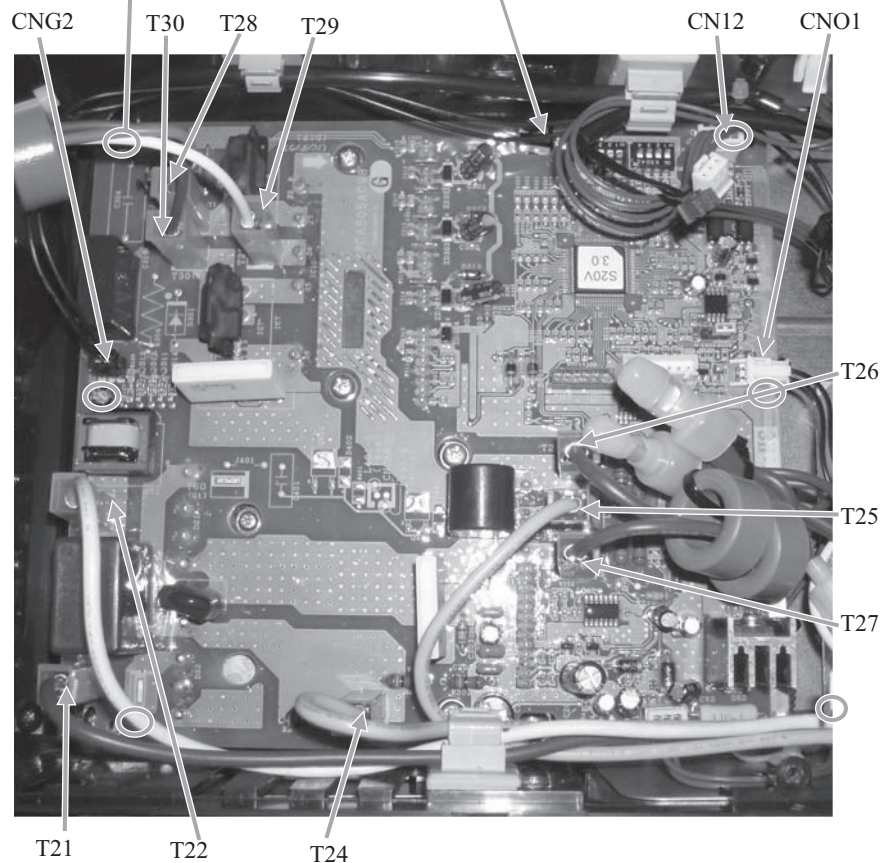


2. Disconnect the connectors.

3. Pinch the head of locking support and remove inverter PCB.



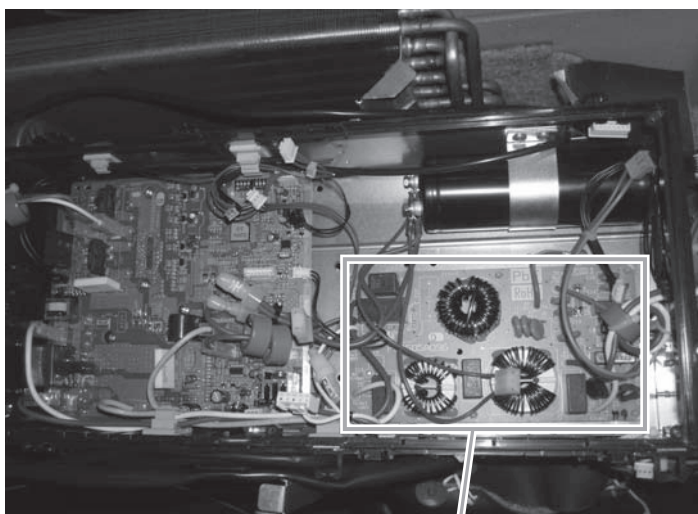
Inverter PCB



Noise filter PCB (PWB3)

1. Remove control PCB first.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



3. Cut straps.

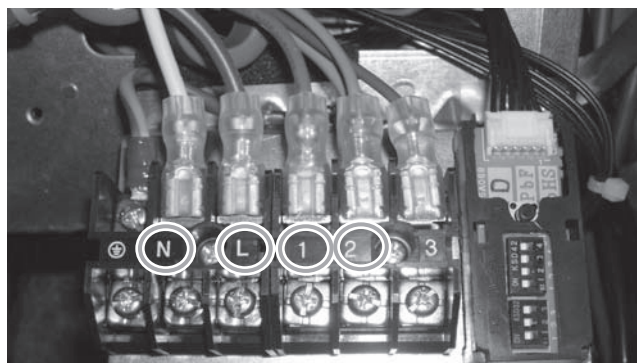
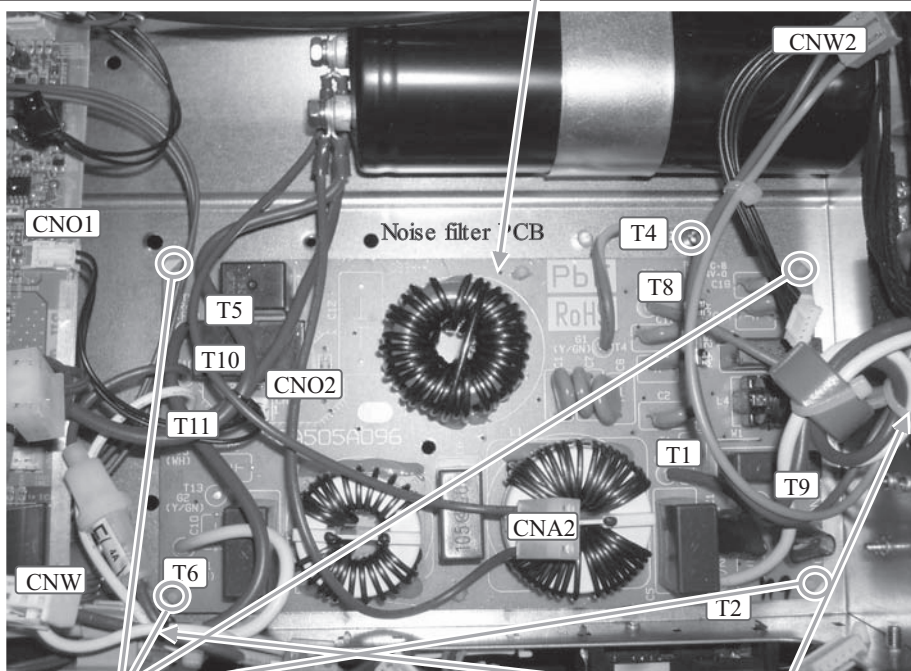
4. Disconnect the connectors CNA2 and CNO2 on the noise filter PCB.

5. Unscrew and remove the grounding cable (T4).

6. Disconnect the connectors and terminals as follows.

- 1) On the inverter PCB
T21 for T5
T22 for T6
- 2) On the control PCB
CNW for T10 and T11
- 3) On the terminal block
L1 for T1
N for T2
1 for T8
2 for T9

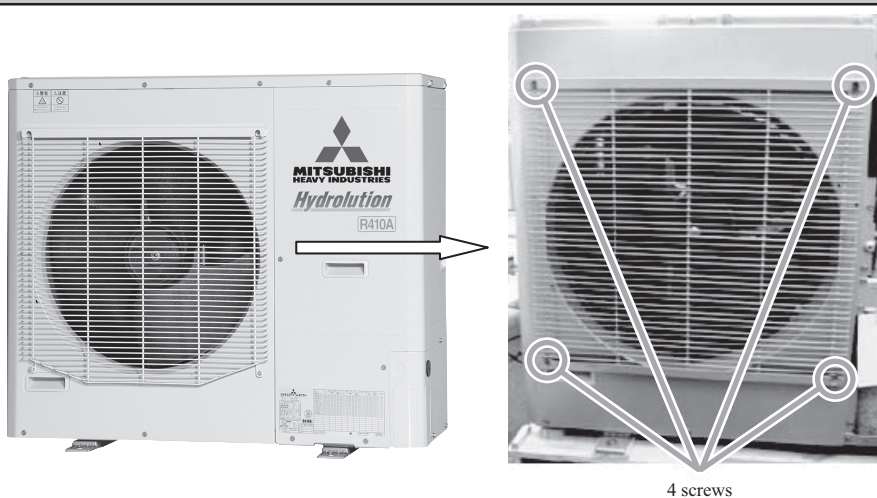
7. Pinch the head of locking supports and remove the noise filter PCB.



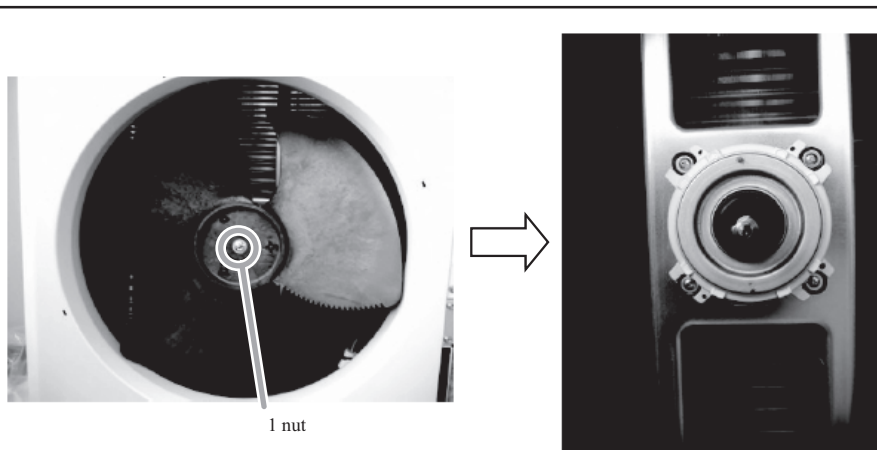
FDCW100VNX-A

Fan and fan motor (FMo1)

1. Loosen 4 screws and remove the fan grille.

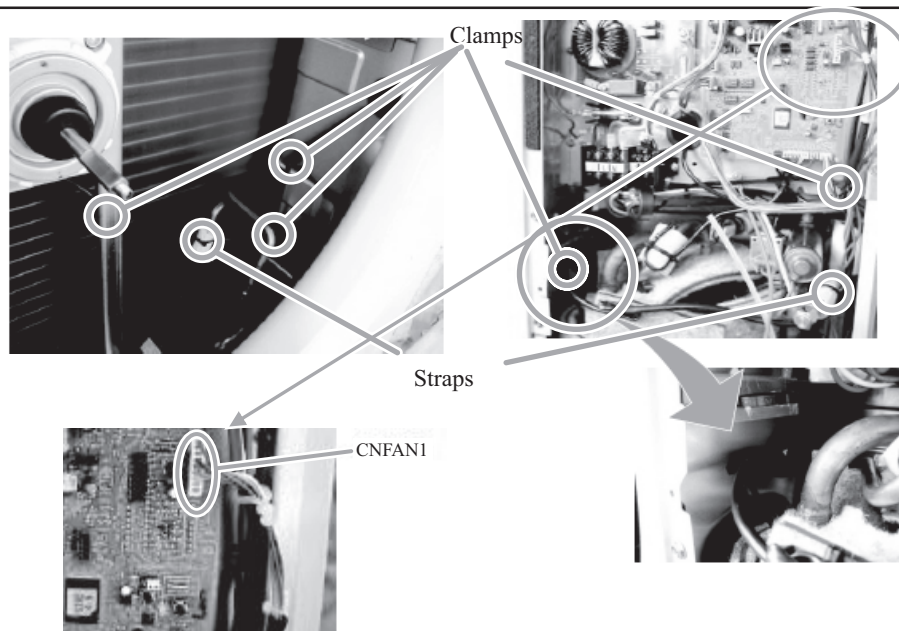


2. Loosen the nut and remove the fan propeller.



3. Detach the clamps and cut off the straps.

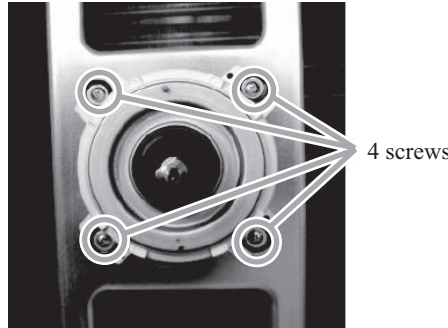
4. Disconnect the connector of CNFAN1.



Fan and fan motor (FMo1)

5. Loose 4 screws.

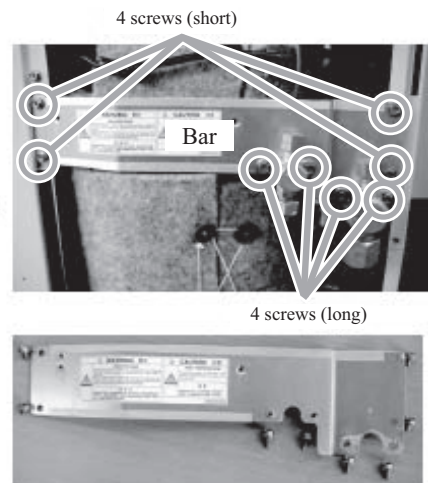
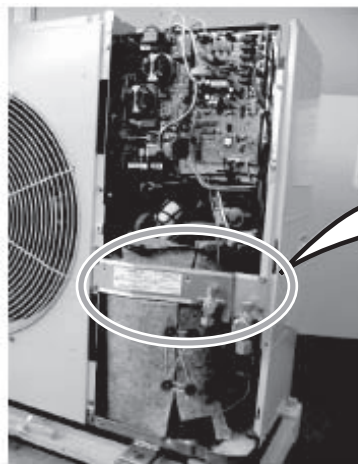
6. Remove the fan motor.



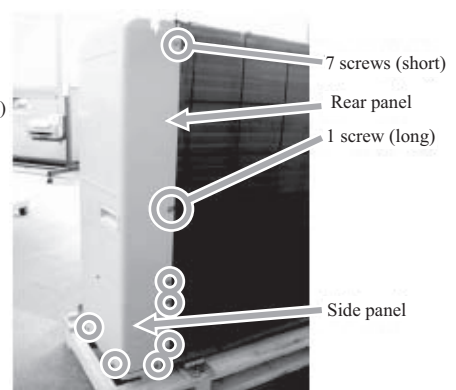
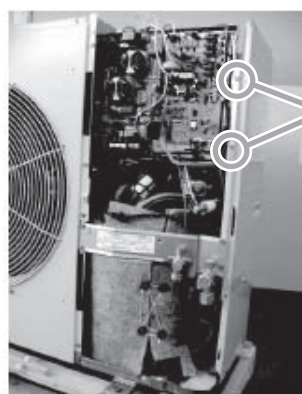
Compressor (CM)

1. Loosen screws and remove the service panel and top panel.

2. Loosen 4 short screws and 4 long screws and then remove the bar for easy access to the compressor.

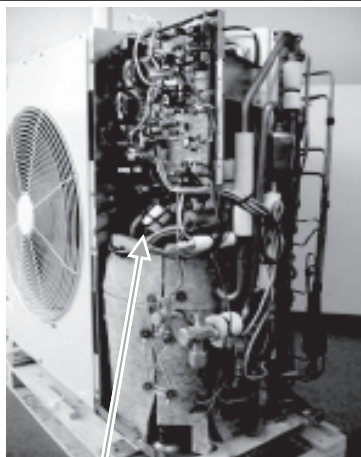


3. Loosen screws and remove the side panel.



Compressor (CM)

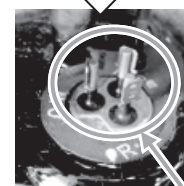
- 4. Remove the top insulation.
- 5. Remove the terminal cover.
- 6. Disconnect the fasten terminal connectors from compressor.
 U: Red cable
 V: White cable
 W: Blue cable



Top insulation

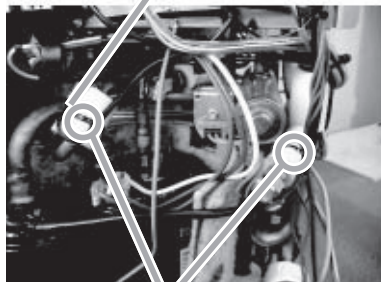


Terminal cover



Fasten terminal

- 7. Cut off the strap and pull out the sensor (Tho-D).

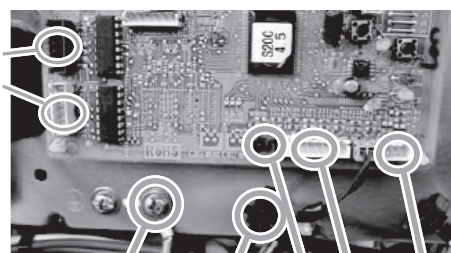
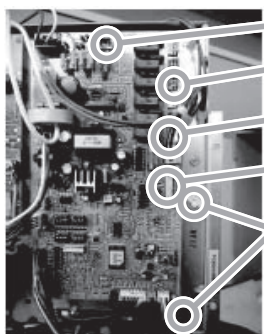


2 straps

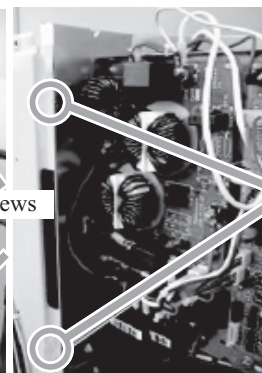
- 8. Remove the control unit for easy replacement work of compressor according to following procedure.

- 1) Disconnect all connectors shown in the photo.
- 2) Cut off the straps.
- 3) Unscrew and disconnect the grounding cable.
- 4) Loosen the screws shown in the photo.
- 5) Remove the control unit.

Note: Be sure to do above work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



Screws



Screws



Compressor (CM)

9. Untie the strings and remove the insulations.

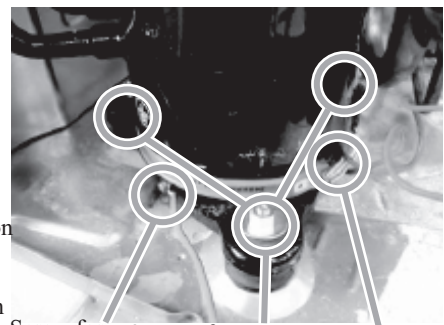
10. Unscrew and disconnect the grounding cable.

11. Loosen 3 nuts of compressor fixing bolts.



Upper insulation

Lower insulation



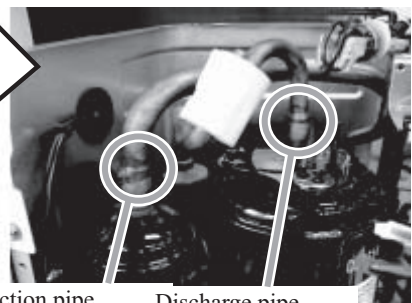
Screw for grounding

3 nuts of compressor fixing bolts

Crankcase heater

12. Disconnect the pipes for suction and discharge.

13. Remove the compressor.



Suction pipe

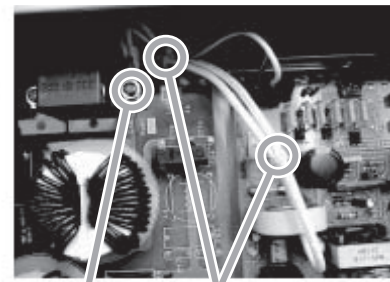
Discharge pipe

Control PCB (PWB1)

1. Unscrew and disconnect the cable.

2. Cut the straps and take the cable out from CT hole as shown in the photo.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



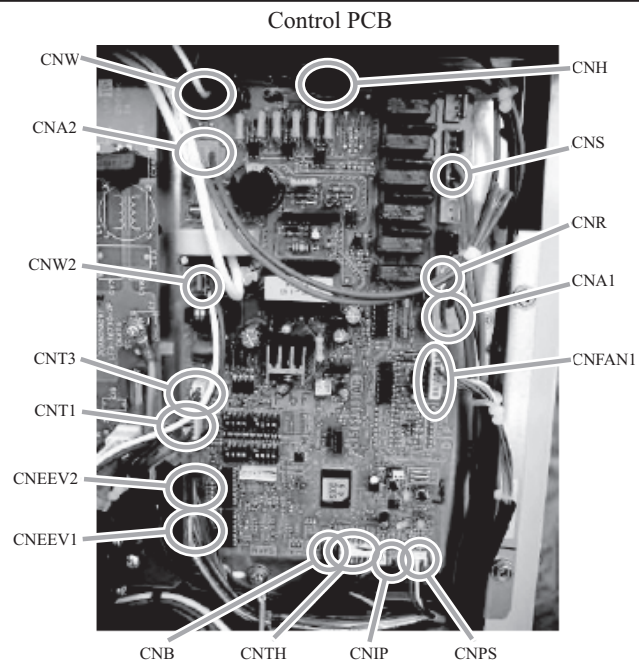
1 screw

2 straps

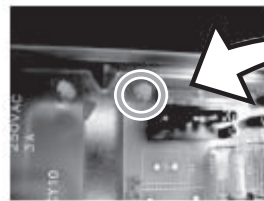


Control PCB (PWB1)

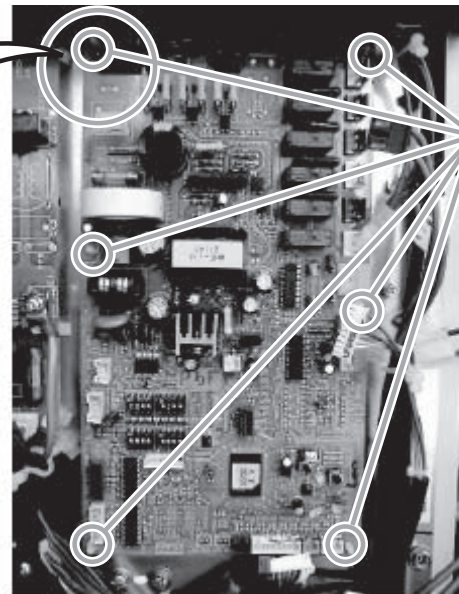
3. Disconnect all connectors.



4. Pinch the head of locking supports and remove the control PCB.



Locking support

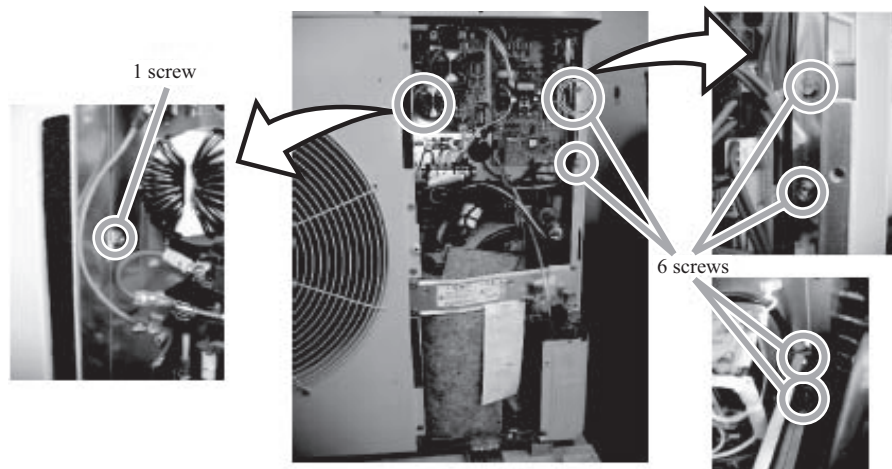


6 locking supports.

Inverter PCB (PWB2)

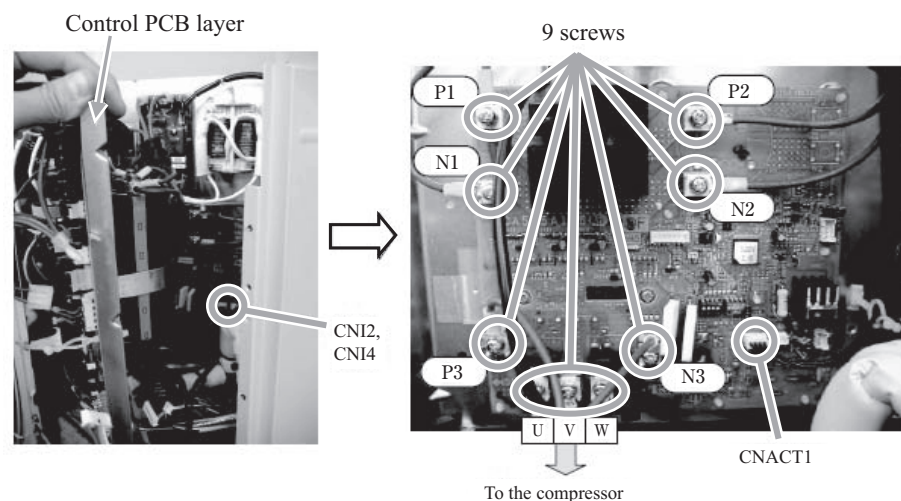
1. Loosen 7 screws and remove the control PCB layer.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.

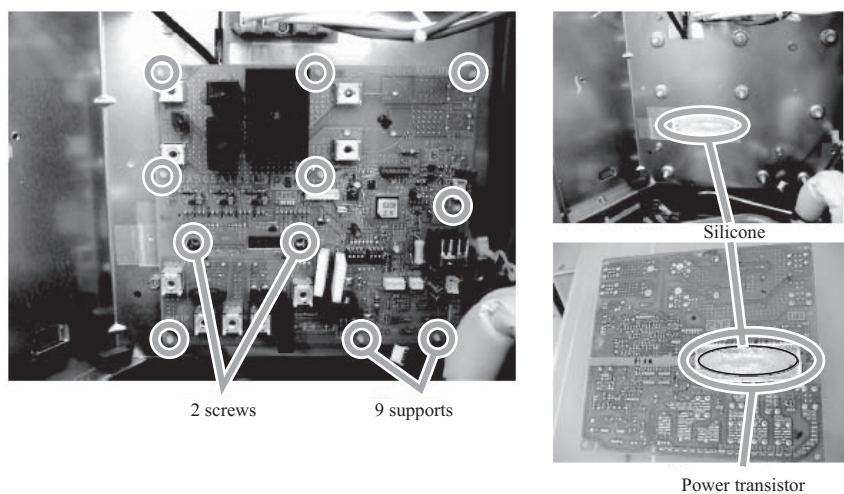


2. Disconnect the connectors of CNI2, CNI4 and CNACT1.

3. Loosen 9 screws and disconnect the cables.



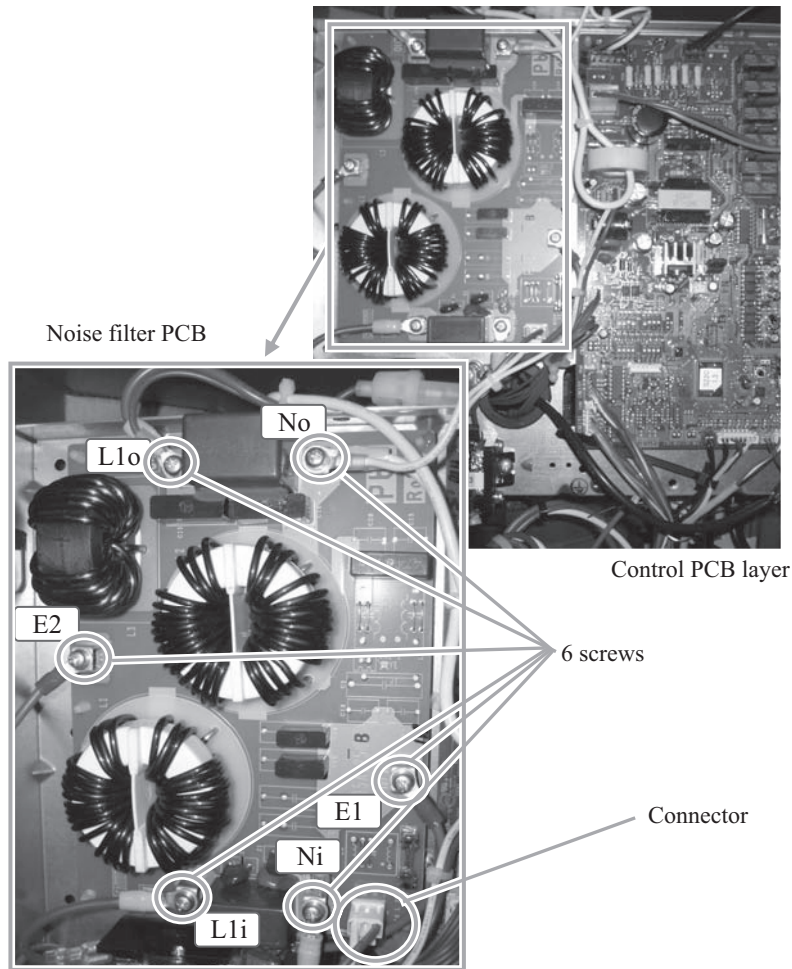
4. Loosen 2 screws and pinch the heads of 9 locking supports and then remove inverter PCB.



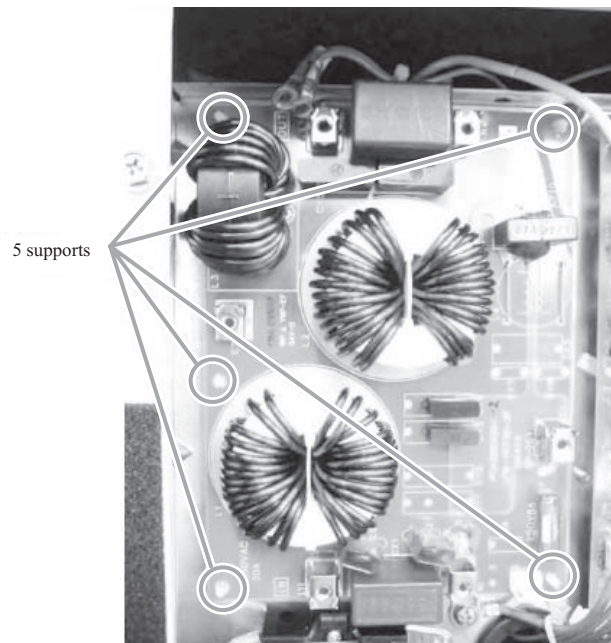
Noise filter PCB (PWB3)

1. Loosen 6 screws and disconnect the cables.
2. Disconnect the connector.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



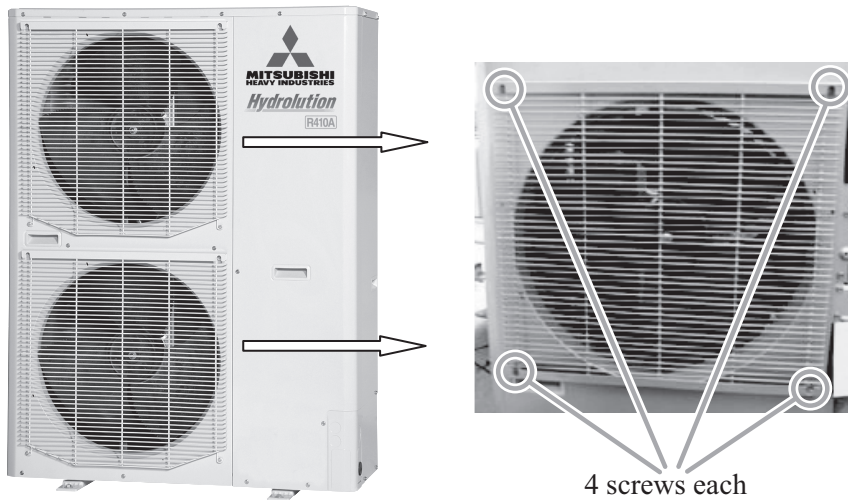
3. Pinch the head of locking supports and remove the noise filter PCB.



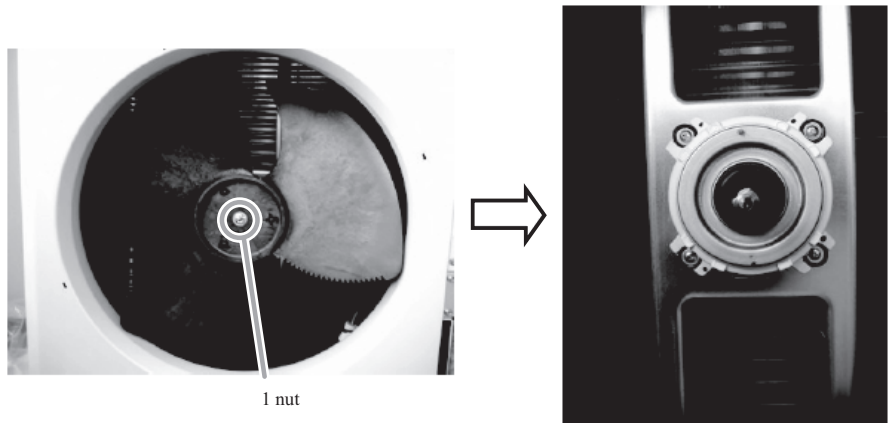
FDCW140VNX-A

Fan and fan motor (FMo1 & FMo2)

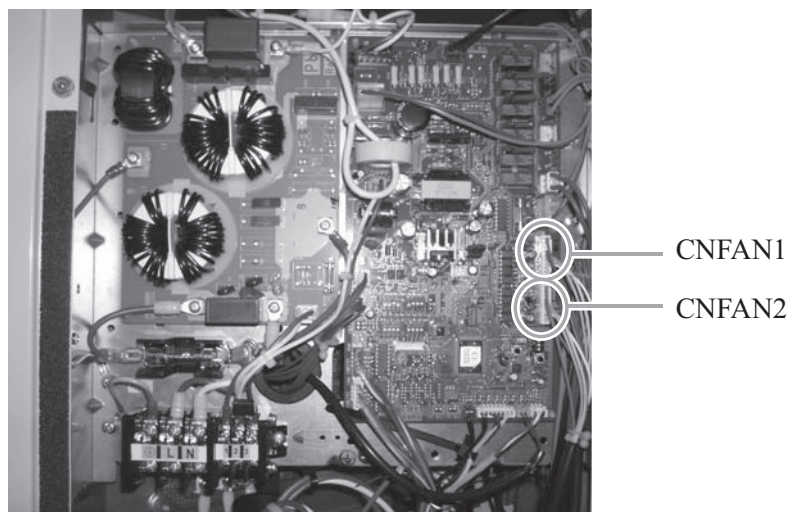
1. Loosen the screws and remove the fan grille for upper fan (FMo1) and/or lower fan (FMo2).



2. Loosen the nut and remove the fan propeller for upper fan (FMo1) and/or lower fan (FMo2).

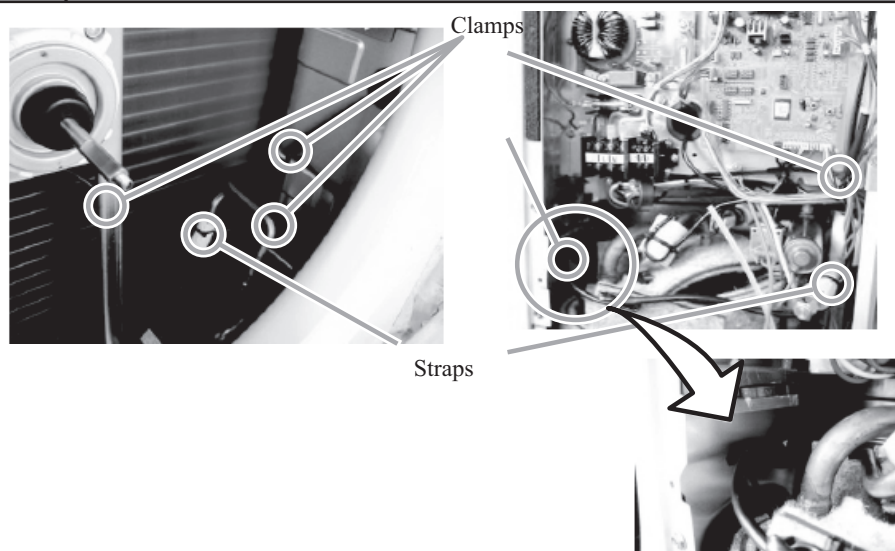


3. Disconnect the connector of CNFAN1 (for FMo1) and/or CNFAN2 (for FMo2).



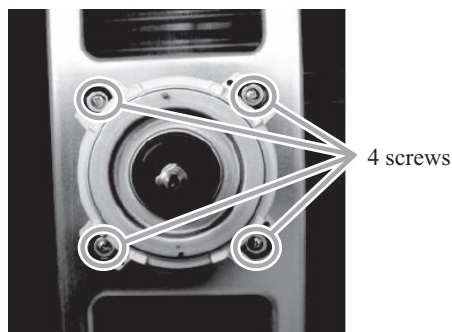
Fan and fan motor (FMo1 & FMo2)

4. Detach the clamps and cut off the straps.



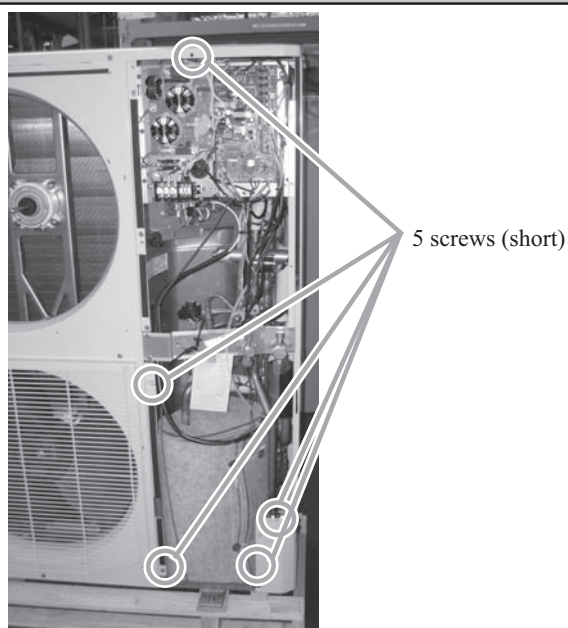
5. Loosen 4 screws.

6. Remove the fan motor (FMo1 and/or FMo2).



Compressor (CM)

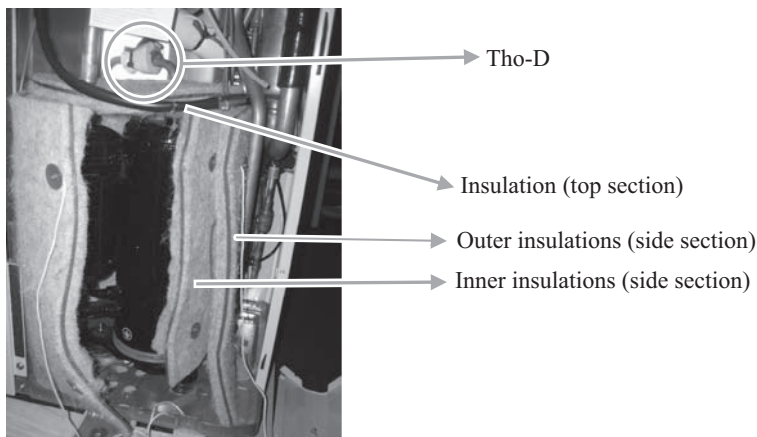
1. Loosen 5 screws and remove the service panel.



Compressor (CM)

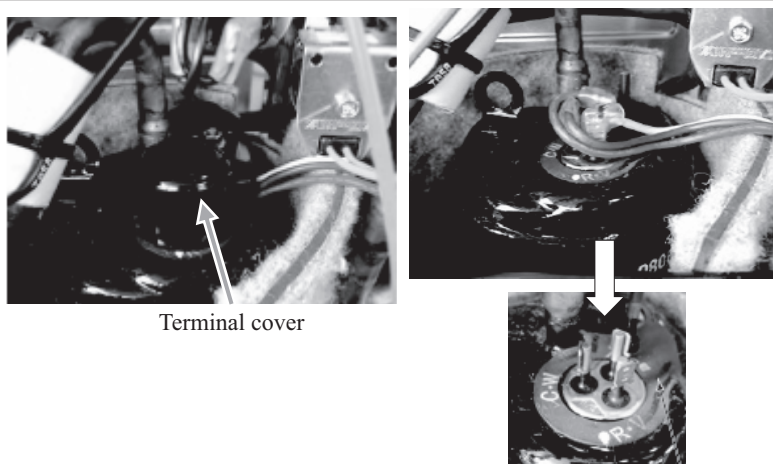
2. Untie the strings and remove the top and side insulations.

3 Cut off the strap and pull out the sensor (Tho-D).



4. Remove the terminal cover

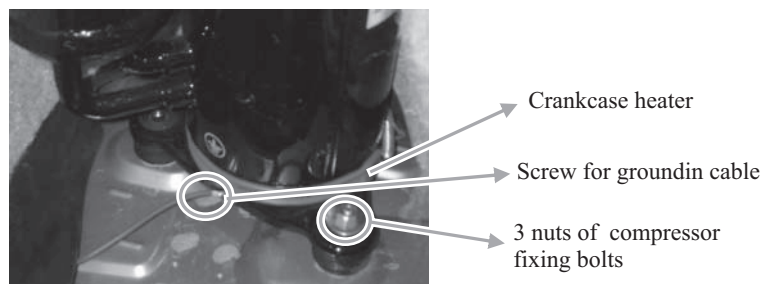
5. Disconnect the fasten connectors from compressor.
 U: Red cable
 V: White cable
 W: Blue cable



6. Remove the crankcase heater.

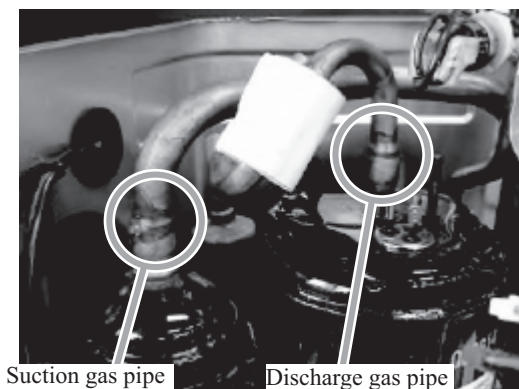
7. Unscrew and disconnect the grounding cable.

8. Loosen 3 nuts of compressor fixing bolts.



9. Disconnect the pipes for suction and discharge gas.

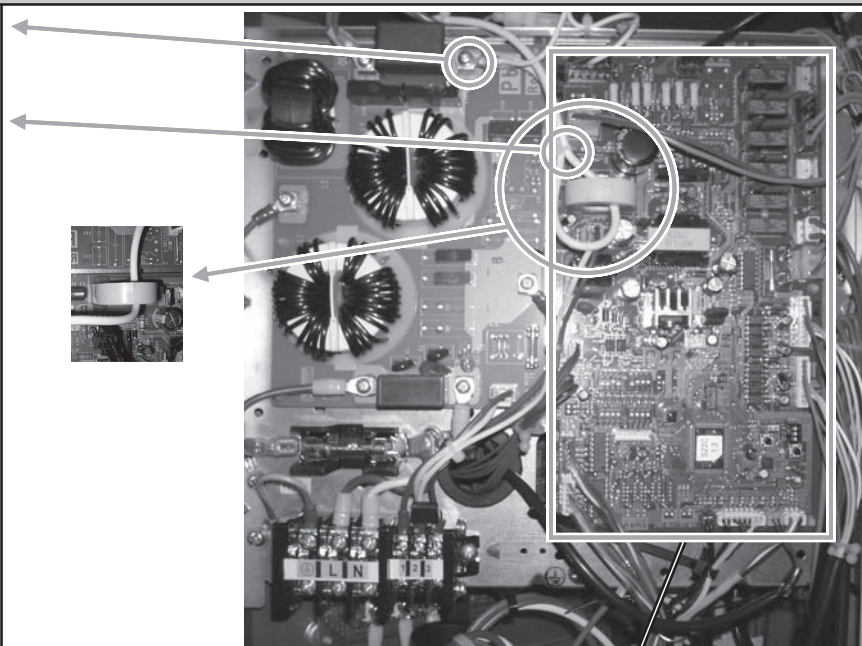
10. Remove the compressor.



Control PCB (PWB1)

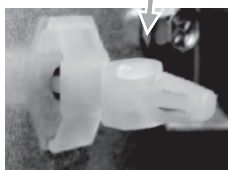
1. Unscrew and disconnect the cable.
2. Cut the strap and take the cable out from CT hole as shown in the photo.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.

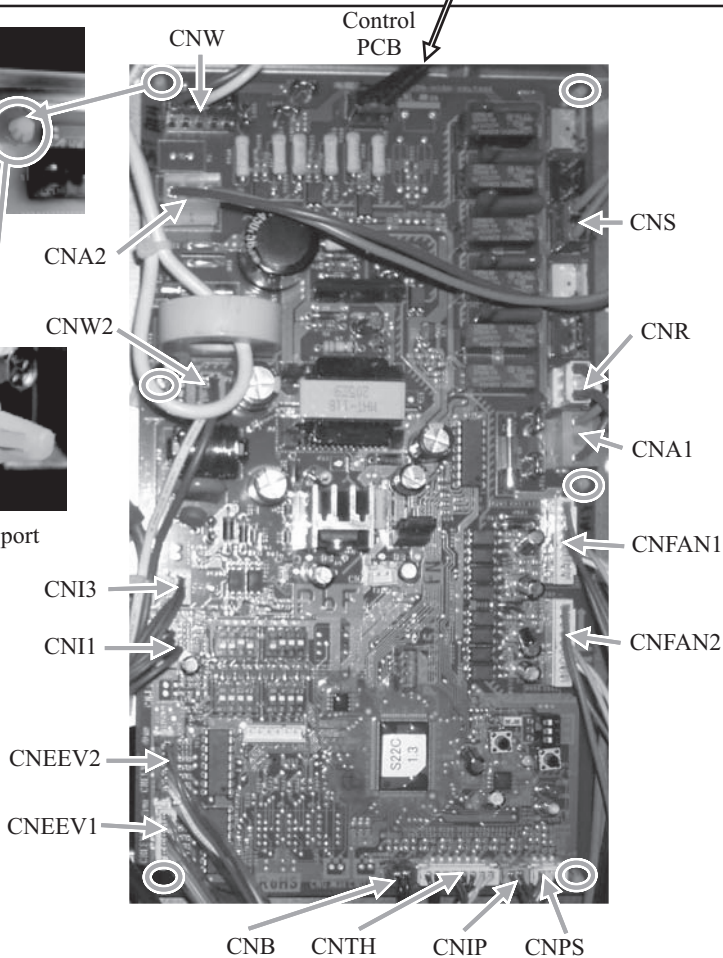


Control PCB layer

3. Disconnect all connectors.
4. Pinch the head of locking supports and remove the control PCB.

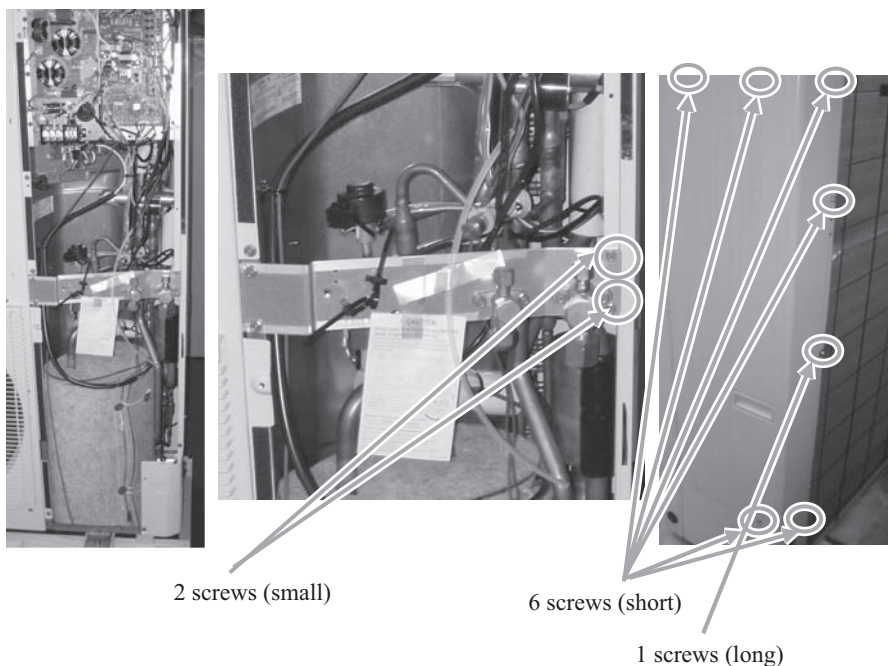


Locking support



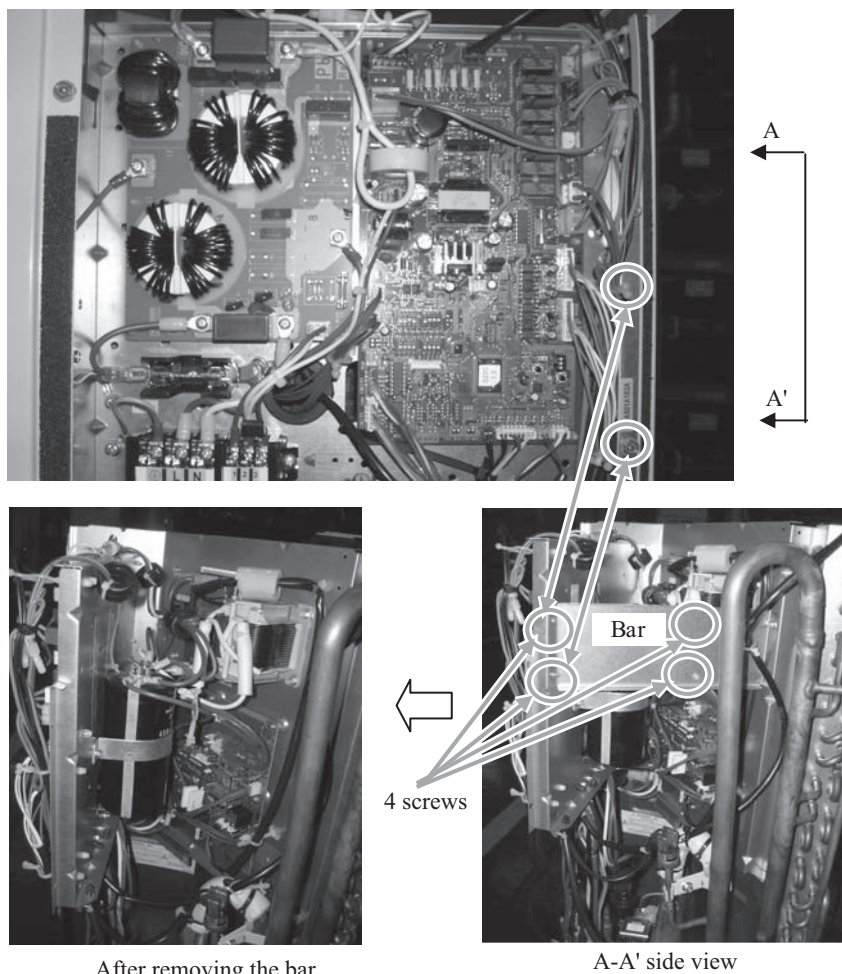
Inverter PCB (PWB2)

- 1. Loosen 2 screws on the bar.
- 2. Loosen 7 screws and remove side pannel.



- 3. Loosen 4 screws and remove the bar for easy access to the inverter PCB layer.

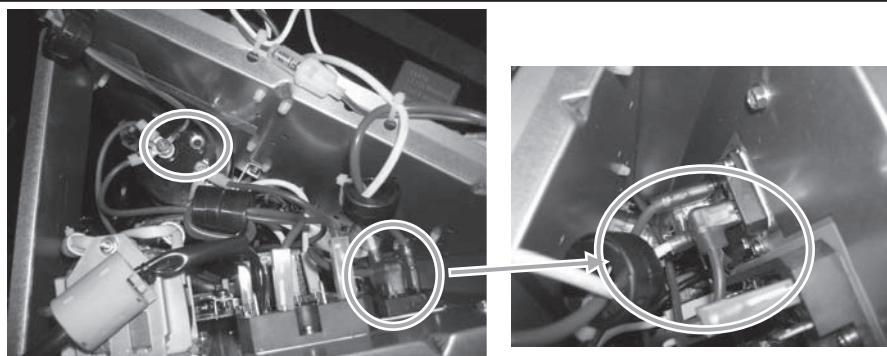
Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



Inverter PCB (PWB2)

4. Loosen a screw on the capacitor and disconnect the red and blue cables which are connected to the control PCB.

5. Disconnect the fasten terminals of red and white cables which are connected to the control PCB.

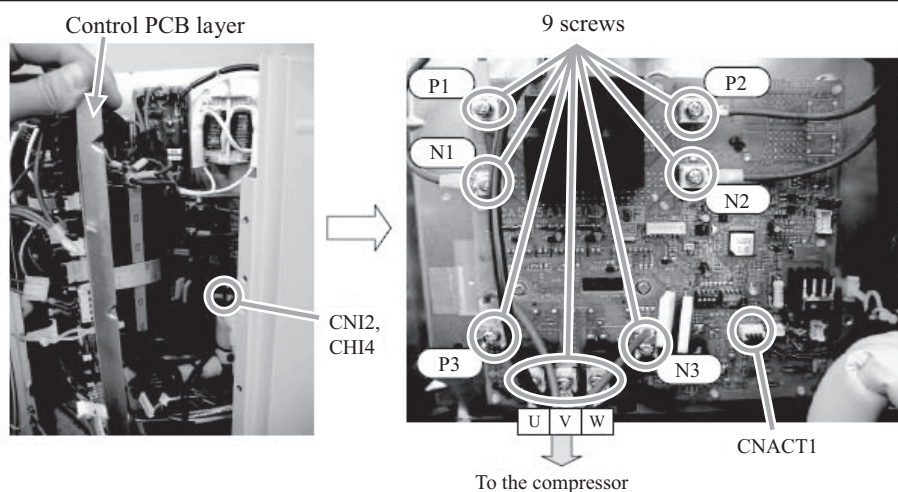


6. Remove the control PCB layer by lifting it up.

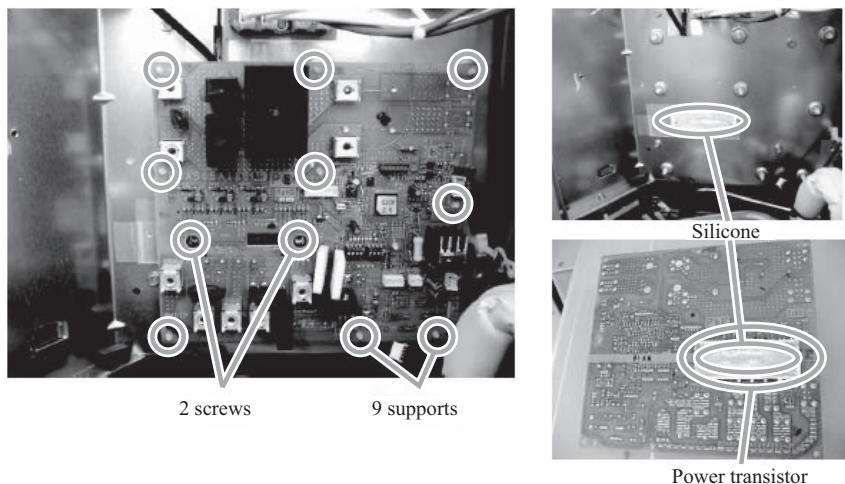


7. Disconnect the connectors of CNI2, CNI4 and CNACT1.

8. Loosen 9 screws and disconnect the cables.



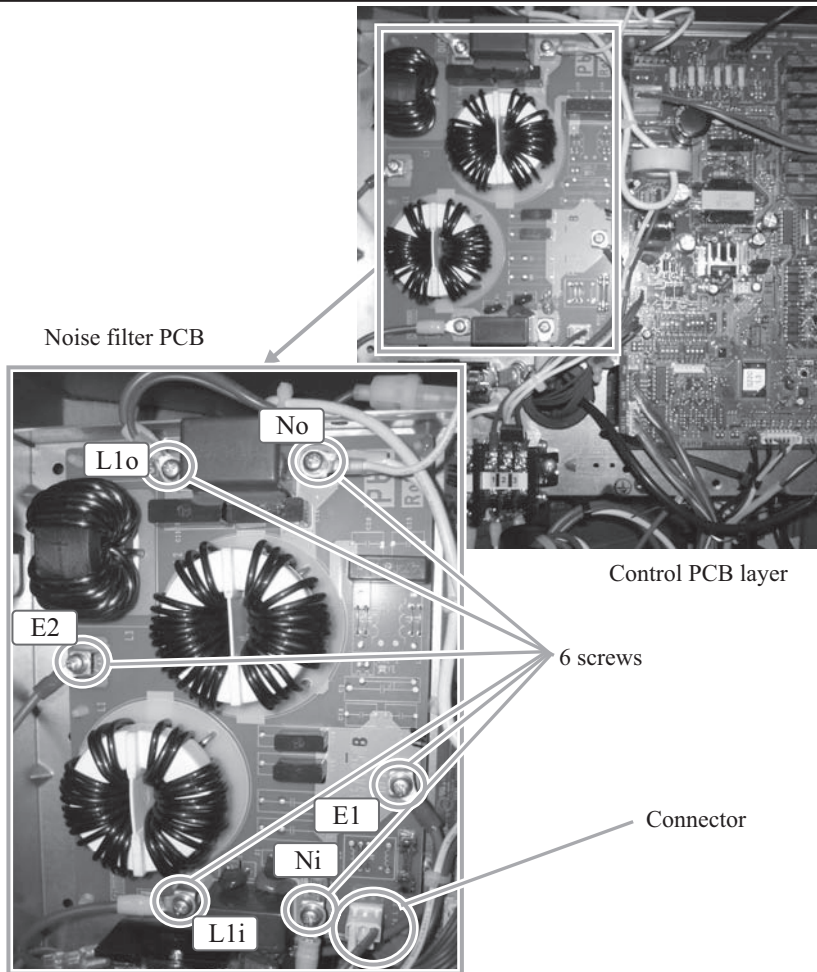
9. Loosen 2 screws and pinch the heads of 9 locking supports and then remove the inverter PCB.



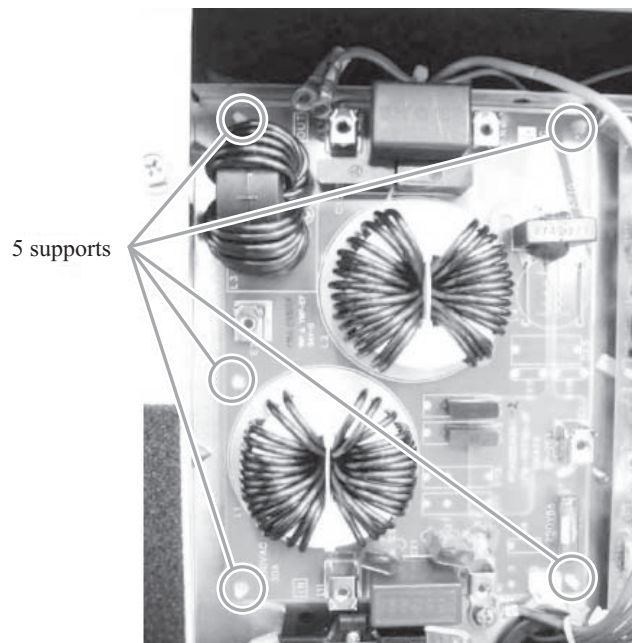
Noise filter PCB (PWB3)

1. Loosen 6 screws and disconnect the cables.
2. Disconnect the connector.

Note: Be sure to do this work after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.



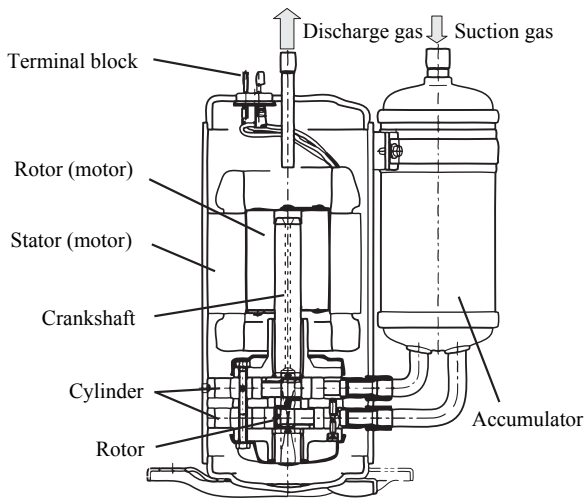
3. Pinch the head of locking supports and remove the noise filter PCB.



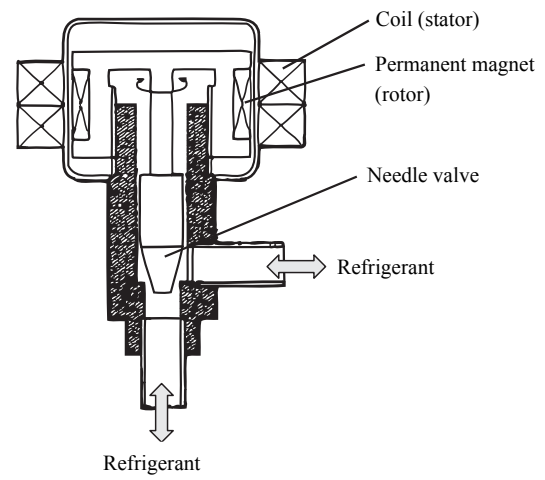
Components

Outdoor unit

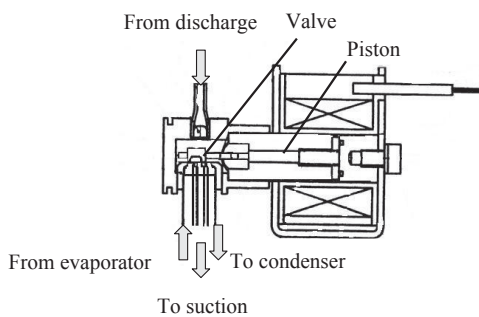
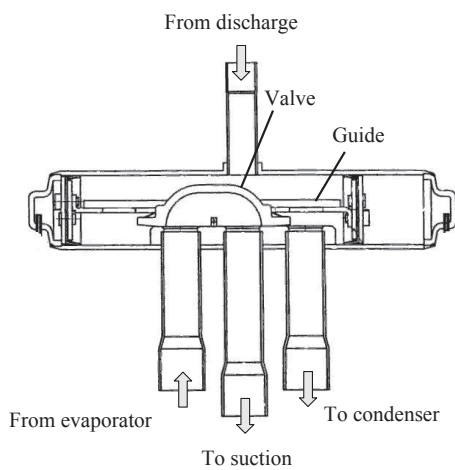
Compressor



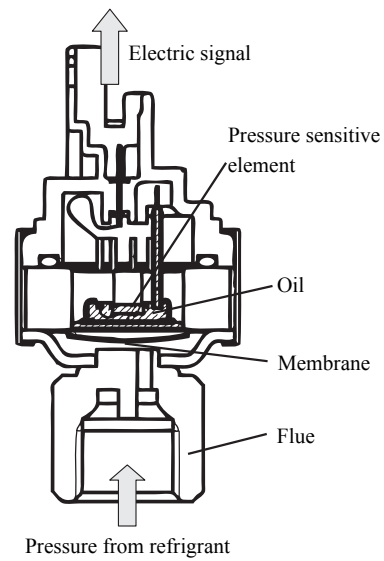
Expansion valve



4-way valve

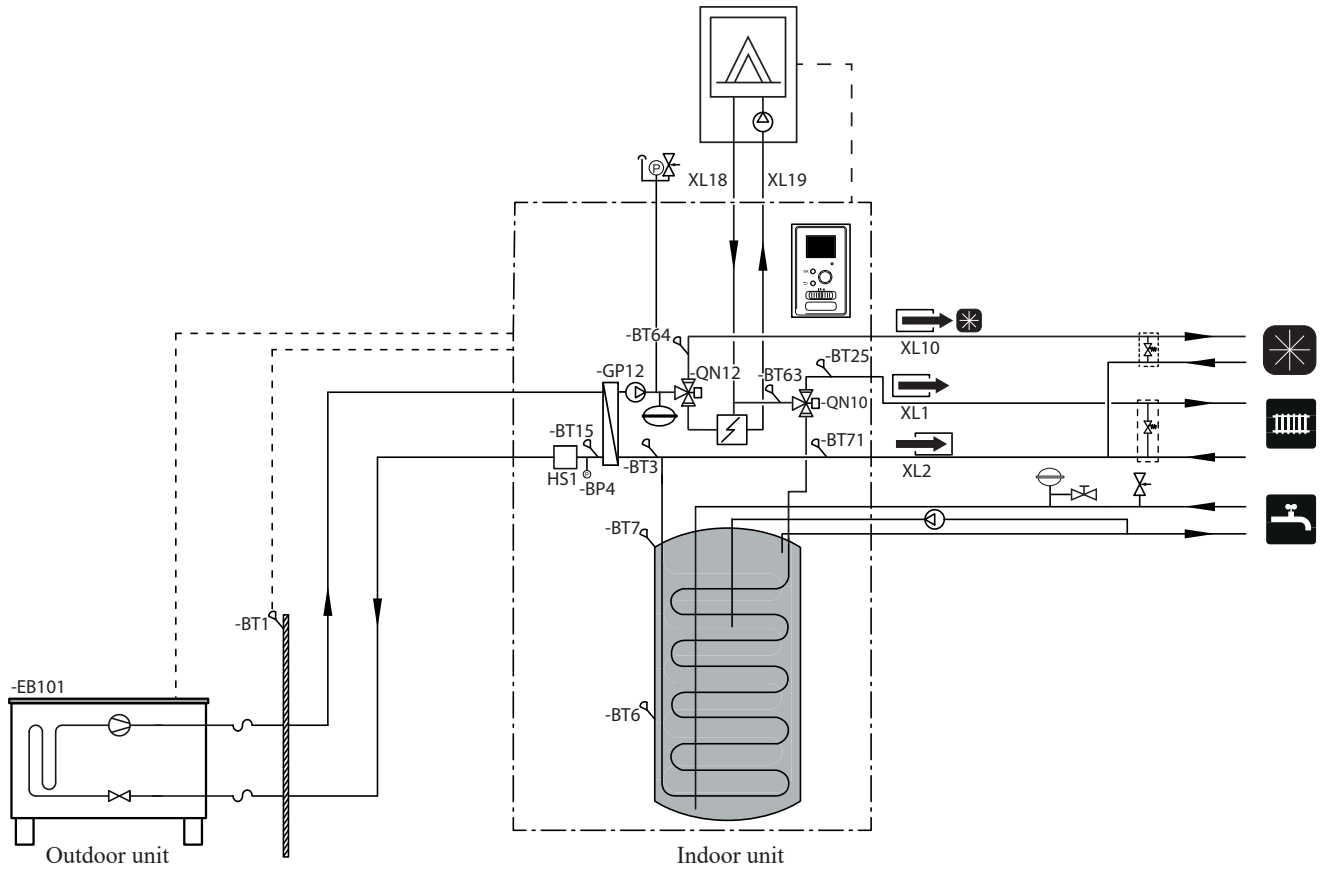


Low pressure sensor



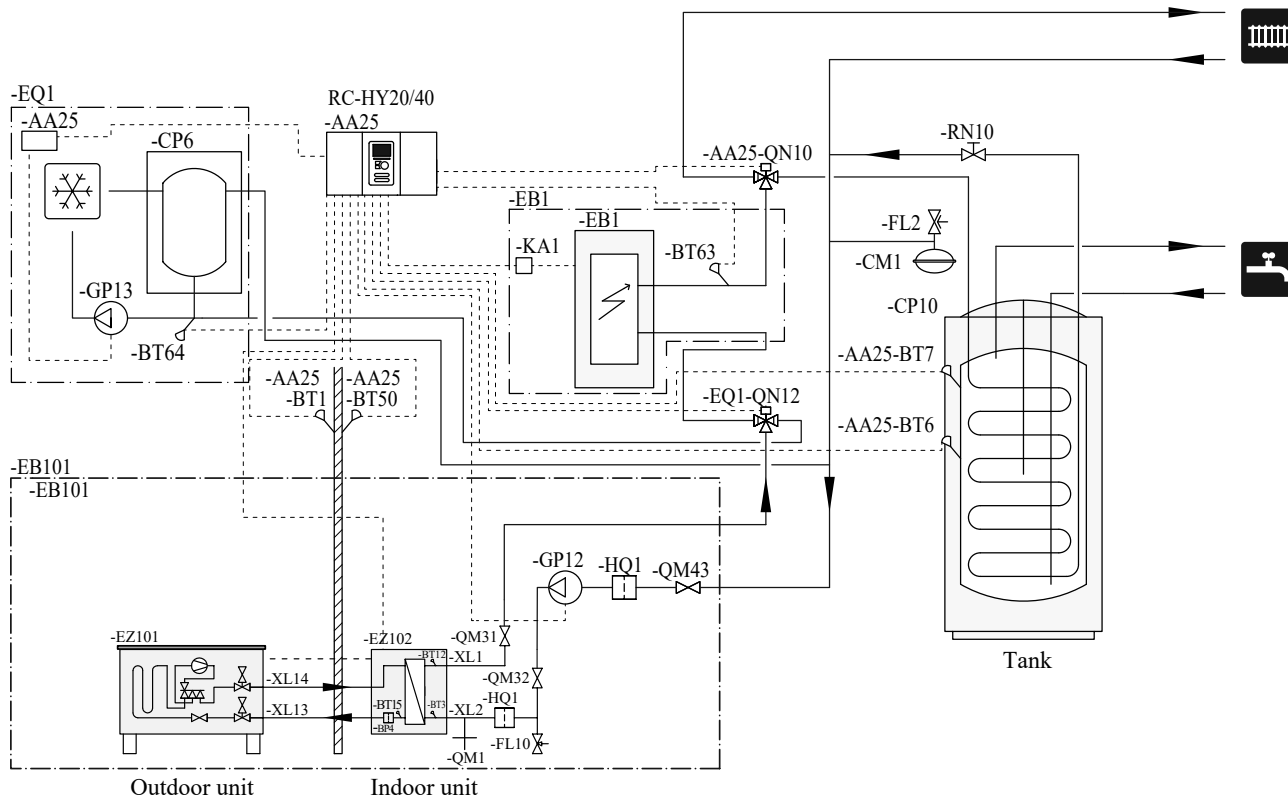
HMA60-S/HMA100-S

Installation with indoor unit HMA60-S/HMA100-S for hot water and cooling function (4-pipe system)



HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140

Installation with indoor unit HSB60-W/HSB100/HSB140, tank PT300/PT500, controller RC-HY20/40-W with step controlled additional heat before reversing valve for hot water and cooling function (4-pipe system)

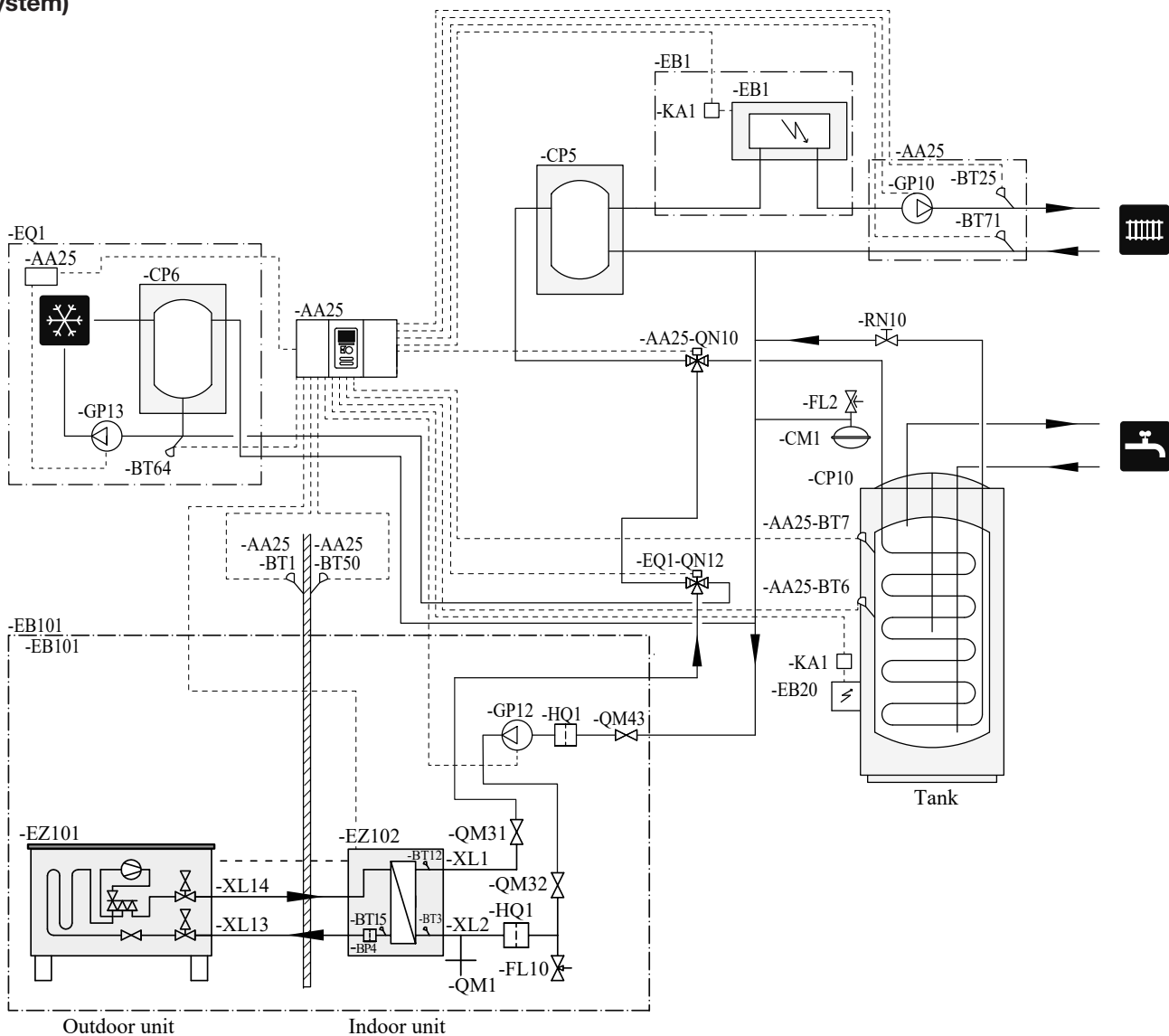


Explanation

AA25 Controller

- BT1 Outdoor sensor¹⁾
- BT6 Temperature sensor, hotwater charging¹⁾
- BT7 Temperature sensor, hot water top¹⁾
- BT25 Temperature sensor, external supply line¹⁾
- BT63 Temperature sensor, external supply line after electric heater
- BT71 Temperature sensor, external return line¹⁾
- Tho-A Temperature sensor, Outdoor air
- Tho-D Temperature sensor, hot gas
- Tho-R Temperature sensor, heat exchanger out

Installation with indoor unit HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140, tank PT300/PT500, controller RC-HY20/40-W with step controlled additional heat after reversing valve for hot water and cooling function (4-pipe system)



NOTE

Not all components are shown in this outline diagram.

This installation alternative is suitable for more complex installations with a focus on comfort.

Controller (AA25) starts and stops the heat pump (EB101) to meet the heating and hot water demand of the installation.

At simultaneous heating and hot water demand the reversing valve (AA25-QN10) switches periodically between the climate system and the water heater/accumulator tank (CP10). When the hot water heater/accumulator tank is fully charged, the reversing valve switches to the climate system.

Additional heat (EB1) is turned on, automatically when the heating demand exceeds the heat pump capacity.

Immersion heater (EB20) in the water heater/accumulator tank is used during the time to produce hot water if the heat pump is used for heating at the same time.

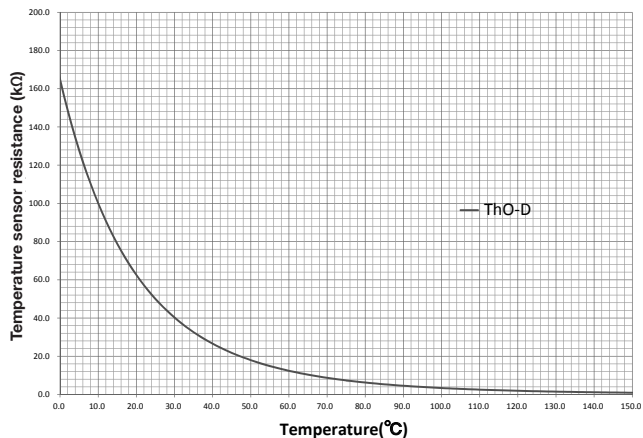
The immersion heater (EB20) can also be used if a higher temperature of hot water is required than the heat pump can produce.

During cooling operation, the reversing valve (EQ1-QN12) switches to the cooling system (EQ1). If several simultaneous demands occur while there is a cooling demand, the system reacts differently. In the event of a hot water demand, the reversing valve switches back and hot water is produced until the demand is fulfilled. In the event of a heating demand, the reversing valve switches periodically between cooling and heating. If the cooling demand is met, the reversing valve switches back to basic mode (heating/hot water).

Temperature sensor

Data for sensor in outdoor unit

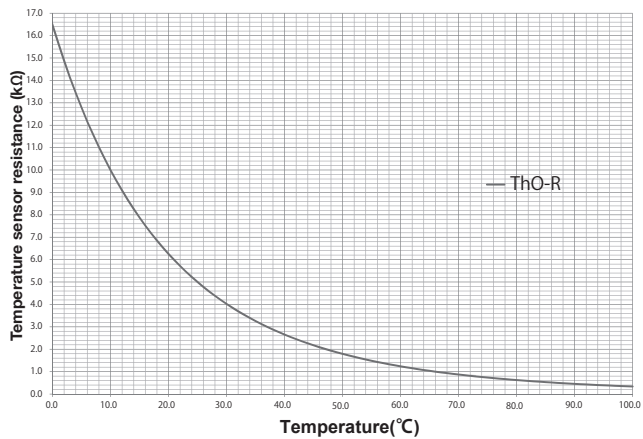
Tho-D



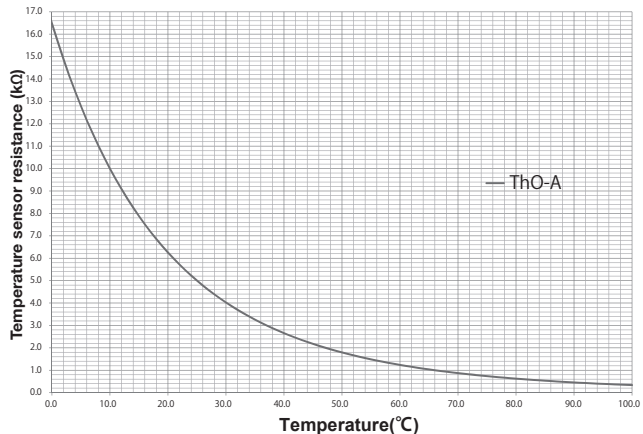
Data for sensor in indoor unit

Temperature (°C)	Resistance (kΩ)	Voltage (VDC)
-40	351.0	3.256
-35	251.6	3.240
-30	182.5	3.218
-25	133.8	3.189
-20	99.22	3.150
-15	74.32	3.105
-10	56.20	3.047
-5	42.89	2.976
0	33.02	2.889
5	25.61	2.789
10	20.02	2.673
15	15.77	2.541
20	12.51	2.399
25	10.00	2.245
30	8.045	2.083
35	6.514	1.916
40	5.306	1.752
45	4.348	1.587
50	3.583	1.426
55	2.968	1.278
60	2.467	1.136
65	2.068	1.007
70	1.739	0.891
75	1.469	0.785
80	1.246	0.691
85	1.061	0.607
90	0.908	0.533
95	0.779	0.469
100	0.672	0.414

Tho-R



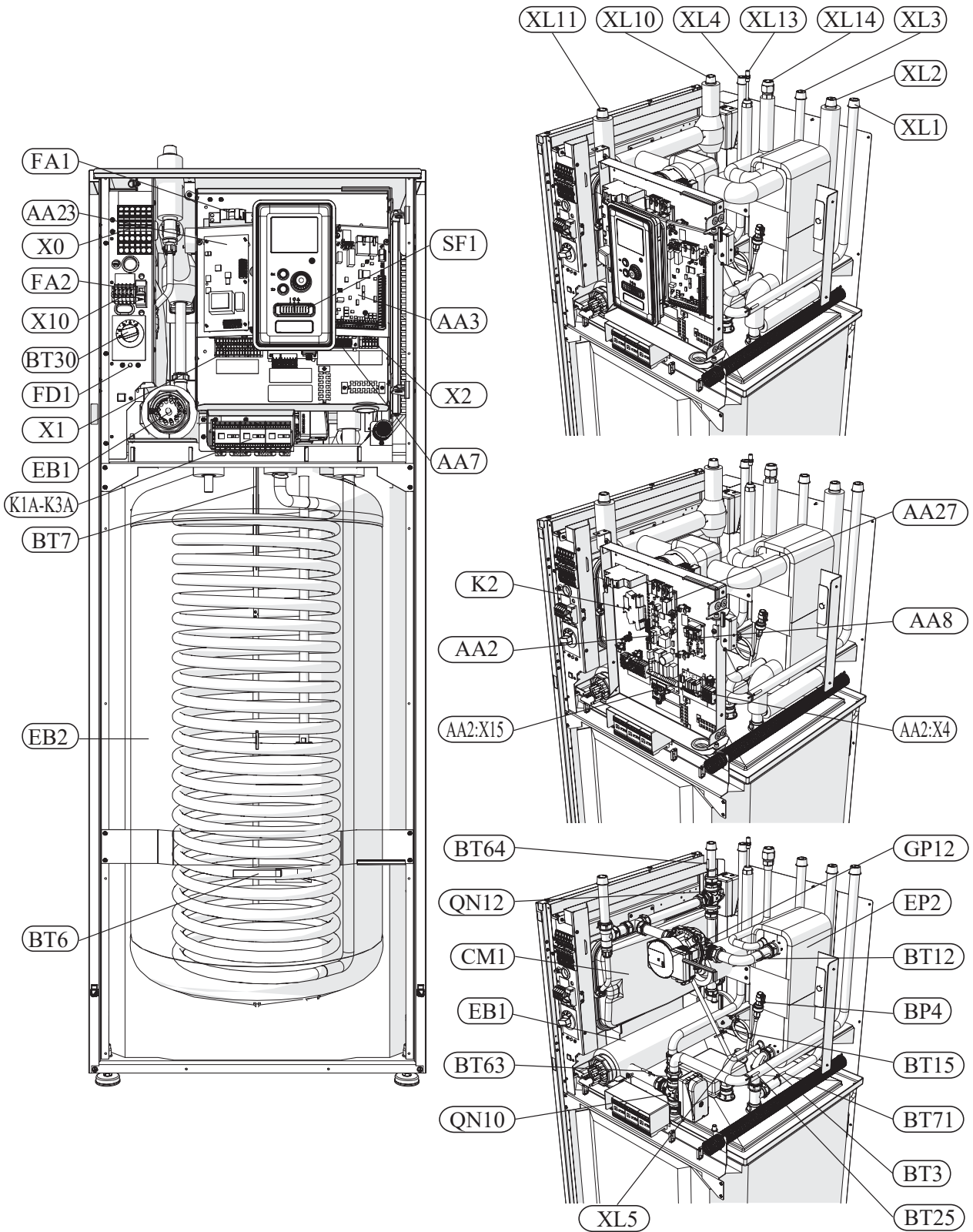
Tho-A



Component positions

Indoor unit

HMA60-S/HMA100-S



HMA60-S/HMA100-S

LEGEND

Pipe connections

XL1	Connection, heating medium, supply
XL2	Connection, heating medium, return
XL3	Connection, cold water
XL4	Connection, hot water
XL5	Connection, hot water circulation
XL10	Connection, cooling
XL11	Connection, safety group, manometer
XL13	Connection, liquid cooling medium
XL14	Connection, gas cooling medium

HVAC elements

CM1	Diaphragm expansion vessel, closed
QN10	Isolation valve, domestic hot water / central heating
QN12	Isolation valve, cooling/heating
GP12	Circulation pump
EP2	Heat exchanger

Czujniki

BP4	Pressure sensor, high pressure
BT3	Temperature sensor, heating medium return
BT6	Temperature sensor, hot water loading
BT7	Temperature sensor, top of the hot water heater
BT12	Temperature sensor, condenser outlet
BT15	Temperature sensor, liquid
BT25	Temperature sensor, heating medium supply
BT63	Temperature sensor, heating medium supply downstream the submersible heater
BT64	Temperature sensor, cooling medium supply
BT71	Temperature sensor, heating medium return

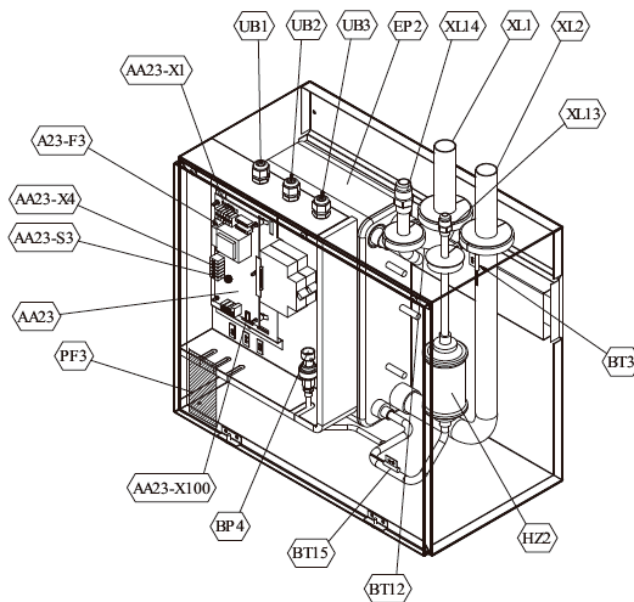
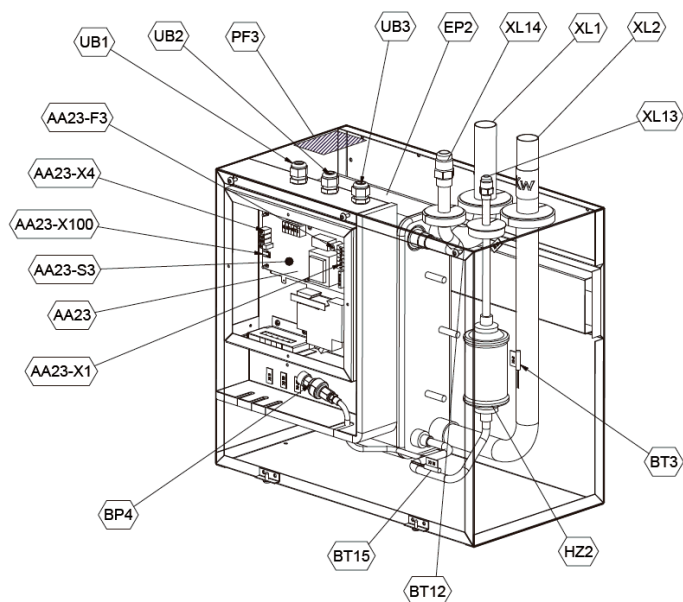
Electrical elements

X0	High voltage terminal block 400V~/230V~
X1	Low voltage terminal block 230V~
X2	Low voltage terminal block 230V~
X10	Low voltage terminal block 230V~
AA2:X4	Low voltage terminal block
AA2: X15	Low voltage terminal block
K1A-K3A	Submersible heater switch
K2	Alarm relay
BT30	Thermostat - emergency mode
AA2	Main card
AA3	Sensor card
AA23	Communication card
AA7	Relay card
AA8	Titanium anode card
AA27	Relay card
FD1	Temperature limiter
FA1	Circuit breaker (to internal module)
FA2	Circuit breaker (AMS outdoor unit)
EB1	Submersible heater

Other

SF1	Controller switch
EB2	Domestic hot water tank

HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140



HSB60-W/100-W

HSB140

Symbol	Pipe connection
XL1 (Red mark)	Climate system supply ϕ 22 mm (60), ϕ 28 mm (100, 140)
XL2 (Blue mark)	Climate system return ϕ 22 mm (60), ϕ 28 mm (100, 140)
XL14	Refrigerant connection, gas line, $\frac{1}{4}$ " (60), $\frac{3}{8}$ " (100, 140)
XL13	Refrigerant connection, liquid line, $\frac{1}{2}$ " (60), $\frac{5}{8}$ " (100, 140)

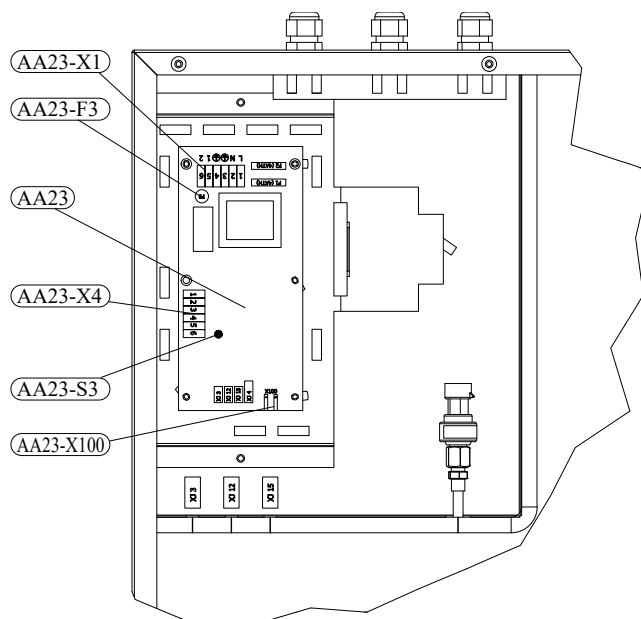
Symbol	Valves etc.
EP2	Heat exchanger
HQ1	Particle filter (supplied)
HZ2	Drying filter

Symbol	Electrical components
AA23	Communication board
AA23-F3	Fuse for external heating cable
AA23-S3	DIP switch, addressing of outdoor unit
AA23-X1	Terminal block, incoming supply, connection of KVR
AA23-X4	Terminal block, communication with indoor module / control module
AA23-X100	Terminal block, communication outdoor module
X1	Terminal block, incoming component

Symbol	Sensor, thermostats
BP4	Pressure sensor, high pressure
BT3	Temperature sensor, heating medium, return
BT12	Temperature sensor, condenser, supply
BT15	Temperature sensor, fluid pipe

Symbol	Miscellaneous
UB1	Cable gland
UB2	Cable gland
UB3	Cable gland

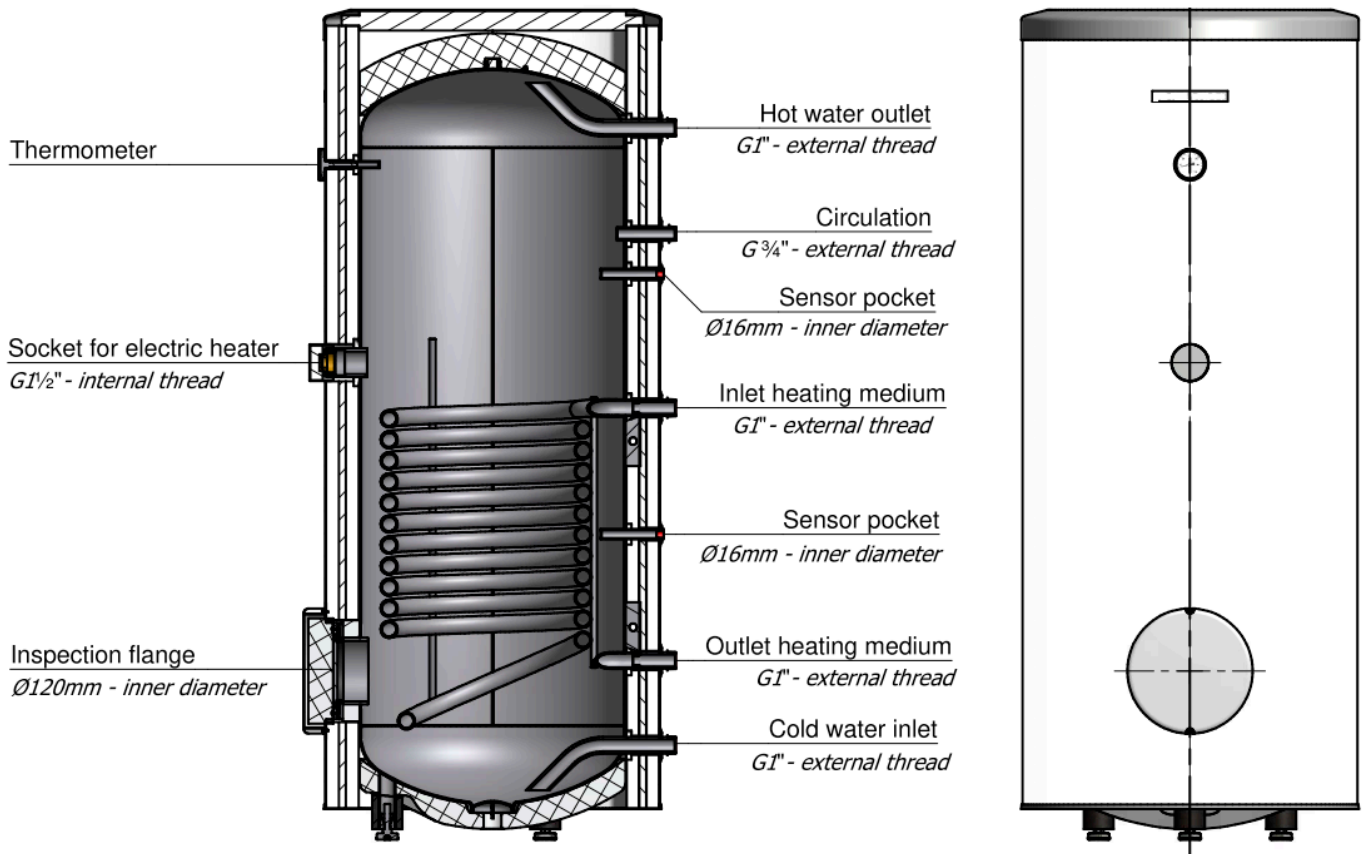
HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140



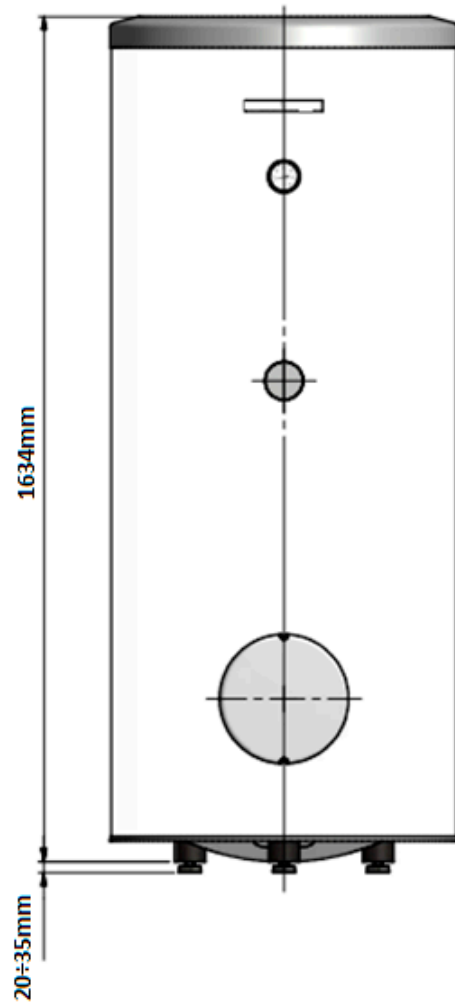
Explanation

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| AA23 | Communication board |
| AA23-F3 | Fuse for external heating cable |
| AA23-S3 | DIP switch, addressing of outdoor unit |
| AA23-X1 | Terminal block, incoming supply |
| AA23-X4 | Terminal block, communication with indoor module / control module |
| AA23-X100 | Terminal block, communication outdoor module FDCW |

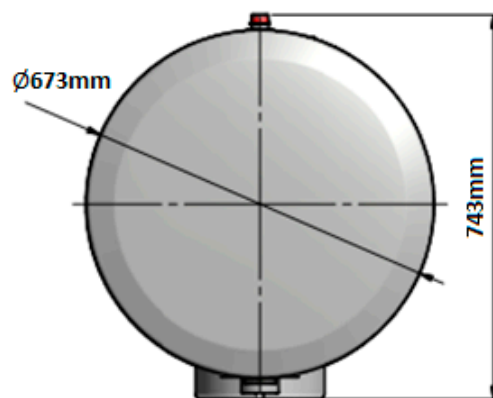
PT300



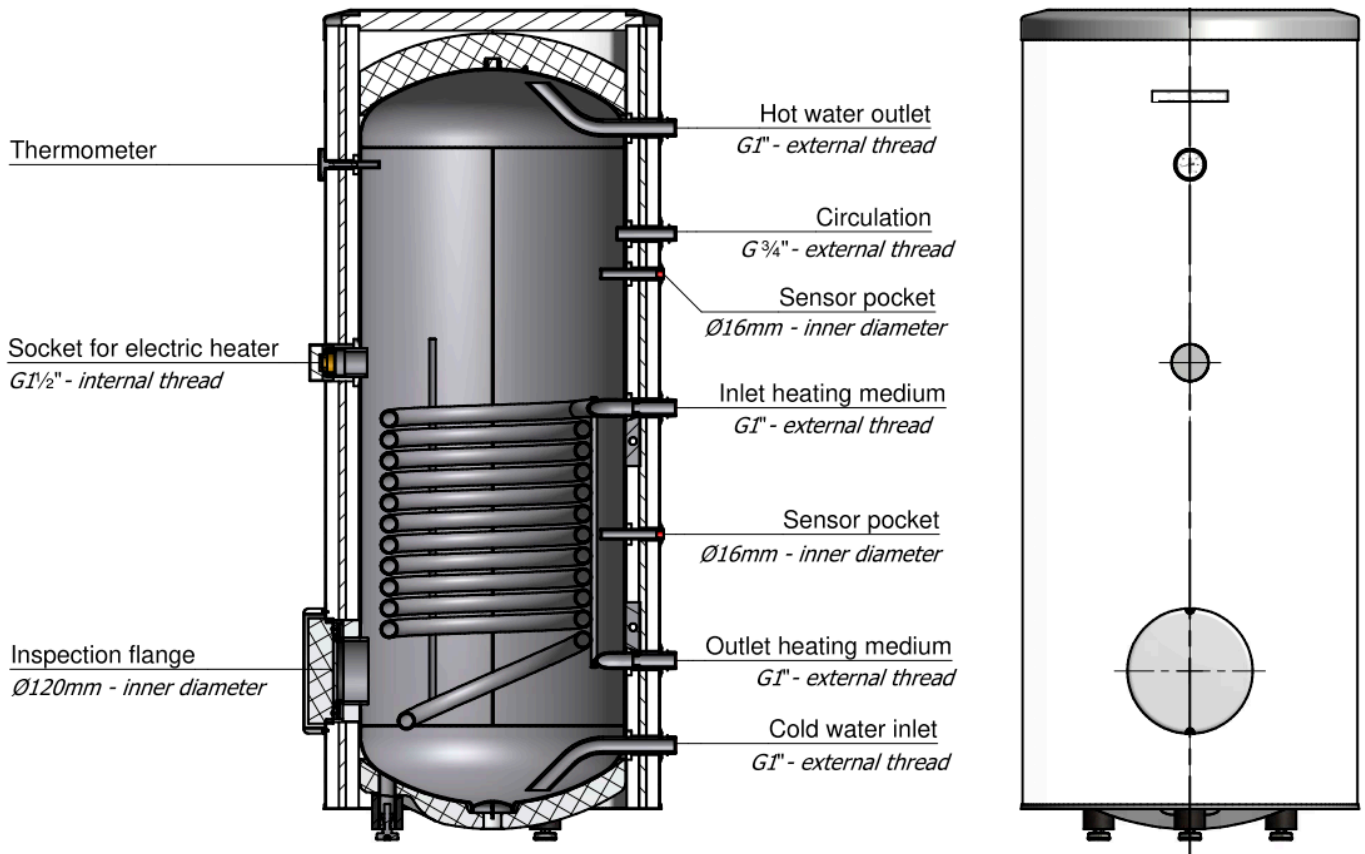
PT300



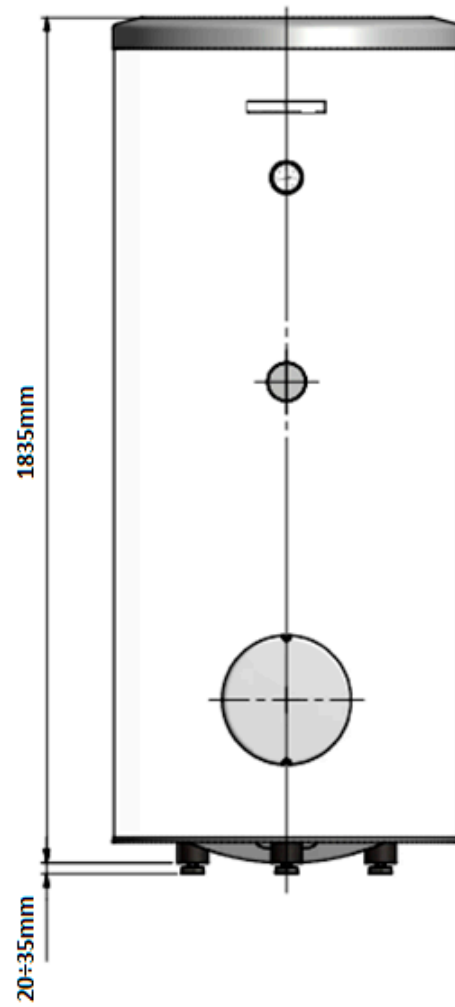
	PT300
A(mm)	1634
B(mm)	743
ØC(mm)	673



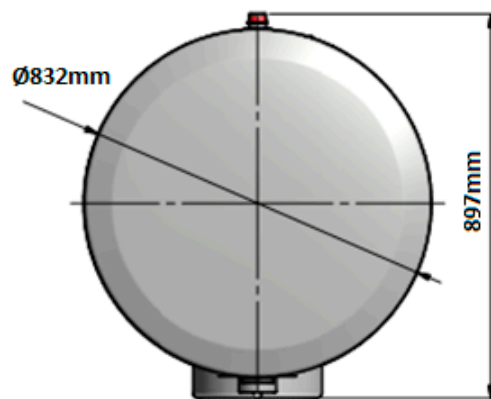
PT500



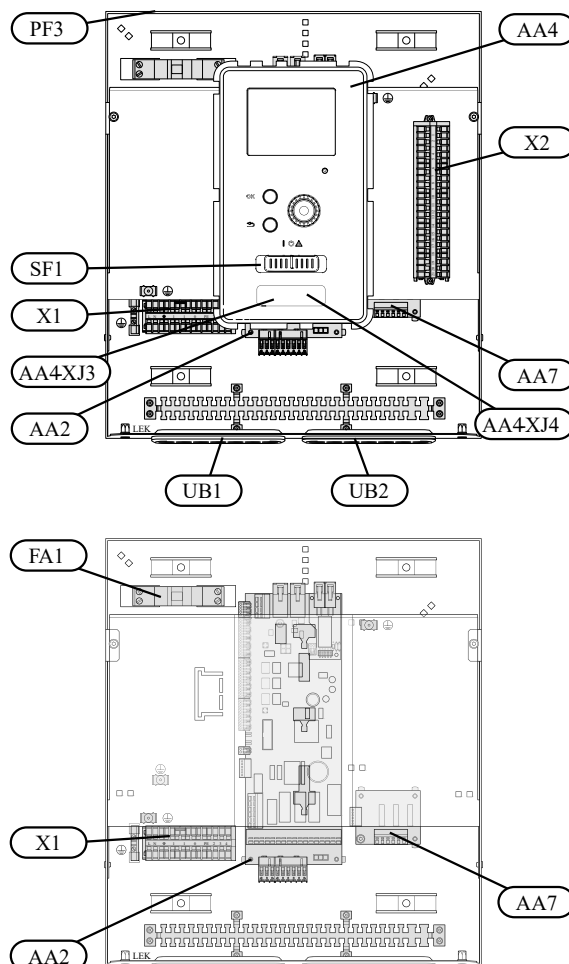
PT500



	PT500
A(mm)	1835
B(mm)	897
ØC(mm)	832



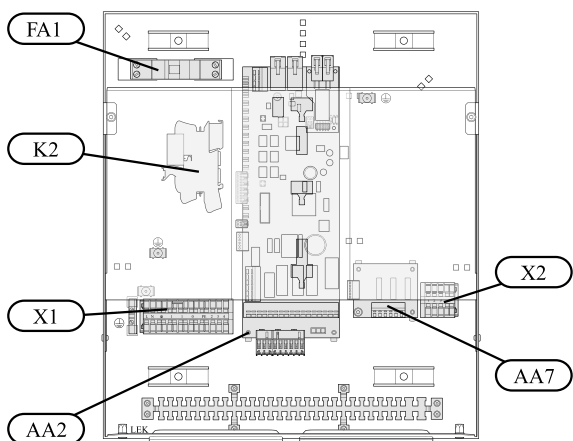
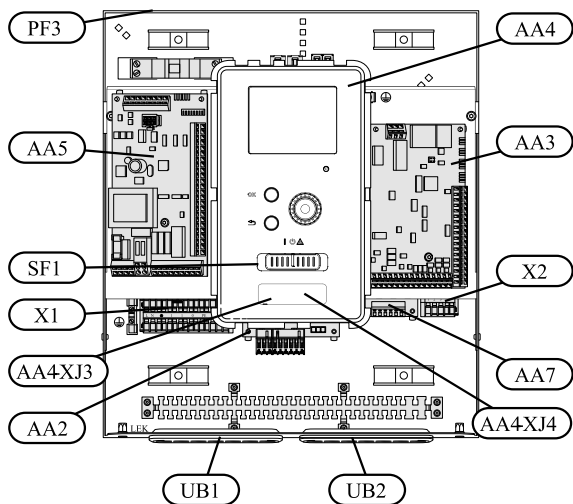
RC-HY20-W



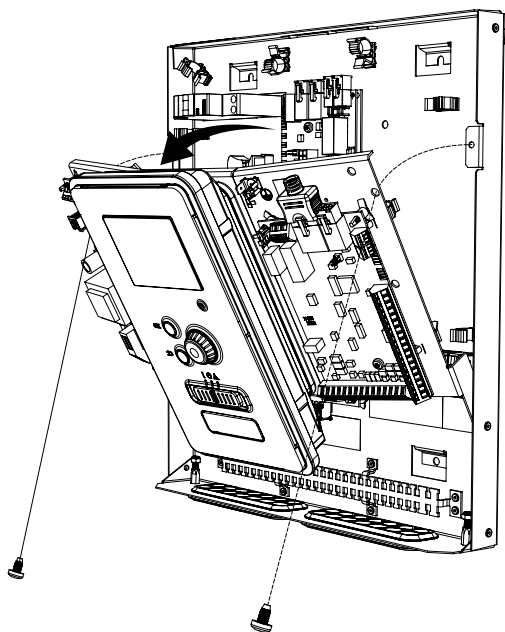
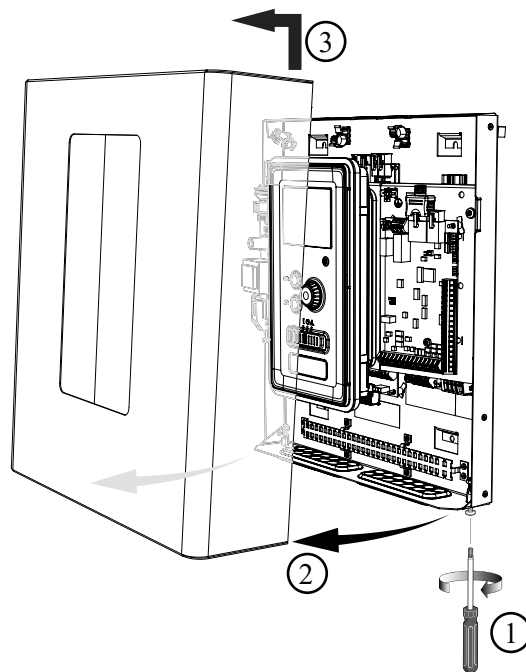
Explanation

- AA2 Base card
- AA4 Display unit
- AA4-XJ3 USB socket
- AA4-XJ4 Service outlet (No function)
- AA7 Extra relay circuit board
- FA1 Miniature circuit-breaker
- X1 Terminal block, incoming electrical supply
- X2 Terminal block, control signal circulation pump,
sensors AUX inputs and heat pump
- SF1 Switch
- PF3 Serial number plate
- UB1 Cable grommet, incoming supply electricity,
power for accessories
- UB2 Cable grommet, signal

RC-HY40-W



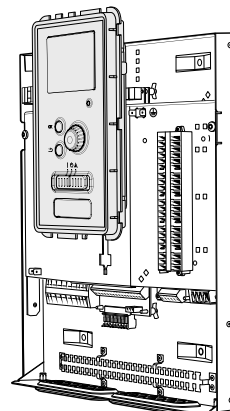
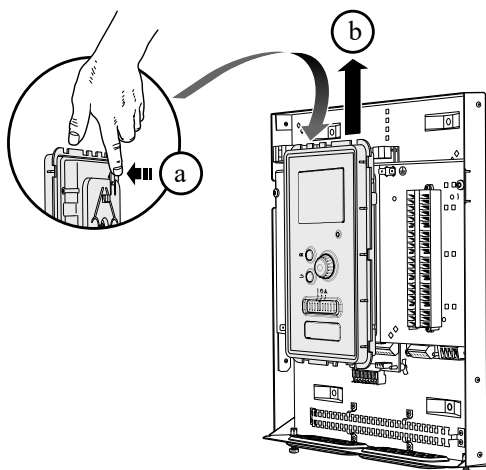
The cover of the control module is opened using a Torx 25 screwdriver. Assembly takes place in the reverse order.



Explanation

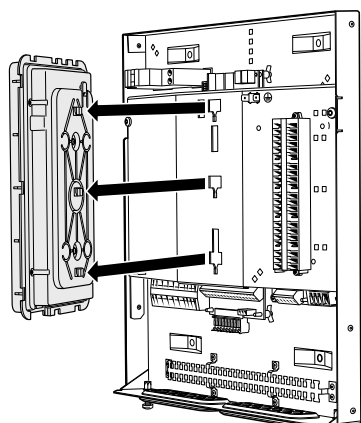
- AA2 Base card
- AA3 Input circuit board
- AA4 Display unit
- AA4-XJ3 USB socket
- AA4-XJ4 Service outlet (No function)
- AA5 Accessory card
- AA7 Extra relay circuit board
- FA1 Miniature circuit-breaker
- K2 Emergency mode relay
- X1 Terminal block, incoming electrical supply
- X2 Terminal block, AUX4 - AUX6
- SF1 Switch
- PF3 Serial number plate
- UB1 Cable grommet, incoming supply electricity, power for accessories
- UB2 Cable grommet, signal

The display may need to be moved for easier access when connecting electrics. This is easily done by following these steps.

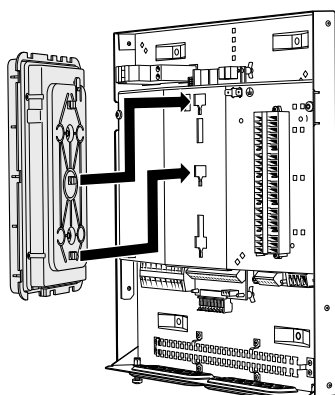


1. Press in the catch on the upper rear side of the display unit towards you (a) and move the display unit upwards (b) so that the mountings unhook from the panel.

4. Secure the display on the panel.
5. When the electrical connection is ready the display must be reinstalled with three mounting points again, otherwise the front cover cannot be installed.



2. Lift the display unit from its mountings.

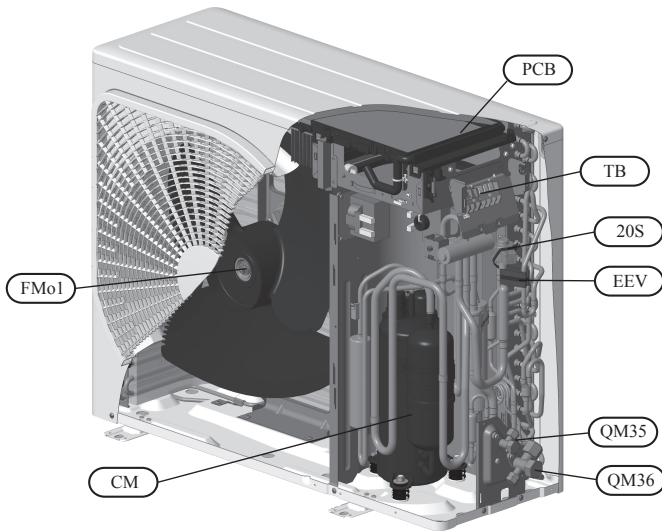


3. Align the two lower mountings on the reverse of the display unit with the two upper holes in the panel as illustrated.

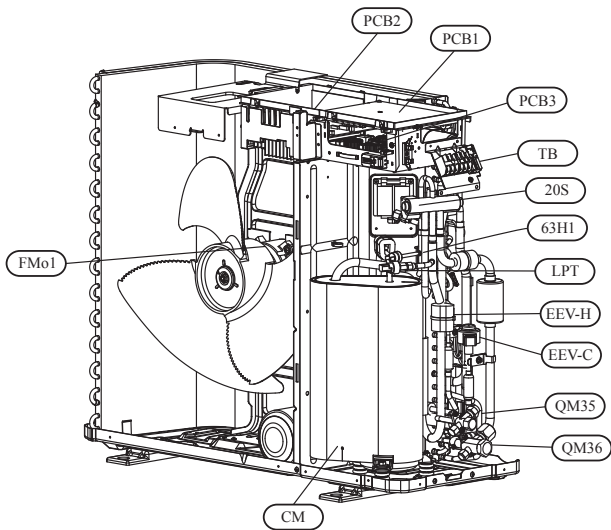
Outdoor unit

Component image

FDCW60VNX-A



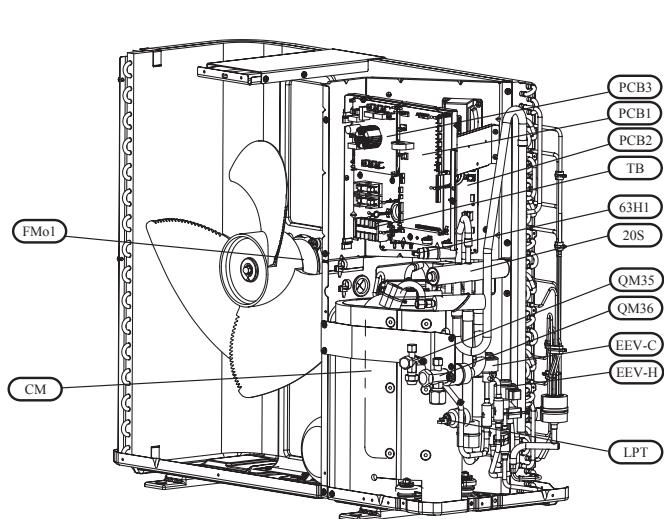
FDCW71VNX-A



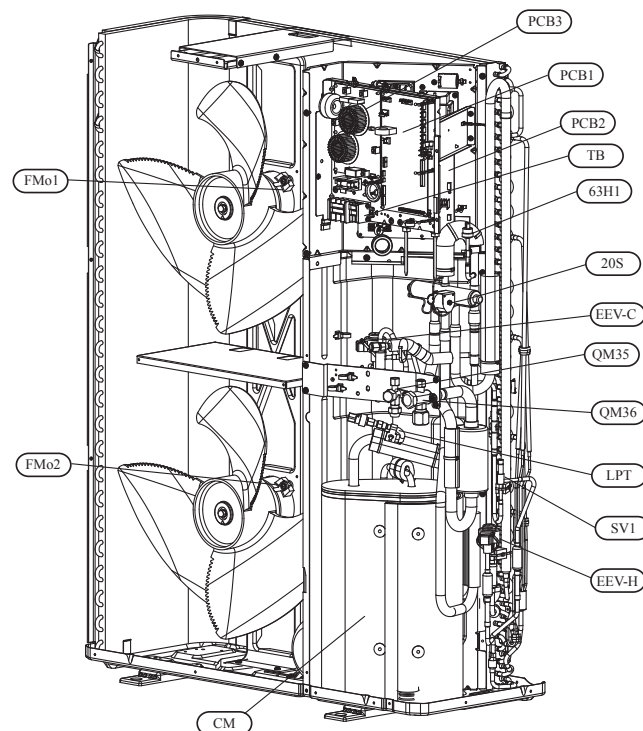
List of components

- 20S Solenoid for 4-way valve
- CM Compressor
- EEV Expansion valve
- FMo1 Fan motor
- PCB Inverter & control PCB
- QM35 Service valve, liquid side
- QM36 Service valve, gas side
- TB Terminal block

FDCW100VNX-A



FDCW140VNX-A



List of components

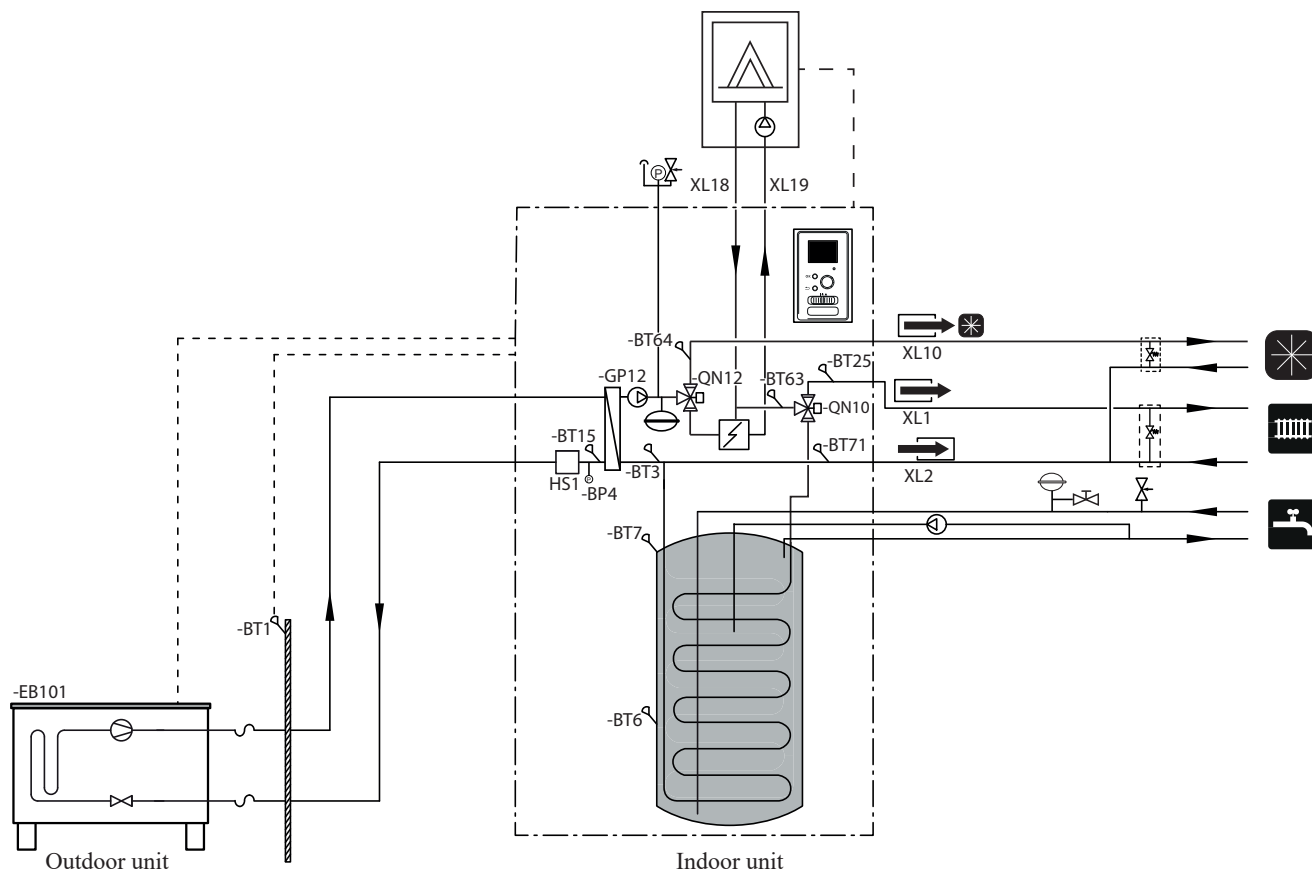
- 20S Solenoid for 4-way valve
- 63H1 High pressure switch
- CM Compressor motor
- EEV-C Expansion valve, cooling
- EEV-H Expansion valve, heating
- FMo1 Fan motor
- FMo2 Fan motor
- LPT Low pressure sensor
- PCB1 Control PCB
- PCB2 Inverter PCB
- PCB3 Noise filter PCB
- QM35 Service valve, liquid side
- QM36 Service valve, gas side
- SV1 Valve, solenoid
- TB Terminal block

Piping system



Indoor units

All in one type

HMA60-S/HMA100-S

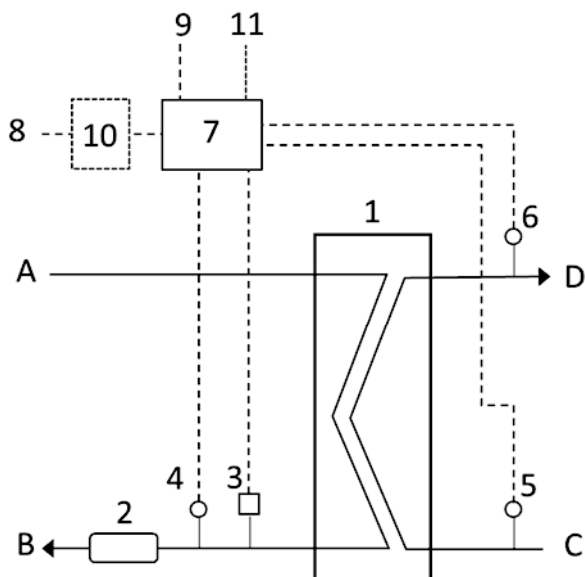


Meaning of symbol

XL1 ()	Connection, heating medium, supply
XL2 ()	Connection, heating medium, return
XL3	Connection, cold water
XL4	Connection, hot water
XL10	Connection, cooling
XL11	Connection, safety group, manometer
XL13	Connection, liquid cooling medium
XL14	Connection, gas cooling medium
XL18	Connection, return from an additional heat source
XL19	Connection, supply of an additional heat source
CM1	Diaphragm expansion vessel, closed
QN10	Isolation valve, domestic hot water/central heating
QN12	Isolation valve, cooling/heating
GP12	Circulation pump
EP2	Heat exchanger
BP4	Pressure sensor, high pressure

Split box

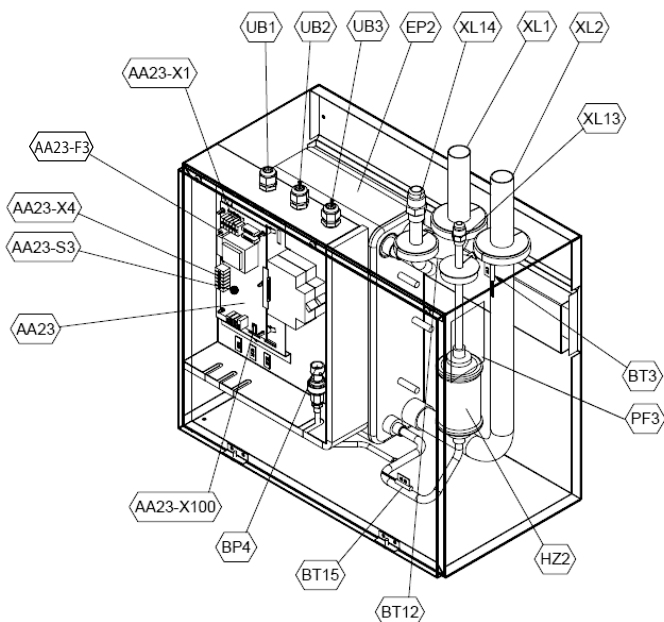
HSB60-W/HSB100-W/HSB140



- A: Refrigerant flow
- B: Refrigerant return
- C: Space heating return
- D: Space heating flow

- 1: Condenser
- 2: Filter
- 3: Pressure sensor
- 4: Temp. sensor, refrigerant return
- 5: Temp. sensor, space heating return
- 6: Temp. sensor, space heating flow
- 7: Print control board
- 8: Power source
- 9: Signal cable to outdoor heat pump
- 10: Residual current device (RCD) (option)
- 11: Cable for heat tracing (option)

(Components location)



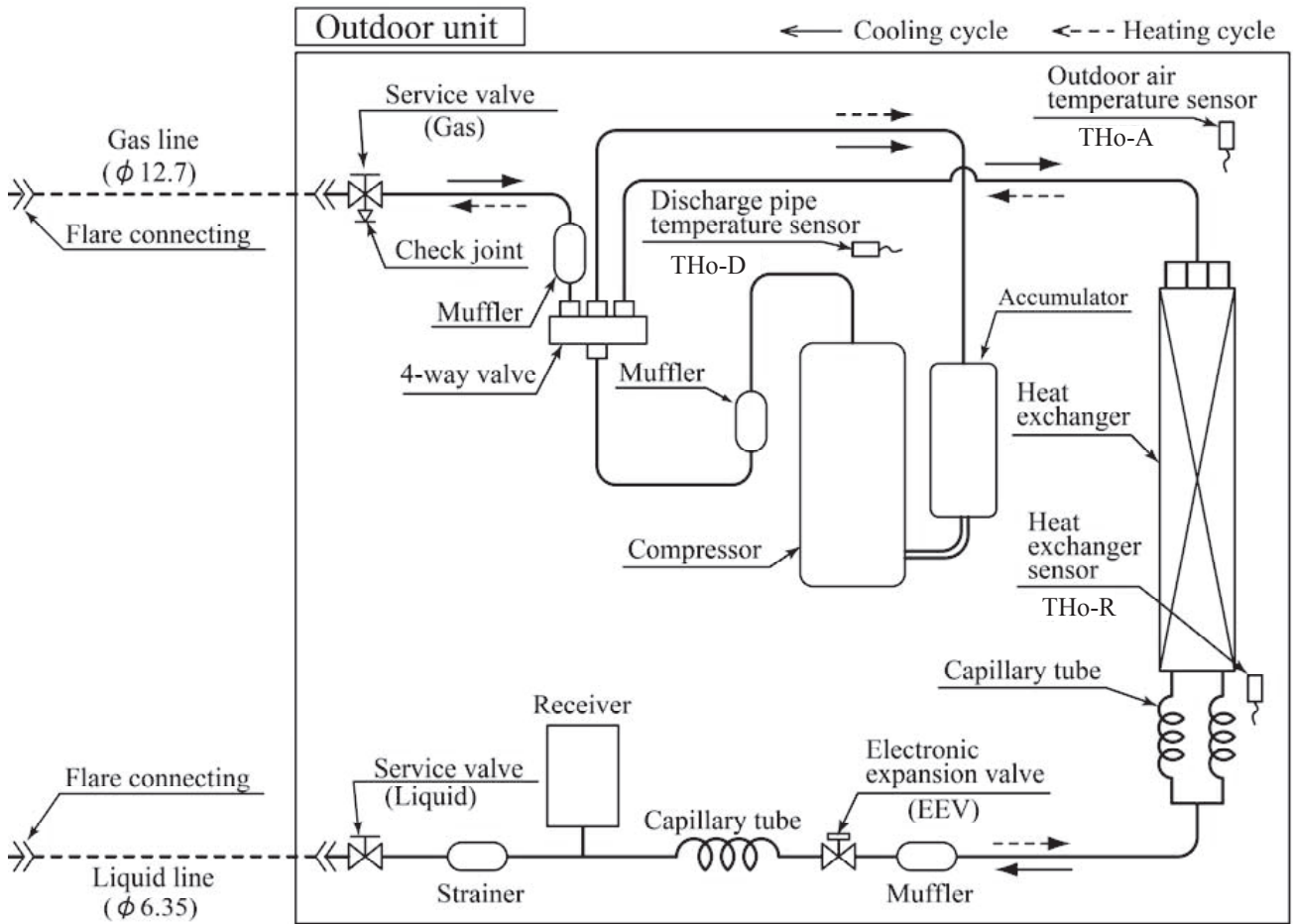
(Parts name)

- EP2 Heat exchanger
- HZ2 Drying filter
- Electrical components
 - AA23 Communication board
 - AA23-F3 Fuse for external heating cable
 - AA23-S3 DIP switch, addressing of outdoor unit
 - AA23-X1 Terminal block, incoming supply
 - AA23-X4 Terminal block, communication with indoor module / control module
 - AA23-X100 Terminal block, communication outdoor module
- Sensor, thermostats
 - BP4 Pressure sensor, high pressure
 - BT3 Temperature sensor, heating medium, return
 - BT12 Temperature sensor, condenser, supply
 - BT15 Temperature sensor, fluid pipe
- Pipe connections
 - XL1 Connection, heating medium supply
 - XL2 Connection, heating medium return
 - XL13 Connection, liquid cooling medium
 - XL14 Connection, gas cooling medium
- Miscellaneous
 - UB1 Cable gland
 - UB2 Cable gland
 - UB3 Cable gland
 - PF3 Nameplate with serial number

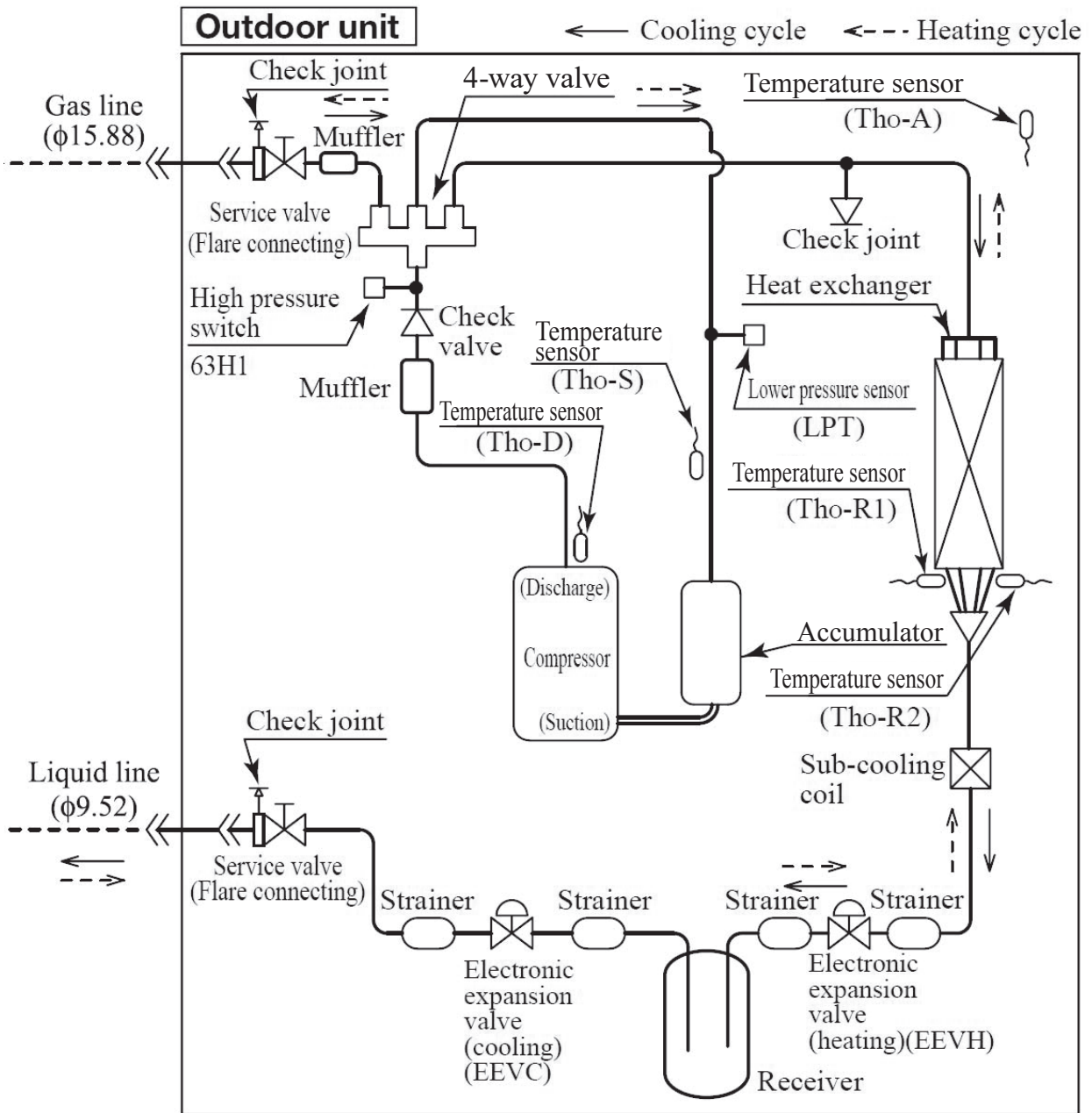
HSB140
(For HSB60-W/100-W please refer to page 334.)

Outside units

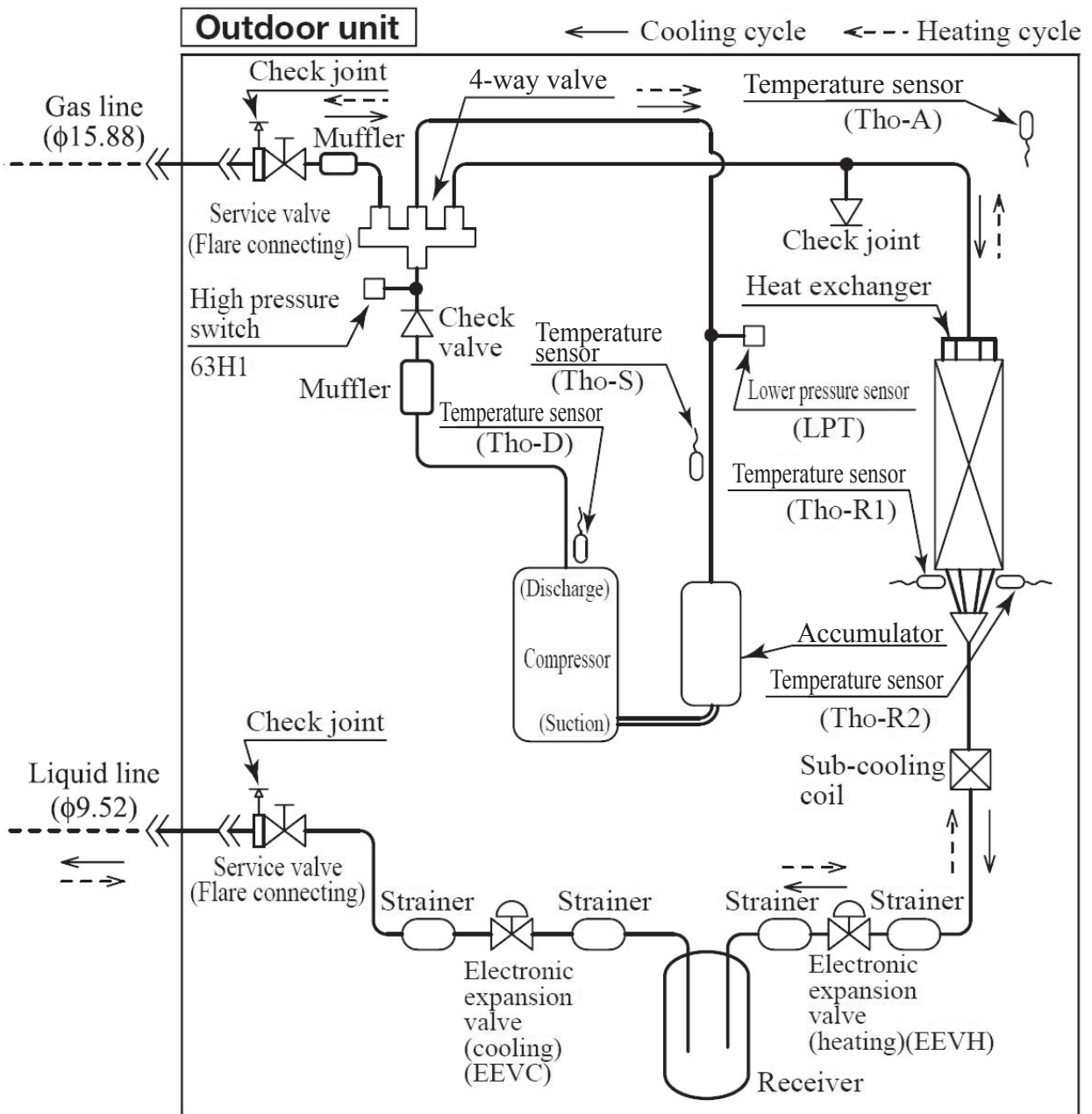
FDCW60VNX-A



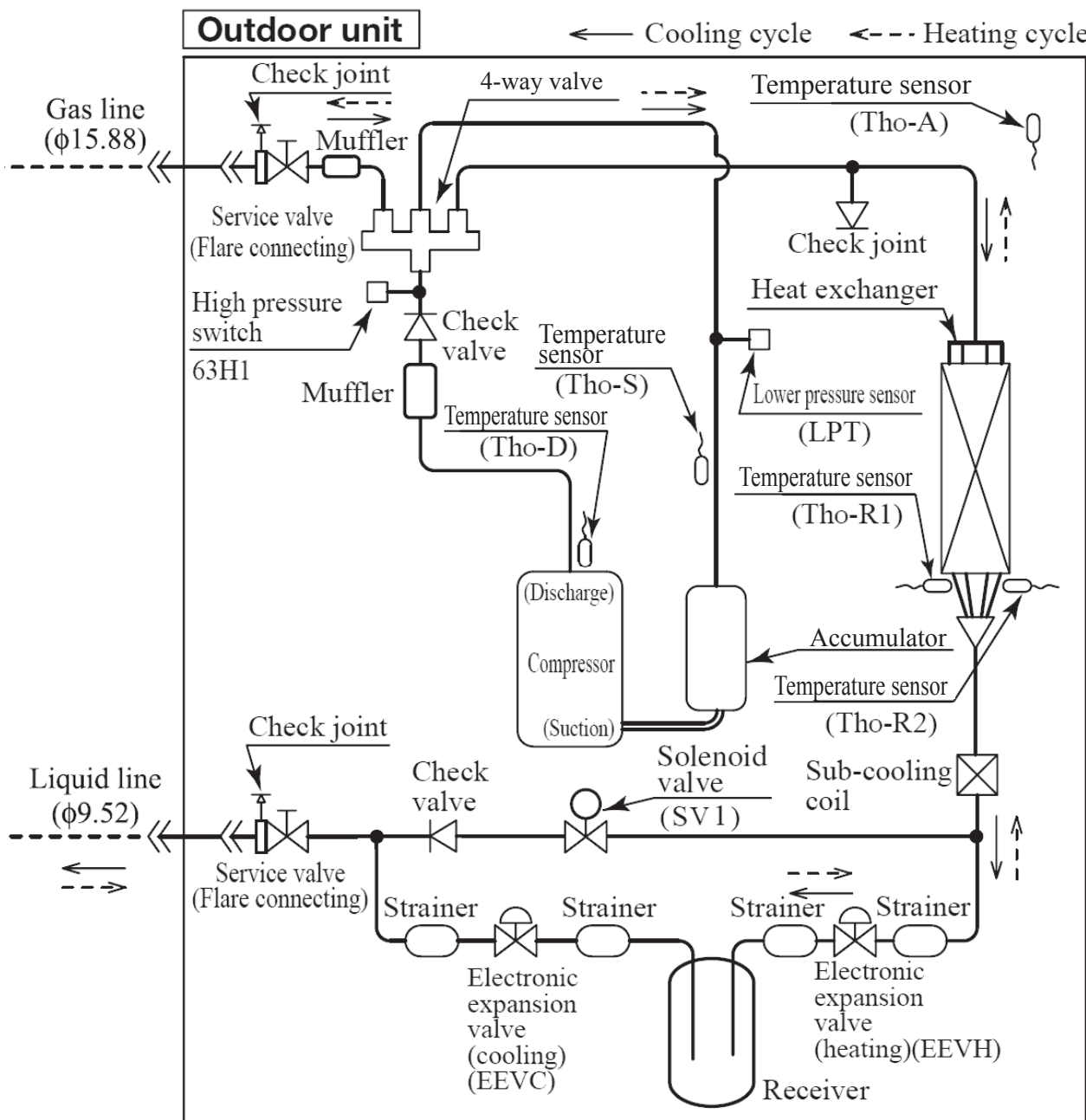
FDCW71VNX-A



FDCW100VNX-A

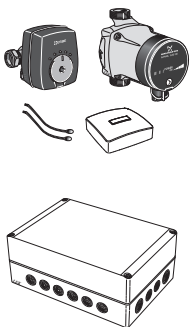
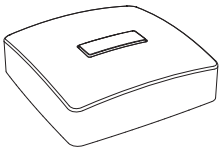
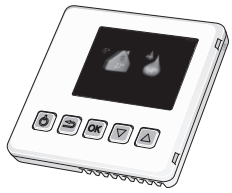
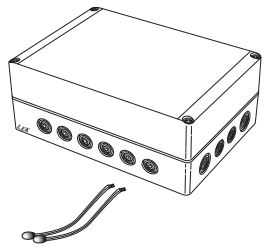
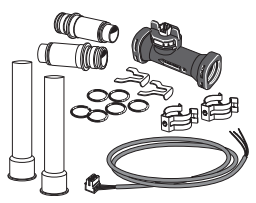


FDCW140VNX-A

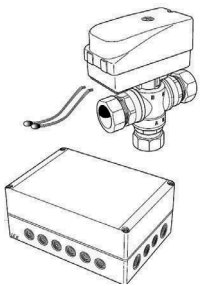
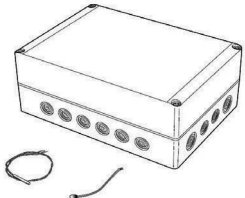
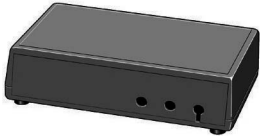
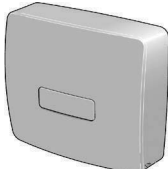


Accessories

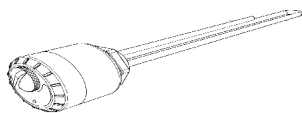
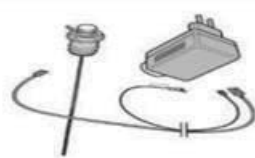

Accessory parts

Model name	Designation	RC-HY20-W Connection	RC-HY40-W Connection	Part No.
ECS-40M ECS-41M	 <p>Extra climate system</p>	—	✓	MCD291A008/ MCD291A009
RTS40M	 <p>Room sensor</p>	✓	✓ (Included)	MCD291A010
RMU40M	 <p>Room unit</p>	—	✓	MCD291A011
AXC30M	 <p>Accessories</p>	—	✓	MCD291A012
EMK300M	 <p>Energy meter kit</p>	—	✓	MCD291A013
EMK500M		—	✓	MCD291A014

Model name	Designation		RC-HY20-W Connection	RC-HY40-W Connection	Part No.
ELK9M1		Immersion heater 9kW	✓	✓	MCD291A015A
CPD11-25M/65		Charging pump	✓	✓	MCD291A016
CPD11-25M/75			✓	✓	MCD291A017
VST05M		Hot water control	✓	✓	MCD291A018
VST11M			✓	✓	MCD291A019
VST20M			✓	✓	MCD291A020
VCC05M		Shuttle valve	✓	✓	MCD291A021
VCC11M			✓	✓	MCD291A022

Model name	Designation	RC-HY20-W Connection	RC-HY40-W Connection	Part No.
POOL40M		—	✓	MCD291A030
SOLAR42M		—	✓	MCD291A033
MODBUS40M		—	✓	MCD291A031
EME20M		✓	✓	MCD291A032

Option parts (for PT tank)

Model name	Designation	Part No.
ME1030M		MCD291A029A
AnodeT300		MCD291A024
AnodeT500		MCD291A025
HR10M		MCD291A028

Model name	Designation		Part No.
Anode M300			MCD291A026
Anode M500			Magnesium anode

AIR TO WATER HEAT PUMP



mitsubishi heavy industries thermal systems, ltd.

2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, 100-8332, Japan
<http://www.mhi-mth.co.jp/en/>

Because of our policy of continuous improvement, we reserve the right to make changes in all specifications without notice.

© Copyright MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.